



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 06183677 5







.

.



A. DOWNS

~~Aug 23~~

CB



THE
HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND,
FROM THE
Earliest Accounts of Time,
To the DEATH of the
late Queen ANNE.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

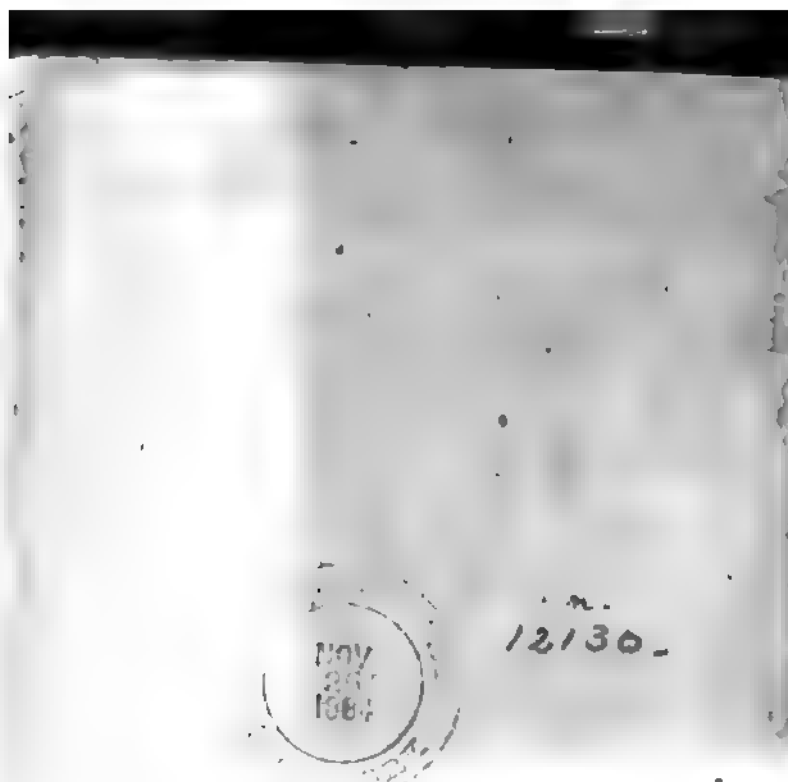
*orn'd with the Effigies of all the KINGS
and QUEENS, since the Conquest.*

VOL. I.

beginning with the Origin of the *Britons*, and
ending with the Reign of King RICHARD III.

LONDON,

Printed for E. BELL, J. DARBY, A. BETTES-
FORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. PEMBERTON,
J. HOOKE, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY,
J. BATLEY, E. SYMON. M.DCC. XXII.



NOV 26 1964



PREFACE.



HISTORY is not only a necessary Part of Study, in order to make up the Character of a learned Man; but if we consider it merely as an Entertainment of Leisure-
rs, 'tis universally acknowledged to be of the most profitable and delightful. certain it has this Advantage above far greatest Part of our Diversions, whereas they only please the Fancy, without improving the Mind; this, at the Time that it entertains the Curiosity, gives an agreeable Amusement, does enlarge and heighten the Understanding, to fill the Mind with generous Sentiments, and is capable of inspiring it with noble Dispositions to Virtue.

But this Topic of the Pleasure and Uses of History has been already sufficiently exhausted by several Writers, in order to commend their own particular Perfor-

mances; and there is no need to take to persuade People of that which they already by Experience fully convince. Therefore I shall only add, that if it in general be so agreeable and beneficial of one's own Country must have the Prevalence in both Respects.

It is certainly much more advantageous for a Man to have the History of England before him at one View, than to be oblig'd to turn over a Library to come at a considerable Knowledge of what has pass'd in this famous Isle; which heretofore was the case till some undertook to reduce the several Remains of Antiquity relating to this subject, and the numerous Writings of modern Authors, containing only some particular Parts of the Story, into one Piece. And if it be ask'd, Seeing we have such Books already, what need there be of this; it is answer'd, That the Histories of England which have been published are either too large for the Generality of Readers to purchase, or peruse to Advantage, or too small to relate all the chief Facts, and with a sufficient Degree of Perspective. Therefore a Medium has been pitched at the same time to answer the Convenience of Price, and the true Pleasure and Profit of all Sorts of Readers; the ensuing Edition equally avoiding the Inconveniencies which arise either from too great a Prolixity, or too much Brevity and Conciseness. It

THE PREFACE.

is divided in four Volumes, giving a Relation of all the material Transactions in Britain, from the earliest Accounts of Time, to the Death of her late Majesty Queen Anne.

'Tis to no purpose here to insist on a pompous Enumeration of Authors, made use of in compiling this Work, according to the usual Ostentation: They who shall be at the Pains to examine, will find what is here related to be supported by the best Authorities. The former Parts of this History are collected from the most approved Writers both antient and modern; and for the latter, besides those that bear the Title of Histories, we have made use of Memoirs, Collections, Annals, &c. and have sometimes had the Assistance of private Informations, from Persons of unsuspected Credit.

Care has been taken to avoid Partiality, a Fault into which even those who are most averse to it, are apt insensibly to fall. We have used all Fidelity, and had regard to Sincerity and Truth through the Whole; and have related Facts, as they have appeared to us, after the most careful and impartial Examination, without calling Names, or giving scurrilous Epithets to any Sect or Party of Men; which many Writers of this Kind have been guilty of. As we have omitted those Stories which are trifling and impertinent, so we have taken all possible Care to insert whatever is material, which is related with

with all the chief and most necessary Circumstances.

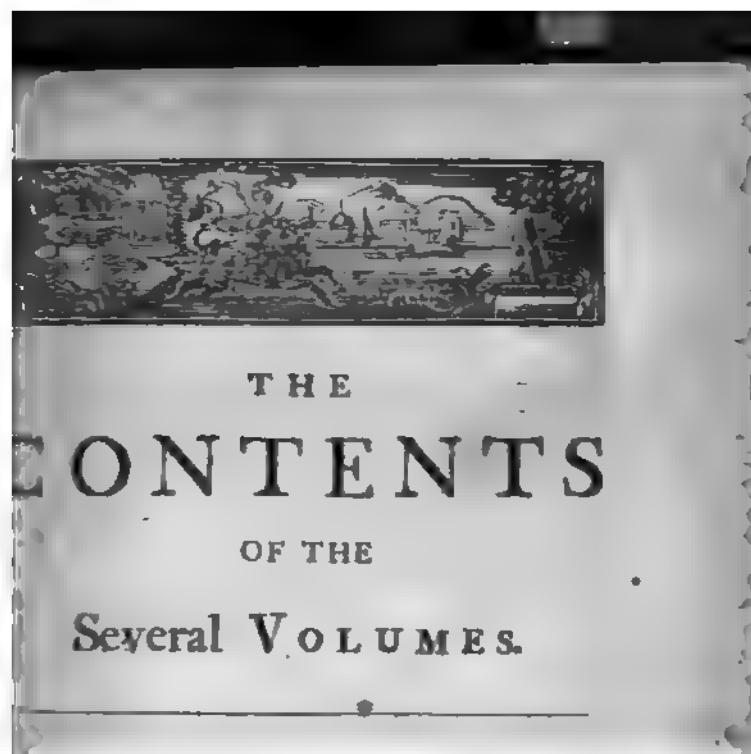
Great Regard has been had to the Chronology, which is an essential Part of History. And it being a Curiosity natural to all, to know at what Time Persons who have made a considerable Figure in the World, departed out of it, we have usually, at the Close of the Year, taken notice of the most remarkable Persons who died that Year.

The Effigies are all new done, and add an agreeable Ornament to the Work. And there are two compleat Indexes, the first to the two former Volumes, which is affixed to the End of the Second, and the other to the two latter, which is placed after the fourth Volume. These Tables serve not only to direct to any important Passage, but give an agreeable View at once of each King's Reign, and of the Substance of the whole History.



NOY WAS
 QUEN
 YASRU

THE



VOL. I.

- ACT. I.** *FROM the earliest Account of Time, to the first coming of Julius Cæsar, Page 1*
- ACT. II.** *From the Invasion of Britain by the Romans under Julius Cæsar, to their quitting their Jurisdiction of the Isle, p. 17*
- ACT. III.** *From the Romans quitting their Jurisdiction of the Island, to the Destruction of Britain by the Picts, Scots and Saxons, p. 43*
- ACT. IV.** *From the Destruction of Britain by the Saxons and other Nations, to the New Establishment made by King Egbert, p. 52*
- ACT. V.** *From the Establishment of King Egbert, to the Beginning of the Danish Monarchy, under King Canute, p. 65*
- ACT. VI.** *From the Beginning of the Monarchy of the Danes in England, to the Restoration of the Saxons in Edward the Confessor, p. 96*
- ACT. VII.** *From the Restoration of the Saxons, to the Coming in of William the Conqueror, p. 102*
- Reign of K. William I. commonly called The Conqueror, p. 116*

The

The CONTENTS.

<i>The Reign of William II.</i>	—	Page
— of Henry I.	—	—
— of King Stephen	—	—
— of Henry II.	—	—
— of Richard I.	—	—
— of King John	—	—
— of Henry III.	—	—
— of Edward I.	—	—
— of Edward II.	—	—
— of Edward III.	—	—
— of Richard II.	—	—
— of Henry IV.	—	—
— of Henry V.	—	—
— of Henry VI.	—	—
— of Edward IV.	—	—
— of Edward V.	—	—
— of Richard III.	—	—

VOL. II.

<i>THE Reign of K. Henry VII.</i>	—	Page
— of Henry VIII.	—	—
— of Edward VI.	—	—
— of Q. Mary I.	—	—
— of Q. Elizabeth	—	—

VOL. III.

<i>THE Reign of K. James I.</i>	—	Page
— of Charles I.	—	—
— of Charles II.	—	—

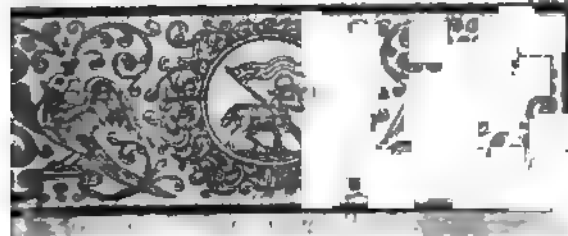
VOL. IV.

<i>THE Reign of K. James II.</i>	—	Page
— of K. William III. and Q. Mary II.	—	—
— of Q. Anne	—	—



ERRATA.

VOL. I. pag. 258. kn. ult. for *imprisoned* read *posined*. **VOL. II.**
l. 24 for *Archers* v. *Artificers*. **VOL. III.** p. 222. l. 3. for
March v. *Kings* marched. **VOL. IV.** p. 211. second marginal Note, f
James v. *Army*.



THE
HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND.



SECT. I.

*From the earliest Account of Time, to the first
coming of Julius Cæsar.*



IN Order to make the following History as useful as may be, we shall give as full and regular Account of the Transactions that have occur'd in the Kingdom, from the earliest Accounts of Time, as can be collected out of the ancientest and best Authors have written of those Affairs.

Britain, the largest of all the *European* Islands, is situated between the Degrees of 50 and 59 of North Latitude, and between 12 and 20 of Longitude; its greatest length from *Dunby* Head to *Dover*, about six hundred Miles, and its greatest Breadth from *Dover* to the *W's End* in *Cornwall*, about three hundred Miles; enjoying an Air far more mild, sweet and temperate, than any

*A general
Description
of the Count-
ry.*

any part of the Continent between the same. The Cold during the Winter, is not so piercing; Heat in the Summer so scorching, as to inforce of Stoves in the one, or Grotto's in the other; and from Tempests and Hurricanes, pestilential Distempers, Famine and Earthquakes, than many other Countries. No Country exceeds it in the main Necessaries of man Life, as Flesh and Corn for Food, Wood for Conveniencies for Raiment, and all sorts of Materials for Building. The Excellency of this Country is evident from those transcendent Eulogies, given by ancient and modern Writers of all Nations, who say that she is happy above all other Countries. ' Nature has enrich'd with all the Blessings of Earth; in whom nothing is hurtful, nor desirable is wanting; a Master-piece of Nature formed when she was in the best and gayest Humour, which she plac'd as a little World by it self, on the Side of the greater, merely for the Delight of Mankind; the most accurate Model which she propos'd to her self to beautify the other Parts of the Universe. That her Vallies are like Eden, her Hills like Mount Zion, her Springs as Pilsgab, and her Rivers as the Euphrates. That she is the Paradise of Pleasure, and the Garment of God; whose Walls are the Ocean, and the Lord is her Defence.

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona norint, Anglicani

Britain.

This Country was by the Ancients call'd *Britain* some derive from *Brutus*, the third by Descent from the Trojan *Aeneas*, and others from the *British* Word *Cain*, a white Form; Mr. *Cambden* from *Brish*, signifies painted, and *Tania*, signifying a Nation; the ancient *Britains* us'd to paint themselves. Mr. *Strabo* derives it from *Brydio*, which implies Heat and from the Motion of the Seas that furrow it. But *Bochart* derives it from the *Phœnician* Word *Anac*, and more contractedly *Bratanac*, that is, a Little.

Albion.

It was also call'd *Albion*, from the Giant *Neptune's* Son, or from the Word *Alpi*, which signifies White, or from the Hebrew Word *Alben*, which signifies White, or from the Word *Alp* which signifies High. But of these there is but little certain. every Reader therefore chuse which of them he pleases.

The History of ENGLAND.

3

Country so enriched and beautified by Nature, ^{Its antient} inhabited after the Dispersion of the Sons of ^{Inhabitants} 'tis related that the Posterity of *Gomer*, the Son of *Japhet*, first settled in *Gaul*, and other neighbouring Countries; and from thence part of them came into this Isle, and settled here. One of *Gomer's* Sons was named *Britto*, from whom the Name of this Country is derived, as 'tis thought by some; when indeed not a few, according to what has been recorded, affirm, that the Name *Britain* is taken from *Brutus*, the Son of *Silvius*, the Son of *Ascanius*, the Son of *Æneas*, a *Trojan* Prince. *Silvius* being married to a Niece of *Lavinia*, the proving of this, the whole Affair could no longer be hid from the King, who commanded his Magicians to enquire whether he had conceived Male or Female. They answered that it was one that would be the Death both of the Father and Mother; and that he should be banished from his Country, but should at length in a distant Country receive the highest Honours. This Prediction was fulfilled; for his Mother dy'd in Travel; and at an advanced Age, being a hunting with his Father, he accidentally kill'd him with an Arrow; for which he was banished by his Kindred. He retired into the Forest, and meeting with the Offspring of *Helenus*, King of the *Celts*, who were Slaves to *Pandrasus* then King, he lived with them, and soon became their Darling, in which he excelled both in Virtue and Arms. Hence the King began to revive, and they request him to lead them to Liberty. Upon this, frequent Councils were held to deliberate on this weighty Affair: and, considering their Numbers and Strength, being assisted by *Assaracus* a Noble *Grecian* Youth, they betook themselves to the Woods and Hills, which they held secret Against whom King *Pandrasus* marches with great Forces, and being encamped, by Night *Brutus* divides his Men into three Bodies, marches silently to their Camp, attacks them unprovided, makes a great slaughter amongst them, and takes *Pandrasus* Prisoner. *Brutus* now, having so favourable an Opportunity to consider of his own and his People's Safety and Liberty. Immediately a Grand Council of all the *Barons* or Elders was convened; and after a long Debate concerning what was to be done with *Pandrasus*, as a Prisoner, it was resolv'd, according to the

The History of ENGLAND.

Advice of grave *Mempricius*, to demand the King's eldest Daughter in Marriage for their Leader *Brutus*, with a rich Dowry, then a sufficient Number of Ships, Money, and Provisions for their Voyage, to go and seek a new Place of Habitation. Upon this the King was brought into the Assembly; and being seated above all the rest, was told that on these Conditions he might be free, otherwise he must prepare for Death. To which Conditions the King readily agrees; and as soon as possible the Marriage was solemnized; a Fleet was fitted out with all manner of Provisions, on which the *Trojans* embark'd and put to Sea; and after two Days Sail, they came to the Island *Loegotia*, now unknown, which was without human Inhabitants. Those who were sent out to make Discoveries, found a fortified City, in which there was a Temple and Image of *Diana* that gave Oracles; whom *Brutus* consulting about a Place for their Settlement, the Answer was, *That in the wide Ocean West of Gaul, there was a Land convenient for them; thither bend thy Course, there shalt thou reign, and thy Posterity shall conquer many Nations.*

*Brutus lands
in Britain.*

Brutus guided now, as he thought, by Divine Conduct, pursues his Voyage with the utmost Diligence, and having gone thro' many Dangers, at length, arrives at *Totness* in *Devonshire*. This fill'd them all with Raptures of Joy, as being got safe to the promised Land, where all their Labours should be at an End, and where they should enjoy Peace and Tranquillity. This Land at their Arrival was possess'd only by a Gang of cruel Giants, who had devour'd the rest of the Inhabitants. These *Brutus* destroyed, except some few who lurk'd about in *Cornwall*; and then in reference to his own Name, he call'd the Land *Britain*, which he divided amongst his Followers; and *Cornwall* by Lot fell to *Corineus*, which was suitable to his Temper, that he might have the Opportunity to destroy those Monsters, an Exercise he much delighted in. Things being thus regulated, *Brutus* and the *Trojans* appointed a solemn Festival to be kept at the Place where they first landed: And when they were in the height of their Jollity, a Crew of these Savages broke in upon 'em, and slew many of them. But at length being overcome by Numbers, the Giants were all destroyed, but *Goemagog* the hugest of all, being in Height twelve Cubits, who was kept alive that *Corineus* might try his Strength with him. They engage, and in the Contest the Giant gave *Corineus* such a Hug that he broke thre

The History of ENGLAND.

S.

of his Ribs; which so enraged *Corineus*, that, by main Force, he took him cross his Shoulders, ran with him to a high Rock, and threw him headlong into the Sea; for which Reason the Clift to this Day is call'd *Langoemagog*, that is, the Giant's Leap.

After this *Brutus* and his People march thro' the Coun-^{*Brutus* builds *Troja Nova*.} try, and chuse a Place, on which he built *Troja Nova*, call'd afterwards *Trinovantum*, now *London*. And now some Laws were enacted for the better securing the publick Peace, (which was about the Time when *Heli* was High Priest in *Judea*) and *Brutus* having reigned twenty four Years, died, leaving behind him three Sons, viz. *Dioc. Locrinus*, *Camber*, and *Albanactus*, who by mutual Consent divide the Land between themselves.

Locrinus the eldest took for his Share the middle Part, The Division call'd *Loegria*; *Camber*, that call'd *Cambria*, now *Wales*; on of the Land. and *Albanactus*, *Albania* now *Scotland*. *Locrinus* married *Guendolena*, Daughter of *Corineus*, who being enraged at *Locrinus*'s Intrigues with *Estrildis*, and because she her self was denied the King's Embraces, rais'd an Army against her Husband *Locrinus*, who was kill'd in Battle. Upon this *Guendolena*, her Son *Maden* being under Age, took upon her the Government, and commanded *Estrildis*, and her Daughter *Habren*, to be cast into the River, which from *Habren* was call'd *Sabrina*, now *Severne*. *Guendolena* having been at the Helm for fifteen Years, reigned the Crown to her Son *Maden* who was now of Age, and retir'd to her Father's Dominions. This was in the Days of *Samuel*. ^{*Guendolena* rules. *Maden* reigns.}

Maden having govern'd the Land with Peace and Diligence for the Space of forty Years, died, leaving behind him two Sons, viz. *Mempricius* and *Manlius*.

Mempricius the eldest succeeds his Father in the Throne, and to prevent a Competitor, murdered his Brother *Manlius*. Having thus got the Rule of the whole Island, he exercis'd great Tyranny upon the People, and destroyed almost all the Nobles, and being given over to unnatural Lusts, as he was a hunting in a Forest, he was devoured by Wolves, in the twentieth Year of his Reign. ^{*Mempricius* reigns.}

His Son *Ebrancus* succeeded him, a Man of mighty Strength. He was the first after *Brute*, that fitted out a Fleet, with which he sail'd to *France*, invaded it, and returned with great Booty. He built *Caerebranc*, now *Tork*, and *Mons Agnes*, now *Edinburgh*. He had twenty Wives, who bore him twenty Sons and thirty Daughters: The latter he

The History of ENGLAND.

sent into *Italy*, where they were married to the Nobles of the *Trojan* Line ; and his Sons (except the eldest) into *Germany*, where by their Valour they gained a Kingdom. After forty Years Reign *Ebraucus* died, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Brutus*, who was surnamed *Veride Senatus*. *Greenfield*, who after a silent Reign of about twelve Years, was taken away by Death, and left his Crown to be enjoyed by his Son *Leyl*.

Brutus
reigns.

Leyl

Leyl being got into the Throne, govern'd the Nation for some Years in perfect Peace, and with much Justice, but slacken'd towards the latter end, and by reason of his Slothfulness and Negligence, civil Dissentions arose. He built, in the Days of *Solomon*, the City of *Caerleyst*, now *Carlisle* ; and after he had reigned twenty five Years, he was succeeded by his Son *Hudibras* or *Rudbudibras*, who having appeas'd the Commotions which his Father could not, and settled a Peace in the Nation, founded *Caerkeyst*, or *Canterbury*, and *Caerquent* or *Winchester* ; and having reigned thirty nine Years, Death made way for the Succession of his Son *Baldudus* or *Bladud*, who erected the *Bath*. This *Bladud* was a Man of great Invention, understood the Art of Necromancy, and taught it to others : He made Wings and learned to fly, but desirous to divert his Nobles with this strange Exercise, he got on the Top of the Temple of *Apollo* in *Trinovant*, and flying from it, fell down and dash'd himself to pieces having reigned twenty Years.

Hudibras
reigns.

Bladud
reigns.

Leir

Leir his Son succeeded, who built *Caer-Leir*, now *Leicester* : He had no Male Issue, but only three Daughters and growing very old, he determines to marry his Daughters, and divide the Kingdom amongst them ; but first resolves to try which of them respected him most : The eldest declared she loved him better than her own Soul, the second answered, that she loved him above all Creatures ; and the third said she loved him as a Father, with which Answer being angry, he said she should have no Share in the Kingdom. He married his eldest Daughter *Goneril*, to *Maglannus* Duke of *Albania*, and *Regan* his second, to *Hemmus* Duke of *Cornwall*, giving with them the half of his Kingdom, the other half to follow at his Death. *Cordeilla* was deprived of all for her Sincerity : of such Force is Flattery ! But the old King soon found to his Cost, the difference between the one and the other, for the two Dukes rebell'd against him, seiz'd on his Kingdom, and deposed him ; and now in the utmost

The History of ENGLAND.

7.

stress, his two elder Daughters that flattered him before, refused him all manner of Relief. But the younger Daughter receives him chearfully, treats him with due Respect, assists him with an Army against her two rebellious Brothers, overcomes them, and re-established her Father on the Throne, who in the sixtieth Year of his Reign died; whom *Cordeilla* with regal Solemnities buried at *Leicester*, and succeeded him in the Kingdom, *Cordeilla* and ruled the Land five Years in Peace, until *Morganus* and *Cunidagius*, her Sisters Sons, not being able to brook, that the Kingdom should be governed by a Woman, levied Forces against her, and in Battel took her Prisoner; which she not being able to bear, put an end to her Misfortunes, by killing her self.

Morganus and *Cunidagius* divide the Land between them. *Morganus* by Agreement had that part from the *Humber* to *Cathness*; and because he was the Elder, he thought all of Right belonged to him: Accordingly, with all his Forces, he marches against the other, and invades *Cunidagius's* Country; who, on the other hand, put all Things in Order to oppose him. Diverse Skirmishes happened, till at length in a pitch'd Battel in *Wales*, *Morganus* was beaten and killed, from whom the Place received its Name. Thus *Cunidagius* became sole Monarch of *Britain*, which he governed gloriously for about thirty three Years, having done many Things for the good of his Subjects, who in return had an entire Affection for him. He died about the Time that *Rome* was built; and upon his Death, *Rivallo*, his Son, ascended the Throne; who was a brave, wise and fortunate young Man, and governed the Nation diligently; in whose Time, 'tis said, it rain'd Blood and stinging Flies for three Days together, which occasioned the Death of many Men. *Rivallo* being dead, *Gurgutius* his Son succeeded him; who was succeeded by *Sifillius*; and *Sifillius* was succeeded by *Jago* or *Lago*, the Nephew of *Gurgutius*. This *Lago* was succeeded by *Kinimacius*, the Son of *Sifillius*, whose immediate Successor was *Gorbodug*, who had two Sons, named *Ferrex* and *Porrex*: Their Father growing old, these two Brothers contended for the Succession; both Parties raise what Forces they could; they join Battel; Fortune favoured *Porrex*, who defeated his Brother's Army and slew him. Upon this the Mother, who passionately lov'd *Ferrex*, meditated Revenge on her Son *Porrex*. This she soon found Opportunity, by

of *Cloten* King of *Cornwall*: This *Dunwallo* was one of the Kings in *Britain*, both in the goodliness of his Person, and Valour, being a perfect Model both in his Mind; who after his Father's Death, found a little Time to reduce the whole Kingdom to one State, making it again one sole Monarchy. He fought with *Tinner* King of *Loegria*, whom he beat at a Battel. Then he bent his Forces against *Rex* of *Cambria*, and *Staterius* of *Albania*, who had united their Forces for their mutual Assistance; both Armies fought desperately for a long Time, till *Dunwallo* bethought of a Stratagem, which was to send six hundred of his choice Soldiers, cloathed in the Habits of their slain Enemies, and advance them into the Squadron, where the two Kings were, who were then for Friends, but were so unexpectedly assail'd that they were put into Disorder. *Dunwallo* perceiving this, pursued the Advantage, and gained a complete Victory and of Consequence the Dominion of the whole Island, and restored it to its pristine Glory. This *Dunwallo* was the first in *Britain* who wore a Crown of Gold, and on that account is reputed by some the first King. He made several Laws, which continue in Force to this Day; particularly those, concerning the Peace and Privilege of the Church and Ploughs: He made such a Riddance of Thieves and Robbers, that the Roads were very safe. In Honour of the Memory of *Dunwallo* the Peace restored

The History of ENGLAND.

9

of all, according to the *Trojan* Custom, that the Younger should submit to the Elder. In this happy Establishment, they lived in Peace five Years, till at length *Brennus*, seduced by evil Counsel, Flatterers, and Forgers of Lies, would no longer pay Obedience to his Brother, nor own him as his Sovereign; but went into *Norway*, entered into an Alliance with *Elfric* their King, and married his Daughter. *Belinus*, being informed of his Brother's Designs and Absence, seizes on his Dominions. *Brennus* gets a Fleet ready and sails for *England*; in which Passage he was met by the King of *Denmark*, who was passionately in Love with *Brennus's* Lady; he attack'd *Brennus*, and took the Ship which carried his Lady; but his Ships being dispersed by Storm, he was drove a Shore on *Northumberland*, where he was taken with the Lady by *Belinus*. Nevertheless *Brennus* collecting his Ships and Forces, lands in *Britain*, and fought with *Belinus*, but lost the Day, with twenty thousand Men, and almost all the *Norwegians* slain, himself with one Ship only escaping into *France*; where not being able to procure Assistance, he went to the Duke of *Savoy*, married his only Daughter, and after his Death, succeeded him in that Dutchy; where he raised an Army, got leave to march it thro' *Gaul*, and thence transported it into *Britain*. *Belinus* *Brennus invades Britain.* made ready with his Army to oppose his Brother; and both Armies being drawn out, and ready to begin the Fight, *Concordia* their Mother, flew into the midst of *Brennus's* Troops, fell on his Neck, shewing him her Breasts that gave him suck, and prevailed on him to go to his Brother, who met him with Transport and Affection. Thus by the powerful Mediation of the Mother, the two Brothers were reconciled to each other; upon which they mutually agreed to unite their Forces and invade *France*, which being subdued they march to *Rome*, where the *Romans* give them Tribute, and delivered Hostages for Performance. From thence the Brothers go for *Germany*, and in their Absence, the *Romans* revolt: This caused their speedy Return, and meeting with Opposition, they hang up twenty-four noble *Romans*, the Hostages, and after a bloody and doubtful Battle, they take the City, giving it to the Soldiers to plunder. *Brennus* was put in Possession of the City, which he governed in a tyrannical Manner. *Belinus* returned to *Britain*, built many Cities, repaired and beautified others, particularly *Trinovant*, where he erected a Gate, a Haven, and a Tower on the *Thames*,
from

from whose Name it is now call'd *Belin's-Gate*; re-
newed the Laws, ruled in greater Peace, Wealth and
Honour, than any of his Predecessors, and died univer-
sally lamented.

Gurguntius. *Gurguntius Barbirus*, Son of *Belinus*, succeeded him;
and tho' he was possess'd with his Father's Courage, was a
mild, modest, prudent and just King. He subdued his
rebellious Subjects, sail'd to *Denmark* to require his Tri-
bute, which being denied, he kill'd their King, and sub-
dued that Kingdom. In his Return, about the *Orcades*,
he met thirty Ships full of Men and Women, which
were driven out of *Spain* to seek a new Habitation, who
requested him that they might be settled in some part of his
Dominions; he had Compassion for them, granted their
Requests, and sent some of his own Men with them to
Ireland, then uninhabited, and gave them that Island to
hold of him as in Homage. He dy'd and was buried in
Caerlegion, a City that he had wall'd about.

Guinthelinus. *Guinthelinus* his Son succeeded him; he is recorded
for a just and good Prince; his Wife's Name was *Martia*,
much commended for her Wisdom and Learning in all
Arts. She framed the Laws which the *Britains* call'd
the *Martian Laws*. From her the Province of *Mercia*
was named. Upon the Death of *Guinthelinus*, his Wife
Martia. *Martia* took upon her the Government, till her Son
Sisillius was of Age; during which Time she performed
many worthy Acts.

Sisillius. *Sisillius* her Son coming to Age, undertook the Ad-
ministration of publick Affairs, and was succeeded in the
Throne by *Kimarus* his Son; and *Elaunus* his Brother
succeeded him in the Throne. Then *Morindus* his Son,
by *Tanguestella* a Concubine, succeeded: He was a Man
of excessive Strength, valiant, and fair of Aspect, but in-
humanly cruel; who in his Anger, if he had any Wea-
pon in his Hand, spar'd neither Friend nor Foe. In his
Time, a huge Monster from the *Irish Sea* infested the
Coasts: *Morindus* attempted to destroy it, but was catch'd
up in its horrible Mouth and devoured.

Gorbomanius. *Morindus* at his Death left five Sons behind him, the
eldest of whom named *Gorbomanius* succeeded him. He
was the most just Man of his Age, and the very Bulwark
of Justice, delighting thro' the whole Course of his Life,
to perform due Honour to God, and all Right and Justice
to the People. In his Reign the Nation abounded in
Wealth and Plenty; Men of Desert were rewarded
with

with Honour and Preferment ; the People were encouraged and assisted in their Labours and Trades, and constantly protected against the Insults and Oppressions of their Superiors ; Violence and Wrong were seldom heard of ; so that the Nation flourished above any of her Neighbours. His Death was a general Loss : He was buried in *Trinovant*, and was succeeded in the Throne by his second Brother *Archigallo*, who, in all his Actions, was *Archigallo*. the very reverse of his Brother ; for it was his Sport to depress the Nobles, into whose Places he put worthless Men, and rob'd the wealthy to fill his own Coffers ; which Proceedings at last resolving to bear no longer, they made an Insurrection, and depos'd him. *Elidurns* *Elidurns* his Brother was chosen King in his stead, who not satisfied with the deposing of his Brother, made it his Study to get him restored ; and being out a hunting met him accidentally, embraced him, and brought him home to his Palace where he hid him ; and having sent for all the Nobles, he solicited them one by one to consent to his Brother's Restoration, which partly by Threats, partly by Promises, he obtained. Upon this they went together to *Tork*, where *Elidurns* took off the Diadem from his own, and put it on his Brother's Head ; by which he abdicated himself from the regal Authority, to lead a retired Life. *Elidurns* gained the Name of *Pius* for his Carriage towards all Men, particularly to his Brother *Archigallo*, who being reformed as well as restored, ruled for the future justly. *Elidurns* after his Brother's Death, was again advanced to the Throne, and acted every thing worthy himself ; yet notwithstanding that, and the Kindness he had shewn his elder Brother, *Vigenius* and *Peridure* his two younger Brothers rebell'd against him, overcame him, took him Prisoner, and confined him in the Tower of *Trinovant*, and then divided his Kingdom ; the North to *Peridure*, the South to *Vigenius*, who did not long survive ; by which means *Peridure* became Master of all, but in a few Years died : And *Elidurns* after many Years Imprisonment, is a third time seated in the Throne ; which at last he enjoyed long in Peace, and having lived a Life of Goodness, Justice and Mercy, died, leaving a good Example to his Successors. *Elidurns* a third time advanced.

After his Death, *Regin*, a Son of *Gorbonianus*, obtained the Crown, who followed the Example of his Uncle, in administering Justice and Mercy to the People, and never deviating from the Ways of Righteousness. *Regin*.
Morganus

Morganus. *Morganus* the Son of *Archigallo* succeeded the King, and ruled the People in Peace, doing Justice after the Example of his Parents. *Emertanus* his Son succeeded him, who took quite different Counsel setting aside all manner of Justice, he exercised tyranny, which soon set the People against him, who hated and his evil Administration, which grew to height, that when he had reigned six Years, he was deposed; in whose room they placed *Idavalle* his Son. He was a just King, and was succeeded by the *Peridurus*; after him *Germanus*, the Son of *Idavalle*; after him his Son *Casellus*; after him *Costus*; after him *Cherinus*, who had three Sons, viz. *Fulgenius*, *Androgens*, who succeeded one another in the Throne. Then the Son of *Androgens*; to him *Eliad*; to him *Adacus*; to him *Clorenus*; to him *Gurgineus*; to him *Arrianus*; to him *Bledius*; then *Captien Uenus*; to him *Uellius*; twenty Kings in a continued Race, that did nothing worthy of Note, or lived in an Age that nothing of the Deeds of these Kings. But to us this Chasm, *Blegabridus* succeeded, who very much excelled the former Ages in Songs and Musick, so seemed to be the God of Sports; and we should have been much obliged to him, had he been so kind as to leave us an account of his twenty Predecessors, though in a Song: But as we have nothing of twenty before him but their Names, so have we nothing of Names of nine Kings immediately after him, viz. *Chemailus* his Brother; then *Eddon*; then *Redion*; then *Rodricius*; then *Sasael*; then *Peninfel*; then *Pir Capoirus*; then *Gliguehtius*, his Son, a just and good King.

His Son *Hely* who succeeded him, and reigned six Years, had three Sons, viz. *Lud*, *Casibetaw*, and *N*. *Lud* the eldest succeeded his Father, and was a glorious Builder of Cities; he repaired *Trinovan* encompassed it with a Wall, on which he erected a great Number of Towers; he built *Ludgate*, he made this City the Metropolitan, in it kept his Court called it *Caer-Lud*, that is *Luds-Town*, now *Lond* was a warlike Man, and very profuse in Feasting; at last he dy'd and was buried near the Gate he had erected. He left two Sons, *Androgens* and *Tenautius*, who by reason of their tender Age, were incapable of Governing. *Casibetaw*, who was much in favour of the People

the Crown, yet was very generous to his Brothers; for to *Androgeus* he gave *London* with and to *Tenensius*, *Cornwall*, reserving to himself superiority over them and the rest of the Princes.

have we briefly ran thro' the Story of the antient, and leave it to the Choice of all Men, whether they will believe it, or look upon it as only a Legend of Fables; because the Collectors thereof have been so long to travel hitherto in the dark. But from the *Arche* the *Romans* in this Island, the Story is by so many Authors made so very plain and so well attested, that every one that reads it with Attention, will be obliged to acknowledge, that the Facts therein mentioned really happen in this Nation, in the Reigns and Times there related. And in order to make this History of universal Use, we shall give a short Account of the Inhabitants, and describe their Persons, Manners, Customs, their religious and civil Affairs, and their Disposition, when *Cæsar* invaded this Isle.

Britains were very numerous and powerful, a Description of the Britains. as and idolatrous People, and yet they had a natural Generosity and Bravery, and constantly opposed Slavery from their Sense of the Charms of Liberty. They were more Wit and Ingenuity than the *Gauls*, and more than the *Romans*. As to their Bodies, they were very tall, and of a very strong Constitution; their Complexion generally of a yellowish Colour; the Women fair and beautiful, and had excellent Features: Both Men and Women used to colour their Bodies with Woad, which rendered them of a Sky Colour. They were extremely temperate in their Diet, living only on Venison, Fruits, and Milk, but had not learnt to make Cheese. Their usual Drink was Water, and a Liquor made of Barley, and they defended themselves against the Weather and Sea with very little Cloathing. Their Buildings and Houses were as mean as their Diet or Clothes; for they gave out the Towns to certain Woods, which they had surrounded with Ditches and Rampires, in which they built their Houses to live in; others dispersed themselves where they were invited by the Fertility of the Soil, or the Convenience of Water and Wood. The chief Towns were near the Sea Coasts, for the Convenience of Commerce with Strangers, who came to buy, sell, or exchange their Goods with those of the Island. The Commodities that

that were exported, were chiefly Hides and Tin, and a few other Things, as Ivory Boxes, Sheers, Bits and Nails, &c. and as their Traffick was mean and inconsiderable, so was their Coin and Shipping. The former was only Brass and Iron Rings, which made to a certain Weight, served for their current Coin; the latter were small Vessels built of light Wood, covered over with Skins. The ancient *Britains* differed in one particular from all Nations; that is, they had a Community of Wives by Consent, especially Brothers with Brothers, Fathers with Sons; ten or twelve Men would have Wives together in common; and the Child was accounted his first married its Mother, tho' brought up in common. This odd Custom was much taken notice of at *Rome*; the Empress *Julia* upbraided a *British* Lady with it, the Custom infamous in the Women, as well as in the Men to whom the Lady, having discovered some Intrigues among the *Romans*, reply'd, We do that openly with the best of our Men, which you do privately with the worst of yours.

Their Religion.

The Religion of the *Britains* was full of Superstition and in their Sacrifices they offered Men's Flesh. They worship'd *Dis*, *Jupiter*, *Apollo*, *Diana*, and the like, but in a particular Manner, *Andas* for their Goddess of Victory. In all religious Matters, they had their Priests and Instruſters, the chief of which were called *Druids* who had the Management of all Sacrifices, were Interpreters of all Mysteries, had the Education of the better Sort, and were the Judges throughout the Nation; so they approv'd of all Laws, determin'd all Controversies and appointed Rewards and Punishments, at Discretion. If any refused to obey their Decrees, they were immediately excommunicated; upon which all Persons avoided their Conversation; they were excluded the Benefit of the Law, and were rendred incapable of all Honours and Dignities: When on the other hand, these sanctified *Druids* were exempt from all military Duties, Taxes and Imposts; and they cunningly forbid their Doctrines from being committed to writing, that the Vulgar should not be acquainted with their mysterious Learning. They taught the Immortality and Transmigration of the Soul to excite their Courage; likewise the Motion of the Stars, the Magnitude of the heavenly Bodies, and of the Earth, the Nature of Things, and the Power of the immortal Gods. Another sort of religious *Britains* were called

called *Bards*, whose Office was to sing to the Harp the Songs they had composed on the Exploits of famous Men.

The *Britains* were wont to fight very much in Chari-Manner of os, which with short Scythes fastened to the ends of the Fighting. Arle-Trees, gave cruel Wounds, great Terror, and made fierce Charges upon the Ranks of their Enemies. Sometimes they would leave their Chariots and fight on Foot, and if press'd, would with incredible Speed remount. Thus they maintained in Battle the Steadiness of the Foot, and the Speed of the Horse, and in an Engagement were firm and immoveable. Their common Arms were small Shields, and very large Swords, but they had no Hel-mets; which shewed a more eager Desire of wounding their Enemies, than defending themselves. Their Dag-gers and Spears were short. They could endure Hunger, Cold, and all sorts of Labour, with admirable Patience; for they would continue in the Bogs many Days without Food, and in the Woods they would live long upon the Bark of Trees and Roots.

The *Britains* were divided into many small Nations, under as many petty Princes; but whether these small Principalities descended by Succession, or were elective by the Advantages of Age, Wisdom, or Valour, in the Families of the Prince, is not recorded: But upon great and imminent Dangers, the chief Commander of all their Forces, was usually chosen by common Consent in general Assemblies, as *Casibelanus* was against *Cesar's* Invasion. The same was done upon the *Britains* revolt against the *Romans*, under *Caractacus* and *Boadicea*; for among them, Women were admitted to their Principalities and general Commands, either by the Right of Succession, Nobility of Birth, or eminent Qualifications. In common Cases, every Province or Principality only paid Allegiance to their own particular Prince; and as their Governments were confined to certain Bounds and Limits, so were the Inhabitants divided and distinguished by several Denominations; of which we find the Names of seventeen in that part of *Britain* called *England* and *Wales*: Which are as follow.

1. The *Canti*

2. The *Regni*

3. The *Durotrigon*

Inhabitants of

The present County of Kent.

Sussex and Surry.

Dorsetshire.

4. The

9. The *Trimbaces*
10. The *Iscari*
11. The *Corisani*
12. The *Cornavii*
13. The *Brigantes*
14. The *Ottadini*
15. The *Silures*

Inhabitants of

[illegible]

The *Britains* thus divided and separately governed, being a fierce and warlike People, had frequent Encounters amongst themselves, the petty Princes perpetually quarrelling with each other, whose Resentments for the most part, could not be laid, but with the Blood of each others Subjects. This Dis-union among them contributed very much to the *Romans* Advantage over them; for had they together concerted the common Interest, *Cæsar* had found it more difficult to have got Footing here. This was the State of *Britain*, and these their Divisions, at the Time when the *Romans* first invaded it.



S E C T. II.

From the Invasion of Britain by the Romans under Julius Cæsar, to their quitting their Jurisdiction of the Isle.

JULIUS CÆSAR, having conquered the powerful *Gauls*, resolved to attempt the Reduction of this Isle; that by Conquest he might join those Countries which had been separated by Nature. Accordingly, his Ambition being fired with the Prospect of new Additions to the *Roman* Empire, and new Glories to himself, in the 54th Year before Christ he resolv'd on an Expedition into this Isle. But being unacquainted with the Places, Ports and Havens of *Britain*, he prepared a Galley, in which he sent *C. Volusenus*, a Tribune of his Army, to make what Discoveries on the Coast he could; who after five Days Search returns to *Gaul*, and acquaints *Cæsar* with what he had observed during his short Cruise. The *Britains*, having received Advice from the Merchants, of *Cæsar's* Designs, sent Ambassadors into *Gaul*, offered Hostages, and promised Obedience to the *Romans*. *Cæsar* exhorts them to continue in that Resolution, dismisses them with all Marks of Civility, and sends with them *Comius Atrebatensis* to ingage them to

Year before
Christ 53.

Cæsar's first
Expedition
into *Britain*.

continue faithful to the *Romans*, and to acquaint them that himself designed them a Visit in Person: But treacherous *Britains* imprisoned *Comus* as soon as he landed.

*Cæsar lands
at Deal.*

In the mean time *Cæsar* having drawn together his Transports, on which he embark'd two Legions of Soldiers, amounting to about 25000, and eighteen Vessels more for his Cavalry, which were in Number about 400, sail'd about three in the Morning, from the Coast of *Morini*, now *Picardy*, with a prosperous Gale; about the next Day he arriv'd on the *British* Coast near *Deal*, but judg'd it not proper to land there, because the Bay was narrow and surrounded with Hills, and those Hills covered with Soldiers to prevent his Designs. He proceeded about eight Miles to the Northward, and came to an Anchor near *Deal*, where he waits the Arrival of his whole Fleet. The *Britains* perceiving his Design, immediately dispatch'd their Horse and Chariots to prevent his landing, the Foot following with the utmost Expedition. The *Romans* here labour'd under great Difficulties; the Water being shallow, their larger Ships could not get near the Shoar, so that the Soldiers were oblig'd to jump from their Ships into the Water, under heavy Labour, and contend at once both with the Waves and the Enemy. The *Britains* on the other hand knew the Ground and were not incumber'd; so that the *Romans* were much dishearten'd, and could not exert their usual Courage and Bravery. To retrieve which, *Cæsar* commands the Gallies and Boats to be man'd, and to row up to the *Britains* and employ their Slings, Darts and Arrows against them; which Vessels, Slings and Engines so frightened the *Britains*, that they soon gave Ground. But the *Romans* not pursuing their Advantage as they ought, a Standard-Bearer of the tenth Legion first invoking the Gods, that this Action might prove successful and glorious, cried out, Leap down, my brave Soldiers, and you would betray the *Roman* Eagle to the Enemy; I am resolv'd to perform my Duty to the Publick and to the General: Upon these Words he threw himself into the Sea, boldly advances towards the Enemy, and was as courageously followed by the rest of the Soldiers to the Shore. They fought with Valour and Fury on both Sides. Victory for some time inclin'd to neither Side. The *Britains* who well knew their own Advantages, expertly used them, now in the Shallows, now on the Sand

~~They~~ that I put the *Britains* to flight; The *Britains* are beaten.
~~did~~ not pursue their Advantage for want of their
; which were not yet arrived. In this confused
his related that one *Scæva* a *Roman* Soldier, with
others, advanced so far, till being deserted by his
anions, he was surrounded by his Enemies, when he
t with incredible Courage, till at length being wearied
ounded, he swam back, beg'd Pardon for his Rash-
was excused, and advanced to a Centurion. The
us being thus defeated, they sent Ambassadors, and
as their Prisoner, to *Cæsar*, to beg Peace, charging
isbehaviour on the Multitude and their own Impru-
d. *Cæsar* willing to shew Mercy as well as Courage, A Peace con-
n'd them, received some Hostages, had more pro-cluded.
and so concluded a Peace with the *Britains* on the
Day after his landing in the Isle.

on after this Peace was established, the *Roman* Af-
began to decline; for their eighteen Ships which
orted the Horse, no sooner came in Sight of *Bri-*
ear *Cæsar*'s Camp, but they were by a sudden Storm
s'd, driven back, and most lost; and what added to
disfortune, the same Night, it being full Moon, the
s that were drawn on Shore were filled with the
Tide, and the Ships of Burthen so shattered, that
were unfit for Service. This Loss was so consi-
le, that *Suetonius* accounts it the first of the three
rtunes that befel *Cæsar* in all his Undertakings.
Romans being thus in want of Horse, Ships and Pro-

more for his Cavalry, sail'd about three in the Morning, from *Morini*, now *Picardy*, with a prosperous Gale the next Day he arrived on the *British* Coast but judg'd it not proper to land there, because it was narrow and surrounded with Hills, and covered with Soldiers to prevent his Design. He proceeded about eight Miles to the Northward to an Anchor near *Deal*, where he waits the whole Fleet. The *Britains* perceiving his landing, immediately dispatch'd their Horse and Chariots, the Foot following with the utility. The *Romans* here laboured under great difficulties; the Water being shallow, their larger Ships could not get near the Shoar, so that the Soldiers were obliged to jump from their Ships into the Water, and to fight on foot, and contend at once both with the Enemy. The *Britains* on the other hand knew the Sea, and were not incumber'd; so that the *Romans* were dishearten'd, and could not exert their usual Valour and Bravery. To retrieve which, *Cæsar* ordered the Gallies and Boats to be man'd, and to attack the *Britains* and employ their Slings, Darts and other Engines against them; which Vessels, Slings and Engines did great Execution on the *Britains*, that they soon gave Ground. The *Romans* not pursuing their Advantage as they ought, the Standard-Bearer of the tenth Legion first cried out, Leap down, my brave Soldiers, and fight on foot.

sands, as the *Romans* advanced to their Eagle, received them, dispatched them, and with the Assistance of their Horse miserably galled them, and put them every where into great Disorder; which *Cæsar* perceiving, he immediately sent his Boats with Relief wherever it was needful, till at last having landed all his Foot, and marched them on dry Ground, in good Order, they attacked with so much Fury that they soon put the *Britains* to flight; The Britains are beaten. but could not pursue their Advantage for want of their Horse, which were not yet arrived. In this confused Fight, 'tis related that one *Scæva* a *Roman* Soldier, with four others, advanced so far, till being deserted by his Companions, he was surrounded by his Enemies, when he fought with incredible Courage, till at length being wearied and wounded, he swam back, beg'd Pardon for his Rashness, was excused, and advanced to a Centurion. The *Britains* being thus defeated, they sent Ambassadors, and *Cæsar* their Prisoner, to *Cæsar*, to beg Peace, charging all Misbehaviour on the Multitude and their own Imprudence. *Cæsar* willing to shew Mercy as well as Courage, A Peace concluded. pardon'd them, received some Hostages, had more promised, and so concluded a Peace with the *Britains* on the fourth Day after his landing in the Isle.

Soon after this Peace was established, the *Roman* Affairs began to decline; for their eighteen Ships which transported the Horse, no sooner came in Sight of *Britain* near *Cæsar*'s Camp, but they were by a sudden Storm dispers'd, driven back, and most lost; and what added to this Misfortune, the same Night, it being full Moon, the Gallies that were drawn on Shore were filled with the high Tide, and the Ships of Burthen so shattered, that they were unfit for Service. This Loss was so considerable, that *Sætonius* accounts it the first of the three Misfortunes that beset *Cæsar* in all his Undertakings. The *Romans* being thus in want of Horse, Ships and Provisions, the *Britains* immediately resolved on a Revolt, The Britains revolt. and in a general Assembly declared all such as impious who refused to join with the Heavens to regain their Liberty. But *Cæsar* suspecting their Designs, by their slow Performance of Covenants, provided against the worst by laying in Corn and all other Provisions, and repairing his Fleet. Whilst Affairs stood in this Posture, the seventh Legion being sent out to forage, expecting no Resistance, were set upon by the *Britains*, and surrounded by their Horse and Chariots.

ots. The *Romans* were by their Numbers and manner of Fighting soon brought to the greatest Difficulties, and even to Despair; till *Cæsar* came to their Assistance, when they resumed their Courage, the *Britains* were astonished, and desisted from any farther Engagement at this Time. But being resolved to free themselves for ever from foreign Power, they assembled in greater Numbers from all Parts, boldly march'd up to the *Roman* Camp, and

The *Britains* defeated.

attack'd them; but were soon put to flight by the *Romans* who pursued their Advantage with a dreadful Slaughter, and burnt their Country for many Miles together.

The *Britains* being thus vanquish'd, send an Embassy to *Cæsar*, begging Peace, and promising Subjection: *Cæsar* severely reprov'g their Treachery and Behaviour, considering the Necessity of his own Affairs, granted the Request, imposing double Hostages on them. The Season being now far advanced he set Sail from *Britain*, and safely arriv'd with his whole Fleet on the Continent of *Gaul*. *Cæsar* having given the Senate an Account of this uncommon Expedition, they honoured him with a Procession of twenty Days.

A Peace concluded and *Cæsar* returns.

A. ante C.
52.

The Winter following, *Cæsar* returned to *Italy*, whence he came back into *Gaul*, and finding that the *Britains* had not sent the Hostages they had promised, he resolv'd on a second Descent on this Isle. Accordingly with incredible Industry, having from all Parts got together 800 Vessels, most of them new built, low and broad, both for the Conveniency of landing and transporting Men, Horse and Provisions, on which he embark'd five Legions, and two thousand Horse; at Midnight he set Sail from *Portus Itius*, at or near *Boloign* in *France*. The next Day he arriv'd on the *British* Shore, at the same Place where he landed the Year before. The *Britains* being

Cæsar invades *Britain* again.

terrified with these mighty Preparations, and the Approach of so powerful a Navy, left the Coast, and retired into the Country: So that the *Romans* had an Opportunity to land their Forces, without the least Danger or Hazard. *Cæsar*, leaving ten Cohorts and three hundred Horse under the Command of *Q. Atrius* to guard the Ships, march'd in the Night Time twelve Miles up into the Country, discovered the *Britains* on the River *Stoner* in *Kent*, and giving them Battle they were soon repuls'd by the *Roman* Cavalry. The *Britains* fled to the Woods, which were strongly fortified as well by Art as by Nature. The *Romans* vigorously pursuing their Advantage, followed the

The *Britains* defeated.

British

to these very Woods. Some of the Soldiers
 their Shields together like a Roof, whilst others un-
 Cover raised a Mount; they attack'd, storm'd, and
 took these Fortresses, and drove the *Britains* thence;
 having his Camp to fortify that Night, and being
 contented with the Country, left off the Pursuit. The
 day he divided his Army into three Bodies, in order
 to his Advantage, but was prevented by the me-
 morable News of the Disaster of his whole Fleet, which
 lost their Anchors and Cables, were driven a Shore,
 the most part stranded; upon this he and his Ar-
 my retired to the Sea Coast, where he found forty Ves-
 sels lost, the rest in a miserable Condition. He
 wrote to *Gaul* to his Lieutenant for a speedy Supply, and
 to refit part of his Fleet with the Ruins of the
 order to which he undertakes a stupendous piece
 of Work, drawing all his Ships into his Camp; which was
 effected in ten Days time, by the indefatigable Toil of
 his Soldiers, who laboured both Night and Day. Then
 he turned to the Woods, where he had defeated the
Britains, but found there to his Surprise, greater Numbers
 of *Britains*, who with one common Consent, had cho-
 sen *Casibelanus* their General. *Casibelanus* with his Horse
 and Chariots, briskly encounter'd the *Romans* in their
 Camp, which occasioned much Bloodshed on both Sides;
 for some Cessation, as the *Romans* were fortifying
 the Camp, the *Britains* attack'd the advanced Guards,
 thro' two of *Cæsar's* best Cohorts, which he had
 to support them, and retreated without the Loss of a
 Soldier. *Cæsar* himself confesses their Advantage over the
Britains, and very much admires their Courage and Con-
 stancy. The Success of the next Day differed much from
 the former; for as they attack'd three Legions that were
 encamping, they were repulsed, beaten and pursued
 with great Slaughter; upon this the Auxiliaries drew off
 retired to their own Countries, so that the *Brit-
 ish* after encounter'd the *Romans* with their full

The *Roman*
Fleet almost
destroyed.

The *Britains*
get the Ad-
vantage over
the *Romans*.

The *Romans*
prevail.

Casibelanus being thus deserted, withdrew into his own
 Country, with only four thousand Chariots, and to
 the *Romans* farther Progress, he fortifies the Ri-
 vers that was fordable, with sharp Stakes, near
 the Stakes in *Middlesex*. Notwithstanding this, the
Romans pursued him, pass'd the River up to the Chin,
 the *Britains*, and marched farther up into the
 Country.

Casibelanus
beaten.

their own Discontents, before the commo
their native Country. From their scandal
many small States followed, submitted to
treacherously discovered to him the Power
Casibelanus's Abode, which was at *Verulam*
Alban's, a Place then well fortified with
Morasses. *Cæsar* besieged the City, storm
Places at once, and soon took it with the
many of the poor Inhabitants, and got a gr
Cattle. Upon this Loss *Casibelanus* as his
procured four petty Kings of *Kent*, viz. *Cing*
vilus, *Taximagulus*, and *Segonax* to assemb
ces, and attack the *Roman* Camp that guarded
A glorious Enterprize! had the Success been
to the Design; but the *Britains* were repulsi
getorix taken Prisoner. *Casibelanus* seeing
thus wasted, his Designs blasted, and himsel
by the traiterous Revolt of many Cities and
Comix of *Arras* to mediate a Peace, which
count of his Valour and the advanced Seaso
dily granted: But that the Conditions might
kept, *Cæsar* demanded a sufficient Number o
- that they should pay annually to the *Rom.in*
land Pounds, and that *Mandubrace* should be
his *Irinobantes*. These unhappy Divisions
tains made way for future Conquests. T
being thus adjusted, *Cæsar* embark'd with h
my, sails from *Britain*, soon arrives in *Gau*
the Roman Britain, the Roman Britain

ons into this Isle; and he departed, leaving the
in Possession of their own Kings and their own

Julius Caesar's Departure, for above a hundred
e have very little Account of the Affairs of
only that tho' the Inhabitants became more
o the *Romans*, yet they continued in a great Mea-
from their Power. For *Augustus, Julius Caesar's* *Augustus.*

r, neglected this Island, as a Country whose A-
mity was of no Moment to the *Romans*. Yet
enty Years after, *Augustus* advanced as far as
order to reduce *Britain* to his Obedience, but
ted by a Revolt in *Pannonia*. Seven Years af-
he entred *Gaul* with the same Resolution, but
ped in his Progress, by the Disorders of that Pro-
id the Arrival of *British* Ambassadors to beg a
The next Year he reassumed the same Design,
prevented by Commotions in other Parts. *Ti-Tiberius.*

Successor, not being ambitious of extending the
mpire, took no Notice of the *Britains*, and they
ing to provoke him, sent back the Soldiers of
tus, who were cast away on the *British* Shores.
uccessor *Caligula*, that wild and dissolute Tyrant, *Caligula.*
ass'd the *Alps* to pillage the Empire, and being
y *Adminius* the Son of *Cynobelinus* a *British*
ho being banished by his Father, fled to him with
Party; he made a Shew of invading *Britain*, but
me to the Sea-side, shewing the Marks of Ex-
cy and Folly, he returned as he came; Yet not-
ding he sent to the Senate such boasting Letters,
ad entirely conquered the whole Island.

for about ninety five Years, under the Reigns of *A. D. 43.*
perors, the *Britains* continued free from the Ro-
ke: But *Claudius* being solicited by *Vericus*, a *Claudius.*
nted *Britain*, (who had rather his Country should
ed by a foreign Power, than quit his private Re-
ts) to make a Descent upon this Isle; accord-
the second Year of his Reign, he ordered *A. Plau-*
tempt the same; but his Soldiers refus'd to march,
g, that they would not make War out of the
sof the World; for so they judged *Britain* to lye.
cissus the Emperor's Favourite, at length prevailed
em, so that they embark'd and sail'd from three
: Ports, but by contrary Winds were driven back
arned, till in the Night, a strange Meteor shoot-

ing Flames from the East, directing their Course, as they thought, they renewed their Courage, put to Sea again, and landed in *Britain* without any Opposition, the Inhabitants being retired to the Woods and Morasses. *Plantius* marches in Quest of them, at length discovers them, engages first with *Caractacus*, then with *Togadumnus*, overthrew them, and reduced part of the *Dobuni* to his Power. Leaving a Garison, he marched towards a River, where the *Britains* thought themselves secure, imagining that the *Romans* could not pass it without a Bridge; but the *Germans* swam over in their Arms, and according as they were commanded, struck directly at the Horse, by which means the Chariots were soon rendered useless. To support them he sent the famous *Vespasian*, with his Brother *Sabinus*, who did great Service and Execution: But the *Britains* the next Day engaged them so resolutely, that Victory for a long time inclined to neither Side; till *Sidius Geta*, after he had been near taken Prisoner, gave them such an Overthrow, that, tho' he never had been Consul, he had the Honour of a Triumph granted him at *Rome*.

Plantius invades *Britain*.

And Defeats the *Britains*.

His Successes.

These Misfortunes obliged the *Britains* to retire to the Mouth of the *Thames*, and being acquainted with those Places, they crossed over; the *Romans* followed; the *Germans* by swimming, the rest by a Bridge soon got over, attacked the *Britains*, and kill'd great Numbers; but falling amongst the Bogs and Meres, they lost many of their Men.

The Emperor *Claudius* enters *Britain*.

Plantius now began to consult his own Safety, and finding the *Britains* resolved to revenge the Death of *Togadumnus*, he sends to the Emperor for Supplies. *Claudius* ambitious of the Occasion, assembles the Army, and the Flower of his Nobility, marches thro' *Gaul* with armed Elephants, embarks, crosses the Seas, lands in *Britain*, and joins *Plantius*. The courageous *Britains* ventured to meet the whole Power of the *Romans* in the open Field, but were soon vanquished, and lost *Camalodunum*, now *Maldon* in *Essex*, the Royal Seat of *Cynobelinus*.

Upon this, *Claudius*, contrary to the *Roman* Custom, was several times saluted *Imperator*; *Camalodunum* was made a military Colony; and part of this Island was reduced to the Form of a Province. His Stay in *Britain* was not above sixteen Days: He remitted to the *British* Nobility the Confiscation of their Estates; for which Favour they frequented his Temple and adored him as a God. Having disarm'd

the *Britains*, and committed the Government of
d likewise the War with the others not subdued,
us, he hastned to *Rome* in the sixth Month, send-
e his Son-in-Law *Pompey* and *Silanus*, with the
his Victories. At *Rome* it was accounted so
Action to subdue part of *Britain*, that anniver-
mes, and triumphal Arches were ordered at
id *Gessoriacum* in *Gaul*; and a Triumph was de- He tri-
the Senate in Honour of *Claudius*. On this Ac- umphs.
Claudius ordered that his Son *Germanicus* should
be called *Britannicus*, which Name he had ob-
himself not long before. *Plantius* in the mean
ried on the War in *Britain* with such Success,
claudius decreed him an Ovation, and when he en-
re, he himself met him, and honoured him with
it Hand. *Vespasian* now began to appear in the
who under *Claudius* and *Plantius*, had fought
attles with the *Britains*, had subdued two mighty
, and above twenty Towns, and the Isle of
r *Wight*; for which Exploits he obtained tri-
Ornaments, and two sacerdotal Dignities, with the
ip. Under him serv'd his Son *Titus*, in quality
one, whose extraordinary Valour and Modesty
im great Reputation.

r Years after, *Plantius* was succeeded by *P. Osto-* A. D. 50.
Britain, who found Affairs in great Disorder, by *Ostorius* sent
ads of the *Britains*; because they did not ima- into *Britain*.
at a new General would take the Field in the
to oppose them. But *Ostorius* by his Actions con-
hem of the contrary; for he vigorously attack'd
at were in Arms, beat them, and disarm'd all
e had reason to suspect. And to prevent farther
ns, he placed several Garisons on the Rivers
ind *Avon*, by which all the Southern Parts of the
e reduced into the Form of a Province. About
e, *London* was founded by the *Romans*, and made *London* built.
g Colony: And to ingage *Cogiaunus*, a *British*
the *Roman* Interest, several Cities were given him;
nt Policy, by which they used to make Kings their
lents to enslave others.

Iceni, the Inhabitants of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cam-*
and *Huntingdon*, a powerful People, not yet weak-
War, highly resented these Proceedings: They
all Submission, gain'd many others to their Party,
n engag'd the *Romans*; and despairing of Pardon,
they

The *Irish*
defeated.

they fought desperately, but at last were overthrown: By this means many others submitted. *Ostorius* march'd against the *Cangi*, a People about the *Irish* Sea, he laid all their Country waste, but was recall'd by the Insurrection of the *Brigantes*, a People in the North of *England*, who refused to submit till they had lost their Commander, and then the Commotion was soon extinguished. But the *Silures*, the Inhabitants of *South-Wales*, continued the Wars against the *Romans*, having for their Commander the brave *Caractacus*, who had gain'd such a Reputation, by his glorious Exploits, that he was justly prefer'd to all the *British* Generals. This glorious Commander by his Policy and Conduct, soon removed the Seat of the War into the Territories of the *Ordovices*, the Inhabitants of *North-Wales*, as more convenient for his Designs, having craggy Rocks and high Mountains. Here, at the near approach of the *Romans*, *Caractacus*, in a Speech to his Soldiers, declared, That that Battle would either establish their glorious Liberty, or confirm their perpetual Slavery; and that they ought to remember the Honour of their Ancestors, who had driven *Julius Caesar* from the Isle; by whose Valour they were happily delivered from Taxes and Tributes, and to whom they owed the Enjoyment of their unviolated Wives and Children. The Soldiers fired by this Speech, bound themselves by the most religious Vows, crying out, that neither Wounds nor Weapons should make them yield; they engag'd, and after an obstinate Fight, the *Britains* were entirely routed, and the Wife and Daughter of *Caractacus* were taken Prisoners, his Brothers surrendering themselves shortly after. *Caractacus* fled for shelter to *Cartismundua*, Queen of the *Brigantes*, who treacherously bound him, and delivered him to the Conqueror, after nine Years brave Resistance, in which he had gained great Fame, even amongst his Enemies, the *Romans* themselves.

Caractacus is
delivered and
taken.

He is brought
to *Rome*.

When *Caractacus* was brought to *Rome*, the People were summoned as to some publick Game; and the Emperor being seated on his Tribunal, his Guards were drawn up: The Captive Prince's Vassals and Slaves were ordered to come first; then the Caparisons and other Spoils of War; then his Brothers, his Wife and Daughter; and last of all himself was brought in a peculiar Dress. He neither craving Mercy, nor casting down his Eyes, as others did, with a noble Bravery, spoke after this manner before the Tribunal. 'If my Moderation in Prosperity, had

‘ had been answerable to my Nobility and Fortune, I had
 ‘ come into this City rather as a Friend than a Captive ; nor
 ‘ would you have disdained to have received me with Arti-
 ‘ cles of Alliance, being a Prince descended from illust-
 ‘ rious Progenitors, and a Sovereign of many Nations.
 ‘ My present Fortune is to me low and dishonourable,
 ‘ but to you glorious and triumphant. I once had Horses,
 ‘ Men, Arms and Riches at my Command ; what Won-
 ‘ der is it that I should struggle hard before I lost them ?
 ‘ But if Fate has allowed universal Empire to your part,
 ‘ Subjection must be ours. If I had yielded without Oppo-
 ‘ sition, my Fortune would not have been remarkable, nor
 ‘ your glory memorable, and Oblivion would have follow-
 ‘ ed my Punishment : but if you spare my Life now, I shall be
 ‘ a perpetual Example of your Clemency.’ *Claudius* mov’d
 at so sad a Spectacle of Fortune, and his generous Behaviour,
 pardoned him, his Wife and Relations, and commanded And par-
done.
 them to be unbound ; whereupon they return’d Thanks to
 him, and the Empress *Agrippina*. Then the Senate de-
 clar’d, that it was not less honourable to have *Caractacus*
 a Prisoner, than when *Scipio* expos’d *Syphax*, and *Paulus*
 brought *Persesus* in Triumph.

Ostorius, tho’ in *Britain*, was decreed a Triumph : But *Ostorius de-
clines.*
 now his Fortune began to decline ; for the *Britains* fell
 on the Legionary Cohorts, left to settle Garisons among
 the *Silures*, cut off their Commander, eight Captains,
 and many Soldiers, and had put all to the Sword, had
 not speedy Relief come from the rest of the Forts. Short-
 ly after they defeated the *Roman* Foragers, and the Troops
 sent to their Assistance, till the Legionary Soldiers came
 in and restor’d the Battle, and brought the Advantage on
 their Side ; but the *Britains* by the Favour of the Night,
 escap’d with little Loss. After this, Skirmishes only fol-
 lowed, till *Ostorius* threatening to extinguish the Name and
 Nation of the *Silures*, they drew other Nations to revolt
 and intercepted the Auxiliaries. In this Posture of Af-
 fairs, *Ostorius* wasted with Fatigue and Trouble, dies. He dies.
Didius suc-
ceeds him.
A. Didius succeeds him, who finds all things in great Dis-
 order, by the Inroads of the *Silures*, and by *Valens*’s ill Suc-
 cess. But *Cartismundua*, Queen of the *Brigantes*, after
 having delivered up *Caractacus*, rejects her Husband *Vennu-
sius*, marries his Servant *Vellocatus*, and made him King ;
 which occasioned civil Contests amongst themselves,
 which gave the *Romans* new Advantage over them ; but
 the *Brigantes* abhorring her Actions, revolted and re-
 duc’d

duc'd her to very great Extremities, and she with much Difficulty escaped the Punishment she expected: For *Vespasian* thus debar'd of his just Rights, turn'd against the *Romans*, detain'd his Kingdom against their utmost Force, made it appear that he was a Soldier, first in a pitched Battel, and then against the Legion of *Cassius Nasica*; in so much that *Didius* thought it sufficient to keep what his Predecessors had gain'd, and only built some Castles within the Land.

Nero.
The Christi-
an Religion
planted.

This was the State of Affairs when the Emperor *Claudius* died, and was succeeded by *Nero* his adopted Son, who sent *Verginius* to succeed *Didius*. About this time the Christian Religion was first planted in *Britain*, but 'tis uncertain by whom it was effected, and with what Success. *P. Suetonius* is made Governor, who after two Years, proceeded to new Conquests, particularly of the Isle of *Mona*, now *Anglesey*.

A. D. 61.

While *Suetonius* in the outward Parts was thus successful, the *Britains*, being excited by many Provocations, made a famous Struggle to expel the *Romans*, and to regain their Liberties. They began to consider the Miseries of Slavery, and to confer Injuries one with another; which caused them to declare after this manner, That their Patience had no other Effect, than to cause one Injury to produce another: That every State formerly had their own Kings, but that now they were subject to a Lieutenant and a Procurator; the one preying on their Blood, the other on their Estates: That the *Germans* in the like Circumstances shook off their Yoke, who had only a River not an Ocean for their Defence. And shall not we *Britains*, who have as noble a Cause, our Country, our Relations, our Liberty to contend for, attempt to drive out the *Romans*, and emulate our glorious Ancestors, who drove out *Julius Caesar*? That now Heaven seem'd to compassionate their Distress, in confining their General to another Island; and that there was often less Danger in the Execution, than in the Contrivance of a Plot.

The Iceni and
Trinobantes
revolt, un-
der Boadicea.

Being animated by these Motives, the *Iceni* and *Trinobantes* revolt, under the Conduct of injur'd *Boadicea*. What farther at this Time animated the *Britains*, and discourag'd the *Romans*, were diverse Prodigies, viz. the Image of Victory at *Camalodunum* falling down revers'd; unusual Noises heard in the Air; strange Apparitions seen on the Sea; the Ocean in Shew bloody; and the

the Print of Mens Bodies on the Sands ; and certain Women in Ecstasy foretelling Destruction. *Suetonius* being absent, the Colony required Aid of *Decianus* the Procurator, who sent them only two hundred Men, and those ill arm'd. The *Britains* fell on the Colony, soon defeated them, and entirely destroyed them by Fire and Sword. Upon this Victory they march'd with great Fury against the ninth Legion, under the Command of *Petilius Cerealis*, and cut all the Infantry in pieces; the Horse, with their Commander, escaping with Difficulty. *Catus* the Intendant, whose Rapines had in part occasioned this Insurrection, was forced to fly into *Gaul*. The News of this Revolt rous'd *Suetonius* in the West, who with Resolution marched thro' the Enemies Country directly to *London* ; but reflecting on the Weakness of his Forces, and the Rashness of *Petilius*, he resolved to quit the Place, not regarding the Cries of the Inhabitants, who implored his Protection; preferring the Loss of one Town to save a Province: Those who would follow him were received into his Troops; those who remained were miserably destroyed by the *Britains*. *Vernulan* met with the same ill Treatment; they attacked the most opulent and defenceless Places, loading themselves with their Spoils, and hanged, burned and crucified all Orders and Degrees, without the least Compassion to any Age or Sex; cutting in Pieces both *Romans* and their Allies, to the Number of eighty thousand. They hung up naked the *Roman* Wives and Virgins, cutting off their Breasts, and sewing them to their Mouths, that they might seem to eat their own Flesh, tho' dead.

Suetonius with ten thousand well disciplin'd Men, resolved to hazard a Battel with all Expedition ; and for that end, he chose an advantageous Post, with a narrow Entrance, a thick Wood behind, and before a large Plain. Here the *Britains*, confident of Victory, came in such Swarms, and in such confused Order, as was never before seen, bringing their Wives, and placing them on Carts on the Plain to see the Battel. Things being in this Posture, Queen *Boadicea*, with her two Daughters, mounted her Chariot, riding about to inspire Courage into her numerous undisciplin'd Army, which was about two hundred and thirty thousand. She told them, that heretofore the *Britains* had fought under the Conduct of Women, but she was now in a different Capacity than that of her Ancestors, she being not to fight for a Kingdom,

then they marched out into the Plain, and dispersed them; the Multitude fled, well escape, by reason of their Carriages placed round the Plain: The Soldiers gave not so much as to the Women. This Victory, and was obtained with the Destruction of a thousand *Britains*, when the *Romans* lost four hundred, and not many more wounded, solving not to survive this fatal Defeat, poise tho' others say she died of Grief.

Suetonius kept the Field in order to finish was shortly after reinforced with two thousand Soldiers from *Germany*, eight Cohorts and a thousand Horse; who being put into quarters, destroyed with Fire and Sword all that were either Enemies or Neuters. Not on Notice of the Difference between *Suetonius* and the new Procurator *Classicianus*, the unconquered declined a Treaty, from a Report that a new Emperor was expected, who would treat such as with Clemency; who also wrote to *Rome*, that there was no end of the War, if *Suetonius* continued. To compose this Difference, *Polycletus* was sent, who represented Things favourably to the Emperor. On this account *Suetonius* kept his post some time, but was at length forced to retreat. *Antonius Turpilianus*, who without molesting gave the Name of Peace to his slothful Emperor. He was succeeded by *Tiberius Julius*.

a particular Regard to the poorer sort, lessening their tributes, and Payments of Corn, in such a manner, as to render them easy; by which Means *Agricola* brought them to a general Inclination to Peace, and so turned the *Britains* Hatred into an Esteem of their Government.

Titus.

About this Time, *Titus* succeeded his Father *Vespasian* in the Empire, and continued *Agricola* in his Government; who the next Summer drew his Army together, observed excellent Methods, and exact Discipline, which gave the Enemy no Rest, and when he had sufficiently terrified them, he withheld his Hand from Acts of Cruelty, to allure them to the Pleasures of Peace.

Agricola's second Campaign.

His Methods of proceeding did so effectually work on the *Britains*, that they voluntarily submitted, gave Hostages, and permitted Forts and Garrisons amongst them. Persons now began to have an honourable Opinion of their Governor; who the better to induce them to the Pleasures of Rest and Quietness, spent this Winter in proposing Projects. In private he exhorted the *Britains*, in publick he assisted them to build Temples, Publick Refectories, and stately Houses; and ordered that the Nobility should be carefully instructed in the Liberal Arts and Sciences; so that in a little Time, those who before despised the *Roman* Language, began to study the Graces of it. Now the *Roman* Modes and Dresses were in Request; the Gown commonly worn: And thence they gradually proceeded to all their Soft and Incentives to Luxury, as beautiful Portico's, publick Baths, and exquisite Banquets, which were but the Bribes of their Yoke and Bondage, tho' by the Ignorance they were esteemed as Civility and Politeness.

His third Year's Expedition.

The next Summer *Agricola* discovered new Parts of *Britain* yet unsubdued, and being ambitious to extend the Bounds of the *Roman* Empire, he marched Northward to the River *Tweed*, wasting all as he pass'd, and supplying the Passes, and providing them with Garrisons and Provisions; so that he had all the Success he expected.

His fourth Year's Expedition.

In the fourth Summer he successfully settled what he had overrun, and join'd the Friths of *Glotha* and *Bow* in *Dunbrittain* and *Edinburgh*, by Forts and Garrison, so that the *Romans* were Masters of all South Britain: On which Account *Titus* was a fifteenth time saluted Emperor; but he dying shortly after, was

by his Brother *Domitian*, who continued *Agricola* *Domitian*.
Country, and still with Success; who in the fifth *Agricola's*
took Shipping, and sail'd to the Northern Isles, *fifth Year's*
trades, Nations unknown to the *Romans*, which he *Expedition*.
ed after many prosperous Encounters; and then he
Garisons on the Coasts towards *Ireland*, having
Thoughts of attempting that Island. The next Sum-
he marched beyond *Bodotria*, and at the same Time
out a Fleet. Thus *Agricola* was the first that se-
his Land Forces by a Navy, which amaz'd and
d the *Caledonians*, because once their Seas were
ter'd all Hopes of Retreat. But once their Seas were
ld vanish: Neverthe-
the *Caledonians* armed, to discourage the
by being Aggressors; but such an effect
of the *Romans*, that *Agricola* not
speed, but retreat with Honour, and with
Shame. But he had so little to do
ed, he marches on, and to the *Cornubii*, to the
Enemy, he marches in the *Cornubii*, which
the *Caledonians* perceived, they joined their Force,
attack'd the ninth Legion in the Night, and broke
their Camp with great Slaughter. But *Agricola* be-
formed of this, followed them, and fell on the Rear
his light Horse and Foot; the rest at the same time
a great Shout. The Day coming on, the *Britains*
were dazzled with the glittering of the *Roman* En-
and 'tis likely the War had been at an end by a
Victory, had not the *Britains* drawn off to the
Moor and Bogs. About this Time a *German* Cohort
led, slew their Centurion and other Officers, and to
Punishment, put to Sea in three light Gallies, with-
by Pilot, and were carried by the Tide and Weather covered so
the Coasts; and by this means discovered to the *Romans* that *Britain* was an Island.

Withstanding this, the *Britains* were not dejected, *A. D. 84*
so late they found, that a common Danger could
repel'd, but by Confederacy and Union. They made
their Commander in chief, who assembled all their
in Number about thirty thousand, besides a great
of Youth and vigorous old Men, who had been
Soldiers, and still retained the Scars of their
War: They pitch'd their Camp on the Hill *Grampius*,
Grampius in Scotland. On the other Side, *Agri-*
cultural sent his Fleet before, followed in Person with
his Army. Upon the Approach of both Armies,

all Persons with Impatience attended the Success of a deciding Battel. 'Tis said, that *Galgacus*, with a War and elevated Courage, spoke after this manner to his Soldiers. "That the future Happiness and Freedom of the whole Island, did depend on the Fate of this important Day: That as hitherto we have been free from foreign Tyranny, and enjoyed all the Blessings of Liberty: so now let us shew ourselves Men, and serve our Nation from Ruin. Beyond us is no Nation, nothing but Waves and Rocks; on that nothing but Bondage and Slavery is to be expected from the *Romans*, a People unsatiable in their Lusts, and bounded in their Ambition; those Robbers of the World, and Ravagers of the Universe, who give false Names of Empire and Government to Devotions, Murders, and total Extirpations. There, my dear Country Men, see nothing but Tribute, Slavery; here Death or Liberty." This brave Speech was seconded by the universal Acclamations of the Army. *Agricola* on the other Hand encouraged his Men with all the Force and Charms of the Roman Eloquence, after which they join'd Battel. The *Britains* shew'd great Art and Courage, who with their broad Swords and short Bucklers, could ward off the Enemies Darts. To prevent which Inconveniency, *Agricola* ordered his *Batavian* and *Tungrian* Cohorts to advance with their sharp-pointed Bucklers, which so mangled their Enemies that they were obliged to retire with the greatest Precipitation. The *Romans* by the admirable Skill of their General, pursued their Advantage with Vigour, so that at last the poor *Britains* were entirely dispers'd, and had been all cut to pieces, had not Night and Weariness put an end to the Chase. *Agricola* having thus subdued the *Britains*, sent out his Fleet along the Coast, who discovered *Britain* to be an Island, and they subdued the *Orkneys*, which had not been heard of till then. Thus after forty two Years Struggle of a barbarous and distressed People, against the most powerful Nation in the World, most part of *Britain* was reduced into a Province of the Roman Empire. This was completed in the fourth Year of *Domitian's* Reign, about a hundred and thirty eight Years after *Julius Caesar's* Entrance, Anno Domini 84 or 85, when *Agricola* was recalled out of *Britain*.

The *Britains*
defeated.

The Island
made a Roman
Province.

In this Time for three hundred and twenty Years,
 was subject to the *Romans*, who made great Ad-
 vances of the Country, and laid heavy Tributes on the
 . But from *Agricola's* Departure, we have but
 Accounts of the Transactions of *Britain*, which
 gathered from several Parts of the *Roman* Historians.
 was succeeded by *Nerva*, in whose Reign, and *Nerva*.
 that of *Trajan* we have but little Account of *Trajan*.
 ; only that there were great Commotions in the
 But *Hadrian* being proclaimed Emperor, and re- *Hadrian*.
 Advice, that the Northern *Britains* made Incur-
 he sent *Julius Severus*, whom he soon recalled, but
 an Army came over in Person, encountered the
 us People in the North, recovered such Forts as
 and taken, and drove them into the Woods and
 rains. And for the better Establishment of future
 in the Year 121, he caused a mighty Wall to be *A. D. 121.*
 of Wood and Earth, extending from the River *Hadrian*
 in *Cumberland*, to the River *Tine* in *Northumber-* makes a
 ighty Miles in Length; after which he returned tri- Wall in *Brit-*
 ntly to *Rome*, where he gained the Title of *Resto-* tain.
 Britain, which Motto was stamped on his Coin.
 ritains now readily conformed themselves to the
 Laws, as well Civil as Military, under the Di-
 of *Priscus Licinius* then Pro-prætor.
 rian being dead, *Antoninus Pius* succeeded him, *Antoninus*
 Lieutenant, *Lollius Urbicus*, defeated the *Britains*, *Pius*.
 ilt another Wall between *Edinburgh* and *Dunbrit-*
 tbs: 'On which Account, tho' he had never seen
 , he obtained the Title of *Britannicus*. After him
 was *Philosophus* obtained the Empire, who sent in- *Antoninus*
 tain *Calpurnius Agricola* to be his Lieutenant, who *Philosophus*,
 by his Prudence, and partly by Force, settled Af-
 the North. *Beda* tells us, that, in the latter end of this
 or's Reign, King *Lucius*, one of those allowed by the
 s, sent to *Eleutherius* Bishop of *Rome*, signifying
 entions of embracing the Christian Religion. *Eleu-*
 sent hither two eminent Men, *Fugatius* and *Dami-*
Lucius received this Faith, and it soon spread thro' *King Lucius*
 part of the Nation: So that *Lucius* is supposed to with others
 first Christian King in the World, and *Britain* the receive Chri-
 rovince that embraced the Gospel by publick Au- stianity.

he Reign of *Commodus* the next Emperor, the *Commodus*.
Britains became more troublesome than ever, who
 D 2 having

having passed the Wall, cut off the *Roman* General, and most of his Army, and then made terrible Devastations in the Country. The Emperor sent *Ulpus Marcellus* against them, a wise Governor, who soon put an end to those Troubles, chastis'd the *Britains* for their Revolt, and restored Discipline amongst the *Roman* Soldiers; for which Services the wicked Emperor discharged him of his Office. From this time the Army began to mutiny, and would not own *Commodus* for their Emperor; but *Persinus* his Favourite, by Threats, attempts to redress these Disorders, displacing Officers, and putting Inferiors in their room; but the Soldiers accused him of High Treason, for which he was executed. Upon his Death, *Persinax*, afterward Emperor, undertook the Charge of *Britain*, but was soon dismiss'd, and succeeded by *Albinus*, who declined the Title of *Cesar*, which was offer'd him; but afterwards on a false Report of the Emperor's Death, in a Speech, he declared for the Senatorian, against the Imperial Power; for which he was discharged, and *Junius Severus* put in his Place. *Commodus* not long after being slain, and the Reigns of *Persinax* and *Julian* being short, *Albinus* was found at the Head of the Army in *Britain*, when *Severus* began to reign, which he transported into *Gaul* against him; but *Severus* attackt him near *Lyons*, beat his Forces, and slew him. *Severus* being settled in the Empire, divided *Britain* into two Governments or Prefectures; *Heracitus* commanded the South, and *Virius Lupus* the North, who was so infested by the *Caledonians*, that he was obliged to purchase a Truce with Money, *A. D.* 197, and in the fourth Year of *Severus*'s Reign.

Persinax.
Julian.
Severus.

Britain divided into two Parts.

A. D. 208.

Eleven Years after, the North *Britains* were up in Arms, and had such Success, that the Legions and Province were in great Danger: Upon this News, the Emperor tho' gouty and above sixty Years old, resolved to come in Person, with his two Sons *Caracalla* and *Geta*. The *Britains* at the Emperor's Approach, offered him an honourable Peace: But he refused their Proposals, being desirous to add the Title of *Britannicus* to his former Titles. *Geta* being left in the Southern Parts, he with his Son *Caracalla*, marched against the *Caledonians*, where with cutting down of Woods, making of Bridges, draining of Bogs and Meses, the Enemy's Ambuscades, and Sicknefs, he lost above fifty thousand Men; yet he prosecuted his Attempts so resolutely, that he compelled them to submit, and deliver up a considerable Part of their Coun-

country, and all their Arms ; to secure which, he repaired *Adrian's Wall*. He took upon him the Title of *Br-
annicus Maximus*, and ordered it to be stamp'd on his own
and his Son's Coins. The Emperor retires to *Eboracum*
: *York*, leaving *Caracalla* to manage his Affairs, whose
Life caused the *Caledonians* to break their Articles and
volt ; which so enraged the old Emperor, that he com-
manded a general Massacre, which was executed with
great Severity. After which he finds himself declining,
and cries out ; I have been all that Man can be, but it is of *Severus dies*
no Service to me now ; and that he had found the Empire at *York*.
disturbed, but now had left it in Peace.

Caracalla, having made Peace with the *Britains*, and
received Hostages from them, returned to *Rome* with his
brother *Geta*. For above sixty Years, and the Reigns of
twelve succeeding Emperors after *Caracalla*, namely,
Lacrinus, Heliogabalus, Alexander, Maximinus, Papienus,
Maximian, Philip, Decius, Gallus, Valerian, Gallienus, and
Claudius, we have no Account of the Affairs of *Britain* ;
only in the Reign of *Gallienus*, some of the thirty Ty-
rants, as *Lollianus, Victorinus, and Posthumus*, the *Te-*
tonici, and Marius, are supposed to have usurped the Go-
vernment here, since their Coins are found in such
great Quantities in this Nation. *Bonifacius*, an insa-
lable Vassal to *Bacchus*, and by Birth a *Briton*, endea-
voured to make himself Emperor, under *Aurelian*, and *Aurelian*.
his Successor *Tacitus*, but was defeated by *Probus* the Em- *Tacitus.*
peror, and hanged himself, and gave the Occasion of the *Probus.*
fact, That there hung a Bottle, not a Man. After that,
Probus prevented a new Rebellion in *Britain*. *Victorinus*
recommended a new Lieutenant there, who set up for
Emperor ; *Probus* upbraided him with the Disloyalty of
his Friend ; *Victorinus* undertook to rectify his Mistake,
coming suddenly into *Britain*, where he slew the Tray-
tor and saved the Province. *Probus* also gave leave to the
Merchants, Gauls, and Britons to plant Vines, and to make
Wine. He also having subdued the *Vandals* and *Burgun-*
di, sent Numbers of them to inhabit *Britain*, who
is supposed, had their Camp on *Gogmagog Hills* near
Cambridge, where to this Day is to be seen a large
plain, surrounded with large double Trenches. After
Probus, *Carus* succeeded in the Empire, who committed
his Island, with the Western Provinces, to his Son *Ca-* *Carus.*
Carinus, but he in two Years time was slain by *Dioclesian*, *Carinus.*
who succeeded in the Empire, *A. D. 284.* *Dioclesian.*

Carausius, a Man of mean Abstract but great Courage, assumed the Title of Emperor, and took Possession of *Britain*; whither he brought his Fleet, built more Ships after the *Roman* manner, and was joined by the Legions, kept out foreign Forces, press'd the *Gallick* Merchants to his Service, garisoned *Bononia* in *Gaul*, and converted the Revenues of *Britain* and *Batavia* to his own Use; and by the Hopes of Booty in the Provinces, he drew the *Barbarians* to his Alliance, particularly the *Franks*, whom he had trained to the Sea Service, and infested all the Sea Coast about him. *Maximian* who was ordered to procure his Death, marched against him with a brave Army, but for want of Seamen, he was obliged to come to a Treaty, in which it was concluded, that *Carausius* should enjoy the Government of *Britain*, as the properest Person to defend the Inhabitants against all Invasions; and this he held for seven Years in perfect Peace. But when

Constantinus was made *Cesar* by *Maximian*, and had taken *Bononia*, *Carausius* was kill'd by the Treachery of *Allectus*, his Bosom Friend, who usurped the Government and kept it three Years.

At length *Constantinus* man'd several Fleets, so that *Allectus* grew sensible, that the Ocean was more his Prison than his Defence. *Constantinus* having landed his Soldiers, burnt all his Ships, that they might confide in nothing, but their own Valour. *Allectus* retreated, was attackt by *Asclepiodotus*, Captain of his Life Guard, and killed in a Skirmish. Upon this, had not a Party of the *Romans* opportunely come in, *London* had been pillaged by the *Franks* and other *Barbarians*. By this the Province of *Britain* was recovered to the *Romans*. Not long after a dreadful Persecution broke out under *Dioclesian*, and several are supposed to have suffered here, as *St. Alban*, *Julius*, *Aaron*, &c.

Dioclesian having resigned the Empire, the Western Provinces with *Britain* fell to *Constantinus*, who fell sick and died. He was succeeded by his renowned Son *Constantine*, who was the first, that by Law, established Christianity in the *Roman* Empire, and in a few Years became Master of the whole, against the Power of all Usurpers and Opposers.

But afterwards removing his Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, he opened the Way for Invasions and Incursions in the Western Provinces, by which he lost not only *Britain*, but laid the Foundation of the Ruin of the Empire.

The History of ENGLAND.

39

Yet he new modelled the whole, dividing it into sixteen Provinces, called Dioceses. Britain was one, it was divided into three Provinces, called *Britannia*, whose Metropolis was *London*; *Britannia Secunda*, the chief Town *Isca*, now *Caerleon*; and *Maxima Caesariensis*, the Metropolis *Eboracum* now *York*: the last was again sub-divided into two, viz. *Maxima Flavia* and *Flavia Caesariensis*, but by whom is not said. Britain had in it twenty eight Cities, all supposed to be Bishopricks, three of whose Bishops were amongst the thirty three that composed the Council of *Nice*, viz. *Eborius* of *York*, *Restitutus* of *London*, and *Phocas* of *Colchester*, or perhaps *Caerleon*.

A. D. 314.

Constantine the Great dying, divided the Empire among three Sons, *Constantinus*, *Constans*, and *Constantius*, giving Britain and the West to the eldest, who not satisfied with his Division, invaded that of his Brother *Constans*, and was slain after three Years Reign. *Constans* seized on the West, held it eight or nine Years, but was slain by the Treason of *Magnentius* a Britain, who possessed the Parts for three Years, then laid violent Hands on self, and left the whole Government to *Constantius*, who sent into Britain a Notary called *Paulus*, who committed horrible Extortions and Cruelties, on the Estates and Fortunes of the Innocent, to the perpetual Disgrace of Master *Constantius*, who supported him in all his rages. *Martinus* was then Governor of the Province, he interceded with *Paulus* to stop his Hand, or else he would depart the Isle. On this *Paulus* accused the Governor self, and urged that he might be seized and carried in chains to the Emperor. *Martinus* provoked at such an injury, drew his Sword, and struck at his Accuser; but missing in his Aim, he turned the Point against himself, which still added to the Miseries of those whom *Paulus* thought guilty. *Julian*, afterwards called the Apostate, made Governor of Britain, about the latter end of *Maximian's* Reign, who being then at *Paris*, upon Advice that the *Scots* from *Ireland*, and the *Picts* from *Caledonia* had invaded the Roman Province, sent over *Lucius* to repel them, and settle Peace in the Island. *Lucius* landed his Forces in *Kent*, marched to *London*, then was recalled by *Julian*, who was then made Emperor. About this Time, the *Arian* Heresy disturbed the Island, a Land, saith *Gildas*, greedy of every thing but stedfast in nothing. The Emperor *Constantius*

Britain disturbed by Arianism.

The History of ENGLAND.

conven'd a Council of four hundred Bishops at *Ariminum* in favour of this Doctrine, and allowed them all necessary Provisions; but all chose to live at their own Charges, except three *Britains*, who by reason of their Poverty, accepted of the Emperor's Allowance.

Julian.
Jovian.
Valentinian.

Whilst *Julian* the Apostate and *Jovian* reign'd, we find nothing concerning *Britain*; after whom *Valentinian* succeeded in the Western Empire, who as he was passing thro' *Gaul*, received the melancholy News, that the *Scots* from *Ireland*, the *Picts* and *Attacotti* from the North, together with the *Saxons* and *Franks* from the East and South, had harass'd and ruin'd almost all *Britain*; that they had killed *Nebaridius* the Admiral, and by Stratagem had surpris'd the General *Buchobaudes*. *Valentinian* having sent *Severus*, and then *Jovinus*, to suppress them, but with small Success; he sent *Theodosius*, a Person of celebrated Valour and Conduct, who assembling an Army of select young Men, with the *Herulian*, *Batacian* and other Troops, marched directly to *London*; there dividing his Forces into several Parties, he encounter'd the Enemy laden with Spoils, beat them, retook the Plunder and Prisoners; restoring all to the right Owners, except a small Part, which he gave to the weary Soldiers: He enter'd *London* triumphantly, and restored it to its former Splendor. Having thus subdued the Enemy, he proclaimed Impunity to such as would immediately return to Obedience: But the Enemy being numerous, of many Nations, and in diverse Parties, to finish all, he found it necessary to call in the Assistance of *Civilis* and *Dulcinius*, the former eminent for his Wisdom and Honesty, and the latter for his military Abilities.

A. D. 368.

Theodosius
repels the
Scots and
Picts.

Theodosius having thus subdued these different sorts of People, and being employed in repairing the Cities and Castles, and in laying the Foundations of a lasting Peace, one *Valentinus* a *Pannonian*, a Person of a turbulent and haughty Spirit, who had been banished into *Britain*, with other Exiles, and Soldiers, conspired against him, as the only Obstacle to his Designs of obtaining the Government of this Isle. This Man, and some of his principal Accomplices being discovered, were delivered to *Dulcinius*, and received such Rewards as their Crimes deserved, but *Theodosius* made not too strict an Inquiry after the rest, they being many, lest such Methods of proceeding might increase the Danger. He then, with great Success reformed many Irregularities, recovered many Cities

s and Garisons, and set Guards and Watches on the
ers. Having thus restored the Northern Province to
rmer Condition, he appointed a new Governor over
id ordered it to be called *Valentia*, and the City of
on, *Augusta*. And now the *Roman* part of *Britain*
isted of five distinct Provinces, viz. *Britannia Prima* in
outh, *Secunda* in the West, *Flavia Caesariensis* in the
and middle Parts, *Maxima Caesariensis* towards the
th, and *Valentia* beyond *Severus's* Wall to *Edin-*
b, and *Dunbritton* Friths. These things being thus
ly accomplished, *Theodosius* was recalled, whom
Emperor received with the highest Marks of Di-
tion.

Valentinian was succeeded in the Empire by his two *A. D. 382.*
s, *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, and the latter chose *Theodo-*
he younger to be his Partner. One *Maximus* a Bri- *Maximus*
Commander, was saluted Emperor, which proved *claims the*
irst great Step towards the entire Ruin of *Britain*. *Empire.*

ie beginning *Maximus* employed his Time for the Pre-
tion of this Isle, driving back the *Scots* into *Ireland*,
the *Picts* beyond the Walls; after which he quitted
le, carrying over most of the *Roman* Forces, and
est of the *British* Youth, in opposition to the legal
erors. These never returned again, but for the most
perished with their Commander; the rest settled in
part of *Gaul* called *Armorica*, which afterwards from
Britains had the Name of *Britain*, now *Bretaigne*.
Nation being thus weakened by the Departure of the
iers, the *Scots* and *Picts* returned with greater Fury,
made terrible Ravages and Devastations: In order to
ce which, *Chrysanthus*, the Son of *Marcian*, Bishop
Constantinople, was made Governor, who discharged
Office with great Reputation; but whether he, or *Sti-*
Governor to the young Emperor *Honorius*, reduced *Honorius.*

Northern Enemies, is not certain. Not long after
Empire being in great Distress, the Legion sent into *Bri-*
for that purpose was recalled. The Forces in *Britain* to *The Britains*
re themselves from the *Vandals*, *Sweves*, and *Alans*, elec- *set up several*
ne *Marcus* to be their Emperor, whom for not answer- *Emperors.*
their Expectation they soon dispatched: then they set up
Gratian, whom after four Months they likewise slew.
n they chose one *Constantine*, a common Soldier, who
into *Gaul* with the rest of the Forces, where four
rs after he lost his Life and his whole Army. *A. D. 407.*

Now

The Romans
omit the Jurisdiction of
Britain.

Now in most parts of *Europe* as well as in *Britain*, the Publick Affairs began to decline: The *Vandals* entered *Spain*; the *Alans*, *Portugal*; the *Goths*, *Italy*, and *Rome* it self; and the *Britains* were exposed to the merciless Rage and Fury of the barbarous *Scots* and *Picts*. Now the *Britains* implore the Assistance of the *Romans*, they petition the Emperor *Honorius*, who being distress'd, and not able to defend *Rome* against *Alarick*, excused himself, advised them to use their own Methods for Safety, and acquitted them of all *Roman* Jurisdiction. The *Britains* being thus discharged and abandoned, began to live after their own Laws and Institutions. The *Armoricians* in *Gaul* followed their Example. Thus fell the vast *Roman* Empire, first in *Britain*, soon after in *Italy*, and with all that was *Roman*, as Learning, Valour, Eloquence, History, Civility, and even Language it self. This happened about the Year 410, which was 463 Years after *Julius Caesar's* first landing, 367 after the *Romans* got Possession under the Emperor *Claudius*, and 326 after *Agricola* conquered it under *Domitian*.

Whilst the *Romans* continued in this Island, for the better Conveniency of Passage from Garison to Garison, from Station to Station, from Colony to Colony, and from one Municipium or Corporation to another, they had their publick High-ways, called the Consular, Prætorian, Regal and Military Ways, &c. and by the Moderns Strates or Streets, of which four were of principal Note, viz. *Via Vetulungiana*, since called *Watling Street*: *Via Icenorum*, or *Ikenild Street*; *Erming Street*, and the *Foss-way*; two whereof ran thro' the Breadth, and two thro' the Length of the Nation. These Ways had several Privileges and Immunities; Strangers were protected from Arretts; there were many Mansions for Travellers to rest themselves, Inns for Entertainment; and Mutations where they changed Post Horses, Waggons and Chariots. These and other stupendous Works of the *Romans*, have in these latter Ages, been thought impossible to have been done by Men; but nevertheless they remain Specimens of the Glory, Grandeur, Riches, Power and Industry of the *Romans*, before the Declension of their vast Empire.

S E C T. III.

*the Romans quitting their Jurisdiction
the Island, to the Destruction of Britain
the Picts, Scots, and Saxons.*

THE *Britains* being thus at Liberty to live according A. D. 410.
to their own Laws, at first proceeded in their Ad-
ministration with some Vigor and Resolution; but be-
fore fond of the Name of Liberty, than acquainted
with the Difficulties of Government, they grew violent
in what they understood not; none were more brave and
bold in Council, and none so relenting in Action; all
approved the Scheme, but none would put it in Prac-
tice. Thus in a short Time when the Heat of Liberty
was spent, and the Enemies daily increased, they found
their own Temper returning upon them, a Slothfulness
of Body, and a Slavishness of Mind; and then they per-
ceived that the Love only of Freedom could not protect
them; but such Diligence, Wisdom, and Bravery, which
they wanted: So that they were more wretched under
the Burden of their own Liberty, than under a foreign
Yoke. They were obliged to send a second Time to
Emperor *Honorius* for Assistance against the *Picts* and

*Britains in-
fested by the
Picts and
Scots.*

Emperor more out of Compassion than Ambition, sent
General *Constantine*, who coming suddenly over, made great Ha-
vock among the *Picts*, soon drove them beyond their
Limits, and rebuilt the Wall which *Agricola* and *Antoninus*
had made between the Frith of *Edinburgh* and *Dun-*
bart; but as soon as the *Romans* were returned, the barba-
rian People broke down this Wall, it being only built with
Rampiers, and poured in on the Province like a Torrent, destroy-
ing all with Fire and Sword, wheresoever they came: On
the other hand the *Scots* landed in great Swarms, and wasted
the Country before them with no less Cruelty: So that the poor
Britains were miserably bandied between two insolent
merciless Enemies, striving which should exceed the
other in Spoil, Rapine, and Bloodshed.
The *Britains* not being able to bear these Miseries any
longer, a third Time sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, after
the

*The Romans
assist them
and return,
A. D. 418.*

The History of ENGLAND

the most submissive manner, with their Garments rent and Dust on their Heads, begging, that the Emperor would not suffer them to become a Prey and Scorn to Barbarians. *Valentinian* the Third then reigning, pitied their Misfortunes, and sent Forces to their Relief, who made a terrible Slaughter among the Enemies, rescued the *Britains* from these Barbarians, and to prevent the like Incursions, they built a Wall of solid Stone twelve Foot high and eight broad, and fortified it with strong Towers, crossing the Isle from the *Tine* to the River *Eaen*, eighty Miles in Length; which Wall is now vulgarly called the *Piſt* Wall. That part of *Britain* called *Valentia* was left wholly to the Enemy. The *Romans* who came to assist the *Britains*, having thus secured the Nation, let them understand, that they must not expect from them any more such Expeditions for their Security; exhorting them courageously to defend their Country and Liberties against those Barbarians; to which purpose they instructed them in the Art of War, and left Patterns of their Arms and Weapons; then they took their Leave with Design never to return, about the Year 435, which was 488 after the first Entrance of *Julius Caesar*.

The *Romans*
assist them
again.

And build
the *Piſt*
Wall.

A. D. 435.
Britains har-
rass'd by the
Saxs and
Piſts.

The Island being thus abandoned by the *Romans*, the *Saxs* and *Piſts* return with more Fury than ever, and without Resistance, took Possession of the Country as far as the Wall. In the mean Time the cowardly Guards that were placed on the Wall, suffered the *Piſts* to pull them down headlong with their Engines and long Hooks; so that in a short Time they became Masters of the Wall, and of the deserted Frontiers. The Inhabitants flying were pursued by the Barbarians, who made a terrible Slaughter of them, and what added to the Misfortune of those that fled, was the Scarcity of all manner of Provision, which made them seize on whatsoever they could find, to allay their Hunger. From hence arose new Mischiefs and Discords amongst themselves, and thence civil Wars; a People in civil Contest the most obstinate and resolute, tho' feeble and irresolute against their foreign Invaders. In the Time of these Troubles and Calamities in the State, the Church was disturbed with *Pelagianism*, by means of *Agricola*, Disciple of *Pelagius* a Monk, sometime of *Bangor* in *Flintshire*. The weak Christians called in to their Assistance *Germanus* Bishop of *Auxerre*, and *Lupus* Bishop of *Tryes* in *Gaul*, who by their assiduous preaching confirmed many in the Faith, gained

gined many more, and lastly in a publick Disputation at *Voulam*, confuted the chief of the Hereticks.

The miserable Remains of the *Britains* being thus har- *A. D. 446.*
 ass'd by their Enemies, address'd themselves by doleful
 Letters to the renowned *Ætius*, the *Roman* Lieutenant
 in *Gaul*. They began in these Words: ' To *Ætius* thrice They address
 ' Consul, the Groans of the *Britains*. The Barbarians themselves
 ' drive us to the Sea, and the Sea drives us back to the Bar- to the Roman
 ' barians; so that we must either be slain by the one or Lieutenant
 ' drowned by the other; besides Famine and Mortality rage in vain.
 ' in this Land to a violent Degree.' To these mournful
 Petitions they received no Answer; for the Empire being
 infested with *Huns*, *Goths* and *Vandals*, was not in a
 Condition to send them Relief. Thus being destitute of
 all human Assistance, some yielded themselves to the
 Mercy of their Enemies; others made a stout Resistance,
 so that the *Scots* and *Picts* were quite tired out, which
 caused them to retire for a while; and this gave the *Brit-
 tains* Leisure to cultivate the Land, which brought
 forth such a plentiful Crop, as had not been known in
 the Memory of Man, which occasioned the breaking
 out of fresh Mischiefs; as Riot, Luxury, and Wanton-
 ness; hating Truth and loving Lies, calling Good Evil,
 and Evil Good; all, both Laity and Clergy acted directly
 against the publick Good and Safety. Thus the Priests
 and People being wretchedly qualified for Government,
 resolved to chuse several Kings of their own. These
 Kings were no sooner chosen, but were as suddenly depo-
 sed and murdered by their Electors, to make way for
 others.

The Affairs in the State being managed in this violent
 Manner, the Church was very much disturbed; for *Pe-
 lagianism* spreading again in the Country, the *British*
 Priests send again to *Germanus* for Assistance, who with
Severus a Disciple of his former Associate *Paulus*, came
 into this Island, apprehended the Heads and Teachers of
 this new Doctrine, and sent them into Exile. *Germanus*
 being departed, the *Scots* and *Picts* return, and threaten
 the Destruction of the whole Land, but were prevented
 by a dreadful Pestilence that broke out, and swept away
 such Numbers, that the Living were scarce able to bury
 the Dead; and as soon as the Contagion ceas'd, the Enc-
 my advanced with merciless Fury, as far as *Stamford* in
Lincolnshire.

The Saxons
arrive under
Hengist and
Horfa, to
their Assist-
ance.

A. D. 449

Vortigern
gives Kent
to Hengist.

At this Time *Vortigern*, a haughty and insolent Prince, neither wise in Counsel, nor experienced in War, King of the *Britains*, who in a grand Council, resolved to send for the Heathen *Saxons*, to expel the North Nations. This which was designed for a Defence, proved the Ruin of the Nation. Accordingly Ambassadors were dispatched into *Germany*. The *Saxons* easily complied with their Requests, and fitted out three long Vessels called *Chinles*, under the Conduct of *Hengist* and *Horfa*, two Brothers, descended from that ancient *Woden* from whom the Royal Family of the *Saxons* derive their Pedigree. These Leaders, with fifteen hundred Followers, arriving in *Britain*, were welcomed both by Prince and People; and the Isle of *Thanet*, where they landed, was appointed for their Habitation, and a League was immediately made with them: It was stipulated they should defend the *Britains* Country, and for their Service they should have sufficient Pay and Rewards. By this Means the Affairs of *Britain* received a mighty Change, which happened in the Year 449, in the twenty fourth Year of *Pharamond* the first King of *France*, which was thirty nine Years after the *Romans* first quitted the *Britains*, and fourteen Years after they had totally abandoned the Isle.

The *Saxons* beginning thus to inhabit *Britain*, under *Hengist* and *Horfa*, were very serviceable against the *Picts*, who had made an Irruption as far as *Strathclyde*; but finding the Island to be rich and fruitful, and the Inhabitants enervated with Vice and Luxury, they send home to invite others to be Sharers of their future Success and Expectations: Upon which Invitation they fitted out seventeen Vessels, and filled them with *Saxons*, *Jutes*, *Angles*, three Nations in *Germany*; these came over who with those that were here before, made up a complete Army.

With these also came over *Rowena*, Daughter of *Hengist*, a Lady of admirable Beauty; with whose Character *Vortigern* was so captivated, that he immediately offered to make her his Wife: To this *Hengist* complied, gave the King his Daughter, and as a Gratuity received *Kent*, and was also suffered by *Vortigern* to send for more *Saxons*, under *Otha* and *Ebusa*, Son and Nephew to *Hengist*, under the specious Pretence of securing the Northern Parts, as *Hengist* did the South; who came over

forty Vessels, arrived at the *Orcades*, suppress'd both the *Picts* and *Scots*, and afterwards seated themselves in that part of the Island called *Northumberland*. *Hengist* still making Advantage of the King's Imprudence, sends by Degrees for more Men and Ships, till he had sufficiently increased his Number; then he fixed the *Jutes* in *Kent*, and the *Saxons* and *Angles*, in other Parts of the Country.

Hengist being thus settled, and confiding in his Numbers, declares, that if the *Britains* would not supply him better, he would break the League, and waste the whole Country; they civilly refused his Demands, whereupon the *Saxon* Commanders secretly made a Peace with the *Picts*, and turned their Arms against their Allies, and ravaged their Country with Fire and Sword. The People were slain in Heaps, the Priests butchered at the Altar, and the Bishops massacred without any Distinction: Some for Shelter fled to the Woods and Mountains, where they suffered the Extremity of Famine, others into foreign Nations, particularly *Armorica*; those that remained at Home lived in perpetual Fears, and led a hard and miserable Life, in the Woods and Mountains.

Saxons turn their Arms against the Britains.

At last *Vortimer*, Son of *Vortigern*, undertook to fight for his distressed Country: He thrice shut up the *Saxons* in the Isle of *Tbanet*, who receiving fresh Supplies, broke through and escaped the Danger; yet he fought with them four other Battels, three of which are specified by Place and Circumstance. The first on the River *Darwent* in *Kent*, the second at *Episford*, wherein *Herse* the Brother of *Hengist* fell, together with *Kastigern*, the other Son of *Vortigern*. The third was in a Field by *Stonar*, now *Folkstone* in *Kent*, where the *Britains* beat the *Saxons* into their Ships; and for the Space of five Years they never attempted to land again.

Vortimer drives the Saxons back.

Vortimer before his Death desired the People to bury him in the Port of *Stonar*, believing that the secret Virtue of his Bones, would prevent the *Saxons* from landing near that Place; but they neglected his Commands and buried him at *Lincoln*.

Hengist and his Son *Esk* fought the *Britains*, in a Place called *Crecanford*, and slew four thousand of them; the *Britains* deserted *Kent*, and fled to *London* in a great Consternation; from which Victory, Authors generally date the beginning of the Kingdom of *Kent*, under *Hengist*; this was about eight Years after he first entered the Isle, and he reigned thirty one Years after. But *Vortigern* still

A. D. 457
Kent the first Saxon Kingdom in Britain.

main-

maintaining the War against the Saxons, they consult how to entrap him and his Army, to which end they sent Ambassadors to offer Peace, and to renew their former Amity: *Vortigern* agreed to an Interview in the most friendly manner without Arms, but the treacherous *Hengist* ordered their Followers to conceal their Daggers under their Garments, and at the Word of Command to fall on the *Britains*, and destroy all but the King: The Word was given, the Saxons fell on the *Britains*, and dispatched three hundred of the *British* Nobility. *Vortigern* was put in Chains, who for his Ransom gave to the Saxons those Countries, which afterwards were called *Essex*, *Middlesex* and *Sussex*: This so strengthened *Hengist*, and confirmed him in his new Kingdom of *Kent*, and gave the Saxons such Footing in this Isle, that the *Britains* could never after repel them.

*Aurelius
Ambrosius
relieves the
Britains.*

For many succeeding Centuries, there never wanted a Saxon Monarch in this Isle. But *Aurelius Ambrosius*, descended of *Roman* Ancestors, and such as had born Regal Dignity in the Island, succeeding *Vortigern*, first as General, and afterwards as King, revived the Hopes of the dispirited *Britains*: Under the Conduct of this eminent Man, they in a short time gained a great Victory over the Saxons. After this signal Victory, *Ambrosius* conven'd the Princes and Nobility at *York*; gave Orders for the repairing the Churches, and marched to *London*, *Winchester*, and *Salisbury*, in all Places endeavouring to restore the State of the Church and Kingdom. He filled up the vacant Metropolitan Sees of *York* and *Caerleon*, with two worthy Bishops called *Saintpaul* and *Dubritius*; and some suppose he erected those famous Piles of Stones in *Salisbury* Plain, called *Stonehenge*, in Honour of those three hundred Noblemen massacred by *Hengist*.

A. D. 465. The *Britains* now having a little Respite from their Enemies, fall into civil Dissensions, and one of *Vortigern*'s Sons, named *Pascentius*, raised a Rebellion in the North, but was soon overcome and put to flight. Eight Years after, *Hengist* and his Son *Esk* engaged the *Britains*, worsted them, and took a great Booty; upon this, new Bodies of the Saxons come over, under the Conduct of *Ella* and his three Sons, *Cymen*, *Wlencing* and *Cissa*; these arrived in three Ships, and landed in a Place called *Cymen-Shoar* in *Sussex*. The Inhabitants in a tumultuous manner gathered to oppose them; the Danes received them, put them to flight, killed many, and drove the rest into

Wood, called *Andredes Leage*. They seized all Ports in *Suffex*, and continued to enlarge their territories, till the ninth Year after their Arrival, when the *Britains* with united Forces engaged them, near a place called *Mearcrede*, or *Burnamstede*: The Battle was bloody, both Parties drawing off with Loss; and *Ella* retired for Supplies. Not long after, *Hengist* K. of *Kent* died, *A. D.* 488. was succeeded by his Son *Esk*, who reigned twenty Years, without enlarging his Dominions. But *Ella* increased his Army, proceeded with Success against the *Britains*, laid Siege to a City called *Andredes*, took it and put all to the Sword. Thus *Ella*, Years after the Death of *Hengist*, laid the Foundation of the second Saxon Kingdom, called the Kingdom of the South Saxons, consisting of those Parts now called *Suffex* and *Surrey*; this was begun in the Year 491, 14 after the beginning of the Kingdom of *Kent*. *South Saxons the second Kingdom.* *Britains* being now the Field of Fortune, many Adventurers came daily from *Germany*; particularly *Cerdick*, *Saxons arrive under Cerdick.* in Lineage from *Woden*, who with his Son *Cenric* and as many as he could transport in five Vessels, landed at a Place, which from him is called *Cerdick's*, and after some Skirmishes with the Inhabitants, got Possession of all those Countries on the Sea Coast. About six Years after, one *Porta* with his two Sons, *Bleda* and *Magla*, with two Vessels, arrived at the Coast, which from him is still called *Portsmouth*; who slew those that opposed him, and having slain a *British* Prince, took for himself and Followers another Part of the Country. About seven Years after the Arrival of *Porta*, the *Britains* again united their Forces, under the Conduct of *Nazaleod*, one of their greatest Warriors, the same with *Uther Pendragon*, *Ambrosius's* Successor. Upon this *Cerdick* sends to *Esk* King of *Kent*, to the King of the South Saxons, and to *Porta* and his Sons for Aid; he commanded the right Wing of his Army, and his Son *Cenrick* the left. *Nazaleod* attacked them with such Bravery, that he soon routed *Cerdick*; but pursuing with more Heat than Caution, *Cenrick* fell in on the Rear, recovered the Battel, and slew *Nazaleod* on the Spot, with five thousand of his Followers. *And Porta.* *Nazaleod.* *His Death.*

Five Years after, the famous *Arthur* came to the Crown, *A. D.* 514. and overthrew the Saxons in twelve Battels, the first at a River called *Glenn*; the second, third, fourth and fifth, *Arthur succeeds him.*

Wenger his two Nephews, who came
Ships; and after he had Footing here for se
Years, he took on him the Title of King,
the third Kingdom call'd *West Saxons*, co
Wonsbire, *Somersetshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Hampshi*
shire; to which *Cornwall* was afterwards
Kingdom at last conquered all the rest, an
sole Command of all *England*.

The *Saxons* thus daily encreasing in N
on making new Ineroachments, and in
Time, founded a fourth Kingdom in *Britain*
Saxons, containing *Essex*, *Middlesex*, and
fordshire. It was begun in the Year 527, b
the Son of *Offa*; it never came to be very
tho' it had *London*, the Metropolis of *Engla*
Dominion.

About fifteen Years after this, the great
dies, and is succeeded by *Constantine*; an
Years after, *Ida* the *Saxon*, the tenth in L
Woden, founded the fifth Kingdom in this I
Kingdom of *Northumberland*, consisting of
Britain, that lies *North* of the *Humber*: T
powerful Kingdom, containing *Yorkshire*,
Durham, *Cumberland*, *Westmorland* and *Nor*
and Part of *Scotland*, as far as *Edinburgh-Frit*
Years Time it was divided into two Parts
Bernicia, and the other *Deira*.

Now *Ethelbert*, the fifth King of *Kent*, t
Civil Wars amongst

The most remarkable, because they after-
 gave Name to the whole Kingdom of *England*.
 The *Saxons* began again to assault the *Britains*, and
 few Years Time drove 'em from *England* into
 for *Cutwulf*, Brother of *Keanlin*, King of the
Saxons, beat 'em at *Bedensford* or *Bedford*, and
 from them four good Towns, *Liganburgh*, now
 in, in *Bedfordshire*, *Eglesburg*, now *Alesbury* in
 with *Bennington* and *Ignesham*, now *Benson* and
 in, in *Oxfordshire*. Six Years after *Keanlin* and
 a *Cutwin*, again overthrew 'em at *Deorham* in
Wessex, slew three of their Kings, *Cormait*, *Con-*
and Farmmait; and took three of their chief Ci-
 ties. *Glocester*, *Cirencester*, and *Badenchester*, or *Bath*.
 Time after the *Britains* engaged *Keanlin*; and his
 was at *Fethamleage*: *Cutha* was slain, and the
 gave Way, till *Keanlin* renew'd the Fight, rout-
Britains, took many Towns, and returned richly
 with Booty: Thus the poor *Britains* continual-
 ly, losing Ground every where; which still
 weakened the *Saxons*.

At this Time, *Cerda* founded the seventh Kingdom
 of the, call'd the Kingdom of *Mercia*, which con-
 sisted of seventeen Counties, in the middle Part of the
 Island, viz. *Glocestershire*, *Herefordshire*, *Worcester-*
Warwickshire, *Leicestershire*, *Rutland*, *Norshamp-*
Lincolnshire, *Huntingtonshire*, *Bedfordshire*, *Back-*

A. D. 585.
Mercia the
 seventh
 Kingdom.

Country; some beyond the Seas into *Armorica*, some into *Cornwall*, but most into *Wales*; the poor Remains that staid among the *Saxons*, were made Slaves, and kept to the most servile Offices; from whom began Villainage in *England*, which lasted till the Reign of *Henry the Seventh*.

S E C T. IV.

From the Destruction of Britain by the Saxons, and other Nations, to the new Establishment made by King Egbert, who became the first supreme Monarch of England.

A. D. 596. **T**HE whole Nation was now in Possession of Foreigners, under the Names of *Saxons*, *Jutes* and *Angles*; tho' the most general Name was that of the *Saxons*, who occasioned the whole Nation to be call'd *New Saxony*; so that now we are to begin with a new Body of People, and with a new State and Government of the Land, which introduc'd a general Change of Names, of Languages, of Customs, of Laws, of Arms, of Discipline, of Possession, of Titles, of Religion, and of every Thing in the Nation. Altho' we have already mentioned the Foundations of these *Saxon Kingdoms*, yet to clear the Story, we will give a general Account of each, till the Time of *Egbert*, the first supreme Monarch of this Nation.

1. *Kent* The Kingdom of *Kent* began in the Year 457, ended in 823, continued 366 Years; its Royal Seat *Canterbury*, and sometimes *Reculver* near the Seas. It had seventeen Kings, four *Pagans* and thirteen *Christians*, viz. *Hengist*, *Esk*, *Otha*, *Ermiric*, *Ethelbert*, *Eadbald*, *Ercombert*, *Egbert*, *Lothair*, *Edric*, *Witbred*, *Edbert*, *Edilbert*, *Alric*, *Edilbert*, *Cutbred*, and *Baldred*; it consisted of the County of *Kent*, and some of *Hampshire*.

2. *South Saxony* The *South Saxons* began in the Year 491, and ended in 600, continuing 109 Years; its Royal Seat was *Chichester*; it had five Kings, two *Pagans* and three *Christians*, viz. *Ella*, *Gissa*, *Ethelwolf*, *Bertram*, and *Aethelm*.
The

The Kingdom of the West Saxons began in the Year 3. ^{West Saxony.} and ended in 802; it continued two hundred and three Years; its Royal Seat *Winchester*; it had six Kings, five Pagans, and eleven Christians; viz. *Kenric, Canlin, Ceolric, Ceolwulf, Cynegils cum Ealm, Kenevalch cum Sexburge, Eadwine, Kentwine, Wella, Ina, Eshelherd, Canred, Sigebert, Cynwulf, Eadbert.*

The Kingdom of the East Saxons began in the Year 4. ^{East Saxony.} and ended in 747; it continued two hundred and three Years, its Royal Seat *London*; it had twelve Kings, two Pagans, and ten Christians, viz. *Erebowin, Sæted cum Fratre Sigeberts, Sigebert, Swilhelm, cum Seba, Sigeheard cum Swanfred, Ofra, Selred, Swilbrod.*

The Kingdom of Northumberland began in the Year 5. ^{Northumberland.} and ended in 792; continuing two hundred and five Years, its Royal Seat *Jork*; it had twenty one Kings, four Pagans, and seventeen Christians, viz. *Ida, Eadric, Eadelferd, Edwin, Ofwald, Ofwy, Egfrid, Ofred, Kenred, Ufric, Ceolwulf, Eadbert, Ofulf, Ofwald, Alured, Eshelred, Alfwald, Ofred, and Eadbert.*

The Kingdom of the East Angles began in the Year 6. ^{East Angles.} and ended in 792, continuing two hundred and seven Years; its Royal Seat *Dunwich*; it had fourteen Kings, four Pagans, and ten Christians, viz. *Uffa, Tidywald, Eorpwald, Sigebert, Egrie, Anna, Eshelwald, Aldulf, Elfwald, Beorne, Eshelred, and Eadbert.*

The Kingdom of Mercia began in the Year 585, and 7. ^{Mercia.} ended in 874, continuing two hundred and eighty nine Years, its Royal Seat *Lincoln*; it had twenty one Kings, five Pagans, and seventeen Christians, viz. *Crida, Wibbert, Penda, Peada, Wulfer, Eshelred, Kendred, Eshelbald, Beornred, Ofra, Egfrid, Kennulf, Keornwulf, Ladecom, Wublaf, Bertulf, Burredd, Ceolwulf.* These seven Kingdoms are generally called by the Name of the Heptarchy.

As to the Lives and Actions of these several Monarchs, during the Heptarchy, they have been so lamely and confusedly transmitted to us, that we can give but little Satisfaction to the curious Reader; therefore we shall relate such things as cannot be depended on by any certain Record.

A. D. 597.
Austin the
 Monk sent
 into England

Pope Gregory sends *Austin* the Monk, with about forty other Persons into *Britann*; he having received his Instructions, and being provided with Necessaries, they proceeded in their Voyage, and landed in the Isle of *Thanet* near *Kent*. At their first Arrival, *Austin* sent to King *Ethelbert* to acquaint him, That he came from *Rome*, and had brought the Promise of eternal Felicity to all that would receive it. The King received them very civilly, ordered that they should be provided with all Necessaries, and appointed an Interview, in which *Austin* preached both to him and his Nobles; the King civilly dismiss'd them, gave them leave to preach, where and to whom they pleased, and to gain as many as they could to the Belief of their Religion, ordered them to reside at *Canterbury*, and made Provision for their Maintenance.

Now their great Business was, to live according to the Rules they taught others, which in a little Time convinced the King and great Numbers of the People, so that they believed and were baptized, admiring the Simplicity of their Lives, as well as the Purity of their Doctrine. In the following Year when *Austin* had converted the greatest part of the *Kentish* Nation, he passed over into *France*, and was ordained Archbishop of the whole *English* Nation, by *Eutherius* Archbishop of *Arles*. He returned with Archi-episcopal Authority, he recovered a Christian Church in *Canterbury*, and dedicated it by the Name of Christ's Church. Other Preachers coming over, particularly *Mellitus*, *Justus*, *Paulinus* and *Rufinian*; *Austin* ordained *Mellitus* and *Justus*, and the former by his powerful preaching converted the East Saxons. To congratulate their Conversion, *Ethelbert* built *St. Paul's* in *London*, to be their Bishop's Cathedral; and *Justus* also had another built at *Rocheſter*, both which the King endowed with large Possessions.

A. D. 604. *Austin* by virtue of his Legatine Authority, undertook a general Visitation, and when he came near the Borders of *Wales*, he summoned all the *British* Bishops to a Synod, at a Place called *Austin's Oak*, in *Worcestershire*: He began with brotherly Admonitions to persuade them to conform to the *Roman* Church, but not prevailing, he proceeded by Threats. On this the Meeting broke up, and a second was appointed, to which repaired several *British* Bishops, and *Dinwoth* Abbot of *Bangor*. There was one who staid behind, gave them this Advice, That if they found *Austin* meek and humble, they should hearken

him, as having the Marks of Christ's Disciple; but if he behaved himself with Pride and Haughtiness, they should not regard him, for then he could not be a Man from God. With this Advice they hast to the Place of Meeting, where *Austin* carried himself as the Pope's Legate, and their Metropolitan; and as they drew near, he sat still and pontifically in his Chair: This gave Offence to the *Bretons*, and they rejected his Proposals; and *Dunelm* of *Banger* in the Name of all the rest, declared, That they would pay no more Subjection to the Pope, than to any other Christian. Upon this, *Austin* in a haughty Scite, declared, That since they would not submit to his Authority, they should be destroyed by Fire and Sword. *Austin* liv'd not so long as the effect of his Denunciation, but died the next Year, and was succeeded by *Laurentius*, in his Archbishoprick. Christianity whilst *Ethelbert* reigned, made a mighty Progress in this Isle. In the Year 611, *Sigebert* the King's Nephew, King of the East Saxons, founded the Church and Abby of *Westminster*, and in 616 *Ethelbert* died; after he had been near twenty Years a Christian, twenty three chief Monarch of *England*, and fifty six King of *Kent*. *Eadbald* succeeded his Father in his Throne, who instead of propagating, used his Endeavours to extinguish Christianity; neither was this Apostacy confined to his Kingdom, but it soon spread it self amongst the East Saxons.

Thro' the Mismanagement of *Eadbald* and other Accidents, *Kent* lost the chief Monarchy of *England*, which fell next upon *Redwald* the third K. of the East Angles, who for more twenty Years had been Vice-Roy to King *Ethelbert*, who joined *Edwin*, with his whole Power against the *Northumbrians*; near the *Idle* they engaged; after a hot Dispute the *Northumbrians* were defeated, and King *Ethelfrid* slain in the Field; by which Means *Edwin* was established in the Kingdom of *Northumberland*. *Redwald* reigned successfully about six Years after, and died in the Year 624, after he had been King of the East Angles forty four Years, and eight chief Monarch of *England*. A. D. 624.

Edwin, grown potent in the Life of *Redwald*, became his Successor in the English Monarchy, and was the greatest King of all the Saxons, subduing all the Coasts of *Britain*, with the Isles of *Anglesey* and *Man*. His first Wife being dead, he made his Application for the Lady *Edelburga*, Daughter of *Ethelbert*, but was at first denied, because that a Christian Virgin ought not to marry a Pagan; but *Edwin* agreed, that both she and her Attendants

tendants, should enjoy the free Exercise of their Religion; and that if he found their Religion more excellent than his own, himself would embrace it. These Conditions were easily agreed to; and with *Edelburga*, Bishop *Paulinus*, and a noble Attendance all Christians, set out for *Edwin's* Court, where the Marriage was solemnized. *Paulinus* omitted no Opportunity to plant the Gospel in those Parts, with little Success, till the next Year this surprising Accident made way for it. *Quicquid* one of the West Saxon Kings, jealous of *Edwin's* Greatness, sent *Ennerus* a Ruffian, to stab him, who under pretence of delivering a Message, with a poisoned Weapon struck at *Edwin*, whilst he was discoursing with him at his House by the River *Derwent* in *Yorkshire*; but *Lilla* one of the King's Attendance, interposed, and received the Blow, which went thro' his Body and gave the King a dangerous Wound. *Paulinus* improved this Opportunity, and obtained this Promise from him, that if Christ would grant him his Recovery and Victory over his Enemies, he would embrace Christianity. Being in a fair way of doing well, he marched against the West Saxons, subdued them, punishing some, and pardoning others, and returned Home victorious. From this Time King *Edwin* forsook his Idols; for at his Return, *Paulinus* came to him, and laid his right Hand on his Head, and asked him if he remembered that Sign, at which the King fell at the Bishop's Feet; the Bishop lifting him up, put him in mind of his Promise, and persuaded him to become a Christian. In a full Council, whereof *Corfi* his chief Pagan Priest, was President, it was agreed, that the true God should be worshiped, and Idolatry rooted out, *Corfi* himself destroying their Altars and Gods with his own Hands. Then King *Edwin*, in the eleventh Year of his Reign, with his Nobility, and most of the Commons, were baptised at *York*, where he built a Church, and made *Paulinus* Archbishop of that See, Anno Dom. 627. *Paulinus* passed the *Humber*, making a glorious Progress in converting the Pagans to the Belief of the Christian Religion. *Edwin* in the mean Time, took proper Measures to propagate the Faith, and to promote Virtue, which had so good an effect on the Minds of the People, that a Woman with a Child in her Hand, might travel from Sea to Sea without Molestation; but *Cadwallan* King of the *Britains*, and *Penda* the *Mercian*, who rebelled against him, joined against him, and after a bloody Fight

and suddenly for upon Cadwallon,
 led him and his Army, near a little River by the
 all, which was afterwards called *Heaven's Field*,
 Cross, which *Oswald* set up before the Battel.
 this, his chief Care was to have the People in-
 to Christianity. *Beda* says much of the Devoti-
 onness, and Charity of this Prince. He took par-
 ture of the Poor, had them served at his Gate,
 the Place in which they were served, to be di-
 vidingst them; which caused Bishop *Aiden*, whom
 sent for out of *Scotland*, to take him by the right
 and to pray that that Hand might never corrupt.
 Year the *West Saxons* were converted to Chri-
 and *Cynegills* their King, by the preaching of
 whom Pope *Honorius* had sent. The Year fol-
 the *East Angles* were recovered to Christianity,
 the Year 640 the University of *Cambridge* was
 In the mean Time *Oswald* met with the same
Edwin, and by the same Hand, being slain in
Penda the *Mercian*, at *Oswestr* in *Shropshire*.
 this the Kingdom of *Northumberland* again be- *A.D. 642.*
 ridged for six or seven Years; *Oswy* gaining *Ber-*
ed *Uswin* *Deira*. The former was an illegitimate
 and half Brother to *Oswald*, and in a few
 the next chief Monarch of the *English*, *Oswy* died
 of his Brother *Oswald*.

A. D. 650. Now *Oswy* unites both Kingdoms again, and binds himself to the Practice of Virtue. About this Time *Penda*, the Son of *Penda*, desired *Oswy's* Daughter *Beda* in Marriage, which was refused, unless he accepted the Christian Faith; he hearkening to what was preached, readily turned Christian, and was baptised, with many of his Followers. Upon his return, he brought with him four Presbyters to instruct the People of that Province, who by their Care and Diligence, won many Numbers to the Belief of Christianity. About this Time, by *Oswy's* Means, the East Saxons, who had relapsed into Paganism, were re-converted to the Belief of the Christian Faith.

A. D. 655. *Oswy*, in the twelfth Year of his Reign, with his Son *Alfred*, assembles a small Army at *Leeds*, in *Yorkshire*, and marches against the whole Body of the *Mercians*, who had rebelled, and defeated them, tho' they were thirty times more in Number. This Victory was attended with the Death of *Penda*. The Fall of cruel *Penda*, who had been the Death of four or five Christian Kings, caused a great Rejoicing, and also brought *Oswy* to the Height of Power, who in three Years, subdued the whole Kingdom of *Mercia*, and the greatest part of the *Picts*.

A. D. 664. A Synod of *Scotch* and *English* Bishops held in a Monastery in the North, in the Presence of *King* and his Son *Alfred*, about the Time of *Easter*; but they not being able to agree, the Affair broke up without coming to any Agreement about it. About this Time also, by means of *Theodore* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, with the liberal Arts and Sciences, began to flourish in this Island.

Oswy's Death. *Oswy* having granted part of *Mercia* to his Son-in-Law, and he being slain by Treason, he was opposed by *Wulfer*, who freed his Country from his Subjection. *Oswy* now falling sick, and being tormented with Remorse and Trouble for *Oswin's* Blood, and the Blood of many others, he vows a Pilgrimage to *Rome*, but Death soon put an end to his Designs. Thus ended a Reign of twenty eight Years, begun in Wars and ending in Troubles, in the Year 670, the Saxon chief Monarchy of *England* was removed to the *Mercians*.

Wulfer chief Monarch. *Wulfer* was now chief Monarch of the *English* more in Name than Reality; for his Reign was but a short one, and in the beginning he lost the Isle of *Lindsey* to the *Danish* King.

King of Northumberland; but three Years after that, Success against the West Saxons, and took the Right from King Renwald, which he gave to each King of the South Saxons. *Wulfer* now being a Christian, he destroyed the Worship of Idols throughout his Dominions, and caused the Gospel to be read in all the Parts of his Kingdom. Yet he is taxed with the Sin of Simony, in selling the Bishoprick of *Winton* to *Wina*, the deprived Bishop of *Winchester*. ^{Simony first in England.} Piety being now generally established, many Monasteries were founded, and Kings and Queens began to put on them the Habits of the Religious, and frequently to withdraw from their Thrones to the Monkish Life. *Wulfer* about four Years after the Decease of *A. D. 675.* died, and left his Body to be buried in the Monastery which he and his Brother had founded in *Peterborough*. *Ethelred*, the third Son of *Penda*, by the Consent of *Ethelred* the next Heir, succeeds *Wulfer*; he regains *Lindsey*, ^{chief Monarchy.} and all that *Wulfer* had lost, and then extended his Power against *Lothar* King of *Kent*, wasting his Country without Respect to Churches and religious Houses, particularly *Rocheſter*, which he plunder'd and drove its Bishop to such Extremities, that he was forced to forsake and the liberal Arts in *Mercia*, to get a Subjection. Not long after, the South Saxons were converted to the Christian Faith; and now King *Ethelred* by the Advice and Consent of *Theodore*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, divided the Kingdom of *Mercia* into five Dioceses, viz. *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Litchfield*, *Glouceſter*, and *Ciduaceſter*, all which were completed in the Year 679. In the Year following, by the Command of *Ethelred*, and three other Kings, viz. *Egfrid* of *Northumberland*, *Aldwulf* of the East Angles, and *Ethelbert* of *Kent*, Archbishop *Theodore* summoned a Synod at *Harfield* in *Hartfordſhire*, in which were received The Canons of five general Councils, as *Nice*, *Conſtance*, *of the general Councils* *Ephesus*, *Chalcedon*, and another in *Conſtantine* ^{received in England.} with those Constitutions made at *Rome* in the Year 448. Also the yearly Order and Course of Reading and Singings, as practised in *Rome*, were brought into England. At length King *Ethelred* founded the famous Monastery of *Bardney* in *Lincolnſhire*, turned Monk, and Abbot. ^{he had reigned about thirty Years.} Some Time after, *Ina* King of the West Saxons published his Laws, Civil and Ecclesiastical, by which

Jaume the first, and spent the rest of the
Monastery in that City. *Ceolred* succeeds
in the applause of the People, and reigned for a
great Peace and Prosperity, till *Ina* King
Saxons turned his Forces against *Mercia*; a
Battle was fought between these Rival King
burgh in *Wiltshire*, in the Year 715. The
this Battle is uncertain. The next Year, and
of his Reign, *Ceolred* feasting with his Nobles
suddenly possessed with an evil Spirit, and expired.
Ethelbald his Cousin once removed, succeeded
Kingdom. This Prince had a very long, and
part a peaceable Reign; at his Entrance he
Monastery of *Croyland*, now *Crowland* in
The former part of his Reign was in a great
rivalled, by *Ina* King of the *West Saxons*, with
South Saxons in several Encounters, and in
725, he slew *Aldwin* their King, and added
their dominions to the *West Saxon* Kingdom; so that
the Heptarchy was now reduced to six Kingdoms.
This Prince is the first that laid a Tax of a Penny
to be paid to the Pope, which was afterwards
reduced to a Pence; and soon after he resigned his Kingdom,
and ended his Days in a Monastery at *Rome*. By
Ethelbald commanded all on the South of the
he was in Alliance with the *Picts*, the *Scots* and
Disturbance, the *Britains* were partly under
Government, and partly under the *English*.
peaceful State of the Kingdom.

of the Affairs of this Nation than ever. In the mean Time *Ethelbald* reigned chief Monarch of *England*, and his Power was much increased, by his taking *Somerton* from the *West Saxons*, and from the *Northumbrians* much Spoil and Plunder; and about the Year 747 he became Master of *London*, and put an end to the *East Saxon* Kingdom; so that the Heptarchy was reduced to five Kingdoms. Under this Prince were held two Councils at *Cloveshoe* in *Kent*; the first in the Year 742, the other in 747. The former was to confirm King *Withred's* Acts concerning the Monasteries in *Kent*; the latter was at the Instance of Pope *Zachary*, who by his Epistles, admonished the *Saxons* from the highest to the lowest, to forsake their wicked and scandalous Actions. Several Canons were made concerning the Pastoral Charge, and many Provisions against the Inordinacy, extravagant Habits, Incontinency, Luxury, and irregular Lives of the Clergy, Monks, and Nuns. The Vices of these Times, as Fornication, Adultery, Murther, Drunkenness, Perjury, &c. were only punished with longer or shorter Penances, of Days, Weeks, Months, or Years. But no Body was so irregular as *Ethelbald* himself; for he contemned Marriage, gave himself up to unlawful Enjoyments, without any Difference of Place or Persons, with the Nuns as well as other Women. The Nobility and Commons were soon poisoned with his fatal Example, and the whole Nation became very vicious. *Boniface* the Pope's Legate reproves *Ethelbald*; at which, he repents of his former Life, and granted to the Church and Monasteries several large Immunities. At length after a Reign of above forty Years, fighting against the *West Saxons*, he was treacherously slain by his own Subjects, at the Instigation of *Beornred*, who likewise endeavoured to step into the Throne, but was also slain by *Offa* the *Mercian*. Upon his Death *Sigebert* King of the *West Saxons*, was for his Cruelty and Injustice solemnly deposed from his Kingdom, by the Authority of the grand Council of the same; which is the first Example of that Nature that we have in our *English* History.

The Kingdom of the East Saxons at an End. The two Councils of Cloveshoe.

Ethelbald, very vicious.

He is slain.

Sigebert deposed.

Offa, Cousin to King *Ethelbald*, succeeded in the Kingdom, he was the most valiant and powerful of all the *English Saxons*, which made the neighbouring Kings seek the Alliance of *Charles* the Great, King of *France*; but his Interest could no way prevail on *Offa* to desist from his

A. D. 756. *Offa* chief Monarch.

his Designs. He first attackt the *Kentish* Men at *ford*, slew King *Atric* with his own Hand, dispers'd Forces, and laid wast all their Country; then he t his Forces against *Kenwulf* King of the *West Saxons*, at *Berfington* in *Oxfordshire* he overthrew him and the Town. But not long after, in the Year 77 *Britains* both of North and South *Wales*, united Forces, invaded *Mercia*, and wasted all the Count far as they went, with Fire and Sword. Upon this, *Offa* made a Peace with the rest of the *Saxon* Kings, turning all his Forces against the *Welsh* Men, drove from the plain Country between the Rivers *Wye* and *vern*; which Country *Offa* seized, and planted *Saxons*, and annexed it to his own Kingdom, and

Offa makes a Ditch between Eng-
land and
Wales.
A. D. 777.

Tythes first
paid here.

a Ditch to be made from Sea to Sea, between his dom and *Wales*, which is to be seen at this Day in d Places, and is called *Offa's Ditch*. After this, reigned many Years in Splendor, and for the most in Peace. He procured *Litchfield* to be made an bishopruck; he called a Synod at *Celestib*, where a several Canons, Tythes were first ordered to be p *England*, and also declared to be of divine Right. No after, *Charles* the great sent a Book of Synodical D into *England*, in which among other things, contrary true Faith, 'twas asserted that Images ought to beac

A. D. 787.

The *Danes*
land in Eng-
land.

In the thirtieth Year of King *Offa's* Reign, nev lamities were brought on this Island; for three Sh *Danes* or *Norwegians* landed some Men in the who, being commanded to give an Account of Loading at the King's Custom House at *Dorchester*, the Officer, and all that were sent with him. Thi four Years these Pagans landed in the North, and dered the great Monastery of *Lindisfarne*, killed of the Fryars, took other Prisoners, sparing neither gy nor Laity. In the mean Time, King *Offa* main ed his Power, and kept up his Ambition, shewing as Faith as Mercy; for *Ezbelbert* King of the East A coming to his Court, to obtain his Daughter in A age, was by the Intigation of his Queen, *Queen* murdered, and his Dominions seized, and added t Kingdom of *Mercia*, in the Year 792, so that now were only four Kingdoms of the Heptarchy left, viz. *cia*, *West Saxony*, *Northumberland*, and *Kent*. And *Offa* having reigned with great Splendor and might: thority, about thirty seven Years, repaired to

The King-
dom of the
East Angles
at an end.

he with the like Zeal as *Ina* the West Saxon, he made his Kingdom subject to a Tribute, then called *Penhance* and *Romescot*; besides which he made rich Presents to Pope *Hadrian*, for canonizing *St. Alban*, the first Martyr, in Honour of whom he founded a Monastery near *Verulam*, and indowed it with large revenues; and at his Return to his Kingdom, he gave the tenth Part of his Goods to the Church and Poor; he also built another Monastery at *Bath*, and the Cathedral Church of *Hereford*, and another Church at *Warburton*, where that and the adjoining Town from him took the Name of *Off-Church*. But in the Year 794, he died in Peace at *Off-ley*, having reigned about 39 Years.

Offa dies.
A. D. 794.

Egbert his Son succeeded him, and restored to the Church whatever had been violently taken from it; but he died after a few Months Reign, and left the Crown

Egbert chief Monarch.

to *Kenwulf*, the next of the Royal Line, who by his prudent Behaviour both in Peace and War, shewed that he deserved it. In the second Year of his Reign, he to-

Kenwulf chief Monarch.

overthrew *Eadbert* King of *Kent*, and took him prisoner, and gave his Kingdom to *Cuthred*. Two Years after, at the Dedication of a Church built by him, at *Vinchester* in *Glostershire*, *Kenwulf*, in the Presence of *Cuthred*, thirteen Bishops, ten Dukes, many Nobles, and a great Concourse of People, led *Eadbert* the captive King to the high Altar, and there without either Ransom or Ransom gave him his Liberty. After this, *Kenwulf* reigned several Years in Peace, and was the last Mercian that was chief Monarch of *England*.

Egbert the famous West Saxon, being descended from the King *Ina*'s Brother, was the only Survivor of the Royal Line of that Kingdom, whose growing Greatness the King *Birtric* seek his Life; which caused *Egbert* to fly to *Offa*, King of *Mercia*, for Security; but *Birtric* having married *Eadburga* King *Offa*'s Daughter, he betrayed and delivered to *Birtric*. *Egbert* makes

A. D. 800.
Egbert chief Monarch.

Escape, and flies into *France*, where under *Charles* the Great he improved his Abilities, and refined his Education.

He flies into France.

At length, *Birtric* was accidentally poisoned; *Eadburga* having prepared a Cup of poisoned Wine for one of the King's Favourites, was by Mistake the death of the King. Upon this, the Nobility of the West Saxon Kingdom, unanimously recall *Egbert*, and acknowledge him King, to the universal Satisfaction of the Orders and Degrees. Being thus happily re-established, he

Is recalled.

he wisely began his Reign, by confirming his own Interest at Home, and in settling his Power and Sovereignty only in the Love and Affection of his Subjects. Being thus secured of the Hearts of his People, he resolved to attempt the Reduction of his troublesome and increasing Neighbours; he first attackt the *Britains* that inhabited *Cornwall*, subdued them, and in two Years more, rendered those in *Wales* his Tributaries. This roused *Beornwulf* King of *Mercia* to attempt to put a stop to this Conqueror's Progress; accordingly they met at a Place called *Ellandune* in *Wiltshire*, engaged, and *Beornwulf* was totally defeated in the Year 832. After this, *Egbert* sent his Son *Ethelwulf*, *Ealstan* Bishop of *Sherburn*, and *Wulfheard* his General, with a powerful Army, into *Kent*, which they easily conquered, the Inhabitants being enervated with Sloth, and at Variance with their own King *Baldred*, who fled beyond the *Thames* for his own Security. *Kent* being thus easily subdued, they proceeded, and with little or no Difficulty, conquered *Surry*, and the Southern and Eastern *Saxony*. This very Year the People of East *England*, being tired with the Government of the *Mercians*, submitted themselves to his Protection; and to convince King *Egbert* of their Sincerity, they would not desist, until they had slain *Beornwulf* and *Ludecun*, the *Mercian* Kings, who had been continuing Disturbers of their Neighbours. Now there remained nothing to conquer, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland*, which could not be difficult to perform, they being so divided amongst themselves; some for setting up one King and some another, then murdering the very King they had made; that for thirty three Years none had Courage enough to accept of the Crown. In this distracted Condition, in the Year 827, King *Egbert* found them upon whose Appearance, these People came voluntarily and yielded to him, and gave him Security for their quiet and obedient Deportment. By the Submission of the *Northumbrians* to King *Egbert*, there was an entire End put to the Heptarchy. Soon after which, King *Egbert* was in a very solemn manner crowned King of all *Britain* at *Winchester*; and by an Edict, commanded, that these seven Kingdoms thus united under one Head, should for the future, be called *Engleland* or *England*, though the Name *England* had been used long before this Time, it was not established by Virtue of a Proclamation. Here I beg the Reader's Pardon, if he doth not meet with for

As mentioned in other Writers, in this general View of the Saxon Heptarchy, collected for the most part out of a Heap of Rubbish, and from trifling, lame, and contradictory Accounts, that we have transmitted to us of those Times, by the Monkish Writers thereof.

S E C T. V.

From the Establishment of King Egbert, to the beginning of the Danish Monarchy, under King Canute.

E G B E R T.

King *Egbert* having thus happily united the Parts of the Nation into one Kingdom, we might reasonably expect, that he and his People should have enjoyed the Fruits of Peace for many Years ; but these Expectations were soon frustrated, by the Arrival of a new Swarm of People from the Northern Parts of Europe, called *Danes*, and *Normans*, or *Norwegians*, who now began their furious Inroads and Invasions, on the Coasts of *England*, committing all manner of Cruelties, and Pagan Barbarities, so that they out-did the Saxons that came before them. They first landed in the Isle of *Skepy* in *Kent*, where meeting with little Resistance, they ravaged the Country. The next Year they arrived in thirty five Ships, and landed at *Charmouth* in *Dorsetshire*, to which place King *Egbert* with his Army marched, and at the River *Carr*, gave the *Danes* Battel, and in the former part of the Fight had the Advantage, till towards Night the Scale turned, and he lost the Victory, the *Danes* keeping the Field of Battel. King *Egbert* retreated and saved the Dishonour of an entire Defeat. In this Engagement two Saxon Generals, viz. *Dudda* and *Osmund* were slain ; and also two Bishops, viz. *Herefrid* and *Wigferth*. This was the only Check of Fortune, that ever King *Egbert* met with in all his Reign. About two Years after, the *Danes* returned with a more powerful Navy, and

The Danes invade England.

A. D. 832.

833.

835.

strong or Limb; he was a most valiant
politick Prince, very fortunate in War, and
Accomplishments of Mind.

ETHELWULF.

E*Gbert* was succeeded in the Throne by *Ethelwulf*, who is described as a Man of
a different Nature, with an Aversion to War, and had be-
fore in large Dominions; he had betaken himself to a
Monastery of *Winchester*, enter'd into Monachy,
and was afterwards Bishop of that Place. At the
earnest Request of the Nobility and People,
he was prevailed on to leave that, and accept of the
Crown. The Pope having given him a Dispensation for that purpose.
But his unwarlike Disposition gave the *Danes*
encouragement to renew their Invasions on the Kingdom.
Accordingly they came the next Year with
Ships, and landed in diverse Places at the same time,
so that the Inhabitants were at a Loss to know
how to make Head against these barbarous Invaders,
all the Country wheresoever they came.
The *Danes* were defeated at *Southampton*, and got a Victory
near *mouth*; and not long after, at a Place called
the *Engliff* under the Command of Earl *Hastin*
routed, and the greatest part of the Army was
The following Year they ravaged *Lindsey*, *Lincoln*,
and *Kent* continuing their Invasions.

Aspre, engaged them at the Mouth of the River *Pedridan*, killed a great Number of them, and obtained a great Victory, which put a Stop to their outrageous Insults, and reduced their Power for about six Years after. But in the fifteenth Year of his Reign, the *Danes* entered the River *A. D. 851* of *Thames*, landed in *Kent*, and took and pillaged both *Canterbury* and *London*, and in their farther Progress, they defeated *Berthulf* King of *Mercia*, with his whole Army; after which they marched into *Surry*, and behaved themselves so insolently, as if the whole Power of the *English* Nation had not been able to withstand them; but at a Place called *Aclea*, now *Oakely* in *Surry*, they were met by King *Ethelwulf*, and his Son *Ethelbald*, who had assembled all the Forces of the *West Saxons*; both Armies engaged, and after a long and doubtful Battel, the *Danes* were beaten, with the Loss of a vast Number of their Soldiers; this not only gave the King great Glory and Reputation, but was accounted a fortunate Year to *England*. His Brother *Athelstand* King of *Kent*, overcame the *Danes* at *Sandwich*, pursued them to the Sea, and took several of their Ships; and in *Devonshire*, Earl *Ceorle* at *Windlebore*, had many Advantages over them, so that they were obliged to retire into the Island of *Thanet*, where they continued all the Winter; and had the *English* made the best of their Successes, the *Danes* in all human Probability, had been totally expelled the Kingdom. The *Saxons* thinking themselves free from all Danger from their Enemies, fell again to their wonted Quarrels.

The *Danes* beat in several Places by the *English*.

About this Time, the *Danes* landed again in *Thanet*, ^{853.} against whom, *Ealder* with the Forces of *Kent*, and *Hudda* with those of *Surry*, marched, and attacked them; the Battel was desperate, the Success doubtful, and the Loss equal on both Sides; the next Year the *Danes* winter'd in *Sbepey*. A grand Council or Parliament was held by the *Saxons*, to consult Measures for their Security, in this Council it was enacted, that the Lands and Profits of the Church should be for ever free from all Taxes and Tributes; this is since often called the Grant of King *Ethelwulf*. Having settled his Affairs at Home, in great Devotion he took a Journey to *Rome*, where he confirmed *Peter Pence*, and presented his Holiness with many large Gifts; in his Return thro' *France*, he married *Judith*, Daughter of *Charles* the Bald then Emperor, in Honour of whom he placed her in a Chair of State, and gave her such Marks

The *Danes* are again formidable.

K. takes a Journey to *Rome*. Marries the Emperor's Daughter.

of Dignity, as were directly contrary to the Law of *West Saxons*, that had been made on Account of *Ethelburga's* Crimes; which Law was, that none of the Queens for the future should have either Title, Majesty, or Place of Royalty. These Things made the Nobles very uneasy, and were the Cause of a dangerous Conspiracy against him. For his eldest Son *Ethelbald*, *Brian*, and *Ernulf* Earl of *Somerset*, used all possible Endeavours to deprive him of his Kingdom. But *Ethelwulf*, to avoid the Miseries of civil Discord, by the Consent of his Nobles, agreed to divide his Kingdom between himself and his Son. Accordingly a Division was made; he conceded the Western and best Part to his Son, keeping the Eastern and worst Part to himself. long after this, *Ethelwulf* finding himself declining, disposed of his Kingdom by Will, giving *Kent* and *sex* to his second Son *Ethelbert*, and the rest of the Kingdom to *Ethelbald*. He died on the thirteenth Day of *January*, A. D. 857, and was buried at the Cathedral in *Winchester*, having reigned twenty Years and Months.

A Conspiracy against him.

The Land divided between him and his Son.

His Death.

ETHEL BALD.

857. *Ethelbald* succeeds his Father *Ethelwulf* in the Throne, but we have little left either of his Person or Actions, only that he was a luxurious and perfidious Prince, being charmed with the Beauty of his Step-Mother, married her contrary to the Laws of God and Man. Having without any other memorable Action reigned almost three Years, he died on the 20th of *December*, A. D. 860, being buried at *Sherburn* in *Dorsetshire*, thence removed to *Salisbury*.

ETHEL BERT.

860. Upon *Ethelbald's* Decease, *Ethelbert*, second Son of *Ethelwulf*, became Monarch of *England*, who sooner ascended the Throne, but he was molested by Invasions of the bloody *Danes*, who, with a powerful Navy, landed at *Southampton*, and took and sack'd the City of *Winchester*: but in their Return, the *Berkshire* Men, under the Conduct of Earl *Osfrik*, attack'd them, overthrew them, retook their Booty, and slew a great Number of them. But the *Kentish* Men being weak

The Danes invade England.

out with frequent Harms, purchased their Peace with a large Sum of Money: the *Danes* perbviously broke the League, whereupon the *English* Men, with the utmost Resolution, assembled their Forces, fell on these Infidels, overcame them, and with a dreadful Slaughter, expelled them at last out of their Country. About this Time, King *Ethelbert* died, having reigned five Years, and was buried by his Brother at *Sherburne*.

ETHELRED.

Ethelred, the third Son of *Ethelbert*, succeeded his Brother, whose Reign was one continued Conflict with the Pagan *Danes*; in the beginning of which, *Hingwar* and *Habba*, two valiant Brothers, invaded the Nation with a vast Army, landed in East *England*, and made a Truce with the Inhabitants, that they might provide themselves with Horses and Provisions. They took Advantage of the civil Discords of the *Northumbrians*, passed the *Humber*, ravaged the North, took the City of *Tork*, slew two Kings there, with incredible Numbers of the People, and then laid the City in Ashes: After which, they substituted a King under them, over all the North Parts beyond the River *Tine*. The next Year the *Danes* passed into *Mercia*, took *Nottingham*, and winter'd there. These Inroads of the *Danes*, roused up King *Ethelred* to assist the *Mercians*, who with *Edmund* King of the *East Angles*, join'd the *Mercians*, and forced the *Danes* to abandon that Place, and fly back to *Tork*, where they continued about a Year, practising all manner of Severities and barbarous Cruelties. No sooner was the Winter past, but the *Danes* break their Truce; they repass the *Humber* in Boats, and *Hingwar* and *Habba* destroy all before them with Fire and Sword; in particular, the famous Monastery of *Bradley*, and also that of *Croyland*, with many others, murdering the Monks and Nuns without any Mercy, or Distinction of Age or Sex; then they entered *Kesteven*, another part of *Lincolnshire*, and committed the like Barbarities. This caused the valiant Count *Algar*, Earl of *Holland*, now *Holland*, to assemble what Forces he could, viz. two hundred Men belonging to *Croyland* Abby, and three hundred from about *Boston*; *Mercard* Lord of *Bourne* with his numerous Family, well disciplin'd and armed, and *Uggot* Governor of *Lincoln* with five hundred pick'd Men, joined them, and march against the *Danes*,

The *Danes* arrive under *Hingwar* and *Habba*.

Lincolnshire laid waste.

Ely. After this they march'd into East E
meeting with Earl *Wulfstan*, who made a
sistance, they cut him off with all his Ar
ter'd at *Thetford*. Here King *Edmund* mad
them, but was overcome, and taken Pri
they bound to a Post, and shot him to De
rows, and then subdued his whole Country
of his Burial being afterwards called St. *Ea*
The next Year they bent their Course towa
Saxons, the only People left, who had Fe
rage to oppose them, and encamp'd near *Rea*
the Rivers *Thames* and *Kennet*. Three Da
ing sent out some Parties to forage, at *Engl*
shire, *Ethelwulf* Earl of *Berkshire* attack'd
them with a great Slaughter, and killed
Earls. Four Days after, King *Ethelred*, w
ther *Alfred*, gave Battel to the chief Body c
in which Earl *Ethelwulf* was slain, with a
ber of others; the *Danes* keeping the Field. F
ter this, at *Ejcsdune* or *Asbdune*, both Par
with their full Strength; the Battel was fo
doubtful, but at last Victory inclined to the
Danes gave way, were cut to pieces, and t
their Army lost, so that such a Victory i
known for many Ages; but the scattered
vanquished Army got together near *Basing*
skirmish'd with the King's Army, and had th
Two Months after this, the *Danes* having
Supplies

report he died of his Wounds, others, that the Plague The Death which followed took him off, after he had reigned above of Ethelred five Years in very great Reputation.

ALFRED.

Alfred succeeded him, who was the fourth Son of ^{872.} *Ethelwulf*, and was justly esteemed the Mirror of Princes, but was perpetually harrassed, either with the *Danes* or the Vices of the Times. Scarce had he performed his Brother's Obsequies, and the Solemnity of his Coronation, he being the first King that ever was appointed in this Nation, but he was obliged to engage the whole Power of the *Danes* at *Wilton*, and that with an inconsiderable Number of Troops, where at first by his Courage and Conduct the *Danes* were constrained to fly, but finding the Number of the Persuers to be but small, they rallied, encountred the weary *English*, and became Masters of the Field. Both Sides being now tired with incessant Hostilities, this Year a Peace was concluded The Mercians make Peace with the Danes. with the *Danes*, upon Condition they should leave the Kingdom, which was done, but the next they landed again, marched from *Reading* to *London*, and there took up their Winter Quarters, and the *Mercians* were obliged to make a Peace with them. The following Summer, ^{874.} these Rovers marched Northward, and winter'd at *Torksey* in *Lincolnshire*, where the *Mercians* gladly renewed their Articles of Peace; thence they marched to *Repton* upon *Trent* in *Darbyshire*, forced *Burhed* King of the *Mercians* to quit both his Kingdom and the Nation, and retire to *Rome*. Having thus got Possession of the Kingdom of *Mercia*, they let it out to farm to one *Ceolwulf*, Mercia farmed out by the Danes. upon Condition, that he should restore it on Demand. The *Danes* now divide their Army into two Parts; the one marched into *Northumberland*, and the other to *Cambridge*, and by this means, like Locusts, they spread themselves all over the Country. King *Alfred* finding that there was no likelyhood of any end of those Calamities, as long as the Enemies were Masters at Sea; accordingly he man'd out a small Fleet, met with seven of the *Danes* Ships, took one, and dispersed the rest. Alfred mans out a Fleet The following Summer the *Danes* remove to a Castle of the ^{876.} *West Saxons*, called *Werbun*, where *Alfred*, by Money or Policy, brought them to swear, that they would leave

the Land. But they, according to Custom, falsified Oaths, and in the Night got with their Horse to *Ebor* and winter'd in those Parts. At the same Time, *Harold* their King divided *Northumberland* among his People who began to cultivate it with Tillage. The following Year, the *Danes* sailing to the Westward, met with so violent a Storm, that above a hundred and twenty of their Ships were cast away, near *Swans-Nich* in *Hampshire*, and the rest so disabled, that they became an easy Prey to King *Alfred's* Gallies. At the same Time, King's Troops besieged the *Danes* at *Exeter*, who hearing of the Disaster of their Fleet, offered sufficient Hostages, took new Oaths, and concluded a Peace; upon this, they left *West Saxony*, and departed into *Mercia*. But the next Year, they with a great Force entered *West Saxony*, wasted all the Country, drove the Inhabitants out, and took Possession of their Estates. Upon this, *Alfred* with a small Company, was forced to retire into the Woods and Bogs in *Somersetshire*; at length he was forced alone to take up his Lodging with a Swine Herd, so that neither his Friends nor his Enemies could tell where he was. This poor Man's Name was *Wulf*, whom afterwards the King made Bishop of *Exeter*, for his Devotion, and Aptness to Learning. At this Time, *Hastin* and the Brother of *Hingwar* coming with twenty three Ships from *North Wales*, where they had made great Devastations, landed in *Devonshire*, a strong Castle called *Kenwith*, on whom the King made a Sally, and slew them, with twelve hundred of their Men. The King also not despairing of his Affairs, built a Castle at *Athelney* in *Somersetshire*, in which he valiantly defended himself and his Followers. Seven Weeks after, he marched from thence with his Subjects to *Ecbryestone*, now *Braxstone*, where he was surrounded by the Inhabitants of *Wiltshire*, *Somersetshire*, and part of *Hampshire*, with the utmost Marks of Joy and Satisfaction. But the Enemy being superior in Numbers and having other Advantages, he durst not attack them till he had found out their Foible; to accomplish which he put on the Habit of a Musician, and with one Companion only, enters their Camp, and being very skillful both in Singing and Playing, was soon admitted into the King's Presence. He improved his Opportunity, and did all that was necessary for his Design, and returned to

The *Danes* who began to cultivate it with Tillage. The following Year, the *Danes* sailing to the Westward, met with

so violent a Storm, that above a hundred and twenty of their Ships were cast away, near *Swans-Nich* in *Hampshire*, and the rest so disabled, that they became an easy Prey to King *Alfred's* Gallies. At the same Time, King's Troops besieged the *Danes* at *Exeter*, who hearing of the Disaster of their Fleet, offered sufficient Hostages, took new Oaths, and concluded a Peace; upon this, they left *West Saxony*, and departed into *Mercia*. But the next Year, they with a great Force entered *West*

Saxony, wasted all the Country, drove the Inhabitants out, and took Possession of their Estates. Upon this, *Alfred* with a small Company, was forced to retire

into the Woods and Bogs in *Somersetshire*; at length he was forced alone to take up his Lodging with a Swine

Herd, so that neither his Friends nor his Enemies could tell where he was. This poor Man's Name was *Wulf*, whom afterwards the King made Bishop of *Exeter*, for his Devotion, and Aptness to Learning. At this Time, *Hastin* and the Brother of *Hingwar* coming with twenty three Ships from *North Wales*, where they had made great Devastations, landed in *Devonshire*, a strong Castle called *Kenwith*, on whom the King made a Sally, and slew them, with twelve hundred of their Men. The King also not despairing of his Affairs, built a Castle at *Athelney* in *Somersetshire*, in which he valiantly defended himself and his Followers. Seven Weeks after, he marched from thence with his Subjects to *Ecbryestone*, now *Braxstone*, where he was surrounded by the Inhabitants of *Wiltshire*, *Somersetshire*,

and part of *Hampshire*, with the utmost Marks of Joy and Satisfaction. But the Enemy being superior in Numbers and having other Advantages, he durst not attack

them till he had found out their Foible; to accomplish which he put on the Habit of a Musician, and with one Companion only, enters their Camp, and being very skillful both in Singing and Playing, was soon admitted into the King's Presence. He improved his Opportunity, and did all that was necessary for his Design, and returned to

Castle at *Atbelney*, where calling together all his Followers, he acquainted them with the Condition of the *Danes* Camp, and shewed them with what Ease they might be destroyed. This gave them all new Life and Courage, and a Resolution to attempt their own Redemption; accordingly with all their Forces, they march to *Eccles* Roads the in Wiltshire, where they attack'd the whole *Danish* Power, Danes. and gained a complete Victory; *Alfred* pursues them, and obliges them to beg for a Peace, on such Terms, as himself should think fit to impose; which were, that they should swear to leave his Kingdom within a limited space of Time, and that their King *Guthrum* should become a Christian, all which was performed in about three Weeks after. At his Baptism, *Alfred* became his God-father, called his Name *Atbelstan*, and took him for his adopted Son. During this Negotiation, another Swarm of *Danes* sailed up the River of *Thames*, and winter'd at *Fallingham* now *Fulham*. The better to oppose these Pagan Invaders for the future, King *Alfred* wisely resolves to encrease his Naval Forces, and in three A Navy provided. Years Time, he had got ready a considerable Fleet, with which he engaged several of the *Danes*, took two of their Ships, and threw the Men over Board; not long after, he took two more, with two of their Princes, but not without some Loss. Two or three Years after, 885. more *Danes* entred the *Thames* and *Medway*, and be- More Danes arrive. sieged *Rocheſter*, but at the Approach of King *Alfred* they fled to their Ships, leaving behind all their Horſes, and many Priſoners, and retired to *France*. The *Engliſh* Fleet coming to the Mouth of the River *Stoure* by *Harwich*, met thirteen *Danish* Ships, well provided with Men and Ammunition, fought them, and took them all, and then killed all their Men; but in their Return, the *Danes*, with their whole Naval Forces engaged them; and the *Engliſh* loſt much of their former Honour. The next Year King *Alfred* takes *London* from the *Danes*, London recovered. which had been long in their Poſſeſſion, repaired it, and reſtored it to its antient Luſtre, and made *Ethelred*, Earl of the *Mercians*, Governor. From this Time, for about eight Years, the Nation enjoyed perfect Peace and Tranquillity. The Affairs of the Nation being thus happily ſettled, the Learned King *Alfred* proceeded to many worthy Regulations, and to promote all things, that might tend either to the Honour or Advantage of his Subjects. For the Encouragement of Learning he ſent for *Grimbold*, Peace in the Land. *Scot.*

886.
The Univer-
sity of Oxford
founded.

Alfred di-
vides the Na-
tion into
Counties &c.

893.
New Inva-
sions of the
Danes,

Who are
worsted in
severa. En-
gagements.

Scotus, and *Asser*, and other learned Men, placed the
at *Oxford*, and founded that famous University, in which
he erected three Colleges, one for Grammarians, another
for Philosophers, and a third for Divines. He also re-
paired all the Cities and Castles, and built others in the
most necessary Places, and walled several Towns and
Castles, and made them defensible against all the Power.
And for the better Distribution of Justice, he divided the
Provinces of *England* into distinct Counties, and those again
into Hundreds and Tithings, and all Parishes; so that every
Person was to be condemned or acquitted of his Crimes, in the
Division where he lived. The Government of these Provinces
was committed to Judges or Justices of the Peace, and Sheriffs.
Thus, by the King's Care and Industry, there succeeded so great
Tranquillity throughout the Realm, that if a Traveller had
drop'd a Bag of Money on the Road, he might have found it
untouched the next Day. This glorious quiet Time was inter-
rupted soon; for about eight Years after the Conclusion of the
last Peace, the *Danes* in hundred and fifty Vessels, en-
tered the River *Lismene* in *Kent*, drew their Shipping four
Miles up the River, in the Wood *Andred*, and landed there, and
built a Fortress. After them came one *Hastien* into the *Thames*,
with eighty Vessels, and erected a Fort at *Midleton*. But King
Alfred to prevent this Storm, obliged the *Danes* of *Northum-
berland* and *East Sax*, by an Oath of Fidelity, and received
Hostages from them. Then *Alfred* assembled his Forces, en-
camps between the two Parties to prevent their joining; at
length at *Farnham* in *Surry*, he met them, fought them, and
put them to flight. At *Beamsfleet*, *Hastien* and his Forces were
defeated, the Castle taken and plundered; many were made
Prisoners, and all their Ships destroyed, or brought to *London*
and *Rocheſter*. Amongst the Prisoners were *Hastien's* Wife
and Sons, which made him beg a Peace, which King *Alfred*
granted, and gave them their full Liberty. A great Number
of the *Danes* having landed in the West, and invell'd *Exeter*,
Alfred, and his Army hastened towards that City, and be-
sieged the *Danes* there, who being distressed with Famine,
resolve on a Sally, are defeated, and obliged to fly into
Essex to their Ships and Forts. About the same Time, the
Danes that had possessed themselves of *Mercia*, drew up
their Ships on the Banks, in the River *Lee*, where they built
a Fort, at or

Were twenty Miles from *London*. To prevent from ~~attacking~~ *London*, King *Alfred* cut several *Ditches*, with which he so drained the River that the Ships were left on dry Ground, and could not be gotten off. Upon this, the *Danes* sent *Wives and Children* into East *England*, and marching on the *Saevon*, where they winter'd. The *Is of Lundy* brought off what Ships they could, and destroyed the rest, and made great *Reps* for their Removal. About this Time, *England* ^{800.} ~~was~~ ^{A great} ~~was~~ ^{Plague.} with a dreadful Plague, which continued three

and raged violently both amongst Men and Beasts, in the King lost many of the Flower of his Nobility.

The *Danes* Ships that infested the Isle of *Wight*, and Coasts of *Devonshire*, were beaten by the King's *Ships*, and one of them taken; the Prisoners were sent to *Winchester*, and by the King's Command, hang'd *traitors*, and common Enemies. And in the same

not fewer than twenty of their Ships were on the South Coast, with all their Men. During tempestuous Times, King *Alfred* fought the *Danes* on Land, in six or seven Battels, of which eight ended in one Day, by which he so wasted their Forces that they were constrained to submit to such Conditions as he thought fit to impose. A Peace being thus ^{A Peace} ~~made.~~

the King employed his Time in the noblest Exercise, and in the most laudable manner, which made him admired abroad, and beloved at Home. And if we consider his whole Life, none ever discharged the duties of a Man, a King, and a Christian, so well, for the good of his People, and his own Reputation. He might be no way wanting to God, himself, nor his Country, he divided the natural Day into three Parts; Hours he spent in Prayer, Study, and Writing; Hours in the Service and Recreation of his Body, the other eight Hours in the Affairs of the State;

Spaces he divided by a great Wax Light, and informed as the several Hours pass, by an Organ appointed for that End. We shall dismiss this Story, with that Character given him by a very great Historian who upon a due Consideration of all Things, thus comes out. "O *Alfred*, the Wonder and Astonishment of all Ages! If we reflect upon his Piety and Religion, we should seem that he had never gone out of a Monastery; if on his warlike Exploits, that he had lived no
"where

" where but in a Camp ; if on his Writings and S
 " dies, that he had spent his whole Life in a Univer
 " and lastly, if we regard his Administration of the
 " fairs of his Kingdom and Subjects, one would th
 " that his whole Time had been employed in nothing
 " but enacting Laws, and promoting Justice in his
 " bunals and Courts." He took precise Notice of
 Revenues, and made a Survey of his Kingdom, wh
 he kept in a Register Book at *Winchester* ; he sever
 punished corrupt and ignorant Judges. At length in
 fifty first Year of his Age, when he had reigned two
 nine Years, and above six Months, in the Year 900,
 on the twenty fifth of *October*, he died, and was bur
 at *Winchester*.

His Death

*EDWARD the Elder.*900
Edward suc-
ceeds.*Ethelwald*
rebels.Who flies
and joins
the Danes.A Peace con-
cluded.
910.

THE real Sorrow of the Nation, occasioned by
 Death of King *Alfred*, was much alleviated by
 Succession of Prince *Edward* his eldest Son, who,
 he was much inferior to his Father in Learning, and
 abilities, exceeded him afterwards both in Power
 Grandeur. Notwithstanding the general Affection
 the People for Prince *Edward*, his Cousin *Ethel-*
 pretended to the Crown; accordingly he seized on t
 Towns called *Winburn* and *Tweonam*, in the former
 which he fortified himself, declaring, he would live
 die in that Place; but upon the Approach of King
 ward's Army at *Baddenbryg* near *Winburn*, he fled
 of the Town by Night, and posied to *Northumberl.*
 where he joined the *Danes*, who acknowledged him K
 of *England*. Thus King *Edward* without fighting,
 pelled *Ethelwald*, and the *Kentish* Men the follow
 Year beat a considerable Party of the *Danish* Pirates.
 the mean Time, *Ethelwald* went into *France*, and be
 reinforced by the *Normans*, returned the next Year
England, joined the *Danes*, and invaded *Mercia* with
 and Sword, as far as *Crekelade* in *Wiltshire*; then pat
 the *Thames*, he made great Devastations, and so ret
 ed. King *Edward* pursues them, laying all waste,
 tween *Dece's Ditch* in *Cambridgeshire*, and the *R*
Ouse; a bloody Batel ensues, wherein the *Danes*,
 they kept the Field, lost their King, *Eolrick*, and *E*
 wald the Author of this War. Hence a Peace ens
 which lasted for the Space of three Years; at the en
 w

been granted: his predecessors should continue.
About two Years after, the Danes invaded
England and made great Havock, were driven
into Herefordshire, but were repulsed
by the Inhabitants, who took their King
prisoner, a new Fleet of the Danes arrived
and ravaged the Coasts of Wales, and
at Hereford, they took King Edward's
whole Ransom King Edward presently returned
his the Danes retired to Ireland, and spent the
wintering Time, in which King Edward took
able Ways to strengthen himself, and to recover
him, by building many Towns and Castles, and for
others; in particular, while he was continuing
in Herefordshire, the Danes took an opportunity
lay Siege to Worcester, but Supplies being im-
mensely sent, the Danes fled in the Night, were per-
rised between Burnwood and Ashbury, with
any Men and much Baggage. King Edward
besieged the new Fort of Hereford, which they
by Storm, and slew their King, with all the rest
of the King's Parties, who chose Death, rather than
surrender, and carry the Place, putting all the
a few, that escaped over the Wall, to the Danes
who had laid Siege to Worcester.

King of the
Scots and Or-
thers submit.

their Lord; whose Example the *Northumbrians*, *British* King, and his Subjects follow. These famous Acts of the great King *Edward*, who tended his Dominions beyond any of his Predecessors. But now after a fortunate and triumphant Reign of twenty four Years, in the Year 924, he dies, buried at *Winchester* by his Father, leaving behind five Sons, and nine Daughters.

ÆTHELSTAN.

924.
Æthelstan
crowned
King.

Northumber-
land added to
Æthelstan's
Dominions.

934.
He invades
Scotland.

A *Æthelstan*, his Son, being thirty Years of Age; Spirit, was by the Consent of the Nobility, crowned before his legitimate Son *Edmund*, under whose Authority he was crowned at *Kingston upon Thames*; but one *Godwin* opposed him, on the Account of his illegitimacy, conspired to seize him at *Winchester*, and put out his Eyes. This Plot was opportunely discovered, taken, and utterly denied the Fact; for which Reason he was sent to *Rome*, to purge himself before the Pope. Where coming to take his Oath before the Altar of *Peter*, he fell down, was carried off, and died three Days after. *Æthelstan's* Affairs were a little disturbed, on the North Side of the *Humber*, where *Inguald*, one of the *Danish* Kings, seized on *York*, and *Sithric*, the King of *Northumberland*, by Force made himself Master of *Davenport* in *Cheshire*, and he became so formidable, that *Æthelstan* gave him his Sister *Edgitha* in Marriage. But *Sithric* dying soon after, the Kingdom of *Northumberland* was added to the King's Dominions, which Means, he became the first, that ever reigned in *England*, without any other King under him; and by his Conquests, this Prince justly deserved the Title of Monarch, tho' it was not assumed, till *Edred* his younger Brother came to the Throne. *Northumberland* reduced, *Godfrid* fled into *Scotland*, and his Brother *Malcolm* fled into *Ireland*. Upon which, *Æthelstan* invaded *Scotland* both by Sea and Land, and drove his Enemies before him by Sea, as far as *Cathness*, and by Land, *Dunfermline*, and *Merlmore*. This caused *Constance* and *Eugenius* King of *Cumberland*, to deliver themselves up to the King's Mercy, who treated them in a very lenient way suitable to their Dignity; but *Godfrid* and *Malcolm*, made their Escape, and collecting Forces, besieged *York*, but without Success, and

after taken, and imprisoned in a Castle, from
 ce also they made their Escape. Not long after,
 id was call away, and drowned, and Godefrid sub-
 d.

at long after, *Constantine* King of *Scotland*, with ^{938.}
 f from *Ireland*, fell on *Eugenius* King of *Cumber-* ^{England in-}
 and after four Years Preparations, they invaded ^{vaded by the}
 and, by the River *Humber*, and advanced as far as *Bru-* ^{Scots and o-}
 rg in *Northumberland*. *Anlaf* to find out the Pos-
 of the King's Forces, put on the Habit of a Musi-
 and by his Harp and Voice, got Admittance into the
 's Tent, by which he had Opportunity to make his
 arks, and being dismiss'd, one who had formerly
 d under him, knew him, of which he acquaints the
 , who blamed him for letting his Enemy go; but he
 ered, that he had first given his Military Oath to
 f, and if he had betrayed him, the King might justly
 st him for the like Treason. But to prove his Fi-
 t, he advised the King to remove his Tent, which
 lone, and a Bishop coming, pitched his Tent in the
 Place. *Anlaf* returns in the Night, fell on the Bi-
 s Tent, and slew him, and his Retinue. At this
 army was alarmed, and the next Morning a bloody ^{A bloody}
 l ensued, both Parties fought desperately, till at ^{Battel.}
 b *Constantine* was killed on the Spot; the *Scots*
 way, and *Anlaf* and his Followers fled, and were
 ed with a terrible Destruction. This Victory ad-
 ally to the Reputation of King *Athelstan*, and the
 e of it flying thro' all Christendom, many Kings
 ambitious of his Friendship, and sought an Alliance ^{Princes seek}
 him on any Terms. *Henry* the Emperor sent Am- ^{Alliance}
 lors, to desire one of his Sisters in Marriage for his ^{with Athel-}
Gaba. *Hugh* King of *France* requested another for ^{stan.}
 n, and *Lewis* Prince of *Aquitain* begged the like
 ur for himself. These were all kindly received by
Athelstan, who under the Conduct of his General
 ul, and some of his chief Courtiers, sent four of
 lers, who for Chastity were superior to *Diana*, and
 many exceeded *Helena*. The two eldest were mar-
 o the Emperor's Son, and another great Prince of
 ert, and the two youngest, to the Kings of *France*
Aquitain. Now *Athelstan*, with his Brother *Edmund*,
 e *Wales*, and with great Ease, reduced *Ludwal*
 chief King to Subjection. Then he commanded
 e petty Kings of *Wales* to meet him at *Hereford*,

Kings of
Wales made
Tributary.

and obliged them to pay him yearly twenty Pound weight of Gold, three hundred of Silver, twenty five thousand Beeves, and as many Hounds and Hawks as he should demand.

The Punish-
ment of
Murder pec-
uniary, not
capital.

King *Ashelstan*, being thus dreaded abroad, and feared at Home, enjoyed Peace for near three Years; during which Time, he made many Laws for the preserving the Quiet and Government of his Country, one of which for its Peculiarity, we shall here recite; the Price of Murther or Man-killing was established, from the King to the Peasant, to be paid in *Thrimsa's*, a piece of Silver of the Value of three Shillings. Or if for the Life of the King they were to pay thirty thousand of which one half the King's Relations received, and the Nation the other half. For an Archbishop fifteen thousand; for a Bishop or Alderman eight thousand; for the Life of a Field-Marshal, Knight-Marshal, or General four thousand; for a Priest two thousand, and for a Peasant, two hundred and sixty seven; the half to be given to the Relations, and half to the Nation. At length this great Prince, having performed all noble Parts of Religion, Justice, and Magnanimity, died in the Year 940 at *Glocester*, and was buried at *Malmesbury*, having reigned fifteen Years and odd Months.

EDMUND.

940.
*Edmund suc-
ceeds.*

E*dmund*, Brother of the great *Ashelstan*, succeeded to the Throne, and tho' he was but eighteen Years old he was not inferior to his Predecessors in Courage and Bravery; as an Instance of which, in the second Year of his Reign he freed *Mercia* from the Power of the *Danes*, and took from them *Leicester*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Stamford* and *Darby*, where they had been placed by his Father King *Edward*. Hence a Peace ensued during which, *Odo* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, set forth diverse Canons, of which one was, That the King and Nobility should pay the most humble Obedience to the Archbishop and Bishops. But there was soon put a End to King *Edmund's* great Actions, and his Friend Expectations, by a very strange Accident: For the King being at a Festival amidst his People and Servants, who loved and honoured him, was stabbed by one *Leof*, an Outlaw. He had reigned six Years and six Months, and was buried at *Glassenbury*.

The History of ENGLAND.

82

EDRED.

Edred his youngest Brother, succeeded him in the ^{A. D. 946} Throne, notwithstanding he left two Sons, ^{Edred succeeds, the first who was styled King of Great Britain.} *Edgar*, and was by the Consent of the Nobility and People crowned at *Kingston*, and was the very first King of *England*, who in writing, styled himself King of *Britain*. In the first Year of his Reign he subdued all *Northumberland*; upon which, the *Scots* swore obedience to him. Some Time after, the *Norwegians* recalled *Anlaf*, and set him up for a considerable time; after that, they made one *Eric*, the Son of *Harald*, a *Dane*, King: But *Edred* advancing, they submitted to his Government, and appeals'd him with great Gifts. But the King, being seized with a languishing Distemper, and at length consumed with a tedious Sickness, died in the Flower of his Age, having reigned ^{His Death.} *one Year, and six Months*.

EDWI.

Edwi, the eldest Son of King *Edmund*, succeeds in the Throne, and was unanimously crowned at *Kingston*. ^{Edwi succeeds.} who for the Loveliness of his Person, was surnamed *the Fair*. He was now about fourteen Years of Age. And Writers give him the Character of a very handsome Prince; for on the very Day of his Coronation, he withdrew himself from the Company of his Nobles, retired to the Chamber of his Concubine *Algyva*; the Barons being much offended at this, they sent *Bishop Dunstan*, a Man of great Courage, to request his return: who boldly entred the Chamber, sharply rebuked the Women, gently reprehended the King, and taking him by the Hand, between Force and Persuasion, brought him back to the Assembly. The King was very displeased, and being set on by the Malice of the Women, banished *Dunstan* to *Flanders*, and caused the Wealth of his Monastery to be seized. He conceived an Aversion against all Men in Orders. The Bishops provoked at this, use their utmost Endeavours to get him excommunicated; which Archbishop *Odo* and pronounced a Separation or Divorce between him and his beloved *Algyva*. They also stirred up the People to Rebellion, for the Indignities he offered to

the Church; accordingly, the *Mercians* and *Northbrians* revolted, and set up his younger Brother *Edwi*, leaving to him only the Kingdom of the West Saxons. *Edwi*, now finding that he wanted both Power and Interest to revenge himself, having reigned not many Years, died, *A. D.* 959, and was buried at *Chester*.

EDGAR.

959.
Edgar succeeds, and is Monarch of all England.

He prepares a vast Fleet.

All Nations come under his Protection.

Edgar, Brother of King *Edwi*, peaceably ascended the Throne, at sixteen Years of Age, and became Monarch of all England. His whole Reign was continual Calm, on which Account, he obtained the Surname of *Peaceable*; his Actions were generally just and politic, and his Government was attended with great Glory and Prosperity. He revoked the unjust Decrees of his Brother *Edwi*, put his Adulterous Death, and recalled Bishop *Dunstan* from his Banishment, whom he made Bishop of *London* and *Worcester*, and soon after, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. This Prince understood and practised the true Interest of his Country, which was to make good Laws, and to be Master at Sea. In order to which, he fitted out a prodigious Navy, consisting of sixteen hundred Sail, which he divided into four Parts or Squadrons, making an yearly Progress with part of his Fleet about the Island. He was the first King of *England*, that was truly Lord of the Seas, by which Means he prevented the Incursions of the Pirates, and defended his Kingdom against foreign Invasions. And he was also very careful in training up his Subjects in the Art of War, and Military Employments. These Things added much to the Fame and Grandeur of this Prince, and having cleared the Northern Parts from Rovers and Pirates, the Traders were ambitious of putting themselves under the Protection of so wise and powerful a Prince.

The next Step this glorious Prince took, was his resolution to suppress Vice, and in particular, that Drunkenness, which had introduced such publick, notorious, and mischievous Effects in the Land; and because the Lives of the Secular Clergy, became more and more luxurious and scandalous, he ordered the Bishops to regulate this Affair, by ejecting the impious seculars, and restoring the Regulars to their Monasteries.

And that Justice might be done in all Parts of his Kingdom, he took a special Account of the Actions and Demeanor of his Ministers and Judges, so that the greatest Person could not evade the Law, nor the Poor-est want the Benefit of it. And that the wild Beasts, as well as the Corruptions and Vices of these Times, might be destroyed; he commanded *Ludwal* King of *Wales* to procure him yearly three hundred Wolves, which in three Years Time entirely destroyed them. Eight petty Kings were at once his Vassals; whom he commanded to attend him, at his Court at *Chester*. Their Names were *Kened* King of *Scotland*, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Maccare* King of the *Isles*, with five Kings of *Wales*, viz. *Dafwal*, *Griffith*, *Huwald*, *Jacob* and *Judebilly*. The King, to set forth the Splendor and Greatness of his Dominions, went into a Gally, and was rowed by these eight Kings upon the River *Dee*, and was attended by his Nobility in another Barge; and being returned to his Palace, he is said to have declared to his Nobles, that his Successors might boast of being Kings of *England*, if they, like him, should be attended by so many Kings their Vassals. King *Edgar* did not long survive this Act of Ambition. The same Year he was publicly crowned at the *Bath*, it being the fifteenth Year of his Reign, and the thirtieth Year of his Age. In this very Year died one *Swovebing* aged a hundred and forty two Years, and another aged a hundred and fifteen Years; and also *Turketul*, Abbot of the Monastery of *Croyland*, who added six Bells to the two great Bells of that Abby, which was the first Ring of Bells in *England*. Notwithstanding the many just and honourable Actions of King *Edgar*, this Prince was not without some remarkable Stains, especially in relation to the fair Sex, which are acknowledged by Writers the most favourable to his Memory. But Death soon put an end to this great Prince; for in the thirty second Year of his Age, he died, having reigned sixteen Years, and two Months, *A. D.* 975, and was interred in the Abby of *Glassenbury*.

He is attended by eight Kings.

973. His Coronation.

The first Ring of Bells in England.

EDWARD the Younger.

AS soon as the great *Edgar* was dead, the Nation was divided into Factions, concerning the Succession; for he leaving two Sons, by two several Wives, Arch-

975.

Edward chosen King.

Many Calamities.

bishop *Dunstan*, and the rest of the Bishops, were Prince *Edward* his eldest Son, while Queen *Elfrida* her Party, were for setting up her Son *Ethelred*. the Archbishops *Dunstan* and *Oswald*, with the Bishops, Abbots, and many of the Nobility, met together great Council, and chose Prince *Edward* King, and they immediately anointed and crowned at *King*, he being then a Youth of fifteen Years of Age. After there appeared dreadful Comets, the Fore-runners or Portenders of the Miseries of the Nation; for immediately succeeded Barrenness of Ground, Famine amongst Men, Death of Cattel, with many other calamities. In the mean Time, King *Edward* lived quiet and undisturbed Life, permitting his Step-Mother to order all Affairs as she pleased, and cherishing his younger Brother, with the utmost Love and Tenderness, with all the Artifice imaginable, concealed her Design of wresting the Title from him, till she had an Opportunity to put it in Execution, which at length she accomplished; for the poor Prince being wearied with Hunting, and tormented with Thirst, leaves his Company to follow the Game, and rode alone to her Palace *Corfe-Castle* in *Dorsetshire*, in order to refresh himself. The Queen shewed him all the Respect imaginable, offering him to alight from his Horse, but he refusing she ordered Wine to be brought him, and while he drinking, one of her Servants stabbed him in the Back. Thus fell *Edward* the younger, in the eighteenth of his Age, after he had borne the Name of a King three Years and a half, who for his Innocence and manner of his Death, obtained the Surname of *Martyr*.

ETHELRED 2.

979.
His Brother
Ethelred succeeds.
His Coronation.

Edward being thus unfortunately removed, his Brother *Ethelred*, easily slept into the Throne being not above ten or twelve Years of Age. Soon after his Brother's Death, he was crowned at *King* by Archbishop *Dunstan*, who, as he put the Crown on his Head, in a prophetic manner, declared the Sin of his Brother's Murderers, should not be atoned, without great Bloodshed; for such Calamities should fall upon *England*, as it had never felt before. Some Time after, the *Danes*, who for the Space of fifty Years had not infested this Nation, returned.

Coasts, and in the third Year of his Reign, landed
in Southampton, took the Town, and carried away great
 ty; from whence they passed to the Isle of *Thanet*, The Danes
 ch they also wasted; as was likewise the Country land again.
 at *Chester*, by another Party of those Barbarians.
 : following Year, they harrass'd *Devonshire*, and
Wessex, and the next *Portland*, and the adjacent
 isles; and what added to these Misfortunes from a-
 nd, was the burning of the City of *London*, in the London burnt
 or 981, but how it came to pass, is not discovered.
 : Disorders hereby raised in the Nation were increa-
 sed by domestick Troubles and Disturbances; and the
 people and the Cattel were swept off by strange Fevers,
 prodigious Fluxes. The *Danes* now return, and
 suddenly invade the Coast of *Devonshire*; against whom, 988.
Edward the Elder made Head, and put them to flight, Danish In-
 lost their Lives in the Contest. Three Years after, vassions in-
 the *Danes* under the Command of *Justin* and *Guth-*
red landed in the East, and plunder the Town of *Ips-*
wich, and marched to *Maldon*, where *Bricnot*, a Duke
 of *East Saxony*, bravely opposed them, but losing his
 life, the *English* were at length worsted. And now
 Havens, Harbors, and landing Places, were filled
 with Swarms of these Locusts, that it could not be
 found where to meet them with Advantage. *Ethel-*
stan being of a slothful unactive Temper, was advised
 by *Archbishop Siricius*, Successor to *Dunstan*, and two
 Bishops, *Ethelward* and *Alfric*, to give the *Danes* Mo-
 ney to quit the Coasts. Accordingly, it was stipu- First Tribute
 lated to give them ten thousand Pounds, on Condition paid to the
 that they should quit the Country, and infest the Coast Danes
 no more; an infamous Example, and unworthy of 10000 l.
 a Nation, to redeem their Liberty with Money, which ge-
 nous Minds would never have submitted to, and
 which served only for a Time to satisfy their Covetous-
 ness; for in about a Year, the *Danes* having tasted the
 sweet of Money, resolved to raise more. Accordingly 993.
 they landed in the North, and plundered *Banborough*, Danes re-
 then directing their Course to the Mouth of the new their
Humber, they wasted *Yorkshire* and *Lincolnshire* on both Devastation.
 sides of the River, killed Men, Women, and Children,
 and gathered a vast Booty. The Country Men made
 head against them, but in the Battle three of their Lead-
 ers, *viz. Frana, Fritbegist, and Godwin*, being *Danes*
 on the Father's Side, betrayed them, and procured their

Defeat, and likewise *Alfric* a Sea Commander did the same; for having an Opportunity to surprize the *Danes*, he over Night gave them Intelligence, by which Means they escaped. About this Time, *Swane* King of *Denmark*, being joined with *Anlaf* King of *Norway*, arrived with a numerous Fleet, entred the *Thames*, and furiously attacked *London*, with design to burn it; but the Citizens valiantly opposed him, and obliged him to raise the Siege. Exasperated by this Repulse they invaded *Essex* and *Kent*, and wasted the Coast with Fire and Sword, and then passed into *Sussex* and *Hampshire*, destroying Houses, Buildings, Fields, Men, Women, and Children. To put a Stop to these violent Proceedings, the slothful King, and his unactive Counsellors, again purchase a Truce with Money, and now the Price was sixteen thousand Pounds; upon this the *Danes* retired to their Ships at *Southampton*, and winter'd there. *Eshelred* invited *Anlaf* King of *Norway* to come and visit him at his Court now at *Andover*, where he was royally entertained, was baptized, and adopted the King's Son, and being disinis'd with great Presents, he promised upon Oath, not to molest *England* any more, which he faithfully performed. But the Calamity ended not so; for the *Danes* after three Years Intermision, entred the River *Severn*, and wasted South *Wales*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwall*, and winter'd at *Tatestock*. The next Year they entred the River *Frome*, and wasted the greatest part of *Dorsetshire*, with many other Parts; and though the *English* often made Head against them, yet through the Treachery of their Leaders, or some other Misfortune, they were hindered from Battel. It would be endless to enumerate all the Devastations they made, and the Desolations they left behind them, in all the Places and Countries through which they passed. The following Year they entred the River *Medway*, and besieged *Rochester*; the *Kentish* Men assembled, and gave them a sharp Encounter; but this did not hinder the *Danes* from proceeding; at which King *Eshelred* and his Counsellors were so roused, that they levied an Army, and fitted out a Fleet. But neither were the Generals able to command, nor the Admirals to give Orders, by reason of their unskillfulness in military and maritime Affairs; so that they were the Nation's Burden, not its Defence, which more embolden'd the Enemy to proceed, who in the following Year passed over into *Nor-*
mandy,

Second Tri-
bune paid the
Danes,
16000 l.

many, but on what Account is not recorded, and at their Return, committed greater Hostilities than before. In the midst of these dismal Times, the *Danes* burnt both *Oxford* and *Cambridge*. While the *Danes* were absent, King *Ethelred* was pleased to undertake an Expedition both by Sea and Land, to make some Diversi-
Oxford and Cambridge burnt 1000.
on, into *Cumberland*, where the *Danes* had been most planted, and lived in Peace; and there, and in the Isle of *Anglesey*, he imitated his Enemies in Ravages and Devastations. In the mean Time, the *Danes* returning from *Normandy*, entred the Mouth of the River *Ex*, laid Siege to *Exeter*, batter'd the Walls, and resolved to storm it; but the Inhabitants like those of *London*, made so brave a Defence, that they were obliged to retire; all which was immediately revenged on the poor Country People, whom they murdered in great Multitudes. The Enemy having glutted himself with Slaughter in *Devonshire*, returned to his Fleet, and sailed to the Isle of *Wight*, which he ravaged, as likewise the Coast of *Hampshire* and *Dorsetshire*, till at length easy King *Ethelred*, by the Advice of Counsellors as unactive as himself, sends one *Leof* a Courtier, to propose a third Tribute to the *Danes* for a Peace; to which these Devourers readily hearken'd, but enhanc'd the Sum to twenty four thousand Pounds, which being paid down,
Third Tribute paid the Danes 24000 l. 1002,
they were pleased to desist from all Acts of Hostility.

King *Ethelred* having thus purchased a Peace, resolved to strengthen his Family by some potent Alliances; accordingly he treated with *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*, and married his Daughter *Emma*. The King being now swell'd with the Thoughts of his new Alliance, resolved upon a violent and dangerous Expedient, which was to take a full Revenge, for all the Insults and Barbarities of the *Danish* Nation, by putting an end at once to all their Power. In order to effect this, he sent Letters with the utmost Secrecy, into all Parts of the Kingdom, commanding all his Subjects on a certain Hour, on the ninth Day of *July*, to set upon the *Danes* wherever they found them, and to destroy them all without any Mercy. This Command was strictly executed, and the *Danes* were murdered; no Age, no Sex escaped, the Women as well as the Men were butchered, and the Brains of their Children were dashed out against the Walls. And when the Multitude found themselves thus Masters, they proceeded to new Barbarities, digged Holes in the
A general Massacre of the Danes.
Ground,

Ground, put *Danish* Women into them up to the Waste, and then set fierce Mastiffs upon them, which cruelly tore off their Breasts. Several *Danes* of the highest Quality, received upon publick Faith to ratify the late Peace, were not exempted from the Cruelties of the Populace; among whom was King *Swane's* Sister, *Gunlides*, Wife to Count *Paleng*, who several Years before had come into *England* with her Family, where she had received the Christian Faith, and had now given up her self, her Husband, and Son, as Hostages to King *Estbelred*. This Princess had first her Husband and Son slain in a most barbarous manner, before her Face, and then she her self was ordered to be beheaded, which Sentence she took with an unconcerned Bravery and Courage; and at her Death, she foretold, that her Death and Blood would cost *England* dear, and that it would not be long, before it would be amply revenged. The Consequences of this horrid Massacre, were very terrible to the *English* Nation. For as soon

King *Swane* resolves to revenge it.

He invades the Nation.

as King *Swane* heard of it, he was highly exasperated, and resolved, being fired with the utmost Rage and Resentment, to make a full Push, and conquer the whole Nation: Therefore he invited all Strangers to his Assistance, and having got a great many to join him, he fitted out a powerful Fleet, and being arrived at the South Western Parts of the Nation, he entered the River *Ex*, stormed the City of *Exeter*, demolished the Walls, from the East to the West Gate, and marched off with a large Booty. After this, he wasted *Wiltshire*, and a strong Party were drawn out to oppose him; but when the Armies were ready to join in Battel, *Aifric* the *English* General feigned a sudden Sickness, by which the Army was so discouraged, that they fled with Precipitation; upon which, *Swane* without any Opposition, marched up to *Wilton*, which he plundered, and burnt, and having dealt in the same manner with *Salisbury*, he returned to his Ships. The next Year, he infested the Coasts of *Norfolk*, plundered and burnt the City of *Norwich*; upon which, *Ulfhetel*, Duke of the East *Angles*, made a Peace with him; but *Swane* in a few Days perfidiously broke it, and marched to *Thetford*, which he likewise plundered and burnt.

1065

The Miseries of *England*.

The next Year, there happen'd so great a Famine in *England*, that drove *Swane* back to *Denmark*, but supplied the Place of his devouring Sword; for more perished

The History of ENGLAND.

89

perished by Hunger in one Year, than before had suffered by his Cruelties. *England* was now in the most deplorable Condition, involved in all Sorts of Calamities, a luxurious and slothful King, an unactive and negligent Nobility, yet possess'd with private Heat and Animosities, which occasioned not only a dangerous Disunion, but a betraying of all Secrets to the Enemy; an obstinate Priesthood, that would not contribute to the publick Necessities; to all which God was pleased to permit great Storms, which much impaired the Naval Force of the Nation. The *Danes* in the Year 1006, *England* entered *Sandwich* Road, with a great Fleet, and overrun *Kent* and *Sussex*, destroying all with Fire and Sword. *England* invaded. The King, to oppose them, raised an Army, with a noble Resolution to engage them in Person. But the *Danes*, good at flying, removed from Place to Place so suddenly, plundering and destroying wheresoever they went, so that they frustrated the slow Motions of a heavy Camp, and got safe into the Isle of *Wight*, with great Booty, where they winter'd till *Christmas*. The King being then in *Sbropshire*, seeking the Blood of some worthy Subjects, the *Danes* overran *Hampshire*, and *Berkshire*, as far as *Reading* and *Wallingford*, which they burnt, with other Places. Upon this, the King and his Nobility, have Recourse to their last Remedy, the Coffers, and sent a fourth Time to buy a dishonourable Peace. The *Danes* now again raise the Price, and now obtained from the Nation half sunk in Poverty, the Sum of thirty six thousand Pounds. Fourth Tribute paid to the *Danes* 36000 l. 1008.

The next Year, King *Ethelred* shewed, that he had not lost all Care of his Nation; for he enacted, that every three hundred and ten Hides of Land should furnish out a Gally, and every nine Hides find a Corslet and Head-Piece; now every Hide contained so much Land, as a Plow could till in a Year. These Ships were expeditiously built, victualled, and man'd with choice Soldiers, and their Rendezvous appointed at the Port of *Sandwich*, to secure the Coasts from the Descents of Foreigners. *England* was now believed to be in a safe Condition, when suddenly a Dissention, the Bane of all good Designs, sprung up among the Nobility; and *Britbric*, Brother of *Elric*, falsely accused *Wulwot* to the King, who fearing the Potency of his Enemies, with twenty Ships, fled, and practised Piracy on the Coasts. *Britbric* followed him with eighty Vessels, but meeting with

More Mis-
chiefs from
the Danes.

with a Storm, was cast on the Shore, where *Wulwold* soon after burnt them. This Misfortune caused the King and his Nobility to return Home, ordering the Fleet up to *London*. Upon this, *Turkell*, a Dane, arrived on the Coasts with some Ships, and in *August* was followed by a numerous Fleet, commanded by *Hemming* and *Eilaf*, who joined *Turkell*, landed in the Isle of *Thanet*, and passed to *Sandwich*, and then to *Canterbury*, where they forced the Inhabitants to purchase their Peace, with three thousand Pounds. After this, they return to their Ships, sail to the Isle of *Wight*, and then enter *Sussex* and *Hampshire*, plundering and burning all as they went. King *Ethelred* now awakened with his People's Misfortunes, raiseth an Army to oppose them; but all was acted so unskillfully, and so negligently, that the Enemy was not at all hindered from their Rapines. After this, they returned to the *Thames*, where they winter'd, and ravaged both Sides of the River, and often attacked *London*, but were as often repulst with Loss. In the Spring they left their Ships, pass'd thro' *Cluttern Wood* into *Oxfordshire*, and burnt that City; then dividing their Forces, they ravaged the Country on both Sides of the *Thames*; they joined again at *Stamet*, and returned to their Ships, which being repaired, they enter *Sussex*, and spent three Months in the most barbarous Ravages, burnt *Thetford*, *Cambridge*, and many other Towns, killing all they met in their way. They passed again into *Oxfordshire*, which they wasted, together with the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hertford*. The same Year they went into *Northampton*, burnt that Town, and all the adjacent Country; then they returned, and laid *Wiltshire* waste; and the next Year, they destroyed with Fire and Sword, all *East England*, *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Hertfordshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, and the Counties of *Oxford*, *Bedford*, and *Cambridge*, with half of *Huntington*, and the greater part of *Northampton*, and on the South Side of the *Thames*, *Kent*, *Surrey*, *Sussex*, with the Counties of *Southampton*, *Wilt*, and *Berks*. The *December* following, they beleag'd *Canterbury*, took it in twenty Days, and for Diversion, used all manner of Barbarities. To redress which Mischiefs, in the Spring, the traiterous *Eadric*, and the rest of the wicked Nobility of both Orders, assembled in Council at *London*, and proposed a fifth Tribute to the Danes, which was now raised from thirty

1-12
A 100 T
6 10 P
1 10 P
40 10

thirty six, to forty eight thousand Pounds. This Tribute being paid, and a Peace confirmed by solemn Oaths on both Sides, the *Danish* Fleet retired; only forty five Ships remained with King *Ethelred*, to defend *England* against Foreigners, upon Condition to be maintained with Cloaths and Provisions. And this Year as formerly, there was a Tax raised, to pay this Tribute of forty eight thousand Pounds, which was called *Danegeld*. And also it was resolved, that every Hide of Land in the Kingdom should pay twelve Pence yearly, for the Subsistence of this Fleet, of which *Turkill* remained Admiral, who constantly gave King *Swane* Intelligence, how Affairs stood here; and so let him know when it would be most seasonable to re-invade the Land.

The Payment of *Danegeld*.

Accordingly, the next Year he landed at *Sandwich* with a powerful Force, whence after a few Days Stay, he sailed for the *Humber*, and passed up the *Trent* to *Gainsborough* in *Lincolnshire*, where he landed, and encamped his great Army. This struck Terror upon all thereabouts, and to prevent their Ruin, the *Northumbrians*, the Inhabitants of *Lindsea*, and those of *Fisburgh*, and all that lay North of *Watling Street*, submit to him, give Hostages, and acknowledge him King. Having given the necessary Orders to secure those People, he marched into *Mercia*, destroying all before him; he soon took *Oxford*, then marched to *Winchester*, which immediately yielded; from thence he turned his Course towards *London*, where *Ethelred* resided, and *Turketul* was with his Forces. He was bravely repel'd: Upon which he directed his March to *Wallingford*, thence to the *Bath*, whither all the Western Parts repaired, gave Hostages, and made Peace with him; whose Example was soon followed by the Citizens of *London*, who finding it in vain to strive against the universal Current, and fearing his Cruelties, sent also Hostages, and made their Peace. Thus *Swane*, who acted all Things like a barbarous Tyrant, was both stiled and accounted King of the *English* Nation.

1013, *Swane* again invades the Land.

All Places submit to him.

Upon this, *Ethelred*, King only in Name, sends his Queen *Emma*, with his two Sons, *Edward* and *Alfred* into *Normandy*, to her Brother *Richard*, Duke of that Province, and some Time after he follows himself. In the mean Time the Tyrant *Swane*, residing at *Gainsborough*, laid insupportable Taxes upon the Country, and

Turkill

Turkill did the like at *Greenwich*. Now *Swane*, being in the Height of his Pride and Cruelty, and upon the Point of being crowned, received a mortal Wound by an unknown Hand, who had the good Fortune to escape: He died, and was buried in the City of *Tork*.

1014.
Canute succeeds him.

Upon this, the *Danes* elected his Son *Canute*, or *Cnut*, for his Successor. But the *English*, having felt so much of the Father's Cruelty, and fearing the like from the Son, sent Messengers to *Ethelred* in *Normandy*, declaring, that if he would promise to govern them with greater Care and Clemency than formerly, they would assist him, and join with him against all Pretenders. Upon which, *Ethelred* immediately dispatches his Son *Edward* to assure them, that for the future he would govern, with more Clemency, and better than he had done; that he would follow their Counsel, and pardon whatever had been done or spoken against him; and being assured of the Affections of his Subjects, an Embassy of Lords were sent back with Prince *Edward*, to hasten the King's Return, which was accomplished in the *Lent* following, and he was received by the People, with universal Satisfaction. And now to answer their Expectations, he immediately levied an Army against *Canute*, which was dispatched immediately, to prevent him from making Head; so that *Canute* was obliged to quit the Parts of *Lindsey*, and leave its Inhabitants to the Anger of their Country-Men, who prosecuted them with Fire and Sword, without Distinction or Mercy.

Ethelred returns to *England*.

Canute returns to *Denmark*.

Upon this, *Canute* imbarks, and sails into *Sandwich Road*, where to revenge himself upon the *English* Nation, he barbarously cut off the Ears, Hands, and slit the Noses of the Hostages he had in his Power, and setting them a Shore, departed for *Denmark* for new Recruits. The *Danes* were no sooner departed, but another Calamity succeeded; for on the 27th of *September*, the Tide overflowed the Banks, and overwhelmed many Villages, and drowned a great Number of People. And at this very Time, the Nation was forced to raise the Sum of thirty thousand Pounds, to pay off the *Danish* Fleet, that lay at *Greenwich*.

The next Year, *Canute* returning from *Denmark* with great Power, joined with *Turkill*, entred the River *Frome*, and laid waste the Counties of *Dorset*, *Somerset*, and *Wilt*. In all Probability, he had been effectually stopped in his Career, by Prince *Edmund*, had not false

Edric

The History of ENGLAND.

93

Edric been joined with him in the Command; he made a Faction in the Army, and plotted the Prince's Death, which being happily discovered, he revolts to the Enemy, and carried off forty Ships. Upon this, the West Saxons submitted, and provided Horses for *Canute's* Army, who the next Year, with *Edric* the Traytor, invaded *Mercia*, and proceeded in the usual Manner with Fire and Sword; and thence he passed into *Northumberland*, and constrained *Utbred* to give up the North Country with Hostages; who was, notwithstanding that, murdered by one *Turebrand*, a Danish Man, by *Canute's* express Command. About the same Time, King *Ethelred* died at *London*, on the 22^d Day of *April*, 1016, after an inglorious and miserable Reign of thirty seven Years, and was buried in *St. Paul's* in *London*. *Edric re-
volts.*

Ethelred dies

EDMUND IRONSIDE.

UPON the Death of *Ethelred*, the Nobility at *London*, chose *Edmund* his eldest Son then alive, for his Successor, who obtained the Surname of *Ironsides*, from his Strength of Body, and had he enjoyed a longer Life, would without Doubt, have made ample Amends for his Father's Cowardice. Having obtained the Crown, he set out for *West Saxony*, where the People received him joyfully, and acknowledged him for their Sovereign, while the greater Part of the Nation swore Allegiance to *Canute*, who hastned to *London* with his Fleet. He cast up a large Ditch on the *Surry* Side, and drew up his Ships Westward of the Bridge, surrounded the City with an Intrenchment, made several Attacks, but was repulsed, and obliged to abandon the Siege. After which, he marched into the West, to meet with King *Edmund*, before his Forces were assembled, where he found him ill provided to receive an Enemy. Nevertheless, *Edmund* gave him Battel at *Gillingham* in *Dorsetshire*, and forced *Canute* and his Army to retreat. Encouraged with this Success, he met him a second Time, near a Place called *Swarstan*, engaged him, and in all likelihood, this Battel had proved fatal to the *Danes*, had not *Almar* and *Algar*, the chief of the Nobility, who had the Command of the *Wiltshire*, and *Hampshire* Men, following *Edric's* Example, revolted to the *Danes*; notwithstanding which, *Edmund* shewed himself a stout Soldier, and an expert General, *1016.*
*His Son Ed-
mund suc-
ceeds in West
Saxony.*

*Several Bat-
tels with
Canute.*

*Edric Re-
volts.*

and

London besieged.

Canute is several Times worsted.

A bloody Battel at Ashdown

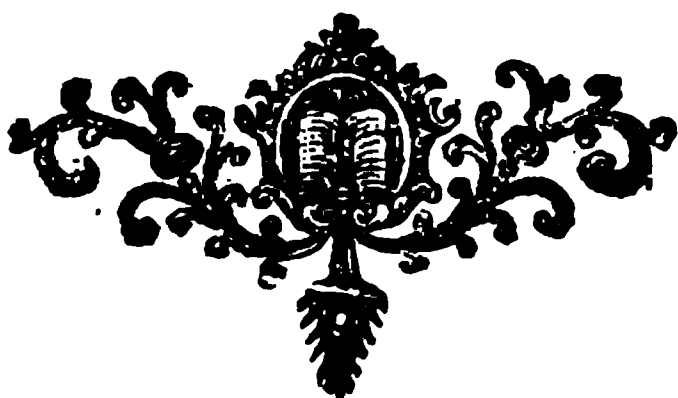
and so made a drawn Battel, which was renewed again the next Morning, and would again have won the Victory, had not perfidious *Edric* used this Stratagem to discourage the *English*, viz. He cut off the Head of one *Osmeor*, who resembled the King, and setting it up on high, cried to them, to behold the Head of their King, and if they had any regard to their own Lives, to fly immediately. This much startled them, 'till *Edmund* sensible of the Cheat, made himself known to his Soldiers from a Hill, and threw a Spear at *Edric*, which miss'd him, but killed two of his Attendants; which renewed their Courage, and galled the *Danes*, but they were parted by the Night, of which Opportunity *Canute* made the best Use; for he decamped, and hasten'd back to *London*, and again invested the City; upon which, *Edmund* recruited his Forces with all Speed. And now perfidious *Edric*, the better to betray him, humbly applies to *Edmund*, begged Pardon for what was past, and obtained it. *Edmund* marched to *London*, raised the Siege, and drove the *Danes* with Dishonour to their Ships. After some Time, he returned into *West-Sex* for Recruits, upon which the *Danes* again besieged *London*, but without Success; which caused them to draw off, and with his Ships, *Canute* entred a River, then called *Arenne*, and landed in *Mercia*, from whence they returned to the *Medway*, the Horse by Land, and the Foot by Shipping. In the mean Time, King *Edmund*, having levied a great Army, marched, passed the *Thames* at *Brentford*, persued *Canute* into *Kent*, where at a Place called *Oxford*, he engaged him, and put his Army to flight, who retired with Precipitation, into the Isle of *Shepey*. This Victory had been complete, had not treacherous *Edric*, by Wiles prevented the Pursuit. *Edmund* returns for a Time to *Westsex* to recruit; *Canute* takes the Advantage of his Absence, invades *Mercia* again, using all in the most barbarous and cruel manner. *Edmund* marches after him, and overtook him, in his Retreat at *Ashdown*, in *Essex*, where a bloody Battel ensued, and *Edmund* had got the Victory, had not impious *Edric* revolted, with all the Troops under his Command, to the *Danes*; by which Means the *English* were outnumbered, which procured their Defeat and Ruin; for they never before received so great a Blow, losing almost all their Nobility, and the very Flower of the Nation. *Edmund* enraged at this Disaster, levied all the Forces he

he

ould, and resolved once more to try his Fortune in
field, and accordingly he met *Canute* with his Ar-
n *Glocestershire*; upon which, the Noblemen dread-
the Courage of *Edmund*, and the Power of *Ca-*
began to murmur and to declare, how foolish it
for them so often to venture their Lives for the
ition of others, who alone ought to fight for the
rns they wore. Upon this, to prevent the Effusion
ore Blood, the two Kings generously agreed to
le the Matter by single Combat between themselves.
rdingly, an Isle in the River *Severn*, was pitched upon
e place of Battel; and for Spectators of this Royal
, their Armies were to be on either Shore; and the
rior to take all. They eugage, and after a long
equal Fight, finding each others Worth, they cast
their Weapons, embraced each other, and con-
d a Peace, and agreed, that the Kingdom should
ted between them; *Edmund* had the Western parts
e Land, and *Canute* the Eastern for his Share. Soon
his Division was made, King *Edmund* died, after
y short, but vigorous and honourable Reign of se-
Months, three Weeks, and five Days, and was bu-
y his Grandfather, King *Edgar*, at *Glassenbury*. Thus
Edmund, fell the Glory of the *English Saxons*, and
great Measure ended the *Saxon* Monarchy, which
asted a hundred and eighty nine Years from the E-
liment made by King *Egbert*, four hundred and
ty one after the *Saxons* had wholly dispossessed the
ns, and five hundred sixty seven, after the first En-
e of the *Saxons* under *Hengist*.

*Edmund and
Canute fight a
Combat.*

And divide
the Nation
between
them.



S E C T. VI.

From the Beginning of the Monarchy of the Danes in England under Canute, to the Death of Hardecnute, their last King, and the Restoration of the Saxons in Edward the Confessor.

CANUTE.

1017.

Canute chose
King.

THIS Prince, by the Death of King *Edmund*, being sole Monarch of *England*, and being willing to establish himself, summoned all the Bishops and Nobility to meet at *London*, where he demanded, whether in his Agreement with King *Edmund*, there was any Provision made for his Sons and Brothers; they through Fear, and the Hopes of Favour, answered, that there was none made. Upon this, all the Nobility took the Oaths of Fidelity to him, and readily chose him for their King, and abjured the two Sons of *Edmund*, from ever being Kings of this Nation. But the better to establish himself, he consults with the Traytor *Edric*, who advised him to dispatch *Edwin*, King *Edmund's* Brother, for which end they pitched on one *Ethelward*, who abhorred the Fact; then *Edwin* was snared into Favour, and so dispatched; likewise *Edward* and *Edmund*, Sons of King *Edmund*, were sent to the King of *Sweden* to be murdered; but he sent them to *Solomon*, King of *Hungary*, to be carefully educated, with whom *Edmund* died, but *Edward* married *Agath*, Daughter to *Henry*, Emperor of *Germany*, by whom he had *Edgar* *Etheling*.

Divides
England into
four Parts.

Canute, having by these Means settled himself, divided the Kingdom into four Parts, or Governments, and made *Edric* Governor of *Mercia*, *Earl Turkil* of *East England*, and *Eric* of *Northumberland*, reserving *West Saxony* to his own proper Management. After which, he proceeded to punish King *Edmund's* Murderers, which gained him much Respect; and then he declared, that he would govern the People according to Law, and that

that all that had passed between the two Nations, should be forgot and forgiven ; and to secure *Richard* Duke of *Normandy* in his Interest, he married Queen *Emma*, Marries Emma, King *Ethelred's* Widow. And now, that those, who ma, by their Treachery had advanced him, might not use the same for the Exaltation of any other, he commanded *Edric* to be executed, and his Head fixed to a Pole, on Edric justly executed. the highest Tower in *London* ; and by this Means, he fulfilled his Promise to *Edric*, that for his great Services he should be exalted above all the *English* Nobility ; and with him many of his Accomplices suffered. And for his farther Security, *Canute* keeps a standing Army, for whose Subsistence, he exacts a Tax of eighty thousand Pounds from the Nation, and from *London* fifteen thousand Pounds, and to preserve the same, a very strict Law was made against killing any *Danes*. Yet after a few Years, at the Importunity of the Nobility, and Security given, he sent his Army back to *Denmark*.

King *Canute* being thus established, resolved on a Vi- 1019. sit to his Native Kingdom of *Denmark* ; accordingly in Canute sails into Denmark. the third Year of his Reign, he sailed for *Denmark*, and continued there the whole Winter, and with his *English* Forces he beat the *Swedes*. In the Spring, he returned into *England*, and at *Easter*, he held a grand Council or Returns to England. Parliament at *Circester*, and being jealous of the growing Greatness of those he had intrusted with the greatest Commands, he first banished Duke *Ethelwald*, in the following Year Earl *Turkil*, and his Wife *Agitha*, and also *Eric*, the *Danish* Earl of *Northumberland* ; and as soon as *Turkil* set Foot in *Denmark*, he was killed by the Noblemen of that Country. And King *Canute* having Intelligence from *Norway*, that the People despised *Olaus* their King, he sent great Sums of Money to encourage them in their Hatred and Rebellion, and to make Way for his own Power. This worked so effectually on them, that in the Year 1028, King *Canute* sailed with 50 Ships into *Norway*, where the People joined him, and drove *Olaus* out of his Country, who the fol- Conquers Norway. lowing Year returned, to try the Minds of his Subjects, and was slain with all his Followers. *Canute* being now King of *England*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, returned into *England* with Applause, but was still jealous of every Man of Power ; amongst whom in particular, was one *Hacune*, a *Dane*, who had married a Daughter of his Sister *Gnilda*, whom under the Colour of an Em-
bassy

1031.
Makes a
Journey to
Rome.

Returns to
England.

bassy he banished, who either perished at Sea, or was killed in the Isle of *Orkney*. Such were the Fears of this Prince, and such the Means he used to prevent them, declining no Actions or Methods to fix and secure the Crown on his Head. And having removed all Persons he suspected, he resolved to be very religious, thinking to appease Heaven, for all his impious Practices, by dedicating some Part of his ill gotten Riches to pious Uses. Accordingly in the fifteenth Year of his Reign, he took a Journey to *Rome*, visited the Tombs of the Apostles, and conferred extraordinary Presents on *St. Peter*, and was very liberal to the Poor, both in his Passage and Return. From *Rome* he writes to the Bishops and Nobility of *England*, exhorts them to Justice and Impartiality, and not to advance his Revenue by any cruel or unjust Means, and charged them to take Care, that Church Scot and *Rome* Scot be punctually paid; and for his own Part, he vowed great Amendment of Life for the future. From *Rome* this King went to *Denmark*, and at his Return into *England*, he spent a great Part of his Time, in building and repairing Monasteries and Churches, and was very liberal to the Clergy. Upon this, his Courtiers and Flatterers extolled him to the Skies, equalled him with *Alexander*, *Cyrus*, and *Cesar*, and applauded him, as possessed of more than human Power. But he, to convince them of their base Practices, caused his Throne to be placed by the Sea Shore, at *Southampton*, while the Tide was flowing in, and being seated in his Robes with these Miscreants about him, he commanded the Sea to come no farther upon his Land, nor presume to wet the Feet of its Sovereign Lord. But the Sea took no Notice of him, no more than of any other Man, but flowed as usual; upon which he cried out, That none but the King of Heaven deserved the Title which they impiously bestowed on himself; from which Time he would never wear his own Crown, but commanded it to be put on the Head of a Crucifix at *Winchester*. Hence arose the Custom of hanging up the Armour of great Men in Churches, as Offerings made to God, and as an Acknowledgment of their Dependence on him. And now having by these and the like Acts of Piety, got the Affections of his People, he was become the most powerful Monarch that ever yet sat on the *English* Throne; but this lasted not long, for on the twelfth Day

Day of November, having reigned nineteen Years, wanting a few Days, he died at *Shaftsbury*, and was buried ^{Died} in the old Monastery at *Winchester*. And though the Means and Methods, by which he arrived at his Greatness, are no ways to be justified; yet few there are that obtained their Crowns so unjustly, who have afterwards managed their Power with so much Justice and Humanity: So that we may say of him, what a *Roman* Author does of one of the Emperors, That it had been well for the Kingdom, if he had never reigned at all, or else had continued longer; his Sons being unlike him both in Wisdom and Valour.

HAROLD.

CANUTE at his Death, left behind him three Sons, ^{1035.} viz. *Swane*, *Harold*, and *Harde-Canute*; the two former by *Elgiva* his Wife, or rather Concubine, tho' some say to conceal her Barrenness, she procured the first from a Priest's Wife, and the other from the Wife of a Shoe-maker, and so imposed on the King's Credulity. By *Emma*, the Relict of King *Ethelred*, he had *Harde-Canute*. Upon this Account, the Nation was in the utmost Confusion about the Succession; the *Danes* and the *Londoners* declare for *Harold*; most of the *English* contended for *Edward*, the Son of *Ethelred*, and some for *Harde-Canute*, the Son of *Canute*, by Queen *Emma*. At length, the more sober Part advise an Accommodation, to which End, the Heads of all Factions are summoned to a general Assembly at *Oxford*, where the major Part concluded, that the Kingdom should be divided between *Harold* and *Harde-Canute*; ^{Kingdom divided between Harold and Harde-canute.} the former to have *London*, and all the Country on the North of the *Thames*, and the latter all the South Part. But *Harde-Canute* being in *Denmark* at this Juncture, *Harold* who had got Possession of most, now seized on all. But *Ailnoth*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, for a long time refused to crown *Harold* King, yet at length was prevailed upon, by Threats or Promises, to perform the Ceremony, and *Harold* is acknowledged King ^{Harold gets the Crown.} of *England*.

Harold being thus stepped into the Throne, made it his first Business to dispatch his Rivals, particularly King *Ethelred's* two Sons, *Edward* and *Alfred*, then in *Normandy*. Accordingly, he forged a Letter to these two

young Princes, in the Name of Queen *Emma*, their Mother, earnestly inviting them into *England*. This Letter was sent to them by Express, with large Presents, which they received joytully, and returned Answer by the same Hand, that one of them would be with her shortly, and accordingly appointed both Time and Place. *Alfred* the younger was judged most proper for this Affair, who at the appointed Time, came with a few Ships, and about six hundred *Normans*, and landed, but fell into the Ambuscade that Earl *Godwin* had laid for them. The *Normans* were all slain but every tenth Man; *Alfred* was taken Prisoner, his Eyes put out, and he cast into a loathsome Goal, where he miserably perished. Then *Harold* seized on the Treasure of his Step-Mother Queen *Emma*, and banished her out of the Kingdom. Queen *Emma* was received, and entertained by *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, who pitying a distressed Lady and Queen, assigned her *Bruges* for her Residence, and provided for her during her Continuance; where when she had resided about two Years, she had the Satisfaction of a Visit from her Son *Harde-Canute*, and they comforted themselves with the Hopes of better Fortune, either from the Temper of the *English* Nation, or that the Usurper would by some other Means finish his Days or Reign. But *Harold* on the other Hand, omitted nothing that might serve to excludethem, and all other Pretenders to his Crown, and accordingly provided a Fleet, the only Bulwark of *England*; to support which, every Port in the Kingdom was obliged to pay eight Marks of Silver for every sixteen Ships, which very much exasperated the *English*, and might soon have ended in a Revolt, had not his Death prevented it; for on the sixteenth Day of April, King *Harold* died, after he had reigned wickedly four Years, and as many Months, and was buried at *Winchester*. *Selden* mentions this one Law of his; that every *Welshman* was to lose his right Hand, that came over *Offa's* Ditch without Leave.

Emma ban-
ish'd.

Is visited by
Harde-Can-
ute.

Harold dies.

HARDE-CANUTE.

A. D. 1040.
Harde-Can-
ute suc-
ceeds, and is
crown'd.

UPON the Death of *Harold*, the States of the Land, as well *English* as *Danes*, send Messengers to *Bruges*, to intreat *Harde-Canute* to come and receive the Crown as his Right; upon which he hastned to *Denmark* to settle his Affairs, and with sixty Ships and many

many Soldiers, he arrived at *Sandwich*, and landed in the Month of *August*, being received with all Demonstrations of Joy, admitted King, and crowned accordingly. Having thus obtained the Crown, he performed but little worthy of his Condition and Station, but made use of that Advantage, only to gratify his exorbitant Passions. He first caused *Harold* to be dug up, by *Alfric*, Archbishop of *York*, Earl *Godwin*, and others, his Head to be cut off, and his Body cast into the *Thames*; afterwards he proceeded in carrying on his Revenge, against all *Harold's* Friends. He deprived *Living*, Bishop of *Worcester*, whom afterwards for a good Sum he restored; likewise *Godwin* appeased him by a prodigious Present, viz. a Gally with a gilded Stern, wonderfully rig'd, and man'd with eighty choice Men, every one having upon each Arm a golden Bracelet weighing sixteen Ounces, an Helmet and Croslet finely gilt, a *Danish* Scymetar adorned with Silver and Gold hung on his left Shoulder, in his left Hand a Shield, with gilt Boss and Nails, and in his right Hand a Lance; and besides this uncommon Present, he was obliged to swear, that Prince *Alfred* lost not his Eyes by his Advice or Counsel, but by the command of King *Harold*; which Oath was also taken by most of the Nobility in the Land. And now, he, like others before him, began to take very improper Methods to gain the Affection of his People; for he laid so extravagant a Tax on them, An exorbitant Tax. that it was almost impossible for them to pay it; they were to pay eight Marks for every Rower in his Navy, and twelve to every Officer; and this Tax he levied with all Rigor, insomuch, that two of his Officers going to *Worcester*, were slain by the People. The King incensed at this, sent his Forces to destroy the People, burn the City, and lay waste all the Country. This so terrified the poor People, that they all fled to the most remote Parts, and the Citizens to a small Island in the *Severn*, called *Beveregge*, which they fortified, and valiantly defended, till Peace was granted them, and free Liberty to return Home, but they found their City plundered and burnt. From this Time, *Harde-Canute* began Worcestershire laid waste. to shew a better Temper; and shortly after, he gave a kind Entertainment to his Brother *Edward*, the Son of King *Ethelred* and *Emma*, who now returned Home, after a tedious Exile in *Normandy*; and he married his Sister *Gnilda*, to *Henry* the German Emperor. He

His Death.

was much given to Rioting and Drunkenness, and as he lived so he died; for at *Lambeth*, at a Nuptial Entertainment, in the Height of his Jollity, carousing with the Bride, and some of the Company, he suddenly fell down speechless, and died on the eighth Day of *June*, in the Flower of his Age, after a short Reign of two Years, and almost two Months. Upon this, the insulted and oppressed *English* found means to throw off the *Danish* Yoke, by slaying and banishing the most insolent and powerful of that Nation; *Harde-Canute* dying without Issue, and *Denmark* being then embarrassed with Troubles. With him expired not only the Dominion, but in Effect, all Attempts or Invasions of the *Danes* in *England*, which tho' they had been continued, and often renewed with mighty Numbers, for two hundred and fifty Years from their first Invasion, left no considerable Change of Laws, Customs, Language, or Religion, nor other Traces of their Establishment, besides the many Castles they built, and the many Families they left behind them, who in a few Years came to incorporate, and make a Part of the *English* Nation, without Distinction.

SECT. VII.

The Monarchy of the English Saxons restored; from the Death of Harde-Canute to the Death of Harold, the last King of the English Race, and an End put to the Saxon Empire, by William Duke of Normandy.

EDWARD the Confessor.

A.D. 1042

THE Nation being thus happily delivered from the *Danish* Yoke, began now to consult for a Successor; they immediately cast their Eyes on *Edward*, the Son of *Ethelred*, by Queen *Emma*, who entirely cast himself upon the Council and Fidelity of Earl *Godwin*, and begged his Assistance, towards his safe Return into *Normandy*;

Normandy; but *Godwin* gave him this unexpected Answer: That he had better live gloriously a King in *England*, than to die an Exile; that the Crown did of Right belong to him, as the Son of *Ethelred*, and Grandson of *Edgar*; and that if he would advance his Sons, and marry his Daughter, he should soon see himself a King. This Prince's Circumstances were such, that he could not easily reject such fair Proposals, but agreed with every Thing, and confirmed all upon Oath. Upon this, a Council was summoned at *Gillingham*, where *Godwin* persuading some by his Authority, and some by Promises, and others being already inclined to favour *Edward's* Cause, they had a great Majority for him. Accordingly on the third Day of *April*, he was crowned at *Winchester*, by the two Archbishops, *Edsi* of *Canterbury*, and *Alfric* of *York*, assisted by many other Prelates, of whom, *Living* of *Worcester* contributed much to the completing of this Design. Thus was the Monarchy of *England* restored to the *English* Royal Blood, and the People so unexpectedly delivered from the *Danish* Tyranny, that they were without Measure transported with Joy.

Godwin a Friend to Edward.

By whose Interest he is crowned K. of *England*.

Edward was now near forty Years of Age, of a soft and complying Temper, and being Earl *Godwin's* Creature, he conformed himself wholly to his Dictates and Advice. The first Thing he prompted him to, was to seize on the Treasure of his Mother *Emma*, then at *Winchester*; the Cause alledged was, that she had been unkind to him in the Time of his Exile, and greatest Necessities. Then he got him to marry his Daughter *Egitha*, who for her admirable Perfections and Qualifications, was not unworthy of a Crown. She was esteemed most beautiful, most chaste, and virtuous; she was noted for her Humility and Learning, having nothing of the Insolence of her Father and Brother, but mild, modest, faithful, and obliging, never doing any kind of ill Offices, so that it became a Proverb, *That as a Thorn produces a Rose, so Godwin begot Egitha*. The next Step King *Edward* took for his Security, was to banish all eminent Persons of the *Danish* Blood; this was *Gumilda's*, Sister of King *Canute*, and her two Sons *Hemming* and *Turkill's* Fate, together with many others of the *Danish* Nobility. But while he was thus endeavouring to prevent Storms at Home, he was threatened with a Tempest from the Northern World, where

Seizes on his Mother's Treasury.

And marries *Godwin's* Daughter.

A. D. 1045
He banishes the *Danish* Nobility.

Magnus, the Son of *Olaus*, King of *Norway*, prepared to invade *England*. King *Edward* to secure himself, fitted out a strong Fleet, which lay in *Sandwich Road*, to observe *Magnus's* Motions, who was diverted by *Swane* King of *Denmark*, making an Invasion on *Norway*. This so enraged *Magnus*, that the following Year, he entered *Denmark*, expelled King *Swane*, and made himself Lord of the whole Country. Upon which, *Swane* intreats King *Edward's* Assistance, but obtained it not, King *Edward* remaining Neuter; which so engaged *Magnus*, that he made no farther Attempts on *England*; and *Harold Harvager*, his Uncle, as soon as he came to the Crown, entered into an Alliance with King *Edward*.

A. D. 1049. The Emperor engaged King *Edward* in a War, against *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*; his Part was to secure the Coasts, that *Baldwin* might not escape by Sea, which he did, until an Accommodation was agreed on between them. In the mean Time, *Swane* the Son of Earl *Godwin*, who had left the Land for deflowring *Edgitha* Abbess of *Chester*, came back from *Denmark* with eight Ships, pretending a Desire to be reconciled to the King. *Beorn* undertook to make his Peace, but *Swane* forced him on Board his Ships, carried him to *Dartmouth*, murdered him, and threw him into a Ditch. At his Return, the Inhabitants of *Hastings* took six of *Swane's* Ships, killed all their Crews, and brought the Ships to *Sandwich* to the King. *Swane* with the other two fled into *Flanders*, where he continued, till *Aldred*, Bishop of *Worcester*, brought him back, and procured his Reconciliation. About this Time, *Osgod Clap*, a banished Man, infested the Coasts of *Essex*, with twenty nine Ships, two of which were taken, and the Men put to the Sword. Thus the *English* were again put in Mind of the *Danish* Cruelties, and the Remembrance of the *Irish* Devastations was revived, on the other Side of the Isle; for they entered the Mouth of the *Severn*, with thirty six Ships, and did much Damage.

1051.

He takes of
the Tax cal-
led *Danegeld*.

The King now to relieve his People oppress'd with *Famine* and *Poverty*, took off the Tax called *Danegeld*, which had lain heavy upon them for thirty eight Years. But as this Effect of his Indulgence to them tended much to their Ease and Conveniency, so other Acts of his Kindness to Strangers, this very Year, proved of dangerous Consequence to the whole Nation; for as *Earl*

Earl of *Boloin*, was returning from Court, to take ^{A great Dis-}Shipping at *Dover*; at *Canterbury*, one of his Harbingers ^{turbance.} was so rude with a Townsman in seeking for Lodgings, that in the Heat of Anger, he provoked him to kill him. Upon this, *Eustace*, with his Retinue, entred the House, and slew the Murderer with eighteen more; the Inhabitants took Arms, fell on him and his Followers, killed twenty one of them, and wounded almost all the rest, *Eustace* escaping with much Difficulty. *Eustace* posts back to the King, and being seconded by some other *Norman* Lords, prevailed on him so, that he ordered Earl *Godwin* to march to *Canterbury*, and punish the Citizens with military Execution. *Godwin* alledged, that no Man was to be condemned unheard, and so refused to obey the King's Commands. *Edward* displeased at his Behaviour, called an Assembly of all the Nobility at *Glocester*; most repaired thither, but *Godwin* and his Sons appeared not, but immediately took to Arms, and raised Forces out of their particular Government, and took up their Quarters at *Beverstan*. *Edward* sent to *Leofric*, Earl of *Mercia*, and *Syward* of *Northumberland*, to come and assist him in this Extremity. In the mean Time, *Godwin* proceeded into *Glocestershire*, and encamped at a Place called *Langtree*, from whence he sent to the King, and demanded the Delivery of *Eustace*, and the other *Norman* Lords; upon the Refusal denouncing War. The King bravely refused; but *Leofric*, and the wiser Sort, sensible of the Miseries of a Civil War, perswaded the King to come to a Treaty. Upon this, Hostages were exchanged on both Sides, and the Matter was referred to a farther Debate, to be held at *London*. The King marched with his Forces to *London*, and *Godwin* to *Southwark*. The grand Council, by Way of Satisfaction to the King, ordered *Godwin* with his Son *Harold*, to appear before them unarmed, and with but twelve Attendants, and to deliver up all their Forces into the Hands of the King. *Godwin* refused Compliance; upon which an Edict was published, that *Godwin* and his Sons should quit the Land within five Days. His Soldiers dreading the Consequence, abandoned him, which obliged him to depart, with his Wife, and three Sons, viz. *Swane*, *Gytha*, and *Tosti*; these retired to *Flanders*. *Harold* and *Leofwin* went to *Bristol*, and sailed for *Ireland*; and the King to complete his Revenge, deprived *Egitha* his Queen of all her Jewels and

and Treasure, and committed her to the Nunnery of *Welles*, there to be kept in Custody by the Abbess; his

Duke of
Normandy
visits K. Ed-
ward.

About this Time, *William* Duke of *Normandy*, with a great Number of Followers, came into *England* to visit King *Edward*, who received him and his Retinue with all the Respect and Magnificence imaginable, and gave him rich Presents, and imprudently shewed the Weakness of the Nation, the chief Castles and Forts were afterwards to be their own.

1062.
Farther Dis-
turbance.

Griffin the *Welsh* King, entred *Herefordshire*, and a great Part of it waste, and returned Home with much Spoil. And not long after, *Godwin's* two Sons, *Harold* and *Leofwin*, entred the *Severn*, landed in *Somersetshire*, plundered many Villages in that County, and in *Devonshire* and returned to their Ships with much Booty. *Godwin* with his other Sons landing in *Kent*, first ingaged the Inhabitants of *Canterbury*, who owned him as a Benefactor for their Sakes; then those of *Sussex*, *Essex*, *Wessex*, and all the Seamen of *Hastings*, and others, who swore they would live and die with him. *Godwin* sailed to the Isle of *Wight* and coasted about, till he was joined by his Sons, *Harold* and *Leofwin*. Upon this they sailed for the *Thames*, entred it, and passed up to *Southwark*. The *Londoners* favoured his Designs. They put the King and Nobility into very great Confusion, and they made all the Preparations they could; Fleets and Armies prepared on both Sides for Battle. But the Soldiers on both Sides declared, that they were unwilling to fight, *English* against *English*, which gave the wiser Sort an Opportunity to mediate a Peace, which concluded, both Armies disband. Earl *Godwin* and his Wife, and Sons, were restored to their former Honours and Estates, and Queen *Egitha* to her former Dignity. Right and Justice was now promised to all Men; and such *Normans* as had abused the King's Authority, and given him ill Council, were banished the Land. In this very Year, on *St. Thomas's* Night, happened so violent a Tempest, that it overturned many Churches and Houses, and broke and tore up by the Root vast Numbers of Trees.

1063.

The next Year, *Rees* the Brother of *Griffin*, King of *South Wales*, was taken Prisoner, and put to Death, at the King's Command, at a Place called *Balendum*, and his Head sent to *Gloucester* to the King. At *Easter* the same Year, the King celebrating that Feast at *Welles* best

~~chefer~~, Earl *Godwin* sitting at a Table with the King, ~~there~~ was mention made of *Alfred* the King's late Brother; upon which, the King gave *Godwin* an angry Look; at which *Godwin* replied, 'That he perceived, ~~that~~ upon every Mention made of that Prince, he cast a frowning Countenance upon him: But, added he, let not God suffer me to swallow this Morsel, if I am guilty of any Thing done, either towards the taking away his Life, or against your Interest.' After which Words, he was choaked, with the Bit he had just put in his Mouth, sunk down, and died immediately. His ^{Earl Godwin dies.} three Sons, *Harold*, *Tosti*, and *Gyrth*, were present. His first Wife was Sister of King *Canute*, who made a Trade of selling handsom Boys and Girls; she was killed by Thunder. His Earldom of *West-Sex*, was confer'd on his Son *Harold*, and the Earldom of *Essex*, which *Harold* had before, was given to *Algar* the Son of *Leofric*, Earl of *Mercia*.

The next Year, King *Edward* sent the Earl of *Nor-*¹⁰⁵⁴
thumberland, with a powerful Body of Horse, and a ^{The K. sends Forces against the K. of Scotland.} strong Fleet into ~~England~~ against *Macbeth*, King of that Country, whom he defeated and expelled, making *Mal-*
colm King in his stead, according to the Orders the King had given him. But *Syward* Earl of *Northumberland*, did not long survive this Victory, for dying the following Year, he was buried at *York*. At the same Time, the King sent *Aldred* Bishop of *Worcester*, to treat with the Emperor of *Germany*, about his Cousin *Edward*, the Son of *Edmund Ironside*; who he desired might be sent into *England*, to succeed him, he having no Issue of his own. About this Time, Earl *Algar* being convicted of Treason, was by the Advice of an Assembly held at *London*, banished the Kingdom. He went into *Ireland*, got together eighteen Piratical Vessels, with them he sails to *Griffin*, King of the *Welsh*, and easily got him to assist him against his Lord King *Edward*. *Griffin* raised all the Forces he could, joined *Algar* and invaded *Herefordshire*; against whom, *Rodulf* the King's Nephew made Head; but having neither Courage nor Conduct was soon put to flight, leaving behind him five hundred Men slain on the Spot. *Griffin* and *Algar* swelled with this Success, entred *Hereford*, killed many of the Canons, and many Inhabitants, plundred and burnt the City, and carried off many Prisoners, and a vast Booty. The King sent *Harold* against them, knowing him to be

be a Man of Courage, and well skilled in the Art of War, who fortified *Hereford*; during which Time, the two Commanders thought it best to procure a Peace. They sent to desire a Meeting at a Place called *By-hesleage*, where a firm Peace and Amity was concluded. In pursuance of which, *Algar* sent away his Ships, and went himself to the King, who restored him to his former Command. But *Griffin* the next Year broke the Peace, by setting upon *Leofgar* Bishop of *Hereford*, whom he slew, together with his Clerks, and many others.

1057.

In the following Year, according to the King's Request, *Edward*, Son of King *Edmund Ironside*, came into *England*, but died at *London* not long after, and was buried at *St. Paul's Church*, leaving behind him one Son, named *Edgar Esheling*, and two Daughters, *Margaret* and *Christiana*.

1060

*K. of Scots
comes into
England.*

Malcolm King of the *Scots* came into *England*, to give King *Edward* a Visit, and contracted so great a Friendship with *Tosti*, who brought him on his way, that they became sworn Brethren, tho' to what Effect, the Event shewed within two Years. For *Tosti* going to *Rome*, *Malcolm* took the Opportunity, entered his Territories, and wasted and plundered many Places in the North; and at the same Time, *Griffin* harrassed the West, against whom *Harold* was sent with a Party of Horse. *Griffin* got Intelligence of his March, and very narrowly escaped, but was obliged to forsake most of his Ships, which *Harold* burnt. About *Rogation-Week*, *Harold* sailed from *Britain*, encompassed *Wales*, joined his Brother *Tosti*, who commanded the Horse, and did such Damage to the Country, that the *Britains* yielded themselves up to him, gave Hostages, and renounced their King *Griffin*, who at present escaped, but was taken the following Year, and beheaded by *Griffin*, King of North *Wales*, who sent his Head and the Head of his Ship to King *Edward*, bestowed *Griffin's* Dominions upon his two Brothers, *Blechgent* and *Rithwalan*, who swore Allegiance to him, to obey him both by Sea and Land, and engaged to pay whatever the Country had heretofore paid to the former Kings of *England*; at which *Candoc*, the Son of *Griffin*, was enraged, to see his Inheritance thus made over to his Uncles. Therefore to revenge himself, he with a Party came suddenly upon the Artificers, who were erecting a House for *Harold* on the

the *Severn*, slew them, and carried off the Materials, having demolished the House. *Harold* was no sooner disappointed in these Parts, but there was a dreadful Conspiracy formed against his Brother *Tosti* in the North, occasioned by an Officer named *Gospatrick*, with whom having a Contest, his Sister Queen *Egitha*, caused him to be slain at Court. *Gospatrick*'s Friends espoused his Cause, upon which two of them, named *Ganiel* and *Alf*, were treacherously drawn in and murdered in *Tosti*'s Chamber. These Actions, with the intolerable Exactions on the Country, so incensed the Inhabitants, that three or four of the Principal, with four hundred armed Men, entered *Tork*, and slew some hundreds of *Tosti*'s Attendants, and then they plundered his Treasury and departed; of which *Tosti* complains to the King, and his Brother *Harold* is appointed to accommodate this difficult Affair; and as they were going into the North for that End, they were met at *Northampton* by the whole Country, and afterwards at *Oxford*, who opposed *Tosti*'s Designs; declaring, 'That they were free Men born, and as freely educated, that they would not endure the Infelice of that Earl, for they had learned from their Ancestors, to chuse either Death or Liberty.' In this Resolution they continued so stedfast, that in a short Time, they procured *Tosti* and his Ministers to be all banished; and at their Request, *Morchar*, the Son of *Algar*, was created Earl of *Northumberland*. As soon as *Tosti* was driven out by the King's Authority, *Harold* was driven away by the very Winds and Seas. Being at his Country Seat at *Bosenham* in *Suffex*, he with some of his Retinue, went on Board a Fisher's Boat to recreate themselves on the Sea, but sailing farther than they designed, they were by a Storm drove to the Coast of *Normandy*, where they were obliged to land in the Territories of the Earl of *Ponthieu*, and the Inhabitants seized and laid them in Irons. *Harold* upon this, sent a Messenger to *William* Duke of *Normandy*, to acquaint him, that he was come over on Business of the greatest Importance, but was detained Prisoner by *Guido* Earl of *Ponthieu*; upon which, he was immediately set at Liberty, and conducted to his Court, where the Duke entertained him very honourably, and invited him into *Little Britain*, where at that Time the *Norman* Duke made War. *Harold* by his Wit and Valour, so well recommended himself to the Duke, that he was highly esteemed by

Farther Disturbances.

Harold's
Oath to the
Duke of
Normandy.

by him; and that he might also the more endear himself, he swore to deliver up the Castle of *Dover* to him at King *Edward's* Death, and procure him to succeed in the Kingdom of *England*; upon this the Duke's Daughter was contracted to him, and he sent Home with rich Presents. This is the Substance of that Accident, whatever was the Occasion of his Promise and Ingagement with the Duke. The Time of Trial now drew near, which was dreadful to him, and the *English Saxon* Nation. This was ushered in by a Comet, which according to *Ingulph*, portended, that great Change of Government, that Slaughter of the People, and that great calamity, which shortly fell upon the Land. King *Edward* declining in Years and Strength, daily grew weaker, yet assisted at the Dedication of *St. Peter's* Church in *Westminster*, which he had founded, and by a Charter granted it many Immunities and Privileges, to which was annexed the first Great Seal used in *England*.

King *Edward*
dies.

But on the fifth Day of *January* he departed this Life, to the exceeding Grief of the miserable People, and was buried in the said Church with great Solemnity; having reigned from the Death of *Harold-Godwinson*, twenty three Years, six Months, and twenty seven Days. In this Prince, the Royal regnant Line of the *West Saxon* Kings, which from *Cerdic* the first of them, had Dominion in *Britain* five hundred and forty seven Years, received its Period.

HAROLD.

A. D. 1066.

Harold is
crowned King.

KING *Edward* being dead, there laid Claim to the Crown, first *Edgar-Etheling*, the last King's elder Brother, next *William* Duke of *Normandy*, and then *Harold*, Earl *Godwin's* Son; he was very popular, and the late King's chief Minister, a Man of Valour and Conduct, civil and obliging, and of such Qualifications as fitted him for a Crown; who by Reason of the Absence of the other two, having all the Grandees at Court at his Beck, whom he had either obliged by his Kindness, or won by his Authority, was chosen by all the Princes of *England*, assumed the Title, and was crowned King on the same Day that King *Edward* was buried, and immediately proceeded to the Performance of many laudable Actions. He repealed many hard and antiquated Laws, and made others that were better;

he became a Patron to Churches and Monasteries, and respected all Orders of the Clergy; he was very obliging to the Good, and discouraged the Vicious, commanding his Officers to detect and punish all Thieves, Robbers, and Disturbers of the publick Peace, and made it his Business to defend his Country, both by Sea and Land. But both his own Fate, and that of the Nation, was too urgent to permit him long to continue these Methods. On the twenty fourth of *April* a dreadful Comet appeared with great Lustre, for seven Days, and seen, as was reported, throughout the World. The first Mischiefe believed to have been portended by it, was, from *Harold's* own Brother *Tosti*, who could not bear his Brother's Exaltation, and was resolved to endeavour his Ruin; for which purpose, he sailed from *Flanders* with some Ships to the Isle of *Wight*, where he extorted Money from the Inhabitants, and practised Piracy on the Coast, 'till he came to *Sandwich* Haven. *Harold* with a good Fleet, and a Party of Horse, marched in Person against him. Upon this, *Tosti* taking all the Seamen he could find with him, sailed to the Coasts of *Lincolnshire*, where he burned many Villages, and killed many Men. But *Edwin* Earl of *Mercia*, and *Morcar* Earl of *Northumberland*, marched against him, and forced him to abandon the Country; from whence he sailed into *Scotland* to King *Malcolm*, where he continued the whole Summer. In the mean Time, King *Harold* made great Preparations both by Sea and Land, to prevent an Invasion, from a more powerful Enemy than his Brother *Tosti*; namely, the great *William* Duke of *Normandy*, who had sent Messengers to him, to remind him of his Promise and Oath, and to require a Performance of what had been agreed between them. This *Harold* refused, urging, That what he promised was in Captivity, and could not be called his own Act, since it was extorted by Necessity. To these Reasons, *Harold* thinking himself sufficiently powerful, added Contempt, and sent away *William's* Ambassadors on lame and maimed Horses. Upon this Duke *William*, to revenge the Affront, made great Preparations for an Invasion. *Harold*, having expected him all the Summer, at length concluded, that he had put off his Design until the next Spring; he removed his Forces from the South, and marched them towards the North, where he was called by a new Storm, that threatned him from those Parts.

His Brother
Fiji's An-
tempt against
him.

For

For his Brother *Tosti* having joined with *Harold Haverger* King of *Norway*, sailed into the *Humber*, and then into the *Ouse*; they landed at *Rickale*, marched to *Tork*, and took it by Storm. Before *Harold* could arrive these Parts, *Edwin* and *Morchar* marched against *Tosti*, and on the twentieth Day of *September*, engaged him, but lost the Day; upon which, the *Norwegians* received from the Inhabitants of *Tork* five hundred Hostages, and leaving a hundred and fifty of their own, returned to their Ships. Five Days after this unfortunate Battle, King *Harold* arrived at *Tork*, from whence marching to a Place, upon this Occasion since called *Battel-Bridge*, he engaged their whole Forces, in which Action, both *Tosti* and *Harold Haverger* were slain, and the *English* obtained a complete Victory; and in the Enemy's Camp there was found a prodigious Quantity of Gold, which King *Harold* impolitickly took to his own Use; which so disoblighed the Soldiers, that they began to renounce his Interest, and repented of their former Services. The discontent of the Army, proved afterwards of dangerous Consequence to him.

Duke William lands at Hastings. King *Harold* in the midst of his publick Rejoicings at *Tork*, upon the Account of his late Success, received the melancholy News, that *William Duke of Normandy* was landed with a very numerous and well disciplin'd Army; the Place where they landed, was at, or near *Hastings*, on the Coasts of *Sussex*. The Duke, as he was going a-shore, accidentally slip'd and tumbled to the Ground, which a Soldier observing, he immediately turned it to a good Omen, and cried out aloud, That he had already taken Possession of *England*. *William* commanded his Army not to plunder or commit any Outrages, but that they ought to spare those Things, which would shortly be their own. For fifteen Days he continued with his Army in a quiet and peaceable manner, expecting the Event of his Claim, and building a Fort to have Recourse to in case of Extremity; for he had ordered his whole Fleet, consisting of near a thousand Ships, to be burnt, that his Men might think of nothing but Death or Conquest; a Resolution desperately brave! Having taken these Precautions, he published his Pretences against King *Harold*, and the Reasons of his Invasion. First, That he came to revenge the Death of Prince *Asfred* his Cousin, who had been formerly murdered by the Means of Earl *Godwin*. Secondly, That he might restore Archbishop *Robert*, Earl

and the rest of the *Normans*, unjustly banished in
 the late Reign. And *Thirdly*, That *Harold* had con-
 firmed to his Oath, possessed himself of *England*, which
 well by right of Consanguinity, as by that of a dou-
 ble Promise, ought to be his. Never was any Invasion
 attended with more fortunate Hits and Circumstances,
 than Duke *William's*; for *Harold* and his Forces were
 spent, and in the North, and were much weakened in
 two bloody Encounters; having lost most of their
 commanding Officers, and the Flower of the Soldier-
 y, and the rest highly disgusted with him, for depriving
 them of their part of the Spoils; so that he was just
 opened for Ruin, when the News of the Duke's Defeat
 reached him at *York*; at which he was so confound-
 ed and surpris'd, that he knew not how to act in so
 critical a Juncture; and instead of Deliberation, and
 mature Consultation, necessary to prevent the Storm,
 he hasted to *London*, where he would not stay to levy
 Forces, nor tarry for such Supplies as were on the Road
 to join him, but hurried into *Seffex*, with a Resolution
 to engage the Enemy, before one third Part of his own
 Army could well be put in Order. Yet he sent some
 Scouts to survey the Numbers and Strength of the *Nor-
 mans*, who being discovered, Duke *William* with un-
 common Courtelie caused them to be shewn through all
 the Camp, and sent them back with Rewards. At their
 return they much applauded the Magnificence and Con-
 science of the Duke; and declared to *Harold*, That all
 the Army seemed to be Priests, because they were close
 shaven. The King smiled at their Simplicity, and told
 them, That those, whom they took for Priests, were
 valiant Soldiers. *Gyrth* the King's Brother, advised
 him not to fight in Person, since he had given *William*
 his Oath; but that himself and the rest, who were un-
 der no Obligation by Oath, might justly fight in Defence
 of their Country and Liberty. *Harold* could not be
 prevailed on, but thought that a King's declining to
 meet Death at the Head of his Army, would be such a
 Mark of Cowardice, as would blemish the Actions of
 all his Life; and being pushed on by his unlucky Fate,
 he hastily sent back the Monk, who, from the Duke,
 brought him these Proposals, That either he should re-
 sign his King^dom, or hold it of him, or else try the
 Justice of the Cause, in sight of both Armies, by single
 Combat, or by the Determination of the Apollo-
 lick

lick See. *Harold* replied, That God, and the Sword of the Nation should decide the Controversy; upon which, both Parties prepare to engage the next Morning. The *English* spent the Night in Mirth, the *Normans* in Devotion.

Battel of
Hastings.

The Day being come, which was to decide the Fate of the Nation, the *English* were drawn up in a close Body, armed with Battel-Axes and Shields. The King and his Brother stood on Foot by the Royal Standard, that the Danger being common, none might think of flying. The *Normans* put their Foot in the Front, most of their Archers, their Horse flanking them on each Hand; and then the Duke declared, That his Cause was just, and that God would respect it accordingly; when his Armour was brought him, he put on his Coat, and let the wrong way; upon which he pleasantly cried, *I find my Dukedom is changed into a Kingdom.* And the Head of his Army, he put the Soldiers in mind, of the Valour and Renown of their Ancestors, and the Success and good Fortune of his own Arms, and concluded with Confidence of Victory, from the Guilt and Perjury of the present Usurper of the Crown. Upon this, the *Normans* began with the famous Song *Rowland*, and imploring divine Assistance, they advanced against the *English*, who were as ready to meet them, though the Ground they stood on was strait and inconvenient. The Fight began with great Fury, Order, and equal Bravery on both Sides; at first the *English* were severely gauled by the *Norman* long Bows, but when they came to close Fight, the *English* with their Bills made a dreadful Slaughter of the *Normans*, and they kept themselves united and in such Order that all the Attempts of the Duke with his Horse to break them, were ineffectual, until he feigned a sudden Flight: Upon which, the *English* eager to pursue, dissolved their Ranks, which otherwise had been impenetrable. Upon this, the *Normans* rallied, and fell on the broken *English* with fresh Fury, and drove them to the Ascent; yet in their flight they often rallied, and lost their Lives at a dear Rate. The Battel continued very bloody on both Sides, from nine in the Morning till grew dark, when *Harold*, after he had discharged all the Parts of a skillful Commander and valiant Soldier, was shot into the Head with an Arrow, and died. His Death turned the Scale, and caused the *English* to take themselves to flight. With *Harold* fell his Brother

thers, *Gyrth* and *Leofwin*, with the greatest part of *English* Nobility; so that *William* remained a conqueror, who generously gave *Harold's* Body to his brother, which was buried at *Waltham* in a Church of monks, founded by himself, after a short but vigorous reign of nine Months, one Week, and two Days. He ended the Empire of the *English Saxons* in this nation, who from their first Entrance under *Hengist* and *Horsa*, had kept Possession, and with some Interruption, held Dominion for about six hundred and seventeen Years.

And now notwithstanding *Harold* was slain, and the *English* were vanquished, yet *William* Duke of *Norway* was not in a Condition to have subdued the Nation (for his Army was very much weakened by this Victory, having lost a great many brave Officers, a Multitude of his best Soldiers,) had not the *English* Nobility been divided into diverse Factions, and such dissensions, that instead of making Preparation against a common Enemy, they became Enemies to one another, and strove for that Crown, which the Duke had already got by the Point of his Sword; when a firm Union and a wise Management, must certainly have put a stop to any farther Progress of *William's* Arms. The *English* were the chief Forgers of their own ruin; they were guilty of such prodigious Miscarriages, as if they were void of all manner of Reason, and which were the absolute Effects of such vicious Tempers, insatiate Mens Minds, enervate the Power of their Arms, and render them abject, and ripe for Servitude. This was the *English* at this Time; and for some Years before the Arrival of the *Normans*; Piety and good Literature were so unfashionable amongst all Sorts and Orders of Men, that the Clergy could scarce read divine Service; and to understand Grammar was next to a miracle. The Nobles and People were grown negligent of Arms, and generally debauched with Luxury and Idleness; the Clergy ignorant and licentious; the Nobility given to Gluttony, Venery, and Oppression, the Commons to Drunkenness and Disorder.

The *NORMAN* LINE

The Reign of King William the First, commonly called the Conqueror.

HAVING thus run through the Reigns of our Saxon Monarchs, we are now arrived at a clearer prospect of Affairs, being come to that memorable Period when the State of *England* received the greatest Alteration in Laws, Language, Customs, Fashions, and in most things, except Religion, that ever did happen. So that from these extraordinary Mutations, we are to begin with a new Account of *England*, now larger in Extent and Dominion abroad, more in State and Ability at Home, and in a short Time, more in Fame and Reputation in the World: And now we come to a new set of Kings, viz. the *Normans*, whose Race continues to this Day. The first of which was *William Duke of Normandy*, commonly called the Conqueror, whose Pedigree is thus traced. *Roul*, a Commander of the *Norwegians* and *Danes*, with a great Army, seeking where to plant themselves, entred the *Seine*, and sacked the Country as far as *Roban*; then attempted *Paris*, and defeated the *French* several Times; so that in the end *Charles* the Simple, then King of *France*, bought his Peace with an Alliance, and the Country of *Neufstris* which *Roul* called *Normandy*. From him descended six Dukes of *Normandy*, in the Space of one hundred and twenty Years. *Robert* the last, after eight Years Reign resolves to visit the Sepulchre. His Nobility endeavours to dissuade him, he being without Issue. The Duke declared, That he had a Natural Son by one *Arlotta* Glover's Daughter, of whom he had great Hopes; and

I doubt

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

117

I doubt not, said he, but he is of my begetting: Him will I trust in the Dutchy as my Heir, and I pray take him for your Lord; according to the Bishops and Barons did Homage to him as Duke of Normandy. His Father proceeded in his Pilgrimage, and died Abroad, leaving the young Prince to be the Founder of his own Fortunes, rather than Heir to his Father's, which he found exposed to all the Difficulties arising from the Tenderness of his Age, the Reproach of his Birth, a suspected Guardian, a disputed Title, and a distracted State; all which he surmounted with a Courage, Bravery, and Constancy, as is not to be met with in many Histories of the ancient Heroes.

This was our King William the First, who was about forty two Years of Age, when he gained that decisive Battle near Hastings; after which, like a wise General, who designed to make the best Advantage of his Success, he resolved to leave no strong Place behind him; so having left a sufficient Garrison in his new erected Fort at Hastings, he marched to Dover, where Multitudes had fled for Refuge, who at the Duke's Approach, submitted to his Mercy; from whence he marched towards London, the Kentish Men having sworn Fealty to him, that he might prevent the Attempts of Archbishop Stigand, and the Earls Edwin and Morcar, together with the Citizens of London, of setting up Edgar Ætheling, the true Heir for their King. He pitched his Camp near London; a few Companies sallied out, which the Duke repulsed. And here began the Miseries of England; for before this, the Duke designed to reduce the English to his Obedience by gentle Methods, but finding they made Head against him, he changed his Purpose, and proceeded with greater Severity. And tho' these Earls and many of the Nobility were against him, yet the generality of the Clergy were for him, because they had heard that he was a great Friend to their Order, and that he would enlarge their Power and Revenues. He then laid all the Buildings South of the Thames in Ashes, and march'd up the River, destroying the Country as far as Wallingford in Berkshire. Upon this, Aldred, Archbishop of York, Wulfstan Bishop of Worcester, with Edgar Ætheling himself, and other Noblemen, repair to the Duke at Berkhamstead in Hertfordshire, and swear Fealty to him. About Christmas, he marches towards London, and is met by all the chief Men of the City; who,

And offer
William the
Crown.

His Corona-
tion Oath.

All submit.

who, with the Bishops and Nobility, requested him to accept of the Crown, for they were ready to acknowledge him for their Sovereign. Thus all Parties strove to intrude themselves into Servitude. On *Christmas-Day* he was crowned, by the Archbishop of *York*, in the Abby Church at *Westminster*, having demanded of all the *English* present, whether they did Consent to have the Duke crowned King; the *Normans* were asked the same Question, by the Bishop of *Constance*, to which both *English* and *Normans* unanimously gave their Consents. At the high Altar the King swore, That he would protect the Church and its Governors; that he would govern all the People subject to him, prudently and justly; that he would ordain and keep just Laws; that he would treat all his Subjects, as well *English* as *Normans*, mercifully.

William being thus established upon the Throne, he began to perform all things worthy a King; particularly, whilst he staid at *London*, every Act of his Administration was just, wise, and merciful; some of which tended to the particular Honour and Advantage of that City, while others proved highly advantageous to the whole Nation; and in all other Matters, he chiefly aimed at the good of the Church and the Kingdom. He enjoined his great Men to observe Equity in all their Actions, not to oppress those who had submitted themselves; and next he restrained the common Soldiers by severe Edicts, from violating the Chastity of Women, from frequenting infamous Houses, and strictly prohibited all Murders, Robberies and Tumults. And now having begun to build a Fortress at *London*, he retired to a Place called *Barking*, 'till it could be finished. During his Stay at *Barking*, the Earls *Edwin* and *Morcar*, came and submitted themselves to him, whose Example was followed by a great many Nobles. He took their voluntary Oaths of Fidelity, received them into Favour, and restored to them their forfeited Estates. After this, he made a Progress into diverse Parts of the Kingdom, in all Places ordering such Things as were very advantageous to his People; and now wherever he travelled, he found none to oppose him, all willingly submitting themselves to him; and for his better Security, he placed *Norman* Garrisons in *Winchester*, and *Dover*, and many other Places; and that the Memory of that great Victory he obtained over King *Harold*, might never

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

119

not be forgotten, he gave Orders for the building of a noble Monastery near *Hastings*, called *Battel-Abby*, which he endowed with great Privileges and Immunities. King *William* having thus happily settled the Nation, intended to make a Journey into his own Country of *Normandy*; and accordingly committed the Government of the Nation to his Brother *Odo*, Bishop of *Bath*, and his Cousin *William Fitz-Osbern*; and to prevent as much as possible, any Revolt during his Absence, he took with him such of the Nobility, as were most popular, most powerful, or most likely to make an insurrection against him; particularly Archbishop *Stigand*, the great Earls *Edwin* and *Morcar*, Earl *Waltbeof*, and several others of the chief of the Nobility, and also his own *Eschequer* himself, and all his *French* Adventurers, whom he had well rewarded. With this noble Train he set out for *Normandy*, where when he arrived, he was as no- ticed: Here *K. William* passed all that Summer, and beginning of the following Winter. While *Normandy* was thus happy with the King's Presence, *England* was sorely oppressed by *Odo* and *Fitz-Osbern* in their Go- vernments, especially those in *Kent*, who took to Arms, and attempted to surprise *Dover* Castle, but failed. At the same Time, *Edric*, with the Assistance of two other Kings, ravaged several Parts of *Herefordshire*. These Transactions were sufficient to hasten the King's return, who leaving the Government of *Normandy* to his Wife *Matilda*, and his Son *Robert*, came over in *October*, and being arrived in *England*, his first Care was to satisfy those who had assisted him, and yet not to grieve the *English*, by whom he himself was now to be received. Being arrived at *London*, he treated the *English* Nobles and Nobility with much Subtlety and Officious- ness, granting them what they asked, and freely hearing out what they offered; but at the same Time watched them more narrowly than before, and imposed on the Nation a severe Tax, called *Danegeld*, which had been imposed by *Edward* the Confessor. In this same Year, while the King's Wife, was crowned and delivered of a Son, named *Henry*, afterwards King of *England*. When the King's levying this unreasonable Tax, the Archbishop of *York*, who before loved *William* as a Son, dishonoured him as a King, took the Liberty to de- nounce a Curse upon him, and all his Progeny. This so enraged the King, that he sent Messengers to appease the

A. D. 1068.

Reg. 2.

Matilda

crowned.

Henry I. born

Exeter re-
bels.

It is reduc'd.

Edwin and
Mortimer re-
bels.

Edgar Ethel-
ing flies into
Scotland.

Archbishop, but before they got to him, he died of C

The City of *Exeter* by reason of these Impossi-
refused to swear Fealty to the King; upon which,
in the midst of *Winter*, he marched against it; &
whose Approach, the chief Citizens went out to meet
begged Peace, and gave such Hostages as the King
manded; but the Commonalty refused to deliver o
City. The King marched up to the Gates, and
put out the Eyes of one of the Hostages, and bega
Attack; the Inhabitants, to prevent a Storm, imp
his Mercy, which was readily granted, and the Ci
livered, in which the King built a Castle, and in it
strong Garison; and some Time after, the forfeited E
were given to the *Norman* Commanders. The
having thus quelled the Rebellion in the West, w
lained by a Disturbance in the North, by means of
Edwin, who after Promise of one of the King's D
ters in Marriage, was disappointed. This and
other Affronts, provoked him and his Brother *Al*
to take up Arms; but the King by his Vigilance and
Conduct, so discouraged the two Earls, that they
ged his Mercy, and were received again into F
Upon which, the Inhabitants of *Tork* delivered up the
of the City to the King, in which he raised a Fortref
man'd it with a strong Garison, in his Return, he
Castles at *Lincoln*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*.

this, *Archib* of *Northumberland*, and *Egelwin* Bist
Durham, submitted to the King, and *Malcolm* K
Scotland made Peace with him. But this continu

long, for this very Year, *Edgar Etheling*, with
of the Nobility, being discontented with the King
vours to Strangers, and Neglect of them, fled int
land, and were honourably received by *Malcolm*
married his Sister *Margaret*. These made some
motions in the North to recover their lost Co
but it was too late, and all unsuccessful Consp
do greatly advance the Sovereignty. In the mean
King *William* used all Methods for his own Se
he disarmed the *English* throughout the Kingdom
commanded them to put out both Fire and Can
eight of the Clock at Night, at which Hour, in
Town, City, and Village, he caused a Bell to be
called *Conoresew*, now *Corsew*. But notwithstanding
these Precautions, the Quiet of the Nation was c
ed in diverse Places: But by these petty Revol

N

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

225

Normans took deeper Root, and the Estates of the Revolters pleased them, and their Places of Honour and Profit were given to the *Norman* Clergy and Lords.

This Year, the discontented *English* in the North, *A. D. 1069.* surprised *Durham* in the Night, and slew all the *Normans* but one, to the Number of seven hundred. *The Danes*

About the same Time, the fugitive *English*, being assisted by King *Swane*, arrived in the *Humber*, with two hundred and forty Sail of Ships well man'd, who were shortly after joined by *Edgar Esbeling*, and all his Associates from *Scotland*. They marched against *Tork*, but the Garison of *Normans*, to prevent their Approach, set Fire to the Suburbs, which communicated the Flames to the City, which was entirely consumed, together with the Cathedral Church, and Monastery of *St. Peter*, and a famous Library; after which, the *English* soon became Masters of the Castle, and slew the Governor, and three thousand *Normans*: Then they retired well loaded with Plunder to their former Quarters. The King, upon receiving this ill News, threatened to extirpate the *Northumbrians*; but before he marched, he sent the Queen into *Normandy*, and wisely considering, that these Discontents of the *English*, were occasioned by his own Mismanagement, and Partiality to the *Normans*; to regain the Affections of the People, he began to shew a greater regard to the ancient *Saxon* Laws, and to curb the Insolence of the *Normans*; and withal, recalled many of the *English* Nobility from Banishment, and made a firm League with them. Arriving in *Yorkshire*, he proceeded with great Severity, putting most of the People to the Sword, and laying the whole Country waste; till he came to the Confederates encamped near *Tork*; he gave them Battel, and entirely routed them; upon which, the City surrendered itself to the Conqueror. *The Danes*

The King by Money and Promises, recovers the whole Country from the *Danes*, which had suffered much in this War. All the Towns between *Tork* and *Durham* were entirely depopulated, and the Land laid uncultivated for nine Years, which occasioned a great Famine in those Parts, that the People were forced to feed on Dogs and Horses, and even Man's Flesh, to save themselves from perishing: Upon this, *Edgar Esbeling* retired into *Scotland* for Shelter. King *William* thus put an end to these Commo-*A. D. 1070.* tions in the North, and compelled the *English* to submit to him.

him by hard Usage, Imprisonments of some an-
nishments of others, giving most of the Earldoms
ronies, and Bishopricks to the *Norman Nobility*;
Clergy, and scarce permitted the *English* to en-
Place of Honour, Dominion, or Power; and he
his own Coffers with the Plunder of the whole N
for he robbed all the Monasteries of the Gold and
which the *English* had hid there for Security, re-
ring their Shrines and Chalices. These Proceeds
far enraged the *English*, that they resolved to thro
the *Norman Yoak*; accordingly they got together
Forces they could, and once more set up *Edgar*
ing for their King; upon which King *William* b
very uneasy, fearing at last to lose that Kingdom,
he had got with so much Blood. To prevent
by the Advice of Archbishop *Laufauc*, he be-
deal more gently with the *English Nobility*; and
sing to them Terms of Peace, they met the K
Berkhamstead, where he swears upon the holy E
litts, and the Relicks of the Church of *St. Alban*
he would observe the good, approved, and antient
of the Kingdom, which his Predecessors had ord
particularly those of King *Edward*; by which th
lish being satisfied, all return to their Habitations
the King, contrary to his solemn Oath, now deter
to ruin those separately, whom he could not united
come. This he performed by killing some, dispos
others, and out-lawing many more. This obliged
Edgar to fly into *Scotland*, and several of the I
Nobility into *Denmark* and *Norway*, preferring
Place to the *Norman Yoak*. *Edwin* and *Morci*
tire; the former in his Passage towards *Scotlan*
betrayed by his own Men, and slain. The latter
the Isle of *Ely*, where he joined many others, wh
tisy themselves there; against whom the King, w
ver gave Time to Insurrections, marched, and s
up all the Passages on the East Side of the Islan
on the West he built a Bridge from the Contin
the Isle, two Miles in length; this so terrifi
Persons in the Isle, that they surrendered at Disce
The King caused the Hands of many of the Sold
be cut off, and their Eyes to be put out, and M
and the Nobility were sent into nauseous P
King *William* having finished this Affair, resolves
vade *Scotland*, which Country, had always been a

The King
swears to the
Laws of K
Edward.

And breaks
his Oath

A D 1071
Morcar and
others rebel
in the Isle of
Ely.

And are re-
duced.

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

129

for his Enemies ; accordingly, he in Person enters ^{A. D. 1072.}
a great Army, which was tired with fatigue- ^{Scotland in-}
larches and Necessities ; and *Malcolm* wisely ^{vaded.}
seeing the Danger to which he was exposed,
fair Overtures of Peace, to which King *Wil-*
liam readily agreed, on Condition, that he should
take Oath of Fealty to him, and all Offenders on both ^{A Peace con-}
be pardoned. Hereupon, King *Malcolm* did his ^{cluded.}
Oath to King *William*, in Memory of which Treas-
ure-cross, with both the Kings Arms engraven on it,
rested on the Mountain *Stanmore* in *Richmond*-
called the Royal Cross. As in *England* by rea-
son of the Conquest there had been a very great Change,
France had its Share ; for as at the Court of *England*,
French Fashions and Language prevailed, so also in
France, all Persons at Court laboured to speak the
French, and followed their Fashions, caused by *Edgar*
King's Presence, to whom so many of the *English*
were attached. And about this Time, the Titles of Duke,
Baron, and Knight, began to be conferred on Per-
sons in this Country. In this very Year in *England*, by
the King's Order, a Synod was held concerning the an-
cient Dispute, between the Archbishops of *Canterbury*
and *York*, about Jurisdiction : The Synod decreed in fa-
vour of the former, which Decree was subscribed by the
Queen, and chief of the Nation.

Sooner had King *William* settled his Affairs at Home with
France, but he was disturbed Abroad ; for the King of ^{France.}
France had invaded his Dominions about *Normandy*.
Which, the King without Delay, transported a
powerful Army into *Normandy*, and soon retook the
city of *Mans*, and the Province of *Maine*, which had
been lost. Here *Edgar Ætheling* came to him out of ^{A. D. 1073.}
France, and was received into Favour with all his Fol-
lowers, and was allowed a Pound Weight of Silver for
every Day's Expence ; a rare Example of a prevailing
liberality, shewed to the only Competitor of his
Power. This piece of Generosity had so good an ef-
fect on *Edgar*, that he gratefully acknowledged it, by a
valiant Behaviour for ever after. Tho' the King
so kind to great Men at Home, yet he would
not be bullied by any Abroad, who pretended to any
Authority over him ; for about this Time, Pope
Gregory demanded Oath of Fealty from him for
the Kingdom of *England* to be held of the Pope. S

The King
denies the
Pope's Au-
thority.

ledging, That the Royal Power, next under God to be subject to the Care and Government of the stolick Jurisdiction. Upon which, King *William* ly denied the Pope's Authority, and would pay such mean Submission, forbidding all his Subjects knowledge any Man for Pope, but whom he allowed of, or receive any of his Letters, unless it been first shewn to himself.

A. D. 1074.
A Conspira-
cy.

The King being thus engaged Abroad, his Subjects conspire against him at Home, which was occaſion'd by *Ralph de Waker* Earl of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, married *Emma* the Daughter of *Roger*, Earl of *Sherburn*: They on the Wedding-day, being joined by a great number of the *English* Nobility and Clergy, and Earl *Walter* resolved to call in the *Danes*, and prevent the King's return; which in all Probability had succeeded, had not *God's* watchful Eye, which observed every Motion of the *English*, spy'd the Design, and by the Help of the Bishop of *Worcester* and others, kept so strict a watch upon them, that they could never unite to perform their purpose. The Conspirators being thus discovered and dispersed, they dispers'd, *Fitz Auber* was taken and executed, and so was *Walsbeof*, notwithstanding he had not the full Discovery of the whole.

which is
suppressed
A. D. 1075.

The Suppression of the Plot at Home, did not prevent the King from great Apprehensions from Abroad, many foreign Princes were great Encouragers of the Conspirators. The King of *Denmark* sent a Fleet of two hundred Sail, under the Command of his Son *Hardeknute*, and others. *Drone*, King of *Ireland*, sent *Harold's* Sons with sixty Ships; and *Malcolm*, a King of *Wales*, were ready to lend their Assistance, had there been Occasion; but these were all disappointed. Notwithstanding which, the King was obliged to return to *Normandy*, and hasten into *England*, to quell the remains of the Rebellion in the West. He soon put an end to all Tumults, using the Conspirators with great severity, cutting off the Hands of some, putting out the Eyes of others, hanging Multitudes, and it was a singular Favour to be banished only. The more cruel of the *English*, tho' they had not been in the West, were first deprived of their Money, then of their Liberty, and then many of their Lives. Hence *England* came to be the Habitation of Strangers; no native *English* Man was permitted to enjoy even the privilege of Earl, Bishop, or Abbot. Thus the Rich

The *English*
oppressed

En

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

125

land Foreigners devoured, and fed upon its very
vels. The King, by these severe Methods, having
repressed all Disturbances at Home, goes a third Time The King goes into France. *Normandy*, and laid Siege to the City of *Dole*, that be-
longed to the rebellious Earl *Ralph*; the Garison made
valiant Defence, and obliged him at last to raise the
Siege, so that the King was forced to return again to *England*,
and to pass this and the next Year in Peace. And returns. A. D. 1077.
Now imagining, that all Contests, both Abroad and
at Home were at an End, having subdued *Wales*, and
that its Kings pay Homage to him, he was surprised
by the News that his eldest Son *Robert* had laid Claim
to the whole Dukedom of *Normandy*; alledging, that
his Father, in the Presence of the King of *France*, had
promised to make him Duke of *Normandy*, when he
conquered *England*. Accordingly, being assisted by
the French King, he invades the Country, burnt several
Towns, and made great Devastations. The King hear-
ing of this, hastes with his Forces into *Normandy*, design-
ing to surprise his Son; but *Robert* having got Intelli- A. D. 1079.
gence of his coming, and being furnished with two
thousand Men by the King of *France*, lay in Ambush,
in the Way through which the King was to pass, at-
tacked him, and put his Army to flight, and in the Per-
il he happened to encounter with the King his Fa-
ther, unknown to him, and not only wounded him in
the Arm with his Lance, but unhorsed him. Upon
the King calling out for another Horse, *Robert*
answered his Voice, and discovered him to be his Father;
whereupon he hastily alighted from his Horse, took the
wounded King in his Arms, begged his Pardon for his
treachery, and mounted him on his own Horse, and
brought him off with Safety from the Throng. In this
conjunction, *William Rufus* the King's Son was also
wounded. This uncommon Accident brought both
Fathers to an Accommodation, and a Peace being made,
the King returned to *England*, and brought *Robert* with
him, and employed him in the War against *Scotland*. Du-
ring the Time of these Wars, the King, the better to secure
the City of *London*, built the Tower of *London*. Gundolph 1078.
The Duke of *Rocheſter* was made Surveyor of this Work, The Tower of London built.
The Duke *Robert* about a Year after, founded another
magnificent Castle upon the River *Tyne*, at a small
place called *Monkceſter*; but from the building
it was named *New-Caſtle* upon *Tyne*.

Name it retains to this Day. *Robert*, after some
 here in *England*, was sent again into *Normandy*; *His*
 his youngest Brother being joined with him in the Ch
 and Tower, the King reposing the greatest Trust
 Confidence in the latter. These two Princes bel
 little settled in the Government, went to visit the
 or *France* at *Constance*, where one Day after Di
Lewis the *French* King's Son, and *Henry* played a G
 at Chess; and *Henry* won so much of him,
Lewis in Anger called him the Son of a Bastard,
 threw the Chess Board in his Face: *Henry* hereby
 voked, snatched up the Chess Board, and with it b
Lewis's Head, and would have killed him, had
Robert timely interposed between them. This
 Brangle between two hot Youths, kindled a Qu
 between the two Kings, the Fathers, which was
 Cause of the first War between *England* and *Fr*
 for presently the King of *France* joining with *Ro*
 who could no more bear a Partner, than an Head,
 tred *Normandy*, and takes the City of *Vernon*. U
 this King *William* invaded *France*, and subdued
 Counties of *Zaintougue* and *Poitou*, and so returne
Roban. *Robert* finding himself unable to resist his
 ther's Forces, goes and submits to his Father, an
 reconciled to him. This was a very great Disappo
 ment to the King of *France*, who had prompted *Ro*
 to rebel; nevertheless, he summons King *William*
 do him Homage for the Kingdom of *England*:
 which the King replied, he would not, because he
 it of none but God and his Sword. The King
France not satisfied with this Answer, invades *Norm*
dy again, but with such Loss, as made him willing
 conclude a Peace, which lasted not long; for the K
 of *England* being fallen into a Sickneſs through
 bour, Age, and Corpulency, of which he lay ill some
 at *Roban*, the *French* King reflecting upon his Be
 said, That the King of *England* lay in at *Roban*
 which Sarcaſm, the King was so enraged, that as ſo
 as he was recovered, he entred *France* in the chief T
 of their Fruits, laying all the Country waste as ſa
Paris, where the *French* King then was, and ſent
 this Meſſage, That he was come to ſhew him of
 Up-riſing. From thence he marched to *Nantz*, wh
 he deſtroyed, but in his Retreat, got his fatal Wou
 by a Strain of his Horſe among the Breaches, of wh

1081.

Robert rebels

And sub-
mits.

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

127

ill Sick, and being conveyed to *Robin*, ended his
and Wars together.

After having given a brief Account of the Wars of this
together with his Conduct, and Success in them; we
proceed to shew, what Course he took in settling the
dom, and establishing a Government, after he had sup-
the several Invasions, and many Conspiracies made
in him in the Realm. He began his Reign with the In-
tention of the *Norman* Laws, and would certainly
abolished all the *English* Laws, had not the Nobles
and Commons looked upon it as a great Grievance,
by Petition besought him, ' That by the Oath he had
sworn at his Coronation, and by the Soul of St. *Ed-*
ward, from whom he had the Crown and Kingdom,
he would not make them so miserable, as to judge
by a Law they understood not.' This had so
an effect upon the King, that he was pleased to
confirm his former Promises by Charter, commanding
his Judges to observe St. *Edward's* Laws throughout the
dom. Yet notwithstanding this, there was so great
innovation in the Laws and Government of *Eng-*
land, that the People had nothing of them but fair Pro-
mise. For now the Laws were translated into *Latin*
French, which before were in *English*, and plain
easy to be understood, but now practised wholly in
Norman Form and Language, on purpose to oblige
the People to learn that Speech; and all other Methods
were made use of to make the Nation speak the *French*
tongue; as enjoining Children to be taught only
in it, both in Common and Grammar Schools; all
pleas and Business at Court must be in *French*, and
that man was to be regarded, but who spoke *French*.
Soon after his Death, the whole Nation returned to
old *English*, and nothing remained in *French* but
Law, which is at this Day the only remaining Badge
of *Norman* Conquest; by which new Terms, new
Institutions, new Forms of Pleading, new Offices
Courts were introduced; by which the old *English*
Laws, which before were plain, brief and simple, with-
out intricacies and Perplexities, were jumbled out. Before
the *English* were a clear meaning People, and of
good Intentions: As for their Trials in crimi-
nals, where manifest Proof failed, they were decided
by a *Right Doom* (for *Or* signifies Right,
Doom a Part or Portion.) Of this sort of Judgment
they

they had two Kinds; ' *Ordeal* by Fire for the better
 ' of People, and *Ordeal* by Water for the meaner
 ' That of Fire, was to go blindfold over certain
 ' Shares, made red hot, and laid at uneven Distances
 ' from one another: That of Water, was either
 ' cold, in the one to put their naked Arms to the
 ' bow, and in the other to be cast Headlong; according
 ' ing to their Escape or Hurt, they were judged
 ' as were cast into Rivers, if they sunk, they
 ' judged innocent, if not, guilty, as ejected by the
 ' ment. These Trials they called the Judgment of
 ' and they were performed with solemn Prayers.
 some Cases the Person accused was admitted to
 himself by receiving the Eucharist, by his own Oath
 the Oaths of two or three credible Men: Besides
 they had a Trial of Duel, permitted by the Law
 Cases of Safety, Fame, or Possessions. All these
 als shew the *English* to be ignorant of any Foreign
 Law, and to have no imperial or pontifical Constitutions
 ons to determine Affairs by. But these sorts of
 ments and Trials, had their Period soon after the
 quest; the Advantage that the Nation has ever
 had by these Alterations, the Persons, who have
 Law-Suits can best relate. All Actions, both civil
 and real, began now to be determined by the Verdict
 of twelve Men, called an Inquest, according to the
 Custom of *Normandy*, where the same Custom
 i with the same Caution to the Jurors, as amongst
 this Day.

1087.
 A Jury first
 instituted.

The Saxon
 Laws for the
 Peace continued.

Whatever Alterations he made in other Matters,
 he made none in those *Saxon* Laws, that were for the
 Preservation of the Peace, and for the good Order
 Security of the Kingdom; for he found those Con-
 stitutions so well contrived, that better could hardly
 be invented by Man, especially, the Borough Law,
 which every Freeman of the Commons of *England*
 stood as Surety for each other's good Behaviour,
 Borough or Tithing being obliged to produce the
 delinquents to Justice; by which means Innocence be-
 came every Man's Interest as well as Duty, since the
 guilty otherwise to share in the Penalty. In the beginning
 of this Reign, the Kingdom was much infested with
 laws and Robbers, and many *Normans* were
 murdered by the *English*. To prevent which Malice
 a heavy Fine was imposed upon the Hundred,

the Body of any *Norman* should be slain, whether the Authors of the Fact were discovered or not. By these ~~The~~ the Order and Peace of the Kingdom was so ~~well~~ secured, that no Society of Men in the World ~~was~~ in greater Order and Peace; for after this Regulation, not only all Thefts and Robberies were suppressed, but all popular Insurrections ceased. By these means the Realm enjoyed such a Security, that People were safe in their Beds, tho' their Doors were left open, and a fair Virgin with a Purse of Gold in her Hand might have travelled through the Kingdom, without any Danger to her Honour or Money.

He new modelled the judicial Part of the Govern- Many Alterations made
ment throughout the whole Nation; for before, the Bishop and Alderman, or Earl of the Shire, were absolute Judges, which had not only increased their Authority, but also their Revenue, by a great Share they had in the Fines. The King stripped the Bishops wholly of this judicial Power, and confined them to the Cure of Souls only; the Aldermens Power he took quite away, and ordered that for the future, all Causes should be determined four Times a Year, in such Places, and by such Judges as he should appoint; from whom, as from the Bosom of their Prince, all Persons should have Justice. From the Knowledge of the old *English* Customs he plain, that many Alterations were made relating to the Tenures of Estates. The *Saxons* had only two kinds of Tenures, viz. Book-Land and Folk-Land; the one a Possession in Writing, the other without; yet the Honesty of those Times left them little subject to Disputes and Contentions. But this Prince reduced all Grants to Writing, to Signature, and to Witnesses, which in Time, introduced more Cavils and Actions, than former Methods. In those Times also, Inheritances descended not to one Heir, but after the *German* Fashion were equally divided among all the Children, which they called Land-*skitten*, i. e. Part Land, a Custom still retained in some Parts of *Kent*, by the Name of *Gavelkin*, or *Gifealkin*; The Customs of *Kent* preserved.
which it is said, the People of the County secured to themselves by this Stratagem. As the King was passing through their Country to *Dover*, the People encompassed him on all Sides with Boughs in their Hands, to his great Surprise, who expected no such hostile Attempts. Out of the midst of them came *Stigand* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Abbot *Egelfin*,
VOL. I, K and

and told the King, that the Multitude surround were the People of the whole Country, gathered with Boughs in their Hands, as Olive-Branches, to procure Peace and Liberty, else to entangle his Passage, resolving to lose their Lives rather than their Liberty. The King seeing his Danger, granted their Requests, and continued them their Customs and Liberties.

To
The Nation
surveyed.

Doomsday
Book

The King's
Revenues.

The King having thus settled Laws for the Government of the People, his next Care was for the Support of the Honour and Dignity of the Crown. Wherefore he resolved to make in Place, a general Survey of the whole Kingdom, by Commissioners, who were some of the greatest and skilfullest Earls and Bishops of the Nation, who were obliged to take a particular Account of the Possessions, and every Man's Estate else in the Kingdom, the Nature, Quality and Extent of their Lands, Estates and Abilities, with the Descriptions, and Divisions of all the Shires, Hundreds, Tithings, and Tithings; and also the Hides, Virgates and Acres of arable Land, Meadow and Wood; and this Survey or Description was put in a Book, called *Doomsday Book*. The Reason for the Name of *Doomsday* is, that it was lawful to depart, or appeal from what was in the Book, from the Day of Doom, or last Judgment; the highest Record in the Kingdom, it contained a decisive Evidence in any Trial, where there was any Question to refer to it. This Survey did not only ascertain the Revenue of the Crown, which then consisted of several Branches, first the Crown Lands, which consisted of one hundred and twenty two Manors, or Manors, besides many Farms, or Lands in *Middlesex*, *Sussex* and *Rutlandshire*. These, with the Escheats to the King for Felony or Treason, or revert to the Crown for want of Heirs, together with the Services of the Baronies and Lands he gave to his Vassals, raised a vast Revenue in Money. Another was a Land Tax called *Hidage*, first levied by King *Alfred*. A third Branch was Tolls, and for many Cases, Wardships, Knight's-Fees, Fines, and pecuniary Punishments for Murders, Slaughters, Batteries, Fightings, Trespasses

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

147

moors, &c. In short, this King's Revenue amounted a thousand and sixty Pounds *per Day*, which was a four hundred thousand Pounds *per Annum*, an immense Sum in those Days, which by a moderate computation, may be valued at near five Millions in a Time. Besides this prodigious Revenue, the King always kept up a standing Army, especially Horse, ^{His Forces.} in which he made good his Acquisitions against all Enemies, without any Expence or Charge out of Exchequer; for his Followers to whom he had given a Part of the Land, were always ready with sixty thousand Horsemen or Knights, to assist him on every occasion. Having thus provided good Laws for the Government of the People, and enjoying a vast Revenue, and a mighty Army for the Security of his Person and Dominions; he seized on all the Forests in the Nation, and exempted them from all Laws, but his Will and Pleasure, inflicting the most severe Punishments on any that should dare to destroy the Game; and for the Conveniency of his Diversion, he, in an arbitrary Manner, dispeopled the South-West Part of ^{He makes a new Forest in Hampshire} Hampshire, destroying all the Towns and Villages, with many six Churches, turning out the poor Inhabitants for above thirty Miles together, and made a Forest for his Beasts, now called *The new Forest*. This he did to make a more easy Access for his *Normans* into the same in Case of Insurrections, or to indulge himself in Hunting, or to raise Money by any Methods, though so unjust; for on all who presumed to trespass on the Game, he inflicted severe Fines and Penalties. This sort of his gained him much hatred amongst his People; and the divine Judgment seemed to have pursued him long after, by the untimely Deaths of several of his Posterity; for his second Son *Richard* was goar'd by a Bear in this very Forest, and his third Son was casually slain by an Arrow; and his Grandson *Henry*, as he was Hunting, was caught up by a Bough like *Absalom*, hanging till he died. And besides this, he was so very kind to the *Normans*, that they only were preferred to Places of Profit, Trust or Honour; and that it might not be in the Power of the Clergy to do much against him, he stripped the Churches, Abbies and Monasteries, of all their Riches, under pretence that the Revenue was hid there in order to defraud him. These arbitrary

arbitrary Proceedings rendered him very odious to all Orders and Degrees of the *English*; who having lost their Power, Riches, and Courage, were not in a Condition to help themselves; upon this Account, and this only, he may be said to have conquered this Nation. The Churchmen who wrote the History of those Times, do plentifully bestow on him the Names of Tyrant, Oppressor, cruel Exacter, with many other Marks of Infamy. Yet in the midst of his Partiality to the *Normans*, this Prince shewed so much Justice, that he would spare none who were guilty of great and known Crimes; even his Brother *Odo*, the next Person to the King, he seized with his own hands, and confiscated his Estate. King *William* having now settled his Affairs, and having lain sick a little while at *Robin*, and disposed of his Estate, died in the seventy fourth Year of his Age, and one and twentieth Year of his Reign. 'Tis said that his Corps lay neglected for three Days, his Servants minding more to provide for themselves, than to attend upon him; but his Son *Henry* brought his Body to *Caen* to be interred, where a Gentleman, Owner of the Lands, forbade it, and they were obliged to compound with him for it. Thus this great Prince, who in his Life had so many Dominions, was destitute of a Place for his Burial, which his Relations and Attendants, could not get but by Purchase.

His Death
and Burial.

His Character.

As to his bodily Perfections, he was well proportioned, of a vigorous and healthful Constitution; of a noble Presence, either riding, sitting or standing; of a masculine Beauty, in which there was a Mixture of Majesty and Severity; and had so great a Strength, that few of his Court could draw his Bow. He was both wise and active, penetrating in his Designs, daring in his Enterprizes, and steady in the Prosecution of them. All agree that he was chaste, and temperate; valiant, and great in all his Actions, especially in such as expressed his Royal State and Dignity. And that foreign Ambassadors might witness of his Grandeur and Magnificence, he annually kept the Feast of *Christmas* at *Glocester*, that of *Easter* at *Winchester*, and that of *Whitsuntide* at *Westminster*; to which were summoned all the great Men of the Kingdom, both Clergy and Laity. The Clergy, who never loved him, acknowledged, that his Devotion was very exemplary. His

great



[REDACTED]

7

8

9



KING WILLIAM THE II^D

The Reign of K. WILLIAM I.

149

Mercy appeared, in often pardoning and receiving
 favour those, who had rebelled against him, and
 one of his rebellious Subjects was executed, viz.
Waltheof. He was free from Suspicion, which is
 common to Princes, which appears by his allowing
 the Competitor for his Crown, the Freedom of
 Court. He founded a great Abby near *Hastings*,
 a *Battle-Abby*, in Memory of the Victory he ob-
 tained over *Harold*; and two Nunneries, one at *Hin-*
wick in *Huntingdonshire*, and the other at *Armitways*
Cumberland, besides many other publick Works.
 He had a numerous Issue by *Maud* his Wife, viz. His Children
 Sons and six Daughters. To *Robert* his eldest Son
 he gave the Dutchy of *Normandy*, to *William* his third
 Son the Kingdom of *England*, and to *Henry* his youngest
 Son all his Treasure, with an annual Pension to be
 paid him by his Brothers; *Richard* his second Son,
 his Darling, being slain in the new Forest, as he
 was related. His eldest Daughter *Cecilia* was made a
 Nun; *Constance* the second was married to *Allan*, Earl
 of *Britann*, *Adela* to *Stephen*, Earl of *Blois*, by whom
 she had other Issue, she had King *Stephen*. *Gundred* the
 fifth Daughter was married to *William de Warren*,
 Earl of *Surry*; the other two, *Ela*, and *Margaret*, died
 young.

The Reign of King WILLIAM the Second.

William the second surviving Son to the Conqueror, A. D. 1087:
 passed for *England*, as soon as the Breath was ^{William the}
 taken out of his Father's Body, taking with him *Bloet*
 his Household Chaplain; when he arrived he was assisted
 by his Father's Steward *Endo*, who before had secured
 the *treasure*, where his Father's Treasure was, *Dover*,
Wexy, *Hastings*, and other Castles on the Coasts.
 He then he applied himself to Archbishop *Lanfranc*,
 who joining his Interest and Mediation to *William's*
 Bounty and Promises, who to remove all Ob-
 stacles took this solemn Oath, that he would preserve
 Justice, Equity, and Mercy throughout the Kingdom,
 defend the Peace and Liberty of the Church, and

His Coronation.

1088
Great Disturbances.Rochester be-
sieged.

observe the Archbishop's Directions in all Things; this gained him so great an Interest, that upon *Sunday* the 27th Day of *September*, he was crowned King at *Westminster*, by the two Archbishops of the Nation, in the Presence of many other Bishops, and many of the Nobility. This Prince, who from his ruddy Complexion, and red Hair, was named *Rufus*, was about thirty one Years of Age, when he obtained the Crown: Being brought up to Arms he was rough and haughty, more courageous than pious, and more gallant than good; yet in the former Part of his Reign, being aided by the wise Advice of *Lanfranc*, he did many Things for the good of the Kingdom, and the better to secure himself in the Throne, he rewarded the *Normans* for their Service with Money, and promised the *English* their ancient Liberties. Notwithstanding which, his Uncle *Odo*, Bishop of *Bayeux*, with many of the *English* Nobility, occasioned great Troubles and Disturbances, who having sent to *Robert* the King's elder Brother, to put in for the Crown of *England*, he returned an Answer, promising, that he would on a Day prefixed land in the West: Upon this, the discontented Faction rose in many Parts of the Nation. The Bishop was the first in the Action, and fortifying the City of *Rochester*, began to disturb the County of *Kent*: others at the same Time seized upon *Bre*, and *Berkley*, and fortified the Castle of *Brid* against the King; while others laid waste the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Leicester*, and *Hertford*. These Insurrections caused King *William* to summon many Bishops, Barons, and natural *English* together, to consult proper Methods for suppressing them. The Fleet was immediately fitted out, and ordered to guard the Coasts, and *Robert's* intended Descent, whose Delay gave the King more Advantage than he could either wish for or expect; for had *Robert* hastened his Arrival, and perceived the Opportunity, he might with no great Difficulty have dispossessed his Brother of the Kingdom.

The King marched immediately with his Army against his Uncle *Odo*, and in May laid close Siege to *Rochester*; he soon forced them out of the Town into the Castle, where many perished by a raging Sickness, and being pressed with many other Necessities, at length they capitulated, and by the Mediation of the Nobility who were with the King, to save their Relations that were in

The Reign of K. WILLIAM II.

151

the Castle, they obtained these Conditions, viz. That ^{And reduced} their Estates should be forfeited, that their Lives and ^{ced} of Limbs should be pardoned, and Leave given to pass out of the Castle with their Horses and ~~us~~; whereupon they were all forced to quit the ~~edom~~, even *Odo* himself, by which he lost his vast ~~re in England~~. The Rebels being thus reduced at ~~chester~~, the King resolves to make the *English* entire-
his, by giving them the Estates of the banished No-
men; promising, that he would ease all his Subjects,
especially the native *English*, of their great Taxes;
he would enact better Laws, use Justice and Mer-
towards all, and that they should have free Liberty
hunting in his Forests: By these Promises and spe-
us Pretences, and not by Force, he put an End to ^{The Rebelli-}
se dangerous Insurrections. ^{on at an End,}

But no sooner was the King well established in the
rone, and freed from all Apprehensions of any domes-
k Disturbances, than he quite forgot his Oaths and Pro-
ses, and proceeded in a quite contrary Method, and
pressed his Subjects with heavy Taxes and Extorti-
s. Against these hard Proceedings of the King, the
ld Archbishop *Lanfranc* made his Remonstrances; to
ich the King in a Passion replied, Who can perform ^{1089.}
that he has promised? and from that Day would not
ord him a Smile. This had so great an Influence on
e good old Man, that he pined away, and on the
rty fourth Day of *May* he died, to the inexpressible ^{Lanfranc}
rief of all good Men, as being the most eminent In-^{dies.}
nce of Learning and Wisdom, as well as Piety and
larity, that this Age had produced. No sooner was
e Archbishop dead, but the King immediately seizes
the whole Revenues of his Archbishoprick, and
pt the See vacant almost four Years; he did the same
Lincoln, and all other Churches and Abbies, as soon
they became void, and never fill'd them up as long
he could squeeze any Thing out of them, and then
ould sell them to the best Bidder. In short, he was
e first King in *England*, who shewed his Successors the
ngorous Precedent of keeping the Bishopricks and their
ivings vacant, and receiving the Profits himself. Thus
e shewed his rapacious Inclinations, always covetous,
e never frugal, and still grasping and gathering, yet ne-
e filling his Coffers.

1091.
The King
goes into
Normandy
against his
Brother.

1091.
A Peace con-
cluded.

Fort St. Mi-
chael besieged.

As the Insurrections which were now quelled, were occasioned on his Brother *Robert's* Account, King *William* resolves to revenge himself of all former Injuries. Accordingly he invades *Normandy*, with an Army; at his first landing he surpris'd the Castles of *St. Valery* and *Albemarle*, with others on the Sea Coast, and then laid a great Part of the Country waste. *Robert* being unprovided to oppose him, applied to *Philip* the French King, who join'd him, but was by a large Sum of Money from King *William* prevail'd with to stand Neuter. Upon this the *Norman* Nobility began to favour King *William*, and the Citizens of *Rouen* the Metropolis, being brib'd by Money and fair Promises, resolv'd to betray the City with its florishful Duke into his Hands. The chief Conspirator was one *Canon* a rich Citizen, but the whole Plot being discovered, *Robert* join'd with his Brother *Henry*, and just came in Time to secure the City, though with great Slaughter of the resisting Citizens; *Canon* was taken, carried up into an high Tower, and cast headlong out at a Window by *Henry's* own Hands. The Progress of King *William's* Arms was stop'd for the present, by this Conjunction of the two Brothers; but in the next Year he resolves on another Attempt, which being undertaken, was soon ended by a Reconciliation and a Peace between the two Brothers, upon these Conditions. That King *William* should hold the County of *Eu*, *Fescamp*, and other Places which he had bought: That he should assist *Robert* in recovering all that had been taken from his Dutchy: That the *Normans*, who had join'd *Robert*, and thereby forfeited their Estates in *England*, should be restored: That the Survivor of either should succeed to the Dominions both of *England* and *Normandy*. Prince *Henry* by this Treachery being deserted, betook himself to *St. Michael's* Mount, as his last Retreat; which Place *William* and *Robert*, with their united Forces, besiege; during which Siege, the King as he was riding alone some Distance from the Camp, perceived several of the Enemy's Soldiers advancing towards him, whom he boldly engaged, but in the first Encounter his Horse was slain under him, and himself thrown upon the Ground. Seeing his Danger he discovered himself to be the King of *England*; the Soldiers were surpris'd, and treated him with Respect, and got him another Horse. The King in return rewarded the Person that had unhorsed him, and made

made him his Knight. At length, on Condition that the Fort of *St. Michael* should be surrendered to the Duke, *Henry* was to hold the Country of *Constantine* in Mortgage, until *Robert* had paid his Money, for which a Day was appointed; and thus a Peace was concluded between them; upon which Duke *Robert* banished *Edgar Etheling* out of his Country, and the King deprived him of all the Lands that had been given him; who thereupon went into *Scotland* to King *Malcolm* his Brother-in-Law. The three Brothers make Peace.

Things being thus settled in *Normandy*, King *William* prevailed with his Brother *Robert* to accompany him into *England*, where *Malcolm* taking the Advantage of the King's Absence, had invaded *Northumberland*, against whom the King and Duke *Robert* marched in Person; but by means of *Edgar Etheling*, both Kings came to an Interview, and a Peace was concluded upon these Conditions. That *Malcolm* should yield the King the same Obedience as he had done to his Father; and that the King should restore to *Malcolm* twelve Manors, which he formerly held under his Father, and should also pay him annually twelve Marks of Gold. The King was again reconciled to Prince *Edgar*; but Duke *Robert* perceiving his Brother's Subtlety, and his Backwardness in performing the Conditions of the Treaty between them, retired in Discontent to *Normandy*, taking *Edgar Etheling* along with him. In the following Year, Prince *Henry* began to recover himself, and gather Strength in *Normandy*, having had the strong Sea-Port Town of *Damfront*, privately delivered into his Hands; and this he made a Place of Refuge, till he was reconciled to his Brother *William*, and sent for into *England*. About the same Time, the King rebuilt the City and Castle of *Carlisle*, which had lain in Ruins above two hundred Yeats. In the beginning of the next Year, the King fell sick in *Glocestershire*, so that his Death was expected by most Persons. Upon this as Signs of his Repentance for former Crimes, the King made a Vow to God, that if he would restore him, he would abrogate all unjust Laws, and ordain better in their Stead. But as soon as the King was recovered of his Sickness, he forgot his Vow to God, and Promise to his Subjects, and relapsed to his former Miscarriages, and reduced all Things to the same or a worse State than before. About this Time, *Malcolm* King of the *Scots* invaded

invaded *England*, and made great Devastations as far as *Alnewick*, but *Robert Mowbray* Earl of *Northumberland* fell upon him near that Town, defeated his Army, and slew him and his Son. Upon this the Nobility of *Scotland* assembled, and elected *Donald*, *Malcolm's* Brother to be their King, though *Edgar*, *Malcolm's* Son was then living; and expelled *Edgar Etbeling* with all the *English* out of *Scotland*, who were kindly received in *England*. But *Duncan*, natural Son of the late King, being then in King *William's* Court as an Hostage, obtained Assistance from him, marched against his Uncle *Donald*, who had newly invaded *England*, attacked him, beat his Army, and forced him to fly into the Western Isles; upon which he was crowned King of *Scotland*. In the same Year, *Rees*, Prince of the *Welshmen*, was slain in a Battel near *Brecknock Castle*, which put an End to the Princes of South *Wales*.

King *William* having settled his Affairs in the North and West, was again disturbed by his Brother *Robert*; upon which he passed into *Normandy*, and by the Mediation of their common Friends, they had an Interview in the Field, of *Martius*, but could by no Means come to an Agreement, upon which the King sent into *England*, and commanded them to raise twenty thousand Men, and transport them to him with all Expedition; these were mustred near *Hastings*. The King's Treasurer by his Order, told them, That each Man might be dismissed upon the Payment of ten Shillings; all complied, and by this Stratagem, the King got a considerable Sum of Money, with which he prevailed with the *French* King, to withdraw his Troops from *Duke Robert*, which obliged him to retire, and he had been forced to submit, had not the *Welsh* in the mean Time entred *Cheeshire*, *Shropshire*, and other Counties; inso-much, that King *William* was constrained to leave *Normandy*, and the War unfinished, and reconciling himself to his Brother *Henry*, he returned into *England*, and marched into *Wales*, but the Inhabitants retiring to the Mountains, the King returned with Dishonour.

In the same Year he made a second Expedition into *Wales*, but with no better Success. Much about the same Time, *Robert de Mowbray*, Earl of *Northumberland*, and many other *Norman* Noblemen, conspired against the King; this obliged him to turn his Forces against them, and he besieged *Bambrough Castle*, and took

Robert

Robert Prisoner, who was confined almost thirty Years. Some had their Estates confiscated, and others compounded for their Crimes by large Sums of Money; but *William* Earl of *Ex* had his Eyes put out, and his Genitals cut off, and many were spared out of Policy.

Much about the same Time, *Anselm*, whom the King had advanced to the Archiepiscopal See of *Canterbury*, gave the King much Trouble, by opposing him about the Investitures of Bishops, and other Privileges of the Church. This caused the King to proceed to violent Methods, which made the Archbishop very uneasy, and at last fly to *Rome*; upon which the King seized the Revenues of the Archbishoprick to his own Use. The Pope was so enraged at this, that he threatened to excom-^{1096.} municate the King, but was prevented from solemnly pronouncing the Sentence against him, having greater <sup>The begin-
ning of the
Holy War.</sup> Designs to manage at this Time; for a famous Hermit called *Peter*, who in the holy Land had been Witness of the Cruelties exercised by the Turks upon the Christians, made such Remonstrances to Pope *Urban*, that he assembled a Council at *Clermont* in *France*, and by a zealous Harangue, animated the Prelates then present, to excite the Faithful to take up Arms for the Recovery of God's Country, out of the Hands of those barbarous Infidels. The Prelates were fired with the same Zeal, each resolving to push this glorious Cause, in which they had the desired Success: For in a short Time, this holy Fervor spread all over *Europe*, and incredible Numbers of all Qualities, and of all Ages and Sexes listed themselves in this sacred Militia, bearing the Marks of red Crosses on their Garments, with this Motto, *It is the Will of God*. These Crusado's and long Voyages, the Heat of which lasted for above two hundred Years, occasioned an infinite Expence of Blood and Treasure, and proved the weakening of many Nations, the Ruin of the great Lords and Multitudes of the People, and the Establishment and Increase of the Power of the Popes, and the enriching of the Clergy. For most of the Princes and noble Persons, who engaged in this brave Attempt, were obliged to sell or mortgage their Estates, to furnish themselves for this Expedition; most of these the Priests bought, and at reasonable Rates. *Robert*, like others, being fired with a Prospect of this Expedition, concludes a Peace with his Brother King *William*, and mortgages the Dutchy of *Normandy* to him, for ten thousand Marks of Silver:
Thus

Thus was the King rid of his elder Brother, and troublesome Competitor at the same Time. But to raise this great Sum, the King acted in an unjust and arbitrary Manner; for he seized on all Vacancies in the Church, and kept them for his own Use; and sent to all the great Men of the Nation to furnish him with this Sum; insomuch, that the Bishops, Abbots, and Abbesses, were obliged to break the golden Shrines of their Churches, and the Nobles to oppress their Tenants to raise Money. He sold spiritual Livings to the best Bidder, took Fines of Priests for Fornication, and of the Friars to renounce Christianity; and over the Laity he set Spies on whom he inflicted severe Penalties for small Offences.

These arbitrary Proceedings gained him much Hatred of the People, especially the Clergy. By this Means the King took Possession of *Normandy*, and soon afterwards claimed of *Philip* King of *France* the *French Vexois* with the chief Towns belonging to it; but after a Year's Contest, which occasioned many Losses on both Sides, the two Kings made Peace. And now the King marched a third Time against the *Welsh*, and passed quickly through the Country; but the People fled to their Fortresses, and the King was obliged to return without doing of any Thing, besides the building of some Castles in the Marches between *England* and *Wales*. About *Michaelmas* in the same Year, he sent *Edgar Ethel* with a great Army into *Scotland*, who expelled *Donald*.

Edgar made King of Scotland: 1098.

who again had gotten Possession of the Crown, and in his room placed *Edgar* his Nephew, who was the right Heir to the Crown, who accordingly did Homage to the King of *England*. All this Year the Nation suffered much, by reason of the Scarcity of Provisions, the Badness of the Season, and the grievous Taxes for the rebuilding of *London Bridge*, for building the new Walls about the *Tower*, and for building *Westminster Hall*, which, though two hundred and seventy Feet long, and seventy five Foot broad, the King at a Feast he held in it declared, was not fit for a Bed-Chamber in respect to what he intended to build. From whence he went to hunt in the New Forest, where in the midst of his Sport, a Messenger from *Normandy* informed him, that the City of *Mans* was surprised by Count *Elias*, and that the Castle without speedy Succour would be obliged to surrender. The King with his usual Bravery, ordered the Messenger to hasten back and acquaint them, that he would be with them in a few Days.

1099.

Da

The Reign of K. WILLIAM II.

457

Days, and turning his Horse's Head towards *Mans*, he rode with all Speed towards the Sea, and when some of his Attendants desired him to stay 'till his Army was got ready, he replied, Those that love me will follow me. Thus riding with a small Retinue 'till he came to *Dartmouth*, and going to take Shipping, the Weather was so tempestuous, that the Master of the Vessel declared, that they could not pass without the utmost Hazard of their Lives; but *William* replied, Did you ever hear of a King that was drowned? They put to Sea, and the next Morning arrived at *Barfleur*; and the King ordered his Officers and Soldiers to attend him immediately at *Mans*, where he not only raised the Siege, but took *Elias* Prisoner, who being brought before him, the King jokingly told him, That he had him secure now: To which the other replied, That is more by Chance than Valour; if I were at Liberty, I would convince you of what I could do. The King answered, What could you perform? Take your Liberty, and shew your Abilities. Thus the King generously dismiss'd him, and gave him a very good Horse; which Act of Generosity had such an Influence on *Elias*, that he became the King's faithful Friend. *Mans* being thus rescued, and the Country once more reduced to his Obedience, the King returned to *England* about *Michaelmas*. This very Year the City of *Jerusalem* *Jerusalem taken by the Christians.* was taken by Storm by the Christians, and forty thousand Saracens put to the Sword; after which they agreed to elect *Robert* Duke of *Normandy* to be King of that City and all *Palestine*, who from a Prospect of the Crown of *England*, refused it; upon which they chose the renowned *Godfrey* of *Bohillon* to be King. The next Year, King *William* went in the beginning of *August* 1100. to hunt in the new Forest, accompanied with his Brother *Henry*, and a few Followers, among whom was *Walter Tyrrel*, an expert Huntsman, who shot at a Stag, but missed it, and in shot the King in the Breast, of which he immediately died, and was buried in the Church The King is slain. at *Winchester*. Thus this Prince was the third of this Race; who in a few Years met with their Deaths in this Forest; as if Heaven designed to revenge on the Children the Sins of the Father, for destroying so many Churches and Villages, to make them a Receptacle for wild Beasts. Though this was a very warlike Age, yet there began to be a great Corruption of Manners among

among the young Nobility, Gentry, and Clergy, who practised all the Luxury of Eating and Drinking, and shewed so much Effeminacy in their Habits and Carriage, that they appeared Men in nothing so much, as their Attempts upon the Chastity of Women. In this Reign many Disasters fell out, as in the second Year a dreadful Earthquake happened; in the fourth a violent Lightning, which did much Damage to the Abby of *Winscombe*. Not long after, a Tempest blew down six hundred Houses in *London*, and the Roof of *Bow Church*. In the ninth Year a Blazing Star appeared with two Bushes; and other Stars seemed to shoot Darts to each other. In the eleventh Year at *Finchamstead*, near *Abington* in *Berkshire*, a Well of Blood rose out of the Ground, overflowing for fifteen Days together. In the last Year of this Reign, the Sea rose to a prodigious Height, overflowed its Banks, drowned an incredible Number of People and Cattle in many Counties; and in *Kent*, it destroyed all the Lands belonging to the famous Earl *Godwin*, which are still called *Godwin's Sands*, and are as fatal to the Sailors now, as he was to the Nation when alive.

The Reign of King HENRY the First.

A. D. 1100.
Henry chosen
King of Eng-
land.

THE sudden Death of King *William* made way for his younger Brother *Henry*, being present and born in *England*, to wear the Crown; it being also reported, that *Robert* who should have succeeded *William*, was chosen King of *Jerusalem*. Upon which, the Nobility and People, elected and crowned *Henry* King, within four Days after his Brother's Decease; who, that he might secure himself the firm Allegiance of the People, began his Reign with Acts of Kindness and Benefit to them. In the first Place he resolved to secure the Clergy, who always are the best Friends, or worst Enemies, according as their Power and Profit is increased or diminished, by filling up all the Vacancies in the Church, and restoring to them all their Privileges, and granting them more. Then he recalled *Anselm* from his Banishment, and restored him to the Arch-

The Reign of K. HENRY I.

159

Archbishoprick of *Canterbury*. He freed the Laiety from their Oppressions and Exactions, and restored to them the use of their Lights, after the *Corfeu-Bell* had gone; and because *Ralph*, Bishop of *Durham*, had been the chief Instrument of putting King *William* upon all his Courses of Exaction and Irregularity, *Henry* committed him to a loathsome Prison. Besides these Things he made many other good Laws, and Orders for the good Government of his Kingdom; and he granted a Charter of Liberties under his Broad Seal, which *Matth. Paris* hath preserved in his History; and to make himself still more popular and beloved of the *English*, he married into the Royal Blood of *England*; for he chose for his Royal Consort *Maud*, the Daughter of *Margaret* the late Queen of *Scots*, Niece to *Edward Atbeling*, and so descended from *Edmund Ironside*, who was hardly persuaded to leave a Cloister to become a Queen. Thus, by all these prudent Methods, King *Henry* having secured his Interest in *England*; and being thus settled in the Possession of the Crown, no Competitor could, with Hopes of Success, pretend to disturb him: But his Brother *Robert* being returned into *Normandy*, from the Holy Wars, resolved to attempt the Crown, which he thought of Right belonged to him. Accordingly he prepared a great Army, which he landed at *Portsmouth*; to which Multitudes flock'd, especially the *Normans*, which made him more formidable. On the other Side King *Henry* used all Methods to defeat his Designs, and got together a very powerful Army, and march'd against his Brother: But as the two Armies were just about to engage, *Henry* cunningly proposes to *Robert* Terms of Peace, to prevent the Effusion of Christian Blood. This was complied with, and a Treaty concluded, in which it was agreed:

Married to
Maud of
Scotland.

Duke *Robert*
lands an Ar-
my at *Portf-*
mouth.

- " *First*, That *Henry* being the Son of a King, born in *England*, should enjoy the Kingdom during his Life, paying 3000 Marks yearly to *Robert*.
- " *2ly*, That *Robert* should succeed him.
- " *3ly*, That all offending Persons should be pardoned, and have their Honours and Estates restored.

A Peace con-
cluded.

For the Performance of which, twelve chief Noblemen of either Side took a solemn Oath, and the Armies were immediately disbanded; and Duke *Robert* came to his Brother's Court, where he was nobly entertained for the Space of six Months.

A. D. 1102.

All

Henry con-
tests with
Anselm.

All Obstacles to King *Henry's* Quiet being removed and his Throne better secured than before, he began to assert his prerogative against the Opposition of Archbishop *Anselm*, who refused to consecrate that Bishop which the King had preferred, alledging it to be a Violation of the sacred Rites and Ceremonies of the Church. He farther proceeded to censure and condemn Prelates and Ecclesiasticks, who had accepted the investitures from the King. He likewise did excommunicate all married Priests, making Fornication a Sin than Matrimony: And next he inhibited all men from hearing their Masses: But the King not willing to lose his Prerogative, sends an Ambassage to *Papchal* to represent his Right to the Investiture of Bishoprics, and Collation of Ecclesiastical Dignities, a Right he received from his Predecessors, Kings of *England*, who never were, till of late, molested in this Prerogative; and that he would sooner part with his Kingdom, than lose the Right of his Investiture of Churches. *Anselm* posts to *Rome*, to make good his Cause against the King, and had Success, and had persuaded the Pope to excommunicate the King, now became so enraged with *Anselm*, that he forbade his Return, and seized on the Revenues of the Archbishoprick. The Pope bethought himself, and resolved to try to bring the King to his Will by mild methods: Accordingly he wrote to him in the most obliging Manner and softest Terms, and requested him to quit his Claim, promising his Readiness to assist him in his temporal Affairs, to the utmost of his Power; provided he would not presume to meddle with the Church. By this Bait the King was caught, granted the Pope's Requests; and so became a silly Precedent to succeeding Princes, of submitting to the See of *Rome* in the same Case: And now, forsooth, that constant Enemy of the King's Prerogative, Friend of *Rome*, must be restored to his Revenue and the King's Favour.

While these things were in hand at *Rome*, the King was disturbed at Home by a Rebellion; for *Robert Be-*
A. D. 1103.
A Rebellion. Earl of *Sbrensbury*, fortifying his Castles, *Sbrensbury*, *Bridg-north*, *Tick-hill* and *Arundell*, and joining the *Welsh*-Men, denied Obedience and Subjection to the King. Upon this, *Henry*, with a stout Army, marched against them, and in about a Month's Time,

The Reign of King HENRY I.

145

all their Castles; upon which *Belesme* and the two Earls his Brothers, *Roger* and *Arnulph*, were forc'd to fly their Country, and leave their Estates; on which the King made Seizure for his own Use. These Earls rais'd great Disturbances in *Normandy*, for three Years together. Many Towns and Churches were burnt by their Means, and the whole Power of *Normandy* was not sufficient to stop the Ravages of the furious Earls of *Shrewsbury*. The *Normans* send to King *Henry* for Assistance; he reproveth *Robert* for his Sluggishness, at which *Robert* is disgusted, and joins with these rebellious Earls, threatening Revenge on his Brother. The King, at first, was unwilling to engage in a new Quarrel, till at length being persuaded by Pope *Paschal*, A. D. 1104. Robert makes War against Hen- who had written to him, to shew him the Necessity of it, and what a noble and memorable Benefit it would be to his Country to suppress the Duke and these rebellious Earls; he upon this with a great Army, passes into *Normandy*; and after many Difficulties and the Loss of many worthy Men, came to a pitched Battle near the Castle of *Tenebbray*, where he defeated his Enemies; by which *England* won *Normandy*; and by Computation, on the same Day, forty Years before, on which *Normandy* won *England*: Thus a *Norman* Duke conquered the Kingdom of *England*, and an *English* King subdued *Normandy*. It is quelled.

King *Henry* having gained the Dutchy of *Normandy*, A. D. 1105; returned to *England*, and brought his Brother *Robert* over with him, and committed him Prisoner to *Cardiffe* Castle, who, as some report, attempted to make his Escape; for which the King ordered his Eyes to be put out. In this miserable Condition the Duke continued a Prisoner for twenty six Years.

King *Henry* having established his Power, and finished all Foreign Contests, resolved to make his Subjects more easy; to accomplish which, he redress'd many evil Practices, beginning with his own Court. The Multitude which followed the Court used to commit great Disorders; behaving themselves rudely towards the Wives and Daughters of the Country People; for the Remedy of which the King published an Edict, in which it was ordained, that whoever was found guilty of these, or the like Practices, should lose his Eyes, his Hands, Feet, or other Members; which being executed on some, deterred others from such Offences; and

that every false Coyner should suffer Castration, & Loss of his Eyes. But while the King was making Regulations, *Philip*, King of *France*, died, and succeeded by *Lewis* his Son; who soon shewed that he was no Friend to King *Henry*; for which Reason

A. D. 1108. King sailed into *Normandy*, to put that Dutchy
The King
sails to *Normandy*.
Posture of Defence against a suspected Man.

King commanded his Nephew *William*, Son of his Brother *Robert*, to be taken into Custody; but the young Prince, by the Means of *Elias* his Tutor, made his Escape, and was carried to the Court of *France*.

And returns. The next Summer, a little before *Whitsuntide*
A. D. 1109 King returned to *England*, and held his Court of extraordinary Splendor, at *Westminster*, where the Emperor's Ambassadors waited on him, to demand his Daughter *Matilda* in Marriage. The King agreed to the Proposal, and the Articles were soon sign'd.

Henry the
Emperor
and *Matilda*
espoused.
to raise a Portion for her in ready Money, they laid a Tax of three Shillings upon every Hide of Land in *England*, which according to *Dr. Brady's* Computation, amounts to 824850 Pounds of our present Money; enough, well managed, to purchase the Empire.

About this Time Learning began to be restored in the University of *Cambridge*, by the Means of *John* Abbot of *Croyland*, who sent *Gilbert*, his Favorite Monk, and Professor of Divinity, and three other Monks, who understood Philosophy and other Sciences, to make open Profession of their Sciences; for the End they hired a publick Barn; in which they received their Scholars, who flock'd to them both from Town and Country, till at length they became so numerous, that there was never a House, Church, or Barn, large enough to contain them: This obliged them to read apart, making use of the best Authors in Grammar, Rhetorick and Logick.

Notwithstanding the King had much secured his Territories by his Alliance with the Emperor, *Count* Earl of *Anjou*, by corrupting the Inhabitants, had won the City of *Constance* from the King's Obedience, on which King *Henry* hastened into *Normandy*, where he used great Severities, and put to Death *Elias* Earl of *Maine*, who held that Country against him; while he disoblinded *Godfrey* Earl of *Gant*, that he entered not that Earldom, and marrying the Daughter of *Count* kept that Country against all King *Henry's* Power.

The Reign of King HENRY I.

147

mean Time the King acted with all Policy at Home; Multitudes of *Flemings* coming into *England*, brought hither by vast Inundations of the Sea in *Flam-* The *Flem-*
ings planted
in *Wales*, these were planted in *Wales*, that they might prevent the *Welsh*-Men from being so troublesome. The King gave them the Country of *Ros*, lying about *Wroth* and *Haverford West*, which he had taken from the *Welsh* Princes. These *Flemings* being an industrious and stout People, did really prove a sure Defence against the Insurrections of the *Welsh*, manifesting the Excellency of the *Roman* Policy, in preserving new Conquests by Colonies. The Descendents of the *Flemings* continue to this Day, being very different from the native *Britains*, or *Welsh*-Men, both in language and Manners.

After this the King returned to *Normandy*, made A. D. 1113, peace with *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, and permitted his Son *William* to marry the Earl's Daughter; but he sent *Robert Belesme* to *England*, and committed him Prisoner to *Warham* Castle, where he continued all his Life, without being pitied by any Body. King *Henry* having subdued *Normandy*, and made Peace with his Neighbours beyond the Seas, returned in a triumphant manner into *England*; and governed this Kingdom, and that Dukedom, in perfect Peace for five Years ensuing.

The King's Affairs being thus settled abroad, to quiet A. D. 1114, turbulent Spirits of the Clergy, he resolved to fill Church Vacancies: Accordingly, on the twenty Church Vacancies fill'd up. Day of *April*, *Ralph*, Bishop of *Rocheſter*, was made Archbishop of *Canterbury*. In the same Year, *Hugh*, the King's Chaplain, was made Archbishop of *York*; and several other Vacancies in the Church were filled up; but with too great Partiality to the *Normans*, and Neglect to the *English* Nation. About this Time The *Welsh* troublesome. the *Welsh* began to be troublesome again, committing great Ravages in several Parts of the Borders. This provoked the King, that he swore that he would utterly destroy all the Men of *North Wales* and *Powis*; and immediately marched into their Country with a great Army, which he divided into three Parts; and ordered one to enter *North Wales*, another into *Wales*, and the King with the third would enter the Heart of the Country. The *Welsh*, being in the

Are quieted.

utmost Consternation, and not being able to Head against the King's Power, fled to the Wood Mountains, where many of them were killed, last the rest submitted to the King, who now, as queror, returned to *London* in Triumph.

A. D. 1115

The King's Son *William* declared his Successor in *Normandy*

A. D. 1116 And in *England*

Some Time after the King went into *Norm* where he caus'd all the chief Men of that *Du* to swear Fealty to his Son *William*, as his lawf cessor, being then about twelve Years of Age the Year following, on the twentieth Day of at *Salisbury*, the King summoned a grand Court all the Bishops, Abbots, and Nobility of the *Ku* in which they readily complied with the King's tions; and all swore Fealty to his Son *William* if he should survive his Father, he only should the Crown; and that they would faithfully st as King of *England*. From this Assembly sever ters have dated the Original of the High Court- liament, in *England*.

A. D. 1117.

The French King in Arms.

About the same Time *Theobald*, Earl of *Blasfis*, Arms against the King of *France*; and King *Hen* him Assistance: This so provoked the King of that he swore he would dispossess King *Henry* *Normandy*, and set up *William*, the Son of *Du* bers in his Room, many of the *Norman* Nob vouring the Design; to prevent which, *Henry* together a brave Army, and march'd against h mics: But they hearing of his Approach, and d his Power, retired with Precipitation, and left the try free to the Victor. So that there seem'd now to a Foundation for a lasting Peace and Tranquilli the King's Joys were soon interrupted by the *Dea* excellent Queen, *Matilda*, which happened in th teenth Year of his Reign, to the great Grief of t

Queen *Matilda* dies.

A. D. 1119. The French King again in Arms.

tion, who had her in mighty Esteem, as well i Family, as her Piety, Charity and Munificence *French* King now thinking himself capable of en *Henry*, enter'd *Normandy*, and laid the Country which King *Henry* for a while suffer'd, declar he had learn'd from his valiant Father, to conq Rashness of the *French*, by Patience and Policy that a good King should not be prodigal of the of such Subjects as his: But in a short Time at found an Opportunity to signalize his Valour in i

ral Battle with the *French*, which was fought with great Obstinacy, for several Hours, till at length the *French* were obliged to give Way. Many of the *French* Nobility were taken Prisoners, and also King *Lewis's* Standard, which the King bought for twenty Marks, and kept it as a Token of Victory, and returned in Triumph to *Rozen*. During the Time of this War the Pope called a Council at *Rheims*, where the *English* Bishops were permitted by the King to be present; but all Complaints were prohibited, and this Charge given to them, to salute the Pope in his Name; and only to hear the Pope's apostolical Precepts, but to bring none of his Inventions into his Kingdom. Not long after, the Pope came into *Normandy*, and met the King at *Gisors*, where he attempted to persuade him to set his Brother *Robert* at Liberty, and restore him and his Son *William* to the Dukedom of *Normandy*: But the King so managed his Affairs by Arguments and Presents, that the Pope approv'd of all he had done; and he was esteemed by the Pope and the Cardinals, as a most eloquent Orator; and all his Actions very justifiable. And now the Pope made use of his Abilities and Authority, to establish a Peace between the two Kings, which was concluded in the following Year, without any Exception or Difficulty; all the Forts and Castles taken in the War being delivered up, and Prisoners on both Sides set at Liberty.

And is defeated.

A. D. 1120.
A Peace concluded.

Upon this the King returned into *England*, having been absent above four Years: Accordingly, on the twenty sixth Day of *November* he sail'd from *Barfleur*, and landed in *England* the Day following: But the King's and the Nation's Joy, for this happy Arrival, was soon turned to Lamentation; for Prince *William*, the Joy of his Father, and the Hope of the Nation, being attended by his Brothers and Sisters, and many of the young Nobility, was cast away, and none escaped but the meanest of the Company, who were saved by swimming on the main Mast, as it were, only to give a Relation of this tragical Story. This was the most unfortunate Shipwreck that ever happened in our Seas; for in it perished, besides Prince *William*, *Richard*, his natural Brother, his Sister *Matilda*, *Richard* Earl of *Chester*, with his Lady *Lucy*, the King's Niece by his Sister *Adela*, *Oswel* the Earl's Brother, the young Duke's Governor, divers of the King's

The King returns to *England*.

His Son *William* and many of the Nobility lost at Sea.

great Officers of State, and many of the chief Nobility, to the Number of one hundred and sixty Persons. The King was so sensibly touched with this great Loss, that it occasioned some to report, that he was never seen to laugh after it. However, the Council at London prevailed on the King to attempt to repair this great Loss by a new Issue; accordingly he married *Adeliza*, Daughter of *Geoffrey*, Duke of *Normandy*; but she never bore him a Child.

A. D. 1121.
The King
marries.

In this Year the *Welsh* began again to be troublesome to the *English*; for *Griffin*, Prince of *North Wales*, sent his two Sons into *Cheeshire*, where they burnt Castles, slew many of the Inhabitants, and made great Devastations. Upon which the King marched into *Wales*, and after some Losses on both Sides, a Peace was concluded; Prince *Griffin* being obliged to give a thousand Head of Cattle and Hostages. The King having appointed the Lord *Fitz-warren*, Lieutenant of the Marches, returned to *England*. Not long after, *William Corbett* a *Benedictine* Abbot of a famous Abbey, was made Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Room of *Ralph* deceased.

A. D. 1122.

A. D. 1123; The *Normans* still repining at *Robert's* Captivity, resolved to set up his Son *William* in his Room. *Robert*, Earl of *Mellent* was the chief in this Action. He caused the King to hasten into *Normandy*, where he immediately besieged the Castle of *Pont-Audomar*, took it; and then fortified many of his own Castles to prevent their being surprised by the Enemy. *Henry*, Earl of *Montfort*, and others of Power, joined *Mellent*, and enter'd *Normandy* with Fire and Sword, but *William Tankerville*, the King's Chamberlain,

A. D. 1124. march'd against them, drew them into an Ambush, beat their Forces, and took both the Earls Prisoners; thus a Stop was put to these Wars for some Time.

A. D. 1125. *John de Crema*, a Cardinal, and a Legate from *Rome*, came into *England*, in the King's Absence, but with his Licence, to redress the great Abuse, which was term'd, of the Clergy's retaining the Souls of their Wives; and for this End he held a general Synod at *London*, where he severely inveighed against the Marriage of Priests, declaring, "That it was a horrid Sin for a Priest to rise from the Bed of a woman with a lawful Wife, and touch the Sacrament of the Body of Christ." Yet the Night following,

The Reign of King HENRY I.

151

he himself had celebrated Mass, this chaste Cardinal was taken in Bed with a common Strumpet; which *his Huntington*, was too notorious to be denied, and so wicked to be conceal'd. Upon this the Clergy would pay no Regard to his Canons and Regulations; and this hypocritical Cardinal was obliged to return with much more Shame than he came hither with Honour. By this Wickedness of the Cardinal the Clergy for some Time enjoy'd their Wives without Molestation, till in the Year 1129, the King call'd a Synod, purpose to settle the Celibacy of the Clergy; and retained Power to have the sole Execution of this Law himself; but instead of restraining the pretended Cause, the King made an Advantage of it; for all that could pay him for it, had Licence granted to enjoy their Wives as formerly.

The Celibacy of the Clergy established.

King *Henry* having no Prospect of Issue by his new *Queen*, was desirous to leave the Crown to his Daugh-

A. D. 1127.

Matilda, Empress of *Germany*, now lately a Widow. In order to effect this great Work, the King brought *Matilda* into *England*; and at *Windsor* summoned a Parliament, consisting of all the chief Men of the Nation, besides *David* King of *Scotland*, in this Assembly he prevailed on all the Bishops, Abbots, Knights and Barons, to take a solemn Oath, That if

The Nation swear Fealty to *Matilda*.

they should die without Male Issue, they would receive his Daughter *Matilda* for their Queen: *David* King of *Scotland* took the same Oath. Then that he might strengthen her Interest by Foreign Alliance, he married her to *Jeoffry*, surnamed *Plantagenet*, Earl of *Anjou*. And tho' this Marriage was not very pleasing

Who is married to the Earl of *Anjou*.

to the Empress, or Nation in general; yet thereby the King secured his Interest with the Earl of *Anjou*, against the growing Power of his Nephew *William*; who by the *French* King's Assistance, had lately been in Possession of the Earldom of *Flanders*; and being so nearly allied to the Crown, began to be formidable to King *Henry*; who being thus strengthened in his new Alliance, entered *France* by *Normandy*, as far as *Esperne*, where he continued for eight Days. He so terrified the King of *France*, that he withdrew his Assistance from young *William*. Then King *Henry* caused *Theodorick* Landgrave of *Alsatia*, set up against *William*. Upon this many Towns revolted to the Landgrave, of which *Alost* was one.

A. D. 1128.

This young *William* besieged, and had taken it, had not been prevented by being wounded with a Lance in the Wrist, which immediately turning to a Gangrene, kill'd him within five Days Time. From this very Time we find no considerable Action of King *Henry*. In the thirtieth Year of his Reign he took another Journey into *Normandy*, and met Pope *Innocent* at *Chartres*, and acknowledged him for lawful Pope, though *Anacletus* was at that Time possessed of the See of *Rome*. And when he had stay'd about a Year in *Normandy*, he returned to *England*, and with him the Empress his Daughter. Not long after their Arrival, the King called a Parliament at *Northampton*, where he again took an Oath of Fealty to her; after which he was sent back to her Husband, and in less than two Years she bore him a Son, whom she named *Henry*. This so pleased the King, that he summoned the chief Men of the Kingdom, and again appointed her and her Heirs to be his Successors, causing them all to take an Oath to observe this Ordinance. In this Year, on the third of *August*, the King took Shipping to pass over into *Normandy*, on which Day there happened a very great Eclipse of the Sun, so that many Stars were seen; which Eclipse was followed with a terrible Earthquake two Days after. These were judg'd by some to be the fatal Prefages of the Deaths of those two Princes, that not long after ensued. The first was that of *Robert*, Duke of *Normandy*, the King's elder Brother, who, at a very advanced Age, died in *Caerdiff Castle*, in *Wales*, after twenty six Years Imprisonment. He was buried in the Cathedral Church of *Glocester*, where his Tomb remains to this Day. In the next Year he was followed by his Brother, King *Henry*, who took a Surfeit by eating of *Lamprey*, which occasioned his Death, after seven Days Illness during which Time he declared, that he left all his Dominions to his Daughter *Matilda*, by a lawful and perpetual Succession. Then he commanded his Debts and all Servants Wages to be paid: All Forfeitures and Fines to be remitted; all Exiles and seiz'd Estates to be restored. Thus having made his Will, and done all Things necessary, he departed this Life on the second Day of *December*, and in the Seventy eighth Year of his Age, having reigned thirty five Years, three Months, and one Day. His Body was embalm'd, and brought

The Reign of King HENRY I.

153

brought over to *England*, where it was honourably buried on *Christmas* Day, in the Abby of *Reading* in *Berkshire*. This was the End of the Great *Henry* the first, under whose long Reign, the Nation scarcely felt any Foreign Invasion or Domestick Insurrection, except some inconsiderable Incursions of the *Welsh*, by which Means *England* became a Place of Refuge and Sanctuary to the Afflicted and Distressed of foreign Nations.



The Reign of King STEPHEN.

BY the Death of King *Henry* the Male Issue of the *Norman* Line became extinct, and only a Daughter remained, who was married to a *French* Man. Upon which *Stephen* Earl of *Bologne* and *Mortagne*, Nephew to the late King, by *Adela* his fourth Sister, resolved to take the Advantage of *Matilda's* Absence, and set up his own Title. Accordingly he hastened into *England*, where the Inhabitants of *Dover* and *Canterbury* fortified themselves against him; but at *London* he was received, and within thirty Days after *Henry's* Death, he was crowned King at *Westminster*, by *William Corbett*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. The chief of the Nobility and Bishops had engaged themselves by Oath, several Times repeated, to accept *Matilda* for their Queen, after King *Henry's* Decease: But when he was dead, and the Awe of his Power removed, they found out many Shifts to evade their Oaths, tho' none strong enough to save them from Perjury. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* alledged, that it was not fit that so many great Peers should be Subject to a Woman. *Roger* Bishop of *Salisbury* declared, that they were discharged from their Oaths, because the King had married his Daughter out of the Realm, without their Consent: But the most prevailing Argument to reject the Empress, and make *Stephen* King, was this, That

A. D. 1135.
Stephen Earl
of Bologne
made King.

That he had great Possessions both in *England* and *France*: That his eldest Brother was a Prince of Power, being Earl of *Blois*, and his youngest Brother was Bishop of *Winchester*, and the Pope's Legate in *England*, and of very great Interest with the Nobility, who then were guided by the Clergy, who were ready to a Man for *Stephen*. Besides, *Stephen* himself was a very comely, and graceful Personage, of a noble and courteous Deportment, and of admirable Courage and Activity, which greatly recommended him to the Nobility, who thought it far better to give the Crown to *Stephen*, whose Title was weak, than by one that should come to it by Hereditary Right. *Stephen* readily made them large Promises to restore them all their antient Privileges, both in Church and State; and this he confirmed by solemn Oath, before the Archbishop, for his Performance. As soon as *Stephen* was in Possession of the Crown, and secured his Uncle's Treasure, which amounted to a hundred thousand Pounds in ready Money, besides a great Quantity of Plate and Jewels, he called a Parliament at *Oxford*, where he sign'd and seal'd the Charter of Privileges he before promised; in the Preface of which he declares, that he obtained the Crown by Election of the Clergy and People of *England*; the Tenor of it was, that the Clergy should have all their former Liberties, and that the Laity should be freed from all Tributes and other Grievances of which they complained; to confirm which, he took an Oath in the Presence of the whole Assembly: Whereupon the Bishops and Peers swore Fealty to him, on this Condition, that he faithfully observed the Tenor of this Charter.

A Parliament call'd at *Oxford*.

A. D. 1136.

Many Castles builded.

Stephen now thinking himself secured of the Loyalty of his People, and that they were intirely in his Interest, gave Liberty to all Men, to build Castles on their own Lands, to secure themselves and the Kingdom from any Invasion; for two Ways he expected Disturbance to his Government, viz. from *Scots* and *France*. *Scotland* began the Quarrel, and first invaded *England*; for *David*, King of *Scotland*, thought himself obliged by the strongest Ties of Consanguinity and Oaths to endeavour to restore his Niece *Matilda* to the Right; he took *Carlisle* and *Newcastle*, and put his Sons in them, against whom King *Stephen* marched.

The Reign of King STEPHEN.

155

werful Army. Concerning this War there are
se Reports ; yet all agree, that in a very little
e a Peace was concluded, by which *David* still
ed *Carlisle*, and his Son *Henry* the Earldom of
ington, for which he did Homage to King *Stephen*.
is Return from the *North*, he found, that some of
obility had revolted from him, of whom *Baldwin*
nders was the chief, who fortified the City and
e of *Exeter*: And the *Welsh* made great Devasta-
on the Borders of *England*. To quell these
chiefs, King *Stephen* marched with his Forces a-
t *Exeter*, besieged the City, and reduced it; and
ed *Baldwin* and his Family; and then, with the
st Trouble and a great Loss, the *Welsh* were
ght to Reason. But King *Stephen* falling danger-
sick, so that it was reported that he was dead,
occasioned new and great Troubles both Abroad
at Home; for by this his Friends were put into
sion, and disheartned with Fears; and his Ene-
were embolden'd and seiz'd on his Dominions,
in *England* and *Normandy*. *Hugh Biggott* fortified
elf in the Castle of *Norwich*: The *Welsh* plun-
the neighbouring *English*, and the Earl of *Anjou*
this Opportunity, and seiz'd on several Places and
of *Normandy*.

he King after some Time recovered, and soon con-
ed his Enemies, that he was alive; for he pas-
with his Forces into *Normandy*, and in a pitch'd
e overcame the Earl of *Anjou*; upon which all
Towns and Castles were surrendred to him. An
mce was established between *Stephen* and *Lewis*
of *France*: Upon which he created *Eustace* his
t Son, Duke of *Normandy*, and ordered him to
homage to the *French* King. Earl *Theobald* com-
nded the Matter, and renounced all Claim for a
ion of 2000 Marks per Annum, and Earl *Geof-*
for a Pension of 5000 Marks per Annum, suffered
bas quietly to enjoy the Crown. The Joy that is
l on such Occasions was much allay'd by the
rs that was brought him, that *England* was in a
mult; and that many Peers, taking the Advantage
is Absence, were up in Arms against him. As soon
e received this melancholy Advice, tho' in the
t of the Winter, he passed over into *England*, and
ged and took the Castle of *Bedford*. Then march-
ed

Many Trou-
bles in Eng-
land.

A. D. 1137.
Stephen goes
into Nor-
mandy.

Is successful.

ed with all Expedition into *Scotland*, against *David*, who had enter'd *Northumberland*, and committed much Barbarity; which King *Stephen* had fully reveng'd, had he not been hastily recall'd back into *England*, by a very great Defection of the Nobility. The chief of their Party was *Robert* Earl of *Glocester*, now chief Counsellor to the Empress *Matilda*, who sent threatening Messages to King *Stephen*, charging him with the Breach of his Oath to his Sovereign Lady *Matilda*, and with drawing him and others into the like Perjury and Treason. Upon which he declar'd *Stephen* an open Enemy to the State; and himself an open Enemy to *Stephen*. Many Noblemen join'd *Robert*, of whom *Milo* the King's High Constable was one. *Robert* surpris'd the Castle of *Bristol*, and secur'd that of *Slade*, and his Associates did the like in many other Places; for *William Talbot* garison'd the Castle of *Hereford*, *William Lovel* that of *Caris*, *Paganel* the Castle of *Ludlow*, *William de Mount* that of *Dunster*, *Robert de Nichol* the Castle of *Warham* and many others. Thus these Forts that were at first erected by the King's Permission for the Defence of the Crown were now Harbours for his rebellious Subjects. And

Matilda sent for.

to make their Designs the more feasible, they sent for the Empress *Matilda* to come into *England*; declaring that within five Months she should be put in Possession of the Crown according to their Oaths. But *Stephen* made Head against these Rebels, and as soon as he took any Castle from them he order'd it to be immediately demolish'd, and thus he proceeded with all Vigor, until he had taken from the discontented Barons, the Castles of *Hereford*, *Glocester*, *Wesley*, *Bristol*, *Dudley*, and *Shrewsbury*, by which the Power of Earl *Robert* was so much weaken'd that he was oblig'd to fly into *France* to the Empress his Sister.

The Scots are routed.

In the mean Time *Thurstan*, the Archbishop of *York*, whom the King had made Lieutenant in the North, to manage the War with *David* the King of the *Scots*, was no less successful against the *Scots*; for in a pitch'd Battle *David's* Army was routed by the *English*, and he oblig'd to quit the Field. King *Stephen* having happily put an End to his Domestick Troubles, march'd to the North, to prosecute the War which *Thurstan* had so successfully begun. And first taking the Castle of *Leids*, he march'd into *Scotland* with all his Force, where in

The Reign of King STEPHEN.

157

For Time a Peace was concluded between the two ^{A Peace con-}
ks: And King *Stephen* brought with him into Eng-^{cluded.}
the valiant Prince *Henry*, who at the Siege of *Lud-*
Castle, was pluck'd from his Horse with an Iron
pplle; but *Stephen* recover'd him and won the Cas-

And now tho' King *Stephen* seem'd well esta- A. D. 1139:
r'd in his Kingdom, yet by the Report of the Em-
s his Competitor being ready to come into, Eng-
l in Person, his Jealousie occasion'd him to com-
an Error; and this was an impolitick and unsea-

ble Breach between him and those Bishops, who
set the Crown upon his Head. Many of them

ing built strong Castles, were envied by the Earls

Barons, who thereby infus'd such jealous Thoughts

the King, that he judg'd himself unsafe till he had

r'd them of their Power and Grandeur. For

ich he soon found a plausible Pretence; for at a

ld Council held at *Oxford*, the Servants of the Bi-

p of *Salisbury* had a Contest with those of *Alan*,

l of *Bretagne*, in which Squabble many were wound-

and one Knight kill'd. Upon which the King com-

nded the Bishops to be conven'd, that they might

ssy the Court for their Servants Breach of the Peace;

the Satisfaction requir'd was no less than the de-

ring up their Castles into his Hands, as a Security

their future Fidelity. This they refus'd, upon

ich the King commanded them to be kept close

soners; only *Nigel* Bishop of *Ely* escap'd and fled

the Castle of the *Devises*, which the King's For-

besiege, and in three Days Time take it. Up-

which the Castles of *Sherburn*, *Salisbury* and *Malm-*

y surrendered upon the first Summons. In the Castles

the *Devises* and *Sherburn*, the King found vast

ms of ready Money; and the Bishop of *Lincoln* sur-

ndred *Sleaford*-Castle into the King's Hands. This

t of the King against the Church occasion'd great

ates. *Hugh*, Archbishop of *Roven*, was of Opinion

a Bishops might justly be depriv'd of their Castles;

ause they ought to be Ministers of Peace, and not

eatons of such Places as were Sanctuaries for their

loyal Practices. The King's Brother, the Bishop of

incbester, and now the Pope's Legate, on the con-

ry affirm'd, that if Bishops offend, they were not to

tried in the King's Court, but in a publick Synod;

d immediately summon'd the King his Brother to

appear

The King
falls out with
the Bishops.

He seizes
their Castles
and Treas-
ure.

Upon which
a Synod is
call'd. appear in the Council he intended to hold at *Winchester*, on the 29th Day of *August*, at which appear'd most of the Bishops of *England*, with *Theobald* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; where the Legate produc'd the Pope's Commission, and then aggravated the King's Crime in seizing the Bishops: But *Alders de Ver*, a great Lawyer, urged many Things against the Bishops, as being Movers of Sedition, and Corresponders with the King's Enemies; and that they were seiz'd not as Bishops, but as the King's Servants. The Bishop of *Salisbury* denied that he was the King's Servant. After many Allegations on both Sides, at the King's Request the Cause was adjourn'd to the next Day, and to the next after that; and the Bishops finding that the King would not abide by the Censure of the Canon, they thought it best to forbear pronouncing it: First, because it would be a rash Thing to excommunicate their Prince without the Knowledge of the Pope; Secondly and principally, because they found that the Soldiers were ready to revenge it; upon which the Synod was dissolv'd without coming to any Determination in this Affair. However, these Divisions between the King and the Bishops occasioned many to rebel, and encouraged the Empress to come over in Person; who with her Brother *Roberts* landed at *Arundel* in *September*, having only one hundred and forty Men with them. *Adeliza*, the Queen Dowager, received 'em kindly, to whose Husband the Castle belong'd. After a short Refreshment, the Earl, with only twelve Men pass'd thro' the Country to *Bristol*; at which Time King *Stephen* was besieging of *Marlburgh* Castle; but hearing of *Matilda's* Arrival, he marched towards *Arundel*, upon whose Approach Queen *Adeliza* fearing her Castle should be taken, and she made a Prisoner, by a Message to the King, declar'd, that she was not the Occasion of the Empress's Landing; but she entertain'd them only as her near Relations and ancient Acquaintance; upon which Declaration the King caus'd the Empress, his Rival, to be honourably conducted to *Bristol*; where she remained for the Space of two Months, and then removed to *Glocester*; so that all those Parts, even to the Borders of *Wales* submitted to the Empress before the End of this Year.

A. D. 1140.

And now began all the Miseries of a Civil War, and we find nothing but the taking and retaking of Towns, and Castles, plundering and burning of Houses and

The Reign of King STEPHEN.

119

Churches, and all the Marks of Confusion and
olation.

In the mean Time *Stephen* performed all the Parts
of a vigilant Commander, and closely besieged *Ma-*
lmesbury, and her Brother in *Wallingford* Castle, which
brought out to Admiration. *Stephen* erected a remarkable
Tower of Wood, which he furnished with Men and
Artillery, and then removed to the Siege of *Malmes-*

bury. His Brother, Bishop of *Winchester*, was equally
zealous in the King's Behalf; for inviting several
Norman Noblemen to his Palace at *Winchester*, he detained
them as Prisoners, until he had compelled them to sur-
render their Forts and Castles to the King. In the

same Time, *Robert* took and plundered *Worcester*; *Ralph*
Belmeis, in Favour of the Empress, took, and burnt,
the Town of *Nottingham*; and *Ranulph*, Earl of *Che-*

ster, joined with *Robert*, which much perplexed the
King's Affairs. The Empress, for the better Security
of her Person, retired to *Lincoln*, and stored that City
with all Necessaries for a long Continuance. *Stephen*

then moved immediately against that City, and besieged it;
but soon made himself Master of it; but the Empress
found Means to escape privately. As soon as she
was released, she had reduced the Country to a peaceable Condi-

tion, she left that Place. Shortly after his Departure,
Ranulph, Earl of *Chester*, with his Countess and Bro-
ther, came to *Lincoln* to keep their *Christmas*, an Ac-

count of which the Citizens sent to the King, to ac-
quit him, that now he had a fair Opportunity to sup-
press both these Brothers. The King having received

A. D. 1141.

Advice, marched directly thither, and besieged the
City. The Earl made his Escape, leaving his Wife
and Brother behind; and begged the Empress's Assist-

ance to rescue them. Upon this Earl *Robert* and *Ra-*
ph joined all their Forces, and marched to relieve
their Friends; and on *Candlemas* Day they appeared in

the Field of Battle near the King's Camp. A dreadful
Battle ensued, and for some Time with doubtful Suc-

A great Bat-
tle fought at
Lincoln.

cess, till, in a short Time, the King's Cavalry fled;
but the Earl of *Chester* fell in with his Horse on the

King's Foot, and soon put them into Disorder, and
brought them to Flight; who left the King almost alone, inrag-
ed at his Friends Cowardice, and his Enemies
treachery. The Earl of *Glocester* preserved the Person
of the King's Royal Prisoner from all Violence, and sent him

The King
taken Pri-
soner.

The Em-
press go-
vern.

to the Empress at *Glocester*: Thence he was not to *Bristol*, where, for a while, he was kept in honorable Custody; but afterwards he was ingloriously treated with Irons.

The Empress, having secured the King's Person, triumphed in her Fortune, and as sole Monarch of the Nation, commanded in all Affairs, and disposed of Dignities and Offices, according to her own Will and Pleasure. The States-Men resolved to run with the Stream, their Faith turning with their Fortunes; they deserted *Stephen*, and paid their Allegiance to the Empress: The *Kenish* Men, to their eternal Shame only excepted, where *Stephen's* Queen, *Matilda* *William de Ipres*, maintained his Cause to the end of their Power. Nor was King *Stephen* deserted in *England*, but also *Normandy* cast off his Subject for *Geoffry of Anjou*, Husband to the Empress, and the *Normans* to his Party; and *David* King of *Scotland*, seized upon the County of *Northumberland*. During these Transactions, the Empress to establish her Power, repaired to *Winchester*, where she swore the Bishop, the King's Brother, that if he, and the Clergy would receive her as their lawful Queen, he, the Bishop, should order and direct all the great Affairs of the Nation, and dispose of all Bishopricks and other Benefices. This was also promised by the Earl of *Glocester* and several of the Nobility. This was an Argument sufficient to prevail on the Bishop to renounce his former Oath, and accept and acknowledge the Empress as Queen of *England*. And the next Day, in the Presence of the Empress, many Bishops, Abbots, Baron Knights, the Legate cursed those that were against her, and blessed all that were on her Side; absolving the obedient, and excommunicating the rest. From *Winchester* she went to *Wilton*, and was recognized by *Theobald*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. Shortly after this holy Legate was pleased to summon a general Council of the Clergy, at *Winchester*, where in a public Speech he declared, "That his Brother was not admitted to the Throne for the Peace of the Nation, until the Empress could conveniently come to *England*; That under his Administration the Church was in great Danger; That the Right of electing and ordaining Kings was intirely taken from the Power of the Priests; That he therefore, by his

"the Authority, had called together that Assembly; and
 "that they had elected *Matilda* Queen of *England*,
 "the Daughter of the peaceable and glorious King
 "*Henry*, to whom they had sworn, during his Life,
 "to settle her in the Succession." The next Day the
 Citizens of *London* came to the Council, in Obedience
 to the Legate's Summons, where they declared, that they
 came only to petition, that their Lord the King might
 be delivered out of Prison. To second this Petition, a
 Chaplain of King *Stephen's* Queen offered a Letter to
 the Legate from her, which, because he refused to com-
 municate to the Assembly, he read it himself, in which
 the Queen earnestly begged of the Clergy, "particularly
 "the Bishop of *Winchester*, her Lord's Brother, to re-
 "store him to the Kingdom, whom his wicked Sub-
 "jects had cast into Prison." To both which Petitions
 the Legate made no direct Answer, but proceeded to
 excommunicate many of the King's Party; and so after
 three Days Session only, the Council was dissolved.

From *Wilton* the Empress went to *Reading*, where
Robert D'Oyly came and offered to her the Castle of *Ox-*
ford, which she received with the Homage of that Ci-
 ty, and the Country round about. Thence she went
 to *St. Albans*, where many *Londoners* came to offer her
 the City, where she repaired, and at *Westminster* she
 staid some Days, to give some Directions and Orders
 about the State and Affairs of the Nation. And
 now all Petitions in Favour of *Stephen* were rejected
 by the Empress with great Haughtiness, and even the
 Legate's, in Favour of Prince *Eustace*, that he might en-
 joy his Father's Honours and Lands in *Normandy*. The
Londoners desired her to mitigate the over-hard Laws of
 her Father, and put those of King *Edward* in full
 Force. All these she absolutely denied, which, she being
 in an unsettled State, prov'd very impolitick and per-
 nicious; for first the Queen sent to her Son *Eustace*,
 that their Suits must be obtained only by War, desiring
 him to strengthen his Party by the Assistance of the
 loyal *Kentish* Men: The Bishop of *Winchester* was
 too haughty to bear a Refusal; the *Londoners*, en-
 raged at their late Repulses, endeavoured to make the
 Empress their Prisoner, and so redeem *Stephen*; but
 the hearing of their Design, fled secretly in the Night,
 and retired to *Oxford*. Several of the Nobility were
 discontented at their being so little taken notice of by

The Em-
 press comes
 to *London*.

She flies
 from thence.

the Empress. Thus the Affections of all, who just before esteemed her as Fortune's Darling, and their own only Rising-Sun, began to cool towards her. The Bishop absolved all whom before he had excommunicated, and turned his former Curses into Blessings, and accused the Empress of Perjury. Then he stored the Castles of *Walsbam*, *Fernham*, and *Winchester* with Men and Ammunition, for King *Stephen* Use, and earnestly solicited the discontented *Londoners* in his Favour. These Things obliged the Empress to hasten to *Glocester*, to confer with her great Friend *Mato*, whom she created Earl of *Hereford*. She returned to *Oxford*, and having got together what Forces she could, she marched directly to *Winchester*, accompanied with her Uncle *David*, King of *Scotland*, her Brother *Robert*, and many of the Nobility: when she came to the City, she sent for the Bishop to come to her with all Speed; but he thinking it not safe, returned an equivocal Answer, that he would prepare himself, as he designed to follow them; but he got out of the City and prepared her Ruin; for with the Assistance of the Queen *Matilda*, and her Son *Eustace*, the *Kentish* Men, the *Londoners*, and *William de Tyres*, he made good his Party; himself and Friends remained in the City, while the Empress and her Nobility defended themselves in the Castle. Shortly after, to prevent the Empress's Friends in the City from doing her any Service, he commanded the City to be set on fire, by which the great *Nunnery*, the Convent of *St. Grimbold*, above twenty Churches, and the greatest Part of the City was consumed to Ashes. The Empress, after she had been besieged seven Weeks, desired to remove her Quarters for Fear of falling into her Enemies Hands; and with a great deal of Difficulty she marched out with her Brother *Reginald*, and many other Friends, besides Earl *Robert*, who brought up the Rear with two hundred stout Fellows. The King's Forces pursued them, slew many of them, and took others Prisoners; but she by good Fortune escaped to the Castle of *Luigneston*, and from thence to the *Devizes*, where finding she was still in Danger, she was obliged to be carried from thence to *Glocester*, in a Coffin like a dead Corpse: But Earl *Robert*, while he was more careful of her Security than his own, was taken Prisoner, and carried back to *Winchester*; and the Bishop presented him to Queen *Matilda*,

The Empress is besieged at Winchester.

Earl Robert taken Prisoner.

The Reign of King STEPHEN.

163

who committed him to the Custody of *William de*
and for Security he was sent to *Rochester*, who
Space of six Months was exchanged for the And ex-
And not long after the Bishop of *Winchester*, changed for
might compleat the Empress's Ruin, summon- the King
ed to meet at *Westminster*; where after some
was spent in reading the Pope's Letters, and
King *Stephen's* Complaints concerning his hard
the good Legate endeavoured to justify his own
ings; alledging, that he had received the Em- The Legate's
Compulsion, not Choice; and that now he was Hypocrisy.
excommunicate all who favour'd the Cause of
press: and that he now, in the Behalf of God
Pope, commanded all to assist with their whole
to re-establish King *Stephen*. At the same Time
messenger from the Empress, who could no
the Discourse of this prevaricating Prelate,
urged him by the Fealty he had sworn to the
to act any Thing contrary to her Honour
rest; adding, That by his Invitation she came
glad, and that her imprisoning the King was
advice and Approbation. All this, and much
he urged with great Sharpness against the Le-
it formal Hypocrite, but to no manner of pur-

the following Year, went into *Normandy* to A. D. 1142
his Husband *Geaffry* for her Assistance: He sent
Henry and a small Force with *Robert* into Eng-
The Empress in his Absence had strongly forti-
fied in *Oxford*: *Stephen* closely besieged her
Months, so that whatever Strength or Strata-
uld perform on either Side, was there put in
till at Length Want made them think of a
The Empress being reduced to this Ex- The Em-
once more undertook a dangerous Attempt; press's
ing her self and a select Company in white Li- strange
ments, she issued secretly by Night out of a Po- escape.
rt, and having passed the River, then frozen
ran on Foot through Ice, Snow, Ditches and
for five Miles, as far as *Abington*, and there
tise, and the same Night got to the Castle of
ford. In the mean Time Earl *Robert* and Prince
with their Forces, had lain Siege and taken *War-*
ble, with Design to divert the King from the
of *Oxford*; but hearing of the Empress's strange
M 2 Escape,

1147. This was a mo
: for the Clergy; for by this
while the rest of the Nation were n
ther in a most dreadful Manner; fo
was furiously carried on in most P
which continued for several Yea
Time several Towns and Castles w
ken and retaken on both Sides; but
tage on *Stephen's*; for the Empress
nerals, the two famous Earls, *Robe*
Milo of Hereford, left *England*, and
to her Husband, with whom she cont

The Em-
press leaves
England.
1147.

Upon the Departure of the Em
Barons swore Allegiance to King
stace. The King went to *Lincoln*, &
his Court there, and to shew his Gr
Courage, he wore his Crown in th
King before him durst do, being
tain superstitious Prophecy foretelli
extraordinary Misfortune to any Pri
it. King *Stephen* now enjoying all
sure of a well-secured Crown, wa
Satisfaction, by Prince *Henry*, who
came over into *England*, to make
for a Crown; and was immediatel
contented Earl of *Chester*, *Roger S*
Milo, and by many others. *Henry*
North to meet his Cousin, *David*
who received him honourably and

Prince Hen-
ry invades
England.

The Reign of King STEPHEN.

165

Lewis, for Fear of Male Issue by this Marriage, was highly incensed with Duke *Henry*; and *Stephen* also fearing his Power, both of them sought all Methods to diminish it. *Lewis* and *Eustace* opposed him abroad, and *Stephen* in *England*; where to secure the succession, and to cut off all Hopes from Prince *Henry*, King endeavour'd to invest Prince *Eustace* with the Eng- vours to have his Son *Eustace* crown'd.
Diadem. To effect which, he call'd a grand Council at *London*, and commanded *Theobald* the Archbishop of *Canterbury* to crown his Son *Eustace*, which he peremptorily refus'd. The King enrag'd at this, shut up all Bishops, with the Primate, in one House, but the latter made his Escape, and fled into *Normandy*. The King seiz'd upon all his Lands and Possessions. King *Stephen* now resolved to make good his Title to the Crown by Force; which was questioned by the Church, so had before establish'd it. Accordingly he besieg'd and took the Castle of *Newberry*, fortified *Malmsbury*, and invested the Castle of *Wallingford*; and to prevent Communication, he erected the Castle of *Cranmerse* against it. But Duke *Henry* having quieted Matters abroad, return'd to *England* with a considerable Force. Many of the Nobility joined him, and deliver'd to him more than thirty strong Castles. Then they hastened to relieve *Wallingford*, where they laid close Siege to the King's Forces, and reduc'd them to as great Straits as the few who were within the Town. King *Stephen* came to their Relief: But as both Armies were ready to engage, the Importunities of some great Men, they persuaded the King to come to a Parly with the Duke. Upon which they had an Interview near *Wallingford*, where the River of *Thames* being narrow, they could discourse together from the opposite Banks. A Cessation of Arms was soon agreed on, which was very much to the Prejudice of Prince *Eustace* the King's Son; but before he could show his just Resentments, he died in the eighteenth Year of his Age, and was buried at *Feverisham* by his Mother *Maud*. Upon the Expiration of the aforesaid Truce, King *Stephen* lost many Castles; as *Berthwell*, *Reading*, *Warwick*, *Stamford*, and others. The King, under these Afflictions, began to be more inclined to Peace; and this Work was promoted by Archbishop *Theobald*, and *Henry* of *Winchester*: Upon which a grand Council was summoned to meet at *Winchester*, where a Peace was concluded on these Conditions. 1. That *Stephen*, King concludes a Peace with *Henry*.
1153.

during his Life, should be King of *England*. 2. That at his Decease, *Henry* should succeed him as lawful Heir. 3. That all Persons on both Sides should enjoy Estates, Rights and Titles. 4. That Crown and Liberties should be resumed, and Possessions restored. 5. That the Castles built by *Stephen's* Permission, being too many, should be demolished. *William*, *Stephen's* second Son, was only to enjoy his Father's Possessions, which he had before he was King. At which he was so angry, that he entred into a Conspiracy against the late Duke *Henry*, which was going to be put in Execution, when *William's* Horse threw him, and broke his Neck, and thus for Want of a Leader the Design fail'd. He never it occasion'd the Duke to take his Leave of the Kingdom, and pass into *Normandy*, where after a Year's absence, he was joyfully receiv'd by his Mother, and all his Subjects.

King *Stephen* now had a fair Prospect of reaping the Sweets of a lasting Peace; accordingly he call'd a Parliament to consult for the publick Good; and resolv'd to make a Progress into many Parts of the Kingdom, to reform the Mischiefs that the Sword had brought; but was prevented from compleating those laudable Designs; for going to meet the Earl of *Flanders* at *Ver*, he fell sick there, and on the 25th Day of October died, after a calamitous Reign of eighteen Years, nine Months, and seventeen Days, in the fiftieth Year of his Age, and was buried by his Wife and Son in the Abbey-Church, which himself had founded, at *Framingham*.





The Reign of King HENRY II.

HENRY, surnamed *Plantagenet*, tho' he was out of *A. D. 1154.*
England, and a *Frenchman* by Birth, yet was ad-
 ded to the Crown of *England* without any Oppo-
 sition or Capitulation. He was Son of the Empress
Matilda, who was Grand-Daughter to Queen *Margaret*,
 Sister of *Edgar Etheling*; so that in him the Royal
 Blood of the Old *English Saxons* was restored. Soon after
 Arrival, having been detain'd by contrary Winds for
 Weeks together, he was crown'd by *Theobald Arch-* Hen. II.
bishop of Canterbury at *Westminster*, *Decemb. 20. 1154,* crown'd.
 He 23^d Year of his Age.

Henry being thus settled on the Throne, resolves to
 make himself as easy as possible in the Enjoyment there-
 of. He therefore began his Reign with all such publick
 Actions, as he knew would get and increase the Love
 of his Subjects, the best Foundation of Government.
 He made a prudent Provision against the King of *France*,
 who was much displeased with *Henry*, for marrying his
 Daughter, and who would take all Opportunities of oppo-
 sing him. He began with demolishing several Castles,
 which had been the Nests of Rebellion, and resumed
 all others to his own Use; and also such Lands
 and Estates as had been alienated from the Crown. Ha-
 ving proceeded thus far by Virtue of his Regal Autho-
 rity, that he might preserve good Government, and re-
 move even the very Suspicion of his Design to act in
 arbitrary Manner, he chose a Council out of the wis- He chuseth a
 and gravest Men of his Kingdom; who could best Council.
 inform him of the State of the Nation. The Empress, 1155.
 his Mother, one of the most experienc'd Ladies of the
 Court, was the chief of his Cabinet-Council. The King
 by the Advice of this Council assembled a Par- And calls
 liament at *Wallingford*; where, after having receiv'd the Parliamen t
 Consent of the whole Nation, who likewise swore to
 the Succession of his two Sons *William* and *Henry*, he
 renew'd the Laws of *St. Edward*, and the antient

Customs of the Kingdom, and granted a Charter of liberties. But what pleas'd the People most, was to banish and expel Strangers, especially *Flemings*, *Picards*, whom King *Stephen* had brought in, and were very insolent and burdnesom to the Nation.

1156.

King *Henry* having thus happily settled the Affairs of *England*, went into *France* to King *Lewis*, and Homage to him for *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, *Anjou*, and *Tourain*; which were partly his own Patrimony and partly the Inheritance of *Eleanor* his Queen. He unjustly dispossest'd his Brother *Geoffry* of all Territories, and oblig'd him to accept of an Annuity of a thousand Pounds *English* Money, and two thousand Pounds *Anjouvin* Money; which in the third Year

His Friend-
ship with the
King of Scots.

ended by the Death of *Geoffry*. Then King *Henry* return'd to *England*, and at *Chester* he contracts a Friendship with *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*; upon which *Malcolm* surrendred the City of *Carlisle*, *Newcastle*, *Tine*, and that of *Bamborough*, and King *Henry* restor'd to him the Earldom of *Huntington* in *England*.

Yet notwithstanding the King's Growth in Strength and Power, the *Welsh* made frequent IncurSIONS into *England*. The King march'd against them with a powerful Army, and after much Difficulty reduc'd them. And then to prevent as much as possible all such Attempts, the King cut down their Woods, and open'd Ways into their Country; and having receiv'd the Fealty of their Great Men, he return'd in TriumPH to *England*.

1158.

The King
crown'd a-
gain at *Lin-*
coln.

Soon after this Success, the King's Satisfaction increas'd by the Birth of his third Son, *Richard*, in the Palace at *Oxford*. The King spent the Beginning of this Year in a Progress thro' *England*, and was crown'd at *Wickford*, without the Walls of *Lincoln*. In the following Year he and his Queen were crown'd at *Worcester* upon *Easter Sunday*, and devoutly offer'd up their Crowns at the high Altar, vowing never to wear them after, which they punctually observ'd.

And at *Wor-*
cester.
1159.

King *Henry* now pass'd a second Time into *Normandy*, where for three or four Years, several Matters of Importance occur'd; as his seizing the City of *Nantes*, and a great Part of *Bretagne*; his Journey of *Eleanor* his Queen to visit King *Lewis*; his unsuccessful Siege of *Tholouse*; his Marriage of his Son *B*

The Reign of King HENRY II.

169

Margaret the *French* King's Daughter, both *Chil-*
and *Lewis's* making War with him upon that
unt, and their being reconciled by Pope *Alex-*
who was so honour'd by them, that they both
'd by his Horse's Side as Yeomen of the Stirrup.
which he return'd to *England* with Honour, and
e Satisfaction of all his People.

ing *Henry* now might have enjoy'd all the Calm 1163.
Happiness of a well-established Peace, being ho- His Contest
'd and fear'd abroad, and having the entire Affecti- with *Becket*,
of the best Part of his Subjects at home, had he not Archbishop
perplexed by a Contest between him and *Thomas*
bet, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, whom the King had
unc'd from a low Condition, concerning the Regal
Pontifical Authority. It first began on Account of
many Corruptions of the Churchmen, which were
grown to a dangerous Height: For the Clergy
committed above a hundred Murders in this very
ign; of which great Complaint was made to the
ig, by the suffering Laity. The King was provok'd
ind that his good Subjects were thus injur'd, without
medy, by the Clergy, who assaulted them without Re-
int, because they were screen'd by the Archbishop
the other Prelates, from all Manner of Punishments,
the most enormous Crimes. The Sum of this fa-
as Contest is thus deliver'd by *Hoveden*: The King
ected that such of the Clergy as were taken in Rob-
y, Murder, Felony, or the like, should be try'd in
Temporal Courts, as Laymen were: But *Becket*
clar'd, that all Clergymen guilty of such Crimes,
re only to be try'd in the Spiritual Courts, by Men
their own Order; and that the King had nothing to
with Spiritual Men. Thus *Becket* depriv'd the King
once of one half of his Sovereignty; at which the
ng was very much displeas'd; and therefore at an
sembly at *Westminster* the King shew'd his Resent-
ments against *Becket's* Behaviour; and took an Occa-
n to establish several Articles, to curtail both the Pa-
l and Ecclesiastical Authority, which he call'd his
andfather's Customs. The Points in those Ordinan-
which *Becket* condemn'd, and communicated to
Pope, and his own Suffragan Bishops, were prin-
ally these; 1. That none should appeal to the See of
me, for any Cause whatsoever, without License from
King. 2. That no Bishop should go to the Pope,
tho'

tho' summon'd by him, without the King's License. 3. That none of the King's Officers should be excommunicated without License from the King. 4. That the Clergy should be try'd for their Crimes before secular Judges. 5. That the Laity should hold Pleas of Churches and Tithes, &c. To which *Becket* and all the Bishops answer'd, that they were willing to consent, saving their Order and the Rights of the Church. The King being displeas'd with this Answer, remov'd suddenly to *Woodstock*. The Bishops followed, and with much Difficulty prevail'd with *Becket* to assent to these Ordinances without that saving Clause.

A.D. 1164.
A Parliament held at
Clarendon.

The King having gain'd this main Point, resolv'd to have all their Consents ratified in Parliament; accordingly one was call'd at *Clarendon* in *Wiltshire*, where he propos'd these and other Laws, now call'd, *The Constitutions of Clarendon*, and expected the Bishops and Barons to recognize them as the antient Rights of the Crown. This *Becket* at first absolutely refus'd, but at length was perswaded to it; and so *Becket* and all the Bishops consented to these Laws, and recognis'd them under their Seals; and the King sent them afterwards to the Pope to be confirm'd; who not only reject'd them, but utterly condemn'd them. *Becket*, as soon as he heard this, began to cool, repented of this Act, and suspended himself from all Office, until by Confession and Penance he had obtained the Pope's Absolution for this almost unpardonable Crime. The Pope sent over *Botred*, Archbishop of *Raven*, to compose this Difference between the King and the Church. The King was very willing, provided his Holiness would first confirm his Laws by his Bull, and request'd, that *Roger*, Archbishop of *York*, might be constituted his Legate throughout *England*. The Pope knowing that *Becket's* Cause was his Cause, would not desert to faithful a Servant; nevertheless, to gratify the King, he granted a Bull with slight Authority, which the King sent back with Contempt.

The Pope
espouses
Becket's
Cause.

The King
proceeds a-
gainst *Becket*.

The King perceiving that no moderate Methods would have any Influence on this obstinate Pretate, caus'd him to be call'd to an Account for every Thing the Law would take hold of. First, He was condemn'd in Damages for a Manor claimed by *John de Marshal*. Next he was prosecuted at the King's Suit for five hundred Marks, which had been lent him; and

for the like Sum he had of a Jew upon the King's
 pity: Then for all the Profits of the Archbishop-
 of York, and other Bishopricks and Abbies vacant,
 in the Time of his Chancellorship. This Parlia-
 ment also called him to an Account for thirty thousand
 Marks he had formerly in his Hands. *Becket* pleads
 acquittance, and absolutely refused to answer as a
 man. For this Refusal, and denying to come be-
 fore the King, when commanded, the Peers and Bi-
 shops condemned all his moveable Goods to the King's
 use, and also adjudged him guilty of Perjury, and dis-
 missed all future Obedience to him. Yet notwith-
 standing this, the next Day *Becket* in his Pontificalibus
 went to be sung before him, *The Princes sit and speak
 of me, and say Ungodly persecute me*; and then
 with his Cross in his Hand he impudently entered into
 the King's Presence; for which audacious and unprece-
 dent Action, the Archbishop of York reproved him, and
 said, that the King carried much the sharper Wea-
 pon than the two. *Becket* replied, the King's Sword can
 wound the Body, but mine the Soul, and send
 to Hell. The King upon this commanded his Peers
 to sit in Judgment upon him, as a perjured Traitor,
 and accordingly done. *Becket* declared them
 unworthy Judges, and appealed to the See of Rome;
 where he fled to France.

*Becket's Im-
 pudence.*

King Henry sends immediately to the King of France
 to countenance *Becket*, a Rebel against his King;
 notwithstanding which, the King of France sends to the
 Pope in Favour of *Becket*. To this the Pope readily
 complied; upon which *King Henry* sent him an Embas-
 sy to procure *Becket's* Disgrace, but could not prevail,
 the Pope and Cardinals foresaw, that if *Becket* was
 assisted in his Cause, it would be a noble Precedent
 for other Bishops to oppose their Kings; but if it sunk,
 no Bishop for the future would dare oppose their So-
 veraign's Pleasure; which would lessen the Church's
 Power, and the Pope's Authority.

The King thought the Indignity offered him by the
 Pope insufferable; and to let him understand how he
 valued it, he ordains, that if any bring Letters of In-
 terdiction from the Pope, they should immediately
 be executed as Traytors; that none of the Clergy should
 go out of the Land without Licence, and, that no
 one should appeal to the Pope. He also forbade the
 Pay-

*King Henry
 opposes the
 Pope's Au-
 thority.*

The King
receives
Becket into
Favour.

Anboise near *Tours*, in the Presence of *Lewis*, King of *France*, his Bishops and Noblemen, the King received the Archbishop into his Grace and Favour, as well as all those who were with him in Exile, which had been above six Years.

Becket stir
up fresh
Troubles.

And now one would think that the Controversy between the King and *Becket* had been at an End. But the latter was still the same; and to make that appear, he procured Letters from the Pope for the Suspension of the Archbishop of *York*, and Bishop of *Durham*, and for the Excommunication of the Bishops of *London*, *Exeter* and *Salisbury*, for being Assistants in the Coronation of the young King: And at his first Arrival he published these Letters, to the great Disturbance of the Nation. Upon which these Bishops hallooed over to the King, complaining that he had made an unhappy Peace for them, since they, and his most faithful Friends, were thus unreasonably treated. To which the Archbishop of *York* added, that as long as *Becket* liv'd, the King could enjoy no Peace. The King, in a great Passion cried out, *I am an unhappy Man! Is there none that can vindicate me from the Injuries I suffer from one Priest?* Upon which four of the King's Domesticks, viz. *Raynold Fitz-Urse*, *William Tracy*, *Richard Brito*, and *Hugh Morville*, privately bound themselves by Oath to revenge the King's Quarrel, and destroy *Becket*. To accomplish which they left the Court, passed into *England*, and arrived at *Canterbury*; where, when they came into the Presence of the Archbishop, they first insulted him, and afterwards at the Altar gave him many Wounds, and beat out his Brains, even in the Time of divine Service. The Assassins having effected this impious Act, and justly fearing the King's Resentment, were obliged to fly, and in a few Years died miserable Fugitives in Foreign Countries.

Is murdered.
A.D. 1171.

His Character
disputed.

This was the fatal End of the famous *Thomas Becket*, who from his Pride and Haughtiness, had caused great Mischiefs to the Nation; and as some have exalted him amongst the Saints, so others have doubted whether he was a good Man. Nay, about fifty Years after his Death, it was hotly disputed among the learned Doctors of the University of *Paris*, whether *Thomas Becket* was saved or damned: The one Party declaring, that he deserved Death and Damnation for his Contumacy against the Minister of God, his Sovereign; and the other, that his

The Reign of King HENRY II.

174

many Miracles were a Sign of his Salvation. He bestowed on him one of the richest and noblest cities in the World, was canoniz'd, and a famous Mass was kept every fiftieth Year to his Memory at *Waverbury*.

By the Death of *Becket* King *Henry* was freed from his greatest Disturber of his Repose. Yet the News of this barbarous Murder gave him new Troubles; the King of *France*, the Earl of *Blois*, and the Bishop of *Sens*, sent such Letters to the Pope concerning it, that *Henry* found it very difficult to preserve his Kingdom from a general Interdict, tho' he made Use of his Power, Money and Protestations to submit to the Judgment of such Legates and Cardinals as his Holiness should send to inquire into the Matter.

About this Time the King vigorously prosecuted ^{The King's Design upon Ireland.} his Design of subduing the Kingdom of *Ireland*, which had been begun a Year or two before. To make his Intentions appear reasonable and just, he declared, that by an antient Title he had a Right to this Kingdom; not to mention the continued Injuries the *Irish* had committed by their Piracies, buying and selling the *Irish* Captives, and treating them like Slaves: But the greatest Reason that induced the King to this Enterprise, was *Dermot*, Prince of *Leister*'s coming to him, and desiring his Assistance to revenge himself against the other Princes of *Ireland*, who had combined against him, and driven him to this Distress. The King being glad of this Opportunity, gave Liberty to such of his Subjects as pleased to venture their Fortunes with him. Upon which *Dermot* repaired to *Wales*, and soon was attended with *Robert Fitz-Stephen* and *Richard Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, Men of great Valour and Interest, who produced them many Followers; and as soon as he had prepared all Things necessary, they passed the Sea with some Soldiers, and landed at a Place near *Waterford*, called by the *Irish* *Bagg and Bunn*, which was the Occasion for this Verse,

*At the Head of Bagg and Bunn,
Ireland was lost and won.*

The next Day *Maurice de Pendergast* arrived at the same Place with more Forces, and joined *Fitz-Stephen*. Then they

they marched against the City of *Wexford*, which surrendered. This City, and the adjacent *Dermot* gave to *Fitz-Stephen* as an Earnest of Rewards. And here was planted the first of the *English*, which continues to this Day, resembling the antient *English* in Dress and Language, which is called *Wexford Speech*. The next Year the Earl of *Pembroke* with more Forces, sailed to the City of *Waterford*, and landing with one thousand five hundred Men, soon took the Town, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword. This struck such a Terror in the People, that they made very little Resistance in other Places, for fear of the like Treatment. *Dermot* gave the Earl his Daughter *Eva* in Marriage with the Dowry of his Country, and soon after the Earl, after he had secured the new acquisition, marched with his little Army up into the County of *Down*, without Opposition, and took what Pledges of Submission he pleased from the Inhabitants; and then went to possess himself of the City of *Dublin*, the Metropolis of *Ireland*. Thus *Waler* with a small Force, and one general Battle, gained for us the Kingdom of *Ireland*.

Ireland is
conquer'd by
the *Welsh*.

The King
goes over
thither.

King *Henry*, that he might secure a Kingdom won, shortly after *Michaelmas* passed over the Sea with a great Fleet and Army, and landed in *Ireland* at *Waterford*, to which Place he marched the next Day, where he remained fifteen Days; during which Time the Kings of *Cork*, *Limerick*, *Offery*, *Meath*, and all other Princes, came and voluntarily submitted themselves, with all the Clergy, and took Oaths of Fealty to him, the young King, and his Successors for ever. From *Waterford* the King proceeded to *Dublin*, where *Roderick* came, and also his Brother. And now the King's principal Care was to settle the Affairs of the Nation, both in Church and State. Accordingly he caused all the Bishops and Clergy to assemble at *Cassel*, where it was decreed, That all Lands should be free from the Exaction of Tithes; and that from that Time the Church of *Ireland* should be modelled by the Church of *England*. The King put Garisons into all convenient Places, and made *Hugh Lacy* Justice of *Ireland*, and *Robert Fitz-Bernard* Governor of the Towns of *Waterford* and *Dublin*.

Several Af-
fairs there.

The Reign of King HENRY II.

1177

Thus in one Winter King Henry gained the Kingdom of Ireland with very little Bloodshed.

The Irish Affairs being thus quietly established, the King, on Easter Monday, set Sail for England, and from thence into Normandy, to meet the two Legates sent by the Pope, to enquire into Becket's Murder. Four Months were spent in debating the Matter; and at length the King by Oath, purged himself, of either commanding, or consenting to it. At last the Legates resolved him upon these Conditions: 1. That he should never oppose the Pope's Authority. 2. That all Appeals should be freely made to the Pope in Ecclesiastical Causes. 3. That he should undertake the Crusade, and go to Jerusalem for three Years; or maintain a hundred Soldiers in the Holy Land for one Year. 4. That all Exiles on Becket's Account should be restored. 5. That all Customs introduced in his Time to the Prejudice of the Church, should be abolished. 6. That the Clergy only should be Judges of these iniquitous Customs. Thus ended this great Controversy, by which the Pope established his Power to a high Degree; and the King lost his Sovereignty. But it will be very hard to reconcile what King Henry did at Clarendon, with what he did before the Pope's Legates in Normandy.

No sooner had the King surmounted these Difficulties, but he was involved in new Mischiefs, by an unnatural Rebellion; the chief of the Conspirators was Queen Eleanor his Wife, on the Account of Rosamond Clifford, whom the King kept for his Pleasure at Woodstock, where the Queen found Means to End her Life. There were also engaged the young King Henry his Son, together with his two younger Brothers, Richard and Geoffrey, the two Kings of France and Scotland, and many great Lords, both English and others; a formidable Conspiracy; yet the King proceeded against them with as much Vigour, Courage and Policy, as if they had been Enemies only at a Distance: and to relate the Particulars of this War, would take up too much Room. At the Time Normandy, Guiennois and Bretagne were invaded by the Confederates abroad, and Cumberland by the Scots at Home. The French King in Person besieged Verneuil which Place was to be surrendered, if not relieved by a certain Day. The King sent to relieve it, that if he did not leave Normandy immediately,

he would come and visit him at the appointed Day. Upon which *Lewis* raised the Siege with such Precipitation, that he left all his Tents and Ammunition behind him. King *Henry* had many successful Encounters with his Enemies in all Parts; yet notwithstanding these Advantages, he shewed a Forwardness to make Peace, and was willing to be reconciled to his rebellious Sons. King *Lewis* fearing the King's growing Power, sued for a Truce of six Months, which was granted. In the mean Time the King took Advantage from his Son *Richard*, and mov'd with such Expedition, in all his Undertakings, that the *French* King last he seem'd not to go, but to fly. Yet before he could finish all in these Parts, he was obliged to repair to *Normandy*, where *Robert* Elect of *Winchester*, was sent from *England* to represent to him the present dangerous State of the Nation; for *Norwich* was plunder'd; the young King and the Earl of *Flanders* were about to invade the Kingdom; *Nottingham* was burnt, and *Northampton* in the Hands of the Enemy.

The King's
great Success.

The sad State
of England.

The King
returns from
Normandy.

King *Henry* surpriz'd at the ill State of the Nation, leaves *Normandy*, and comes over into *England*, bringing with him his Queen *Eleanor*, his Son's Queen *Margaret*, his Son *John*, the Earl of *Leicester*, with his Countess, and many other noble Prisoners. He set sail from *Barfleur*, and the same Day arrived at *Southampton*; from whence he took his Journey towards *Canterbury*, where he was to perform the Remander of the Penance enjoined him at his Absolution. Coming towards the Church where *Becket* was buried, he walk'd three Miles barefooted, the Blood running from his Feet, cut by the sharp Stones; and prostrating himself at the Sepulchre, he received many Lashes on his bare Flesh from the Priests and Monks. The monkish Writers of that Age attribute all future Success to the Reconciliation King *Henry* made with God for the Blood of *Becket*; for soon after *William*, King of *Scotland*, was taken Prisoner; and the young King, his Son, was driven back into *France*, having lost a great Part of his Fleet in a Storm. His other Actions, till his Return to *Normandy*, are by *Walsingham* comprehended in these few Words: "He tamed his Rebels, put his Enemies to Flight, and seiz'd on their Forts."

He goes thither again.

Having settled Peace in the Nation, he passed over into *Normandy* with his Army, taking with him the King of *Scotland* and the Earls of *Leicester* and *Cheshire*, with

Reign of King HENRY II.

179

Prisoners of Note. As soon as the Confederates understood that King *Henry* was arrived, and towards them, they raised the Siege of *Ro-*
ed with Precipitation, leaving behind them ^{King Hen-}
Baggage and Ammunition. After this the King ^{ry's Great-}
Power of *France* fled at his Presence, with- ^{ness and}
out given. The King of *Scotland* was his ^{Power.}
The chief of the Rebels were under his Feet;
was secured; *Scotland* dismayed; *Ireland* re-
der subservient to his Arms; *Normandy* in
and the Coasts of *Bretagne*; *Guienne*, *Gas-*
was the Borders of *Spain*, under King *Hen-*
ry.

Acts which this Greatness and Power pro-
duced these. Those that before had combined
, now become his most humble Supplicants;
Peace. A Truce was first made between
Kings, viz. the two *Henrys* and *Lewis*
ance; in which *Richard* who stood out,
his Father's Prosecution; but he soon sub-
mits to his Father, and received a full Pardon. Af-
ter all Parties were reconciled, and a firm Peace
upon these Conditions; "That young King
with *Richard*, and *Geoffry* his Brother, freed

A Peace con-
cluded.

Oaths of Confederation, should return to
obedience to the King their Father: That the
on all Sides should have their Liberty with-
out, except the King of *Scotland*; the Earls
Hereford and *Chester*: That King *Henry* should
swear of Loyalty, either by Hostage or Oath,
as were enlarged. That the Grant which
he had made to his Son *John*, of some Castles
situated in *England*, should be ratified by the
King *Henry*." The King of *Scotland* paid one
thousand Pounds Sterling for his Ransom, one
ready Money, and the other at an appointed
time promised to do Homage to King *Henry* for
his dominions. For the Performance of which Ar-
rangements *Henry* had a double Security; for not only
the Castles of *Edinburgh*, *Roxburgh*, *Berwick*, *Fed-*
derburgh delivered by the King of *Scotland*, in-
to his Hands; but the Bishops of *Scotland* swore,
if King *Henry* broke these Conditions, they would put
the Land under an Interdict. These Things be-
ing settled, they took Shipping for *England*, and ar-
rived at *Worms* on the twenty sixth of *May*; 1175.

Happy State
of England.

The State of *England* had never a better Aspect at this Time. That this might be lasting, King omitted no Opportunity of acting as a just and Governor, visiting a great Part of his Kingdom; consulting, ordering, and enacting such Laws as might best establish a lasting Peace. And in a held at *Westminster*, this Canon, amongst other established both by the Authority of the King and the Clergy, "That every Patron of a Benefice, taking a R^e Presentation, should for ever lose the Right of R^enage." This very Year *Roderick* King of *Connaught* Ireland was receiv'd into Favour, and became a faithful Tributary. And many Things of Moment settled between the Kings of *England* and *Scotland*.

1176.

The Nation
divided into
six Circuits.

This Year, by the Advice of Parliament held at *Windsor*, the King divided the Kingdom into six Circuits, and for every Circuit constituted three Justices of the Peace, and caus'd them to swear to oblige all the People to observe the Ordinances of *Clarendon*, which were made against Murder, Theft, Robbery, Burglaries, Houses, and Cheats. These Circuits continue the same to this Day. Not long after which, by the famous *Glanville* Lord chief Justice of *England* whose Wisdom and Advice the Laws of King *Henry* were again renew'd. And as the King was mindful of his Subjects Security, so he was not forgetful of his own, causing almost all the Castles in *England*, *Normandy*, that had been fortify'd against him in late War, to be demolished.

1177.

John is made
King of Ireland.

This Year *John* the King's youngest Son was made King of *Ireland*, by Virtue of a Bull granted by the Pope *Adrian* for that Purpose. The King also purchased the Earldom of *March* in *France* for the Sum of thousand Pounds *Anjouin* Money, twenty Mule as many Palfreys. For four or five Years after this he found nothing of Moment, only some Regulation of the Coin. Only in the Year 1179. the *French* King came into *England* on Pilgrimage to the Tomb of *St. Thomas Becket*, to implore his Assistance for the Recovery of his Son then sick: And he and many others did that he was restored to Health by *Thomas's* Medicine.

French King
visits Becket's
Tomb.

1182.

New Con-
tentions.

The Calm which the Nation had enjoy'd for a considerable Time, began to be disturb'd by the young *Henry*, who shew'd fresh Inclinations of opposition to his Father. Upon which the King increas'd his

The Reign of King HENRY II.

181

as both in *England* and *Normandy*, and promoted Young King
 contentions among his Sons. But some Time after, all Henry dies.
 apprehensions of Danger were remov'd by the Death
 of young King *Henry*, who on his Death-bed shew'd a
 very Sorrow for his unnatural Rebellions against his
 Father, and after Absolution put a Rope about his
 Neck, and was remov'd from his Bed to a Couch made
 of Ashes, where he expired, to the exceeding Grief of
 his Father, who mourn'd for him like *David* for his
 Son *Absalom*. He dy'd in the 28th Year of his Age, ha-
 ving had the Title of a King for thirteen; yet his Name
 is never inserted in the Catalogue of our *English*
 Kings.

At the Death of young *Henry* it might have been ima-
 gined that his Father had an Opportunity to end his
 Days in Peace and Glory. But *Heracitus* Patriarch of 1185.
Salem came from thence into *England* to acquaint *Heracitus*
Henry with the deplorable State of the Holy Land, desires the
 to offer him the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, as right- King's As-
 belonging to him, being the Son of *Geoffry* Earl sistance in
 of *Norman*, whose Brother *Fulk* enjoy'd the Crown. the Holy
 was propos'd to the grand Assembly of the States, War.
 agreed that the King should promote this Affair
 with Money, but not employ his Person, notwithstand-
 ing he had before now solemnly engaged to undertake
 the Crusade. However, he gave Leave to all his Sub-
 jects to take the Cross; upon which the Archbishop of
Canterbury, several Bishops, with many Earls, Barons
 and Knights undertook it.

The King willing to settle his Affairs at home, ob-
 tained a Bull from Pope *Lucius* to crown which of his
 he pleas'd King of *Ireland*; provided that *Peter*-
 and all other Rights and Privileges were reserv'd
 to the *Roman* See. Accordingly at *Windsor* the King
 sent his Son *John*, and sent him to *Ireland*, as his The King's
 only Son, who return'd the same Year, without Son *John*
 having done any Thing but lost a great Part of his Ar- sent to *Ire-*
 land.
 Skirmishes with the *Irish*.

In the following Year the King's Son *Richard* took 1186.
 Arms against his Father, fortifying *Poictou* against him:
 he was soon reduc'd, and oblig'd to surrender the
 Town of *Poictou* to his Mother *Eleanor*, whose In-
 fluence it was. Not long after this, the King's Son *Geoffry* kill'd
 he was trod to Death by Horses in a publick Tur- in a Tura-
 nament.
 at *Paris*. Thus half the King's rebellious Male

Issue were extinct before him, and by Deaths as violent as their Dispositions; and the two Sons that survived him were no less miserable in their Ends. The Alliance between *England* and *France* were at this Time in a very unsettled Posture: But at Length a two Year Truce was concluded; after which, Earl *Richard*, contrary to his Father's Will, continued with the King of *France*, and they became so very intimate that one Table and one Bed serv'd for both. King *Henry* grew jealous of this extraordinary Amity, and sent several Times for his Son *Richard* to come home; which he refus'd to comply with for the present; yet after some Time he again submitted, and was reconciled to his Father.

1188.
Kings of
England and
France design
a Crusade

Much about this Time Sultan *Saladine* took *Jerusalem*, and in it *Guido* the King of it with a very great Number of Christians, to the great Grief and Dishonour of *Christendom*. This News did so sensibly touch the Kings of *England* and *France*, that they laid aside their former Resentments, and came to an Interview, and took upon them the Badge of the Cross as Soldiers of Christ, in the Presence of the Archbishop of *Tyre*: And the better to distinguish themselves, the *English* were to wear white Crosses, the *French* red, and the *Flemish* green. Accordingly all Parties made great Levies and Preparations to carry on this War, resolving to revenge the Cause of Christ upon Sultan *Saladine*. But this Confederacy was soon broken by *Richard's* Meanness, who revenging himself upon some Rebels of *Poitou*, that could not bear his severe Government, this raised such Disturbances, that both Kings were drawn into the Contest. To accommodate which, several Treaties were set on Foot, wherein the Demands of the King of *France* in Favour of *Richard* were so unreasonable,

that fell out.

1189.

that King *Henry* could by no Means be brought to comply. So both Parties took Arms. In this Contest King *Henry* declin'd apace, and was at length oblig'd to yield to such Conditions as King *Philip* thought fit to propose. The Consideration of which, join'd with that of his beloved Son *John's* being in the Conspiracy, overwhelm'd the good old King with Grief, and making him sick at *Chinon*, after an humble Confession of his Sorrow for his Sins, he expired on the 6th Day of July in the fifty sixth Year of his Age, having reigned thirty four Years, eight Months, and twelve Days, and was

King *Henry*
died.

buried.

The Reign of King RICHARD I.

183

at *Founteverard*. This was the End of the great-Potentate that had hitherto sat upon the *English* Throne. He left behind him two Sons, *Richard* and *John*, who both succeeded him in the Government. *Richard* was now about thirty one Years of Age, a stout and a valiant Prince, surnamed *Cour-de-Lion*, or *Man's-Heart*.



The Reign of King RICHARD I.

RICHARD, upon his Father's Death, first took Care ^{1189.} to establish his Affairs in *Normandy* and his other ^{Richard I. crown'd.} dominions in *France*, and then sent Letters to release his sister *Eleanor*, who had been a Prisoner above twelve years. After which he came into *England*, where he was joyfully receiv'd, and by universal Consent crown'd *Westminster* by *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; here he solemnly swore "to observe Peace, Honour, ^{His Oath.} and Reverence to God, his Church and Ministers all the Days of his Life: That he would exercise Justice and Equity towards his Subjects; and that he would abrogate all evil Laws and Customs, and make and keep such as were good." Then the Archbishop proceeded to anoint him in three Places, the Head, Breast and Arms, signifying by those Unctions, Glory, Fortitude and Wisdom. This Solemnity was disturbed by an unhappy Accident; for many *Jews* coming into the Abby-Church in Order to see the Ceremony, were set upon by the Multitude, and barbarously murder'd in the King's Presence, tho' utterly against his Will or Knowledge. ^{Many Jews murder'd.}

King Richard having before agreed with *Philip* King of *France* and other Potentates to carry on the holy War, made great Preparations to prosecute it with vigour; and tho' he was possess'd with his Father's great Treasure, and great Sums besides extorted from *Stephen Turnham* his Treasurer; yet these were not thought sufficient; and therefore he sold many of his Manors, Castles and Lands to such Bishops and Abbots as would purchase them, they being then the only Men that had ready Money: And when he was ask'd

by some about him why he sold so many Manors and Places; he reply'd, that if he could find a Chapinan he would sell *London* it self; so intent he was upon this plausible Enterprize; and the Pulpits resounded nothing but the Cross and Passion of Jesus Christ, which excited Multitudes to enter voluntarily as Soldiers for this holy Expedition. And now, to prevent his Brother

His Donations to his Brother Earl John.

Earl *John* from any Attempts during his Absence, he inveilled him with six Earldoms, *Cornwall, Dorset, Somerset, Nottingham, Derby, and Lancaster*, besides Castles, Manors, Honours and Bounties; and at last with the Earldom of *Glocester*, and the Heiress of that County for his Wife. Thus did the King share his Kingdom with his Brother: But lest Earl *John* should make a wrong Use of these Donations, he intrusted him with no Part of the Regal Power; but laid the Burden of the Government on his Chancellor *Longchamp*, Bishop of *Ely*, Chief Justiciary, and Legate to the See of *Rome*. But for the Defence and Execution of Justice, the King associated with him several Men of Honour, Wisdom, and Authority: And a firm Alliance was concluded between *Richard* and *William* King of *Scotland*.

1192.
He goes into France.

King *Richard* having established the Affairs of *England*, cross'd the Seas to meet King *Philip* in *France*, at the Time and Place appointed, that from thence they might proceed under the Banner of the Cross. They agreed that each should bear Faith to the other, and that they should give mutual Assistance to each other in all Cases of Need: The Barons of both Parties swore to maintain Peace in both the Kingdoms during this extraordinary Pilgrimage; and the Bishops promised to excommunicate all such as should transgress this Agreement. And then these two Monarchs set forward by Land with such prodigious Numbers, that at *Lions* they for Conveniency were obliged to part. *Philip* pass'd over the *Alps* into *Italy*, and *Richard* to the Sea Coast at *Marseilles*, there to meet his Royal Navy, which he had order'd to attend him; but that not being arriv'd, he hired twenty Gallies and ten Buttes, and set Sail for *Messina* in *Sicily*, the Rendezvous of both the Kings and their Armies. In which Passage King *Richard* coming to an Anchor at the Mouth of the *Tiber*, was invited by the Bishop of *Ostia* to make the Pope a Visit, which he refus'd; because the Pope had been guilty of Avarice and Simony in Relation to some new advanced Bishops in his Dominions. After this, when

The two Kings set forward by Land.



The Reign of King RICHARD I.

185

His whole Fleet was safely arriv'd, he came to anchor on the 23^d of September before the City of Messina, where Philip with his French, and many other Princes, were assembled.

This great Appearance struck such a Terror in the King's Subjects, that Tancred, then King of Sicily, immediately sent his Queen, whom before he had imprison'd, her Brother Richard, and comply'd with several Articles, and to the Payment of large Sums of Money. King Richard, for his better Security, seiz'd upon a Fort belonging to the Grissons, and after that, by Means of a great Tumult, took the City of Messina it self. He being flush'd with this Success, he display'd his Power, even in those Parts of the City that were appointed for King Philip's Quarters, which gave great offence, and caus'd many warm Expressions. From that Time the Spirit of Discord began to appear between the two Royal Adventurers; yet, for the present, this Contest was by the Mediation of some great Men on both Sides adjusted. But Tancred discovering King Richard, that Philip had some dishonourable Designs against his Person, this rais'd such a Distrust and Jealousy between 'em that from thenceforward they were never reconcil'd. Notwithstanding which he departed with Resolution to pursue the holy Expedition, and with the greatest Diligence got all Things ready, and on the same Day that Philip and his Forces sail'd from Messina, Eleanor, King Richard's Mother, married with Berengaria his intended Spouse, Daughter of Louis King of Navarre, whom he afterwards married in Cyprus.

Some Time after the King embark'd on his Royal Navy consisting of an hundred and fifty large Ships, by three Gallies, thirteen Busses, and many Tenders: his Royal Navy was dispersed by a Storm between the Isles of Rhodes and Cyprus, which gave the King occasion of new Conquests: For near the Port of Limassol, upon the Coasts of Cyprus, two of the Vessels were cast away, and the Ship that carried the Prince was in great Danger: Isaac their King plunder'd the former, made the People Prisoners, and would not suffer the latter enter the Port. King Richard, to revenge this uncommon Piece of Inhumanity, invaded the Island with his Forces, drove Isaac from the Court, took the City of Limassol, attack'd his Camp, and took Isaac Prisoner.

The King conquers Cyprus.

Priso-

Prisoner. After an Escape made by him, his Daughter was oblig'd to yield her self Prisoner, lastly himself return'd of his own Accord, and was in Fetters of Silver; upon which the whole [King] came subject to the King of England, and both [King] and Daughter were led into Captivity, and the [King] was intrusted to *Richard Camville* and *Robert Tyn* the King's Viceroys.

While the King's Affairs thus prospered abroad, the State of England suffer'd extreamly at home, and the Government of Bishop *Longchamp* the Chancellor by his illegal, arbitrary and violent Proceedings put the Nation in a Ferment, and incurred the Wrath of the whole Kingdom. Earl *John* taking Advantage of their Discontents, join'd with the State against Bishop: This render'd him very popular, and his design'd Usurpation more feasible. Accordingly a Convocation of Bishops and Nobility met at St. Pauls Church, London, whither *Longchamp* was cited, where they charged against him many Crimes committed contrary to his Commission, and the Good of the King and Kingdom. These Things being clearly made out, the Convocation did in a very formal Manner depose him from his Office, and put the Archbishop of *Roan* in his Place. Upon which *Longchamp* fled to the Pope, who was much displeased to find the Legantine Power so weakly supported. In the mean Time, Earl *John* with the Barons confirm'd to the City of London their ancient Liberties, and caus'd the Citizens to swear Fidelity to the King and his Heirs; and if he dy'd without Issue, they were then to maintain Earl *John* as Lord and King.

King *Richard* having transported his Forces from Cyprus to the Holy Land, and join'd *Philip King of France*, laid Siege to *Acon* or *Psalems*, defeated the Power of *Saladin*; which Place, after it had been out four Months, surrendred upon these Articles. That *Saladin* should by a certain Day restore the Cross. 2. That he should set free fifteen hundred Christian Captives. 3. That the City and all it contained in it, should remain to the Christian. That if these Conditions were perform'd, the Gens should only have their Lives sav'd. 5. That they should pay twenty thousand Pieces of Gold towards the Expenses of the two Kings. At their Entrance into the

Reign of King RICHARD I.

1191

anners of *Leopold*, Duke of *Austria*, were by *Richard's* Command taken down, and those of Kings erected. This incensed the Duke, who quitted the Service, and afterwards found to revenge himself. There appeared now two competitors to the Crown of *Jerusalem*, viz. *Guido* of *Normandy*, and *Conrade* of *Montferrat*: The King of *France* espous'd the former's Cause, and the King of *England* the latter's. This caused continual Heart-Burn between them: and the *French* King resolved to take the holy War no longer in Person; therefore he sent to King *Richard* for his Consent to return home, which was granted upon *Philip's* taking an Oath to restore *Richard's* Dominions, till his Return.

He immediately retir'd, leaving the Command of *France* to the Duke of *Burgundy*; notwithstanding *France* returns home.

King *Richard* set out the same Day upon a new Expedition, and marched towards *Joppa*. *Saladin* attacked him very furiously; which *Richard* returned with great

valour and Courage and Conduct, that *Saladin* was obliged to fly, with the Loss of above three thousand of his Soldiers. Some Time after the King was nearly deliver'd from falling into the Hands of the Enemy: For one Day the Enemy having Intelligence that he was asleep under a Tree, with a very small party they set upon him, and had taken him Prisoner, if not for one of his Gentlemen, named *William de Braubourne*, who cry'd out in the *Sacracen* Tongue, *I am the King*. Upon which they all seized upon him, and gave him and others an Opportunity to escape. After this the King, in Consideration of this noble Act, shew'd his Esteem for this brave Man, gave him his Liberty, and gave him ten of his greatest Prisoners.

Richard continued resolute in the Pursuit of his Expedition, and after several brave and important Actions, arriv'd up in Sight of *Jerusalem*, where he got the Victory of the Enemy in diverse Encounters; and took a great Convoy, or Caravan, coming richly laden from *India*, under a Guard of ten thousand Men, which he mostly put to the Sword, leaving three thousand Men, and four thousand Horses and Mules to King *Saladin's* Mercy. After this, and many other brave Actions, the King resolved to regain *Jerusalem*, and to enter *Barack*, but was abandoned in that Enterprize by the Duke of *Burgundy*, justly suspected of being

1192.

ing bribed by *Saladin*. Upon which the chief Men of the Christian Army advised the King not to refuse *Saladin's* Offers, for a Cessation of Arms. At length the King complied, and concluded a Truce with *Saladin* for three Years. Thus this great Crusade ended with little more Advantage than the taking of one City.

A three
Years Truce
concluded.

And now King *Richard* having first sent away his Queen and Sister, with the King of *Cyprus's* Daughter under the Conduct of *Stephen Fernham*, went aboard a Buss at *Acor*, and set sail in the Beginning of *October* for *Corfu*; where arriving in less than a Month, he continued his Voyage to *Ragusa*, in the Gulf of *Venice*; and landing near that City, he resolved to go by Land through *Sclavonia* into *Austria*. *Richard* had Reason to fear the Duke of *Austria* upon many Accounts; and therefore to secure himself from falling into his Hands, he with one single Servant, being disguised like *Pilgrims*, withdrew from his Retinue, took Horse, and travelled Day and Night until he came near the City of *Vienna*, where, in a small Village, the King being laid down to repose himself, the Servant going out to buy Provisions, was discovered by one belonging to the Duke of *Austria*. The Man was seiz'd, and constrained to reveal where the King was. The Duke immediately sent and took him Prisoner as he lay asleep. The Emperor, *Henry* the Sixth, being informed of this, sent to demand the Prisoner; and the Duke being promised a large Share of his Ransom, delivered him to the Emperor's Hands, who kept him Prisoner about a Year. Thus ended this great Prince's unfortunate Expedition into the *Holy Land*, having consumed all that mighty Treasure left him by his Father, and all the Riches of *England*, *Normandy*, and *Cyprus*.

Richard
leaves the
Holy Land.

Went into
Austria.

Is taken Pri-
soner.

And sent to
the Empe-
ror.

A.D. 1194

Earl *John* re-
bels.

As the News of King *Richard's* Imprisonment flew through *Europe* with incredible Swiftness, so it shew'd who were faithful or perfidious to him. To secure his Dominions, his Mother and best Friends caused the Nation to swear to be true to him, watched the Coasts; and fortified all the Cities and chief Towns of the Kingdom. Earl *John*, on the contrary, made use of this Opportunity to dethrone his Brother, and set up himself. Accordingly he prevailed with the *Normans* to countenance his disloyal Practices, swore Fealty to *Philip* King of *France*, and promised to marry his Si-
ster

Alice, tho' dishonoured by his own Father; and for the Cause rejected by King *Richard*. Out of *Normandy* he passed into *England*; but met with a loyal Resistance. Then he laboured to excite the *Welsh* and *Scots* to join in the Invasion; but *William*, King of the *Scots*, could by no means be drawn in to Countenance such Practices.

During these Commotions at Home, King *Richard* was brought into the Presence of the Emperor; where he was charged with many Crimes, especially the Assassination of the Marquis *Conrade*, his Cousin. To all which the King gave such full Satisfaction, that the covetous Emperor did compassionate his Misfortunes, but would not discharge him without a Ransom. King *Richard* writes in a very moving Manner to his Nobility, Clergy, and Laity, to raise such a Sum as would procure him his Liberty; the Emperor and Pope wrote to the same Purpose. Upon the Receipt of which Letters the Queen-Mother, and Lords Justices determined, that both Clergy and Laity should contribute one fourth Part of that Year's Revenue for the King's Ransom. To this they added twenty Shillings out of every Knight's Fee; and ordered that the Abbots of the *Cisterians* and Houses of the Order of *Stampham* should contribute all the Wool of that Year, and that all the Gold and Silver of the Churches should be brought out and delivered to that Purpose. By these Means *England* advanced a vast Sum, which the Emperor's Ambassadors received at *London*, in Part of the King's Ransom; and soon after the Emperor and King came to a final Agreement upon these Conditions; 1. That the King should pay to the Emperor one hundred thousand Marks, and fifty thousand more to the Duke of *Austria*: 2. That the King should marry his Nephew *Arthur's* Sister to the Duke's Son, and deliver up the captive King of *Cyprus* and his Daughter. 3. That the hundred thousand Marks should be brought into the Empire, at the Peril of the King of *England*, and hostages to be given for the rest.

Great Sum
raised in
England.

Philip, King of *France*, finding that the Emperor *A.D. 1194.* and *Richard* were agreed, used all Methods to prevent his Release: and first he sent Messengers to Earl *John*, urging him to usurp the Crown. And when a general Diet was met at *Spire*, *Philip* and Earl *John* knowing the Emperor's avaricious Temper, sent Messengers

The King
restored.

The King
arrives in
England.

sengers to him, and offered him great Sums of Money to keep *Richard* still Prisoner, at least for one more, or to deliver him into their Hands. These Proffers had such an Effect on the old Miser, immediately deferred the Day of setting *Richard* Liberty : Upon which the Heads of the Empire reproved the Emperor for his Avarice, and dishonourable Treatment of a crowned Head, and so prevailed, that upon the fourth of *February* he was delivered into the Hands of his Mother, Queen *Eleanor*, after fifteen Months Imprisonment. They made him travel to *England*, where they arrived at *Sandwich* on the tenth of *March*. He was received in a triumphant Manner, and coming near to the City of *London*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, met him with pompous Solemnity, and with the utmost Joy and Pleasure and Satisfaction ; and the greatest part of the People were overjoyed at the King's Deliverance and safe Arrival.

The King, as soon as the Nobility's Congratulations were over, went to the great Abby of *St. Edward*, where, in Performance of his Vow, he set up the Imperial Standard, taken from *Isaac King* : And then made a Progress into several Parts of the Kingdom, taking in by Surrender the several Castles which his Brother's Adherents had held out against him. And when the forty Days were expired, which he had allow'd *John* and his Accomplices to make their appearance, and answer to such Crimes as were laid against them, they not appearing, the Court proceeded to divest Earl *John* of all his Lands, and *Hugh* and others met with such Censures as were suited to their Crimes.

Earl John
deprived.

The King's
second Co-
ronation at
Winchester.

Affairs being thus settled, the King's whole Business was to fill his Coffers. Accordingly he resumed the Crown Lands he had sold to furnish him out in the Holy War, pretending they were only mortgaged, and not sold outright. The King then caused him to be crown'd again at *Winchester*, and caused a new Seal to be made, requiring that all Charters made under his former, should be confirmed by this ; and rais'd great Sums to the Exchequer. King *Richard* the first *English* King who bore Arms on his Shield, who carry'd in his Shield three Lions passant, bore since for the Royal Arms of *England*.

the Reign of King RICHARD I.

191

two Months after the King's Arrival in *Eng-*
was brought that *Vernvill* in *Normandy* was
by the *French* King. *Richard* got together one
great Ships, and pass'd into *Normandy*. The King
immediately rais'd the Siege, and retir'd The King goes into France.
ame and Loss. And here, by the Mediation
Mother *Eleanor*, Earl *John* was receiv'd into
s Favour, and restored to all his Honours and
ns: Which Clemency he never after abus'd.
gh the two Armies drew near each other at
; but the *French* King, unwilling to hazard a
retir'd with such Precipitation and Fear, that
umbers of his Men were kill'd and taken Pri-
y the *English*, and all the Waggon, and Baggage The French King flies.
great Treasure fell into their Hands, and also
g's portable Chapel, and the Charters of all those
of the King of *England*, who had confederated
ing *Philip* and Earl *John*.

Victory was succeeded with a Year's Truce;
the Expiration of which King *Philip* propos'd
de the Controversy between them, by five se-
combatants on each Side, and the vanquished
o submit to the Terms agreed on beforehand;
ch Proposal King *Richard* replied, that he well
ed of it, provided the King of *France* would be
a Man on one Side, and he himself on the o-
at this King *Philip* refused. And as these Pas-
w the Courage, so another shews the Piety of
nce: For about this Time a poor Hermit ad-
ed the King to remember the Subversion of So-
nd to abstain from unlawful Lusts: Upon which
g betook himself to his Queen, and became ve-
rtable to the Poor.

ing the King's Absence, *England* was much in- England in-
fest with
Robbers.
by Robbers, Thieves, and Outlaws; the most
of whom was a Man called *Robin Hood*, ac-
med by another called *Little John*, and an hun-
dred Bow-Men, who in *Yorkshire* molested all
ers upon the Highway; against whom a Pro-
on was issued, which obliged *Robin Hood* to
himself in a Nunnery called *Birkley*, where fal-
t, and desiring to be let Blood, he was be-
and bled to Death. About the same Time
was afflicted with a great Tumult, occasioned A Seditious
in London.
e called *William Longbeard*, about a Tax, which
he

he pretended was unequally laid. Many of his were slain, and he and many others taken, of whom Number himself and eight more were executed, and put an End to the Sedition.

But to return to the King's Affairs beyond the Sea, there passed several Interchanges between the English and French; sometimes of Wars with Plundering and Devastations, and sometimes of Truces with Interviews and Parley, both Kings seeking to augment the Number of their Friends; in which King Richard succeeded, for he drew from the French King's Party John, Earl of Flanders, and Raymund, Earl of Toulouse. In one of these Military Actions, the Bishop of Beauvais, who was also an Earl, and of Royal Blood, was taken Prisoner by King Richard's Party. He by Letter to the Pope complained of his Confinement, of his being loaded with Irons, contrary to his Order and Dignity. The Pope wrote to King Richard to know why he detained his dear Brother and Son-in-Law. The King immediately returned an Answer, and with it the Bishop's Armour, in which he was taken, with this Passage on it, *Holy Father, will you be pleased to see, whether this is your Son's Coat, or not.* Upon which the Pope desisted, and left the Bishop to purchase his own Liberty, which he did for ten thousand Marks. Still King Richard increased his Power by new Confederates, as Arthur, Duke of Brittany, the Duke of Louvain, the Earls of Guienne, Burgundy, and others. About this Time King Richard attacked the French between Carcet and Gisors, and put them to Flight; and the King of France hardly escaped with his Life; for passing a Bridge the Crowd was so great that it broke down, and Philip fell into the River. King Richard in his Letter ascribed this Victory to God and his Right, which first gave Occasion to this antient Motto, *Dieu et mon Droit*. And many great Men joined with Pope Innocent, who sent a Cardinal to put an End to this War, and reconcile the two Kings. This had so good an Effect, that not long after a firm Peace was concluded between them.

But not long after this Treaty, King Richard's Varice was the Occasion of his Death; for Vidar Viscount of Limosin, having found a great Treasure of Gold in his Land, sent a large Part of it to the King.

1197.

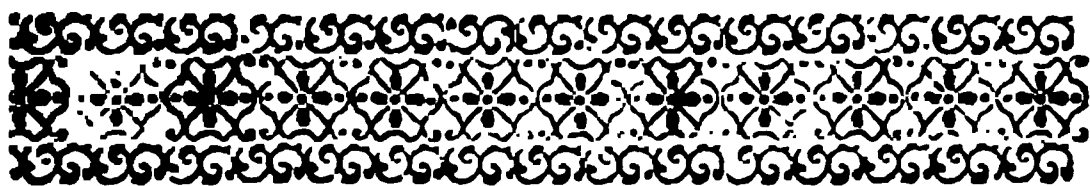
1198.
Many join
the King.
The French
beaten.

1199.
A Peace con-
cluded.

The Reign of King JOHN.

193

not being content with it, demanded the whole Treasure Trove, and his Prerogative. The Viscount not yielding, the King marched with his Army, and besieged the Castle of *Chaluz*, and swore he would take the Castle and hang every Man: But as he was going to begin the Storm, a Crossbow-shot at him, and wounded him in the Shoulder. The King, which he returned to his Quarter, and ordered *Marchade* to begin the Storm; and when taken, to hang every Man, except him who shot at him, who was *Bertram*, whom they sav'd and brought before the King, who asked him, what Injury he had done him, that he should kill him? To whom the Count roughly replied, That he had killed his Father and Brothers with his own Hand, and was endeavouring to kill him also; therefore he might take what Revenge he pleased; and that he was glad he had slain him who had done so much Mischief in the World. The King forgave him, and ordered him an hundred Marks besides: But *Marchade*, after the King's Death, ordered him to be fled alive, and hanged. The King's Wound gangrening, died upon the sixth of April, in the forty first Year of his Age, having reigned nine Years and nine Months.



The Reign of King JOHN.

R. L. John, the sole surviving Brother of *Richard*, *A.D. 1199.* immediately upon his Death, being in the Field, secured his Army, took all Methods to secure the Crown. *John secures the Crown.* He made the Army his by great Promises of Gifts and Rewards; and then dispatched Archbishop *Hubert*, and other Men of Influence, into *England*, to prepare the way to receive him for their King. Upon their Arriving they prevailed with most of King *John's* Adversaries by promising them, that he should restore their Lands, and govern the Kingdom with all Moderation, so swear Fealty to him. On the other Hand, *Arthur* put in for his Right. *Arthur puts in for his Right.* *L. I.* *O* *Jeffrey,*

Jeffrey, was very active with the Nobility of *Maine*, and *Turaine*, to recover his Right, and declared for him. *John* was sensible that this would soon break into a violent Storm; and resolved to secure the Possession of *England* & having received the Investiture of *Normandy*.

John crowned.
ed.

ingly he hastened into *England*, with his Mother where, by way of Election, he received the Hands of *Hubert*, Archbishop of *Canterbury* in his Speech declared, "That by all Reason and human, none ought to succeed in the Crown but he who should be for the Worthiness of his Office, and universally chosen by the State, as was this *Queen Eleanor* was very active for her Son *John* against her Grandson *Arthur*, who was the next in Succession.

John returns
into *Normandy*.

England being secured, *John* hastens into *France* where the *French* King having knighted *Arthur* received his Homage for the same, had drawn it into a general Revolt. *John* considering his Title to the Crown was unwilling to engage in it and therefore mediated a Parley with the *French* King but to no Purpose; for that King understanding the Circumstances, stood upon such Conditions could not comply with; and so they appealed to the Sword. The *French* King had the better of *John* and gained many Parts of his Dominions, not for as he pretended, but for himself. *Arthur* was sensible of this, that he and his Mother *Constance* were persuaded to submit to King *John*'s Protection; but standing he meant to imprison them, they fled that Day to *Angiers*, and so made both Kings their Enemies; who both by the Mediation of the Pope

A. D. 1203.
A Peace
concluded.

at last conclude a Peace upon these Conditions. *Lewis*, the eldest Son to King *Philip* shewed *Blanche*, Niece to King *John*, who gave him the City and County of *Eureux*, with several Towns in *Normandy*, and thirty thousand Marks in Silver to leave him all his Territories in *France*, without Issue; and that he should give no Assistance to his Nephew *Arthur*, the Emperor. The Emperor thus deserted by his Uncle King *John*, desired him the City of *Eureux*, and County of *Ponthieu* two Parts of the Treasure which his Uncle *Richard* had given him by Will; but too late;

The Reign of King JOHN.

121

of Blood, and rendering of Dues always giving
to the Necessities of State.

After King *John* repudiates his Wife, on Pre-A. D. 1207

of Consanguinity, and marries *Isabel* the Daughter
first of the Earl of *Angoulême*. He then returned

land, and imposes three Shillings upon every
Land, to discharge the Dowry of thirty thou-

arks, which he had promised to the King of
his Son, with his Niece *Blanche*. *Jeffrey* the

Bishop of *York*, King *John*'s Brother, opposeth this
for which, and his not Appearance upon Sum-

the King seizeth on all his Temporalities: Up-
on the Archbishop interdicts the whole Province.

King, with his new Queen, makes a Progress in
North, and exacts great Fines of Offenders in

lands. In his Passage thro' *Torkshire*, his Brother,
Bishop, refused him Wine, and the Honour

of Bells: But by the Mediation of four Bishops,
mons, and a great Sum of Money, they were re-

st. Upon the *Easter* after this Progress, the
was again crowned, with his Wife *Isabel*, at Can-King John's
second Co-
ronation.

by Archbishop *Hubert*; and the Earls and Ba-
who had been summoned to be ready with Horse

armour to pass the Seas with him, send him
that unless he would restore them to their

and Liberties, they would not attend him. Up-
on the King took their Castles from them; and

into *Normandy*, notwithstanding this Refusal of
ability, and there farther ratified his Agreements

the French King, who in a very splendid Manner
King *John* and his Queen at *Paris*. And here

things being solicited by the Pope's Legate, grant-
subsidy of one fortieth Part of all their Subjects

mons, for one Year, for the Relief of the Chri-
in the Holy Land. To levy which, the Chief Ju-

of *England* sends forth his Writs by Way of Re-
not Coaction. Soon after this *Hugh Celburn*,A Conspira-
cy against
King John.

Wife King *John* had taken, combines with Ar-
of his Party; and the French King, notwithstand-

Engagements, takes Part with them, marries
Daughter to *Arthur*, and requires King

to deliver up all his Territories in *France*, and by
every Day summons him to appear personally

to answer what should be laid to his Cl
before the Determination of his Court: W

King John
gains a great
Victory over
the Conspi-
rators.

King John refusing, was by Sentence adjudged a traitor, and to lose all he held of that Crown. Then all his Dominions attacked at once by the King of France in Normandy, by Arthur and the Barons in Poitou, who laid Siege to Mirabe defended by the King's Mother; to whose Relief King John came with greater Expedition and Power than was expected, attack'd and defeated the Beliegers, taking Arthur, Hugh le Brun, the Barons of Poitou, and two hundred great Men, Prisoners, all whom he carried away bound in Carts, and dispersed them in Castles, both in Normandy and England.

This Victory, which might have established him on the Throne, was his utter undoing; for by the ill use of it, he lost himself and his Reputation for ever. Arthur is shortly after murdered in Prison, and the blame laid to King John's Charge; which, with the barbarous Execution of many of his Prisoners and Hostages, exasperated the Nobility of Bretagne, Anjou, and Poitou, that they took up Arms against him, and applied to the King of France for Justice, who summoned him to appear in his Court; which King John refusing, was condemned to lose Normandy, which his Ancestors held three hundred Years, and all his Territories in France; which, either thro' his own Negligence or Treachery of his Ministers, who were much dissatisfied with him, was brought about, and he wholly dispossessed of them.

King John
loses all in
France.

A. D. 1203.
He returns to
England.

In this sad Condition King John returns to England, and charges the Earls and Barons with his Loss in France, and fines them to pay the seventh part of their Goods for refusing him Aid; neither did he spare the Church itself. Some Time after he called a Parliament at Oxford, who granted him another Tax of one Mark and a Half upon every Knight's Fee for a yearly Aid, and upon the Clergy proportionably. Nor was this Money brought into the Exchequer, but was an Occasion to take it out again, to spend it in France; for the Bretons not receiving that Satisfaction they expected from their new Master, called in the old one again. Upon this King John hastened into Normandy with all the Forces he could get together, joining those that were there, he took the Castle of Mont-Alban, and a little after the City of Angiers. The King of France, by the Fortune of one Day, lost

A. D. 1205.

him to accept of a two Years Truce; and then he returned into *England* for more Supplies. To obtain which a new Imposition was laid on the thirteenth Part of every Man's moveable and other Goods, both of the Clergy and Laity; who now seeing their Substance was consumed, began to think of recovering their ancient Liberties. The Archbishop of *York* was the first that opposed this Tax, who cursed the Receivers of it, and retired beyond the Seas, chusing rather to live in Banishment Abroad than under Oppression at Home. And now began that fatal Breach between the King and his Subjects, which cost more noble Blood than all the Foreign Wars since the Conquest; and did not fully cease till the great Charter (first granted by King *John*) was ratified by *Edward* the First, in the twenty seventh Year of his Reign, which was above eighty Years after.

A. D. 1206.
Civil Wars
between K.
John and his
Subjects.

The Nobility in *England* having lost their Estates and Employments abroad, and being perpetually harass'd at home, took up Arms to secure their Liberties. Their Cause was much better than their Prosecution of it; which occasion'd great Disorder. The Corruption of the Times contributed much to the Mischief, but the Clergy by their Ambition and Avarice contributed much more; for they brought in a feigned Piece of Piety to be a Party in the Contest. *Hubert* Archbishop of *Canterbury* being dead, the Monks secretly in the Night, and to prevent the King, elected *Reginald* their Sub-prior to be Archbishop, and sent him to *Rome*, taking his Oath of Secrecy beforehand. But his great Joy for his Preferment soon broke out; for at his Arrival in *Flanders*, he made his Election known; which the Monks hearing, and fearing the King's Displeasure, sent to him for Leave to elect a fit Person for their see. *John Gray*, Bishop of *Norwich*, was recommended by the King, whom they elect their Archbishop. These Elections are warmly controverted at *Rome*: the Pope and Cardinals make both void, and in their stead, on their own Authority, make one *Stephen Langton*, a Cardinal and an *Englishman*, then at *Rome*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*. The Pope wrote to K. *John* in Commendation, and exhorted him to receive him; and commands the Monks of *Canterbury* to obey him. King *John* enraged at the Pope's Treatment, sent armed Men to expel the Monks of *Canterbury* as Traitors.

A controversy
about the
Election of
an Archbi-
shop.

A. D. 1207.

tors. They fly to *Flanders*, and their Goods confiscated. Then the King writes to the Pope, and postulates with him about this Affair, affirming, *England* alone yielded more Profit to *Rome* than the other Nations on this Side the *Alps*; that he would vindicate the Liberties of his Crown to and not be compel'd to recede from the *See* of the Bishop of *Norwich*; and threatens, that if the Pope refuses to do him Justice herein, he would have all Resort to the Court of *Rome*.

The Pope having receiv'd the King's Letters, sends him a grave and reproving Answer; and also commands the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, and *Worcester*, manding them to treat first mildly with the King, and exhort him to submit to the See of *Rome*; but when he persisted, to interdict the whole Kingdom, and would not prevail, he would deal more severely with him himself. He farther charged the Suffragan Bishop of the Province of *Canterbury*, by Virtue of the monical Obedience, to receive their Archbishop's Obedience, and to obey him with all Respect. The King shew'd the King this Mandate, and intreated him for God's Sake to recall the Archbishop and the Bishops of *Canterbury*. The King broke out into a

Passion against the Pope and Cardinals, swearing God's Teeth, "That if they, or any other should to put the Kingdom under Interdiction, he would immediately send all the Clergy of *England* to the Pope, and confiscate their Goods; and that all Persons, sent from *Rome* for that End, were to be put out of the Land, their Eyes should be put out, and their Noses slit, and so sent Home." The Bishop ordered immediately to depart his Presence, and to tendred their own Safety. They forthwith attended the Pope; he interdicts the whole Kingdom; which the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, *Worcester*, *Bath*, *Hereford*, fled secretly out of the Kingdom.

Immediately all the Prelates and their Servants were commanded to leave the Nation; their Bishopricks and Revenues confiscated to the King's Use. The Writers of these Times give us a tragical Account of the barbarous Usage the Clergy met withal from the King's Servants; but their rebellious Obstinacy and such Severities; and tho' the King could not

King John writes to the Pope about it.

Pope's Answer to him.

King enraged against the Pope.

The Kingdom interdicted. A. D. 1208.

The Reign of King JOHN.

199

this Curse, yet he endeavoured to hinder the ill Consequences of it; accordingly he sent a Body of Soldiers to most of the great Men of the Kingdom, to require of them Hostages for their Fidelity; some sent their Sons, others their Nephews, and nearest Kindred. *William de Brause*, a Nobleman, being required to deliver his Hostage was prevented in his Answer by his Wife, who told the Commissioners, "That the King should have none of her Sons to keep, because he kept *Arthur* his own Brother's Son so ill." Upon Report of this Answer, the King sent to apprehend the Baron; but he fled with his Wife and two Sons into *Ireland*, from whence this afflicted Lady sent to the Queen four hundred Kine and a Bull, but this would not procure a Pardon. The King at length found Means to take her and her Sons, (the Baron escaping into *France*) imprisoned them in *Windsor Castle*, and there starved them to Death; a hard Punishment for an inadvertent, tho' witty Speech. The King displeased with the *Londoners*, removed his Exchequer to *Northampton*, and marches with his Forces towards *Scotland*: But by Mediation a Peace was concluded. In his Return he laid open all Inclosures in his Forests, and took Hostages of all Free Tenants, even of Children of twelve Years old throughout his Kingdom.

When the Interdiction had continued two Years, without any Effect on the King, the Pope proceeded to excommunicate him; but this Method failed also, and the King only grew the more enraged against the Clergy; so that notwithstanding the Pope's Mandate, they durst not execute it for many Days after. At length the Archdeacon of *Norwich*, an Officer in the King's Exchequer, conferring with his Fellows about the Sentence, affirmed, "That it was not lawful for any beneficed Men to remain in the Service and Obedience of an excommunicated King;" and so without Leave he retired Home. The King hearing of this Action, was very angry, and immediately sent *William Talbot* with armed Men to apprehend him: He was taken, and imprisoned, and at the King's Command was put into a Sheet of Lead, in which he perished. At this Time also, the Pope excommunicated the Emperor *Otho*, and absolved all the States of *Germany* from their Obedience to him. Thus the two greatest

King John
excommuni-
cated.

Otho the Em-
peror ex-
communi-
cated.

Princes A. D. 1209;

Princes in the World were left to the Mercy of their Subjects, so far as lay in the Pope's Power.

A. D. 1210. King *John* having extorted great Sums from the *French* resolves upon an Expedition into *Ireland*, upon Advice of some Disorders there. The great Men submitted upon his Arrival, and did Homage to him. The King to prevent future Disorders, ordains that Country to be governed by the Laws and Customs of *England*, causing *English* Money to be coined there, of equal Value, and alike current as in *England*: And after three Months Stay, having constituted the Bishop of *Norwich* Chief Justice of *Ireland*, the King returned to *England*; and presuming upon his new Strength, summons all the Prelates to appear at *London*; where he extorted from them for the Redemption of their Sees, the Sum of one hundred thousand Pounds Sterling.

A. D. 1211. The *Welsh*, under *Llewelin* King of *North Wales* were up in Arms; against whom King *John* marched, and soon reduc'd them to his Obedience, taking twenty eight Children of their best Families, for Pledges of their future Subjection; and returning thence, he exacts two Marks of every Knight who had not attended in that Expedition. At *Northampton* he received the Pope's Legates *Pandulphus* and *Duandus*, sent to establish Peace between the Kingdom and Clergy. The King consented that the Archbishop and Monks should return home; but refus'd to make Satisfaction for their Goods confiscated; at which the Agents for the Pope departed with Dissatisfaction. But the Pope finding the King a little yielding, grew more exorbitant in his Demands, and would force him to what he pleased; and absolves all the King's Subjects from their Obedience; and forbids them, under Pain of Excommunication, the King's Table, Council, or Conference. But this Proceeding of the Pope's had not the intended Effect; for many of King *John's* Subjects still stuck by him. Tho' it caused the *Welsh* to revolt, and some of his People to conspire against him. The King hastened to subdue the *Welsh*; causing the twenty eight Children, their innocent Pledges, to be hanged up in his Presence. But having discover'd a Conspiracy against his Person, he was oblig'd to return to *London*, to suppress the suspected Nobles; of some of whom he got Pledges, and others fled.

Llewelin with the *Welsh* in Arms.

A. D. 1212. Expedition.

The Pope enrag'd.

The *Welsh* & the *Welsh* gain revolt.

The Reign of King John.

103

The Pope, enraged that none of his wholesome Severities had taken Effect, proceeded to his last Efforts, and pronounced the greatest and most imperious Sentence that ^{Pope's Sentence against the King.} was given against any sovereign Prince, viz. an absolute Deposition from the royal Government of ^{England:} And wrote to the King of *France*, " That if ^{He stir up the French King and others against him.} he expected to have his Sins forgiven, either in this World or the next, he should attempt by all means to expel King *John* out of his Kingdom, and possess the same for himself and his Heirs for ever." And to the same Effect, his Holiness sent Letters to other Princes, and great Men of other Nations, to persuade them to assist the King of *France* in this Enterprize, granting them the same Remission of Sins, as if they undertook the holy War. The *French King* here ^{French King's Design against him.} commands all his great Men to prepare to assist him in this Work: And for their Transportation into *England*, he gets ready a noble Fleet. King *John* likewise prepares for Defence, and summons all Orders and Degrees to be ready, upon Pain of Culvertagge, (that is, being branded for Cowards) and perpetual Serfdom. Upon this, such Multitudes came in, that Arms and Provisions could not be got sufficient for them; accordingly, all the unable and unnecessary Persons were sent home again, and only sixty thousand choice Men kept, with a Navy superior to that of *France*. With these Forces King *John* expected the Enemy. *Pandulphus* the Legate, seeing these Preparations, persuades the *French King* to entertain a Treaty of Peace; then comes over to King *John*, and terrifies him with the *French* Preparations; and by these subtille means he prevailed on him to yield to any Conditions whatsoever, not only to grant a full Satisfaction to the Archbishop and Monks of *Canterbury*, and the Bishops of *London*, *Ely*, *Bath* and *Lincoln*, who were fled to the Archbishop; but also to lay down his Crown, Scepter, ^{King John resigns his Kingdom to the Pope.} Mantle, Sword and Ring, the Badges of his royal Dignity, at the Feet of *Pandulphus*; delivering up therewith the Kingdom of *England* to the Pope, and submitting to the Judgment and Mercy of the Church. Two Days the Legate kept the Crown; and the King and his Nobles did consent, That he and his Successors should hold the Kingdom of *England*, and Lordship of *Ireland*, from the See of *Rome*, at the annual Tribute of one thousand Marks. And: with his Homage and Fealty, he confirm-

confirmed by Charter, at a House of the Templars, near *Dover*. The weighty Reasons which mov'd King *John* to such a mean Condescension, are said to be, " 1. The deep Sense of his own Sins against God, having liv'd five Years excommunicated; and the Troubles the Kingdom was in by the Interdiction. 2. The Power of his Enemies, the King of *France* and his Adherents. 3. The doubtful Allegiance of his Nobility, whom he had offended. 4. The Approach of Ascension-day, after which, one *Peter*, an Hermit, had prophesied that he should be no longer King." Which in some Sense proved true, by this Resignation. Yet still the Interdiction continu'd, and the King's Absolution was deferr'd, till full Restitution was made to the Clergy; for whom eight thousand Marks of Silver were presently deliver'd to *Pandulphus*, who trampled it under his Feet, as if that base Matter was Dirt, in Comparison of the Grace conferred on the King, the Transgressor: Yet he took it up again, and carried it with him into *France*. And forbids the *French* King to proceed any farther in this Enterprize, upon Pain of Excommunication, since King *John* had thus submitted himself to the Church.

The *French* King, enraged at this unexpected Message, having made such great Preparations, and being elevated with the Hopes of Success, could scarce contain himself: But seeing his Confederates quash'd by the Menaces of the Church, he desists, extremely discontented; and falls upon the Earl of *Flanders*, with all his Forces, because he had refus'd to follow him against King *John*. The Earl sends immediately to King *John* for Aid, who willing to imploy his Navy, and People ready for War, sends five hundred Ships, with seven hundred Knights, into *Flanders*, under the Conduct of his base Brother *William Longsword*, Earl of *Salisbury*. They sail'd to the

Port of *Dam*, where the *French* Navy lay at Anchor, in great Disorder, and without Defence, their Forces being gone up into the Country, which they attack'd, and destroy'd; after which they join'd the *Flemings*, and drove the *French* Army home, with great Dishonour and Loss.

King *John*, being puffed up with this Victory, and his Peace with the Church, resolves upon great Things, one of which was to invade the *French* Dominions: And to this End, he engag'd the Emperor *Otto* to assist him:

And then he sent great Sums of Money to his
ains in *Flanders*, and assembled his Army at *Portf-*
b. But these Designs were spoil'd, by the Revolt
s Nobility, who absolutely refus'd to assist or at-
him in it, till he was absolv'd, and had confirmed
Liberties to them. This so enrag'd him, that he
forthwith for the Archbishop, and the other Bi-
that were exil'd, and promised them speedy Re-
ion and Satisfaction by Charter under the Hands
Seals of twenty four Earls and Barons. Imme-
ly *Pandulphus*, and the exil'd Clergy, came over
e King at *Winchester*, who met them, and on his
s with Tears receives them, and implores their
ipassion on him and the Kingdom; he is absolv'd ^{King John}
great Penitence, and solemnly swears to love, ^{absolved.}
ad, and maintain the Church and its Ministers; to
w the good Laws of his Predecessors, and especial-
ose of King *Edward*, and to judge all his Subjects
rding to the just Judgment of his Court. Then
ng the Government of the Kingdom to *Jeffrey*
Peter, and the Bishop of *Winchester*, and they to
the Counsel of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, he
to *Portsmouth* to pass into *France*: But his Sol-
demand Supplies of Money, which he refusing, in
age, sails to *Jersey*; but none of his Nobles fol-
ing him, he returns and levies Forces to chastise
: Lords. The Archbishop tells him, that it was di-
y against his Oath at his Absolution; to whom the
g in a great Passion replied, that he would not lay
: the Business of the Kingdom for his Pleasure,
ig the Judgment of the Laity did not belong to him;
so in a Fury he marched to *Nottingham*. The
hbishop follows him, and told him in plain Terms,
unless he would desist, he would excommunicate
who took up Arms; and so obtained a Day for the
ds to come to Court.

A Parliament was soon after called, and met in St. ^{A Parlia-}
P's Church, where the Archbishop produc'd a Charter ^{ment held in}
Jerry I. whereby he granted the antient Liberties to ^{St. Paul's}
People, according to the Laws of King *Edward*, ^{Church.}
h those Emendations, which his Father, by the
nsel of his Barons, did ratify. This Charter being
l, the Barons rejoiced, and swore before the Arch-
op, that for these Liberties they would spend their
od; and entring into an Agreement with him for
that

King John
resolves to be
absolute.

that End, the Parliament broke up. Upon which the King was resolved to try all Methods to make himself absolute Lord of his Subjects; accordingly he sent an Embassy to *Miramumalim*, the *Moor*, King of *Africa*, for Assistance against his own Subjects, offering to resign his Kingdom to him, and hold it ever after by Tribute from him, and to renounce the Christian Faith, and receive that of *Mahomet*. *Miramumalim* received the Message with Disdain, and ordered the Ambassador to depart his Court immediately. King John being disappointed in this Attempt, takes another way to bring about his Designs, and tries Pope *Innocent* with great Sums of Money, and Reassurance of his tributary Subjection, which he confirmed by a new Oath and Charter; whereupon the Interdiction was taken off, which had continued six Years, three Months and fourteen Days; and the King was recommended to *Rome* for a most tractable and obedient Son of the Church.

The following Year the King and Queen went into *France*, received the Fealty of many of the Barons of *Poitou*, and recovered several Places there; then he goes into *Bretagne*, recovers *Nantes*, and prepares to fight *Lewis* the French King's Son. But the *Poitouians* refusing to fight, the King was forc'd to leave the Field, and make a dishonourable Truce. About the same Time the French King overthrew *Otho's* Forces, being in Number one hundred and fifty thousand Foot, besides Horse: In which Battle one thousand five hundred Knights were slain, and many great Men taken Prisoners; The Emperor escaped with Difficulty, and died soon after.

The Barons
meet at St.
Edmunds-
Bury,

Upon these Misfortunes of the King and his Confederates, the Barons met at *St. Edmunds-Bury* to confer about the Charter of *Henry I.* and swore upon the High Altar, That if the King refused to confirm those Liberties, they would by Force of Arms compel him. Accordingly they provide themselves with Horse and Armour, and resolve to petition him at *Christmas* upon that Account. The Petition being presented, the King only answered, That since the Matter they requested was of Importance, he would take till *Easter* to consider of it: By which the Barons perceiving that nothing was to be obtained but by Force, they assemble their Army, and marched towards *Oxford*, where the King was. He sends Commissioners to them to know what

And march
towards Ox-
ford.

what those Laws and Liberties were, which they required. They gave a Schedule of them, which being read, the King ask'd in a great Rage, why the Barons did not demand the Kingdom also? and swore he would never grant those Liberties which would reduce him to the Condition of a Servant.

Upon this Answer, the Barons seize some of his Castles, and the *Londoners* joyn with them, delivering the City into their Custody. But by the Mediation of Earl Marshal and others, a Parley was obtain'd with the Barons, to be held between *Windsor* and *Stains*, in a Meadow call'd *Running-Mead*, where after many Meetings and much Debate, the King consented to confirm those Laws and Liberties formerly granted and restor'd, and in Part ordain'd by *Henry I.* and call'd **MAGNA CHARTA**; and also granted a Charter of Security, whereby twenty five Barons are constituted Conservators of the Liberties, with Power to compel the King to observe this great Charter, by seizing his Castles, &c. Thus were the Rights of the Kingdom recover'd out of the very Fire. But some evil Counsellors telling the King, that by this Grant he had made himself a King without a Kingdom, a Lord without Dominions, and a Subject to his Subjects; upon this he pretended, that what he did was by Force, and therefore of no Obligation; and resolv'd never to comply with it. Immediately he retir'd to the *Isle of Wight*, thence he sends his Agents to *Rome* to complain of this forced Act to the Pope; who condemns it, and at once excommunicates the Barons; who all this Time kept themselves and their Forces together about *London*; but sought not to surprise the King's Person, or intercept his Agents. The King sent to procure foreign Forces, and turned Pirate, till they arriv'd; at the Time appointed, he meets them at *Dover*; but sure never was there such a Sight of desperate Adventurers, leading an execrable Sort of People ready for any Mischiefs. With these King *John* designs to set upon his own People, and in all Probability had made a great Progress in his Designs, had not *Hugh de Bovis*, one of his Assistants, been lost with forty thousand Men, Women, and Children, in a Storm.

The King with this Crew, in less than half a Year, took in all the Castles of the Barons, who made no Opposition; and he was absolute Master of all *England*, except

except *London*, which he durst not attack, because the Barons were there, and had sworn to die together. At *St. Albans* the King divides his Army, giving the Command of one Part to the Earl of *Salisbury*, to cut off, if possible, all Provisions from *London*, and march with the other himself Northwards, both Armies to waste the Country: And the Excommunication of the Barons is first published at *St. Albans*. And the Barons seeing themselves depriv'd of their Estates, and their Wives and Daughters were given to Strangers, and their Wives and Daughters violated, fell upon another Extreme; making the Application to *Lewis* the French King's Son for Assistance, promising him the Crown, and giving Pledges to perform it. *Lewis* and the French King resolve to assist them; and make great Preparations to accomplish it, at which the Pope is angry, and sends to them to desist, and not invade *England*, because King *John* was a Vassal of the Roman Church. The King of France answers, that an English King, That the Kingdom of *England* was, nor is, nor ever shall be the Patrimony of *France*; and that King *John* could not give away the Kingdom without the Consent of the Barons. *Lewis* having got all Things in a Readiness, sails from *France* with above six hundred Ships, and landed his Army at *Sandwich*. King *John* was at *Dover* with his Fleet, upon Notice of the French Power, and distrustful of the Faith of his Mercenaries, he quits the Field. He gets Submission of all *Kent*, except *Dover*; then he marches joyfully receiv'd by the Barons at *London*, who give him Fealty to him. The Pope excommunicates *King John*. *Dover*, *Windsor*, and some other Castles held by *King John*. The Places of Action in this War were about *Wales*, *Norfolk* and *London*; and many Miracles were done during the Summer. But an End was put to these Troubles about the End of *October*, when the fiery King was taken off by a burning Fever, and buried in the Cathedral Church of *Worcester*, according to his own Appointment, after he had reigned six Years, five Months, and four Days. He died in the fifty first Year of his Age, having by Will appointed his Son *Henry* to succeed him.

Barons apply
to the French
King.

King John
dies.



The Reign of King HENRY III.

Immediately upon the Death of King *John*, Hen-^{A. D. 1216.}
 ry his eldest Son, about ten Years of Age, was ^{Hen. III.} crown'd at
 wn'd King at *Glocester* on the 28th of *October*, and ^{Glocester.}
 mitted to the Care and Guardianship of the great
 rshal, *William* Earl of *Pembroke*, a Man eminent both
 Courage and Counsel, and a faithful Servant to
 Prince, who with the Pope's Legate and some Bi-
 ps, labour'd to draw the Barons and others from
 stranger to their new King. Their good Design was
 thered by the Insolence of the *French*, and *Lewis*
 ing contrary to his Oath, and that strengthened by
 Confession of Viscount *Melun* upon his Death;
 at *Lewis* intended to extinguish the *English* Nation
 soon as he could get them into his Power: Upon
 hich many Lords return'd to the Obedience of *Hen-*
 ; but *Lewis* kept *London* and the Countries about
 a Year after; and the young King remain'd about
Glocester; during which Time many Places submitted
 him. At Length *Lewis* is drawn from the Head of
 e Kingdom into *Leicestershire* to relieve the Castle of
Lancaster, and afterward to *Lincoln*, where, after the
 egate had given Absolution to the King's Party, and
 rs'd *Lewis* and his Party, the Earl Marshal, with the
 ing's Forces, attack'd the *French* on all Sides, and
 eated them, killing Multitudes, and taking many of
 e great Men Prisoners, besides four hundred Knights
 r Men at Arms. Most of those who escaped in the
 ight were kill'd by the Country People. Upon the
 ews of this Disaster, *Lewis* sends into *France* for more
 orces, and draws all the Remains of his Power to
London. The Earl Marshal, with the young King fol-
 w; and in the first Place propose Terms for *Lewis*
 relinquish the Kingdom; which he refuseth, till hear-
 g that his Forces coming from *France* were beaten
 Sea, then he agrees to take fifteen thousand Marks
 r his Voyage, abjures all Claim to the Kingdom,
 and

A. D. 1217.
 Lewis's Par-
 ty beaten.

1218.

and by Oath promifeth to endeavour Reftitution of the Provinces in *France* belonging to this Crown. On the other Hand, King *Henry* takes his Oath, to reftore to the Barons all their Rights and Privileges; grant a general Pardon: Prifoners on both Sides were releas'd, and *Lewis*, honourably attended to *Dover*, departs of *England*.

Thus were the Diftractions wrought among the *Lifb* by the Violence and Oppreffion of an unruly King again compos'd, and the Son, notwithstanding the Father's Faults, received by the People, who are naturally given to love and obey their Princes, unlefs

A. D. 1219. by Oppreffion to vindicate their Liberties. And to confummate this Peace thus happily begun, Earl of *Pembroke*, the Protector, fet on Foot an Expedition into the Holy Land; on Purpofe to employ difcontented Lords and Soldiers. And an Order iffued out to prevent all Strangers from coming into *England*, Merchants only excepted; and by this Means the Nation was at once deliver'd from all the troublefome and burdenfome Members of it. No fooner the Lord Protector made thefe wife Regulations, he died, to the inexpressible Grief and Loſs both of the King and Kingdom. The Biſhop of *Wincheſter*

The King is crown'd a-
gain.
A. D. 1220.
His firſt Parliament.

made Protector, and the young King is again crown'd. A Parliament is call'd, who grants the King Marks of Silver for every Knight's Fee, for the Aid of the Kingdom, and Recovery of the King's Dominions beyond Sea. Divers Perſons are diſpatch'd into

France to try the Affection of the People there, and demand the King's Rights; but the King of *France* ſwer'd, that he would keep all that he had gotten by Forfeiture, and Law of Arms. And to ſecure Peace at home, the King's Siſter *Joanna* is marry'd to King of the *Scotts*, and his Siſter to *Hugh de Bar*. Much about this Time the *Welſh* revolted again; were ſoon ſubdued. And a Commotion in *Ireland* appear'd by the late Earl Marshal's Son, and the Kingdom remained in Quiet for ſome Years.

A. D. 1222.
The ſecond Parliament.

A Parliament was call'd at *London*, where the Archbiſhop put the King, now at Years of Diſcretion, in mind of his Oath, taken by others for him, to confirm the Subjects Liberties, that thereby the Troubles which had happen'd in his Father's Time, might be prevented. Some evil Counſellors did all they could

prevent it, alledging, that it was obtain'd by *Con-*
sent: Yet after some Time the King promised to ra-
 y it; and twelve Knights or other legal Men of eve-
 Shire, are ordered by Writ to examine what those
 erties were, which they enjoy'd under his Grand-
 er, and return the same by a certain Day. This
 ay shew'd too great a Compliance with those who
 nsell'd him against it. Upon which diverse Lords
 : at *Leicester*, with Intent to get *Hugh de Burgh*
 others remov'd from the King's Person; but this
 Archbishop and other Lords, careful of the Peace,
 vented; and the others came in and submitted. At
 Parliament the King resum'd such Lands as had
 alienated from the Crown by his Ancestors.

The next Year at a Parliament held at *Westminster*, *A. D. 1223.*
 King requir'd the 50th Part of all moveable Goods, *The Third*
 of the Clergy and Laity, for Recovery of his Pos- *Parliament.*
 sions in *France*; but they wou'd not grant this with-

a Confirmation of their Liberties, which at last
 obtain'd in the same Words and Form as King
 had done it in his two Charters. The Nation
 oy'd these Liberties for two Years: And then the *A. D. 1225.*
 g summoned a Parliament at *Oxford*, where he de- *The Fourth*
 d himself to be of lawful Age, and cancell'd the *Parliament.*
 arter of the Forests, as granted in his Nonage, having

no Power of himself or his Seal: And by Procla-
 ion declar'd, That whoever would enjoy their Pri-
 ges, should renew them under his new Seal; for
 ch *Hugh de Burgh* impos'd great Fines, and took
 Blame upon himself, and thereby got the Hatred
 ill the People. This caus'd a new Insurrection of *The Nobili-*
 Nobility, who demand a Restitution of the Liber- *ty revolt.*
 of the Forest, which, if not granted, they were re-

ed to compel the King to it by the Sword. Upon
 ch he appoints a Day for them to come to an As-
 bly, where the Matters in Dispute were settled to
 mutual Satisfaction. After this, there was a Mo- *A. D. 1226.*

made for the Holy War, in which sixty thousand
 igned under the Conduct of the Bishops of *Hinches-*
ind Exeter.

he following Year, the *French* Nobles discontent- *A. D. 1227.*
 with the Government of *Blanche* the Queen Mo-
 Regent, invited the King of *England* to come over
 ibr Assistance. *Henry* readily complied with their
 uest; and having supplied himself with Money for
 o L. I, P this

this Occasion, by Exactions from the Clergy, ~~at~~ of *London* and the *Jews*, he passed over with an Army, and landed at *St. Malois*, being met by the *Normans*, who did him Homage. The Queen marched against him with a numerous Army, and

A.D. 1250. Mischief was done by both Parties, till at *Lang* conclude a Peace. Upon which the King ~~re~~ bringing with him many of the *Poitevins* to Rewards, for which farther Sums must be wrung

Many great
Officers call'd
to Account.

the poor People of *England*. And for this ~~he~~ calls to Account diverse of his Officers, fines or prisons them, particularly his great Favourite ~~who~~ who is accused of Treason; and *Stephen de Seagrave* worse Minister, is put in his Place. Many other Officers are remov'd, and Strangers put in their Places. These Proceedings so exasperated the Nobles, whom *Richard* Earl Marshal was the Chief, that they entered into a Combination for the Defence of the Publick; they plainly shew'd the King his Danger, in trusting Strangers, and that if he would not amend, they would withdraw from his Council. The *Bishop of Winchester* return'd them Answer, that the King employ what Strangers he pleas'd to compel his rebellious Subjects to Obedience. Upon which Answer the Lords withdrew, and being sent for to the Parliam^t refused to come.

To revenge which the King sends for *Legis* *Poitevins*, upon which *Roger Bacon* jestingly told that Seamen did most fear *Petrus & Rupes*, alias *Petrus de Rupibus*, Bishop of *Winchester*, by whom

A.D. 1252. King was misled at this Juncture. The Lords refused to come to another Parliament, unless the King remove the Bishop of *Winchester* and the *Poitevins* from his Court, which if he refus'd, they would remove him and his evil Counsellors out of the Realm, and create a new King. Upon this the King required all his Nobility to swear of Allegiance, and sent Writs for all that held Lands of him by Knights service to repair to him at *Gloucester*. This also he refus'd: And then the King, without the Judgment of his Court, or their Peers, proclaim'd them Outlaws, and seized their Lands, which he gave to the *Poitevins* and issued out Writs to attach their Bodies. *Thomas of Chester*, *Lincoln*, and the King's Brother *th* of *Cornwall*, were won to the King's Party:

The Reign of King HENRY III.

211

which the rest retire into *Wales*, and confederate with *Llewelin*. Thither *Hugh de Burgh*, having escaped out of Prison, came to them, and they all take an Oath to come to no Agreement with the King.

The King marches his Army against them, engages King's Forces beaten by the Lords, them, but with so much Loss, that he returned to *Hereford* with Dishonour; and the *Poictouvins* met with the like ill Success. And now the War went on furiously on both Sides, with great Effusion of Blood. At length the King by Commission seiz'd upon the Earl Marshal's Estate in *Ireland*. This oblig'd him to leave the Confederate Lords, and hasten into *Ireland* to defend it, but he lost his Life by Treachery. The King denied the Commission, and laid the Blame upon his Counsellors. Two Years these Disturbances continued in the Nation, when the King call'd a Parliament at *Westminster*, A. D. 1234 wherein the Bishops advise him to agree with his People, and to remove those Strangers and others from his Person, who were the Cause of these Troubles, and to govern the Nation by his own Subjects and Laws; otherwise they would proceed by Ecclesiastical Censure against him and his evil Counsellors. The King, finding he was unable to compass his Designs, yields, and recalls the Lords from *Wales*, restores King and Lords reconcil'd. to them their Places and Estates, removes all the Strangers from him, and call'd his new Officers, the Bishop of *Winchester* and *Stephen Seagrave* to an Account, making them pay dearly for their two Year's Preferment.

The Nation being thus settled in Peace, the King A. D. 1235. gave his Sister *Isabel* in Marriage to the Emperor *Fredrick II.* and with her thirty thousand Marks, besides Isabel the King's Sister married to the Emperor, an Imperial Crown and other Ornaments of great Value; to furnish out which, he raised two Marks upon every Hide of Land. The next Year *Henry* himself A. D. 1236. married *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Raymond* Earl of *Provence*, having nothing with her but poor depending King married to Eleanor. Kindred. Nevertheless this Marriage was solemniz'd with great Magnificence, and then a Parliament was call'd to meet in the Tower; but because the Lords were not willing to assemble there, it was removed to a Place of greater Freedom. In this Parliament it was ordered that all Sheriffs that were found guilty of Bribery should be remov'd, and Men of more Integrity Sheriffs turn'd out. put in their Places, who swore to receive no Gifts but

in Provisions, and that but moderately. The King moves diverse of his Counsellors, and would have taken his Great Seal from the Lord Chancellor; he would not deliver it, alledging, that he had it by common Council of the Kingdom; and therefore without the Consent of the same he would not resign it. *ter de Rivalis* and *Stephen Seagrave* were again brought into Favour, which occasioned great Murmurings; these Discontents were heightened by the King's Attempt to revoke some Grants, as being done without the consent of the Church, and therefore beyond his Power.

1237. The next Year in Parliament the King required a thirtieth Part of all Moveables of the Clergy and Laity; this was refused by the whole Assembly, who plainly told him, that he never did any Good to the Kingdom, and recounted the several Taxes he had already received of twentieth, thirtieth, and fortieth Part only to enrich Strangers. Upon this the King proposed an Amendment, and swears, that if they would relieve him Wants this Time, he would for the future use the Coyn of his own Subjects only, and inviolably observe their Liberties, upon Pain of Excommunication. Upon these Assurances the Parliament grant him a thirtieth Part of their Moveables, reserving to every Man his Cattle, Horse and Armour. Four Knights of every Shire, and one of the King's Clerks were appointed to collect this Tax, and to lay it up, that if the King fail in Performance of his Grant, it might be returned. The Earls were immediately sworn into the Council; the King soon broke through these Conditions, made *William Valence*, the Queen's Uncle, his chief Favourite, and *Simon Montfort*, banished out of France, entertained here, marries the King's Sister, and is created Earl of *Leicester*.

1238. These Actions much incensed the Nobility and People, and put them into a new Commotion, and appointed *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, the King's Brother, their Commander in Chief; who tells the King of his Exactions upon the Church and State, of his Profuseness upon Strangers, his despising the Coyn of his Subjects, and adhering to that of the Pope's, in spite, to the great Grief of his People, and particularly the *Londoners*, who by these Means were become Enemies. To redress which, the King calls a Parliament at *London*, where the Lords came armed, and

The King
makes fair
Promises;

Which he
breaks.

A. D. 1238.
A Commotion
arises among the
Nobles.

for their own Defence, and to compel the King (if he refused) to observe his former Promises. After many Debates, the King upon Oath refers the whole Matter to diverse grave Men: Articles were drawn up, and sealed by the Legate and many others, and set up to Publick View. But a Stop was soon put to this, by *Montfort's* making his Peace with the Earl of *Cornwal*, and others. And the Earl growing indifferent in the Matter, the Lords are discouraged, and the Miseries of the Kingdom continued. Shortly after the King took the Seal from *Simon Norman*, who before governed all; and turned his Brother *Jeffrey* out of his Council, because they would not yield to grant to *Thomas Earl of Flanders*, the Queen's Uncle, a Groat upon every Sack of Wool; by which they regained the Love of the Nobility and People, tho' they lost the King's Favour: Notwithstanding which, the King granted him three hundred Marks to be paid annually out of his Exchequer. The Pope also, to carry on his Wars against the Emperor, extorts great Sums from *England*, by the King's Permission, which caused the Clergy to exclaim against the Pope's Avarice. The Pope still went on seizing upon their Possessions, and sent over three hundred *Romans* with his Mandate, That they all should be prefer'd to Benefices here as they fell. This amazed all the *English* Clergy, but frightened the Archbishop of *Canterbury* out of his See, and caused him to retire into the Abbey of *Pontiniac* in *France*: But others of the Clergy opposed his Rapine; and frankly declare to the King, how prejudicial it was to his Royalty, and the People's Liberty, to suffer the Pope thus to proceed. The King refers them to the Legate, who calls a Convocation, and strongly urges them to supply the Pope's present Wants; they as strongly oppose him; but the Legate by Bribery and Treachery gained his Point. On the sixteenth of *June* this Year the King had a Son born, whom he named *Edward*. About this Time the Earl of *Cornwal*, and diverse others, undertake the *Crusado*.

A. D. 1239
Some great
Officers re-
moved.

The Pope's
Extortions.

Prince *Ed-
ward* born.

Peter of *Savoy*, another of the Queen's Uncles, coming this Year into *England*, was feasted sumptuously, knighted, and created Earl of *Richmond*, and had many Presents given him, towards which the *Jews* were forced to pay twenty thousand Marks: And *Peter* his Son is made Archbishop of *Canterbury*.

A. A. 1240

Henry gains
Wales.

Goes into
France.

Upon the Death of *Llewelin*, Prince of *Wales*, two Sons disagree: The King taking the Advantage, and marching into *Wales*, they readily submit, Fealty to him, and pay the Charges of his Journey. The Earl of *March*, and many others, solicit the King to go over into *France*, in order to recover his dominions there. This the Parliament oppose; but the Peers, who had Estates there, were for it, and prevailed with the King to undertake it, and an Aid is demanded for it. The Parliament would grant no Supply; whereupon the King was forced to get what he could of private Men, either by Loan or Gift; and then goes with his Queen over into *France*, leaving the Government to the Archbishop of *York*.

A. D. 1242. In this unsuccessful Expedition he spent all his Treasure upon Strangers. The *Postivins* deceive him, the discontented *English* Lords leaving him, he was forced to patch up a dishonourable Truce with the King of *France*; and then could not return to *England* till he had got a Supply to defray the Charges of his Journey. Some Time after his Return, he imposed another Tax upon the *Jews* for their Redemption, and required a Contribution of the *Londoners*. His Queen's Mother, the Countess of *Provence*, came to visit the King, whom he treats sumptuously, marries her Daughters, his Brother the Earl of *Cornwall*, returned from Holy Wars; and at the old Lady's Return, the King gave her many rich Presents; and she lived to see all her Daughters Queens; *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* being elected King of the *Romans*.

A. D. 1244. This Year the *Welsh* and *Scots* caused new Trouble by their Revolt: Upon which a Parliament was assembled at *Westminster*, and the King demanded Supplies; but they would grant nothing without an Assent of Reformation, and the due Execution of the Law. And farther, they insist that four Persons should be chos'n'd Conservators of the Kingdom, to be sworn the King's Council, to see Justice duly administered, the Treasure stored, and also that diverse great Offices of the Crown should be chosen by Parliament. While these Things were debating, their Accomplishment was hindered by the coming of one *Martin*, a Legate from the Pope, with a larger Power to exact Money than ever: But he is absolutely denied it, because the Emperor had requested them to give

The Pope
lends for
more Money.

no farther Assistance ; and promised to submit
 Cause to the Arbitration of the Kings of *England*
France ; yet they granted 20s. of every Knight's
 to the King for the Marriage of his Daughter. The
 having obtained this, marches against the *Scots* ; and
 ce was concluded without striking a Blow. The A Peace
 made with
 the Scots.
 returns to *London*, and calls another Parliament ;
 commands a Supply to enable him to reduce the *Welsh*,

to pay off his Debts, which were so great, that he
 obliged to keep his Palace, to avoid the Clamour of
 Creditors : But the Parliament telling him, they
 would give him no Supply, he took violent Courses to
 supply his Wants. He made the *Londoners* pay 15000
 marks, and severely fined all that had trespassed on his
 lands. But that the King might be acquainted with the

of the Nation, and the Oppression of the Pope,
 an Inquiry was made, what Revenues the *Romans* had an- Inquiry into
 the Pope's
 Revenues in
 England.
 ny out of *England* ; and it was found to amount to
 60000 Marks, which was more than the Reve-

of the Crown. This, with the rest of the Pope's
 Exactions, the King notified to the Council, then sitting
 at *Windsor*. This Complaint caused his Holiness to ex-
 press these Words ; " It is high Time for us to crush A. D. 1245.

the Emperor, that we may trample these petty Kings,
 (*iz. of England and France*) under our Feet ; for
 the Dragon be once destroyed, these lesser Snakes
 will be at our Mercy." This Speech gave great Of- A. D. 1246.

ence, and in some Measure awakened the King ; where- Tribute to
 the Pope de-
 nied.
 it was ordained, that no Contribution of Money
 should be given to the Pope by any Subject of *England*.

The King at first made a great Bustle about these foreign
 Exactions ; but he soon gave over the Pursuit of what
 had begun ; and so the Pope continued his Rapine ;
 having promised to send no Legates into *England*,
 but others, under the Name of Clerks, with the
 Power, and who did as much Mischief. And
 the State had as much Reason to complain as the
 Church ; for *Peter de Savoy* brought over several mony- A. D. 1247.

Virgins to be married to the King's Wards ; and
 the King's three half Brothers were sent for over to be
 provided with Estates and Preferments in *England*. The
 Queen's Mother also came over again to be feasted,
 loaded with Gifts at the Expence of the People. The
 Queen
 which the Parliament reprove the King for Breach
 of his Charter, by demanding new Supplies ; for

Judges fleeing the People in their Circuits; and for extorting so much on the Account of his Forests; and then advise him to resume the Crown-Lands, and to supply his Wants out of his Favourites. The King patiently endured all this Reproof, and promised Redress in Hopes to obtain his Desires: But nothing was granted, and so the Parliament was prorogued till Midsummer, when they met again. The King made a Speech to them, in which he told them, that they should not curb him; for *the Servant is not above his Lord, nor the Disciple above his Master*; and that therefore he would not at their Request, remove the Chief Justice, Chancellor and Treasurer. He then demanded a Tax, which the Parliament refused, and broke up in Discontent. Upon which the King sold all the Jewels and Plate of the Crown. These the City of London afterwards bought, which, when the King heard, he envigh'd against it, and determined to destroy the Trade of the City; and vex them, a new Fair was set up in *Westminster*; and there was a Prohibition of Commerce in London for 5 Days.

The King
sells the Plate
and Jewels
of the
Crown.

A. D. 1249. The Christmas following, the King demands a New Year's Gift of the *Lanunciers*, and writes imperious Letters, which at length got, tho' unwillingly, from them 20000 Pound; for which the next Year he sent for them to *Westminster-Hall*, and there beg'd their Pardon. He afterwards writes to the Lords apart for Money, telling them of his Poverty, and Debt of 30000*l.* to *Burgundians*. The Lords would not answer his Requests. Then he wrote to the Clergy to supply him, and told the Abbot of *Borough*, that it was more Alms to give to him, than to a Begger that went from Door to Door. These Methods failing, the poor *Jews* must answer to call, and feel the Weight of his Wants. These he find at his Pleasure; and one *Arton* protested, that the King at Times, since his Expedition into *France*, had drawn from her 3000 Marks, besides 2000 of Gold, which he had presented to the Queen. The Lords met again, and press that the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer may be confirmed by Parliament: But not succeeding in this Matter, they went away discontented. About this Time the King endeavours to persuade the Monks of *Durham*, to make his Brother *Arkelmar* their Bishop: But he could not prevail, because his Brother was very young. Upon which the King declared, that he would

Tries all
Ways to raise
Money.

A. D. 1250.

The Reign of King HENRY III.

217

would keep that Bishoprick vacant till he was grown to a greater Age. Shortly after the Bishoprick of *Winchester* becoming void, the King went in Person thither to prepare the Monks to elect his Brother Bishop of that See. They being met in the Chapter-House, the King gets up into the President's Chair, and preaches a Sermon from this Text, *Justice and Peace have kissed each other*: In which he took Occasion to commend the Monks first, and then his Brother. Hereupon the Monks being afraid to oppose him, chose *Atkelmar* for heir Bishop. Some Time after, Sir *Henry Batb*, a Judge, was accused of Injustice and Treason; which so accus'd the King, that he issued forth a Proclamation, That every Person who had any Complaint against Sir *Henry*, should be heard, and that he would freely pardon any one who should kill him. Notwithstanding this, the King was pacified, and for two thousand Marks Sir *Henry* was restor'd to his former Favour. The King keeping his *Christmas* this Year at *York*, the Marriage between his Daughter *Margaret* and *Alexander* King of the *Scots* was solemnized there with great Splendor.

Sir Henry Batb's Cause
A. D. 1251.

Margaret the King's Daughter married.

The next Year the King of *England*, being solicited by the Pope and King of *Castile*, takes upon him the Cross, in Order to rescue the King of *France*, then the Sultan's Prisoner; for which End he obtains a Grant of the Tenth both of the Clergy and Laity for three Years; but every one refus'd to attend him, except only three Knights whom the King embraces, kisses, and calls his Brethren, and swears to perform his Journey. But the Parliament, which was call'd to confirm this Grant, absolutely refus'd it: And the King in a Rage drives the Bishop of *Ely* and other Lords out of his Chamber. Upon which the Countess of *Arundel* reproach'd him with his Breach of the Charters and his Oaths; and then told him, *I appeal to Christ against those Counsellors of yours, who have infatuated you, for their own Gain.*

A. D. 1252.

Courtess of Arundel reproves the King.

About the same Time the Master of the Hospital of *Jerusalem* at *Clerkenwell*, came to complain to the King of diverse Abuses; who answer'd him, *That their Privileges made them proud, and ought to be revoked.* The Master replied, *So long as you observe Justice, you may be a King; but as soon as you violate it, you will cease to be one.* These Things discover, that the King had lost the

The Master of Clerkenwell Hospital does the same.

the Love of his People; which is not to be won at, if we consider the Insolencies, which Strangers Favour with the King, daily committed, entring Abbies, Bishops Houses, and other Places; despoiling their Deer, spoiling their Goods, and violating their Rights of Hospitality. The general Complaint

"Our Inheritance is given to Aliens, and our Rights to Strangers." The Parliament at length, in order to redressing these Grievances, confirm the Rights granted by the Pope on the Clergy, and three Marks

A new Confirmation of Magna Charta.
1253.

A. D. 1253.

upon every Knight's Fee. Hereupon *Magna Charta* was again confirmed after the most solemn Manner and with as much Ceremony as Religion and Law could devise: For the King with his Nobles and Prelates in their Robes and Ornaments, with burning Candles in their Hands, assemble to hear the Sentence of Excommunication against all Infringers thereof; in the Presence the Charter of King *John* was publicly read, which done they threw down their Candles, and with one Voice cried out, "So let them, who incur this Sentence, be extinct." And the King farther added in a loud Voice, "As God shall help me, I will, as long as I live, be a Man, a Christian, a Knight, a King crown'd and anointed, inviolably observe all these Things." At this the Bells rung out, and all the People shouted with Joy.

The Business of Gascoigne.

After this the Business of *Gascoigne* was taken into Consideration. The King seven and twenty Years before had given *Gascoigne* to his Brother *Richard*, who was receiv'd and continued as their Lord, until he came to the Issue of his own; and then he revokes it, and gives it upon his eldest Son *Edward*. The *Gascoigners* being doubtful whom to obey, the King commands him either to resign his Charter, which he refuses. The King by Money prevails with those of *Bordeaux* to forsake him; but the Earl made his Escape, and came to *England*. The People of *Bordeaux* swear Fidelity to the King, and got a Charter and thirty thousand Marks from the King, and thereby lose his Favour, and to be reveng'd on them, he sends *Simon Montfort*, Earl of *Leicester*, to be their Governor. He was not long in them ill, they complain to the King: The Matter debated before the King and Council. The Earl of *Cornwall* and the Lords take *Montfort's* Part. The King upbraids the King with expensive Service, and

Montfort made Governor of Gascoigne.

The Reign of King HENRY III.

219

ch of his Word, and gives the King the Lie; and
her told him that he was no Christian, and the like.
s rough Treatment put the King into a violent
e, who to revenge himself, encourages the *Gas-*
ners against *Montfort*, clips his Wings, and sends
over again. *Montfort* by his Alliance in *France*,
a Force superior to the *Gascoigners*, and spoils
r Estates. They send over new Complaints: The *A. D. 1254.*
g hastens to their Relief; deposeth *Montfort*, settles *And is de-*
Gascoigners, and concludes a Match for his Son *posed.*
ward, with *Eleanor* the King of *Spain's* Sister, to
his Claim to *Aquitain*. After this the King kept
Christmas at *Bordeaux*, and the Queen sent him
hundred Marks for a New Year's Gift. The next
omer she went over to him, with the Prince; and
Marriage was solemnis'd at *Bourges*, where the
g of *Spain* knighted the Prince, and by his Charter
s his Claim to *Aquitain* for him and his Heirs for ever.
and now the King prepares for his Return, having
these Journies consumed a Sum far exceeding the
ue of all his Lands in *France*. In his Return at *Pa-*
he was magnificently entertain'd by the *French*
g. About *Christmas* the King arriv'd in *England*,
to supply his immediate Occasions the *Londoners* *The King*
Jews are squeez'd. He calls a Parliament to raise *returns.*
some Money, but instead of that he meets with *A. D. 1255.*
hing but Complaints of Grievances, and Breach of
rter, and they insisted upon their Rights of chusing
Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer. Upon
the Parliament is prorogued: And tho' the King
no Supplies, he had many fresh Occasions for Charge.
the Earl of *Savoy*, the Queen's Brother, desires
ney for his Wars, and the Archbishop of *Toledo* *A. D. 1257.*
ne hither with many *Spaniards*, and the Prince's
fe with many more, who were well feasted and
sented. The Bishop of *Bononia* is sent with a Ring
Investiture to *Edmund* the King's Second Son for
Kingdom of *Sicily*, and he also was sent back with
at Rewards. The Pope demands a Tenth, but the
rgy declar'd that they had rather lose their Livings *Pope de-*
Lives, than yield in this Thing either to the Pope *mands a*
King, who were combined as Shepherd and Wolf *Tenth.*
levour the Flock. The Pope sent to borrow five
dred Marks of the Earl of *Cornwal*, but he refus'd
because he was one on whom he could not di-
strain.

Merchants of
Gascogne
complain.

The *Welsh*
rebel.

Earl of Corn-
wal chose
King of the
Romans.

A. D. 1158.

The Nobili-
ty enter into
a Combina-
tion.

And are in
Arms at Ox-
ford.

The Merchants of *Gascogne* complain to the Prince, now their Lord, of the Hardships they lay under from the King's Officers, who took their Wine from them, and never paid for them, so that they had better trade with *Saracens* and Infidels, than with the *English*. The Prince addresses himself to his Father and begs a Redress: The King was angry with him for it; but at length was appeased, and ordred them Satisfaction. About this Time the *Welsh* rebel against the Prince, who desires a Supply of Money and Forces against them; but this was denied, and only this Message sent him, that as it was his Principality, he must find Ways to defend it. This Year *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal* was elected King of the *Romans*, which he accepted, and was crown'd at *Aquisgrave*. The King presents to the Parliament his Son *Edmund* in an *Apulian* Habit, and begs a Supply to discharge his Inguirments of an hundred and forty thousand Marks. He begs after many Excuses, upon the Assurance of a fresh Confirmation of *Magna Charta*, grant fifty two thousand Marks; but this did not give Satisfaction. Wherefore the next Year he summons another Parliament at *London*, wherein he presses them hard for Supplies, to pay his Debts to the Pope. This they absolutely refuse, telling him that if he had unadvisedly bought the Kingdom of *Sicily*, and been deceiv'd, it was his own Fault. They added, that he had broke his Promises and Charter, and that his Brethren and other Strangers were so insolent as not to be born with. The King's pressing Necessities constrain him to a teigned Submission, and an Acknowledgment of his Faults, together with an Oath to reform all those Errors for the future. But the Lords, not knowing how to trust him any more, adjourned to a Day, and then to assemble at *Oxford*. In the mean Time many of the Nobility enter into a Contederacy, and resolve to effect their Desires by Force. Accordingly when the Parliament met, the Barons came thither with a great Train, under Pretence of some Exploit against the *Welsh*, and to secure the Nation against Foreigners; but their Orders to the *Londoners* to keep their Gates shut, shew'd some other Design. They require their former Liberties, that the Chief Justice, Chancellor, and Treasurer, should be chosen by them. The King seeing their Strength, swears again, and obligeth his Son to swear for the Confirmation

tion

The Reign of King HENRY III.

227

of them. The Lords having gain'd this Point, proceed in their Demands, and require that the King's Brethren, with all the *Poictouins* and Strangers, should be banish'd the Kingdom : This the King was oblig'd to comply with. All Strangers banish'd.

The new Chief Justice, *Hugh Bigod*, chosen by Parliament, procures that four Knights in every Shire should inquire into the Oppressions of the Poor, and against Corruption, that Redress might be had. And now the King calls a Parliament, and confirms all their Demands, and by another Charter gave them full Liberty to rise against him, whenever he infringed *Magna Charta*. In this Condition was the Kingdom, when there came Intelligence to the Lords, that *Richard* King of the *Romans* was coming over into *England*. The Lords would not let him land until he had taken an Oath, that he would do nothing prejudicial to the present Establishment of the Kingdom. This the Earl was oblig'd to comply with, for he had spent all his Treasure to purchase the very Title of King of the *Romans* : And in a poor Condition, and on any Terms, he at last was forced to trust to *England*. Notwithstanding which the King takes Heart, and was resolv'd to recover his Power if possible, and therefore sends to *Rome* to be absolved from his Oath, and to *Scotland* for Assistance, and resigns *Normandy* and other Countries to the King of *France* to make him his Friend, and to get of him one hundred thousand Pounds. The Lords, on the other Hand, seek all Ways to strengthen their Association, by keeping each other to their Oaths, but they could not agree long, particularly the Earls of *Leicester* and *Glocester* ; and the Bishops of *Worcester* and *Lincoln*, enjoin'd the King, upon the Remission of his Oath, to prosecute the Cause unto Death, alledging that the Peace of the Church could never be establish'd but by the material Sword. The King of *France* also asserter, condemned the Provisions of *Oxford* ; but allows the Confirmation of *K. John's* Charter. This caused many to dispense with their Oaths, to leave the Lords, and join with the King's Party : And many Barons were won with Gifts to side with the King. The War between the King and Barons. King attempts to recover his Authority from the Lords. *Mortimer* of the King's Party begins the Quarrel, entering upon the Earl of *Leicester's* Lands, because he had join'd with *Lewellyn*, Prince of *Wales*, and had seiz'd upon *Mortimer's* Lands in those Parts. *Leicester*

A. D. 1259.

A. D. 1261.

A. D. 1263.

A. D. 1264.

obtains many Advantages, takes in many Places of Importance, and grows very powerful. The King not being in a Condition at present to withstand him, makes a Peace, which is concluded upon these Conditions: That all the King's Castles should be put into the keeping of the Barons; that the Provisions of Oxford should be observed, and all Strangers to leave the Kingdom. But this the King granted only to gain Time and strengthen his Party. In the mean Time the Prince fortified Windsor-Castle, committing it to the Custody of Foreigners; and went himself to Bristol, where an Encounter between his Men and the Citizens, he was worsted. He returns to Windsor, which Leicester comes to besiege; Windsor is soon surrendered to him, and the Strangers are sent to France. Upon this the King to get a little mote Time, calls a Parliament at London, and so gained many Lords to his Party, and then he marched to Oxford, where many Scots Lords came for his Assistance. Thence he marched to Northampton, where he took Leicester's Son, and fourteen other Lords Prisoners; and from thence he passed to Nottingham, laying waste the Barons Lands that lay in his Road. Leicester draws towards London, to secure that City and Kent. The King hastens to relieve the Castle of Rochester. Upon this Leicester and Gloucester write to the King, declaring, that they opposed not him, but such only as were his and the Kingdom's Enemies: But the King defies them; upon which the Barons, unwilling to put all to the Hazard of a Battle, send the Bishops of London and Worcester to mediate a Peace; and the King refused to hearken to any Proposals. Leicester seeing he could not prevent a Battle, draws up his Forces in the most advantageous Manner he could, near Lewes in Sussex, and offered the King Battle; which he, confident of Success, as readily embrac'd. They engage, and fight desperately on both Sides, but at length the Barons obtain a most remarkable Victory; for after having slain 5000 of the King's Party upon the Spot, they took the King, the Prince, the Earl of Cornwall, and his Son Henry, the Earls of Arundel and Hereford, and all the Scots Lords, Prisoners. Leicester having got these in his Power, committed them to diverse Prisons; only the King he carried about with him in Triumph, to countenance his Actions, until he had gotten all the strongest Castles of the Kingdom into his own Hands. But the Earl

A Peace
concluded.
A. D. 1265.

The King's
Party in-
crease.

The Barons
seek for
Peace.

Obtain a
Victory at
Lewes.

The Reign of King HENRY III.

221

of *Leicester* and *Glocester* fell out about sharing the Plunder of the Nation: Upon which *Glocester* went over with a strong Party to the Prince, who had made his Escape out of Prison, and got some Forces together. The Prince immediately enters on Action, and regains many Places of Strength. *Leicester*, to put a Stop to the Prince's Progress, encamps in a Plain near *Evesham*. The Prince advances towards him in Order of Battle, which struck such a Terror on *Leicester*, that he advised his Friends to shift for themselves; which when he saw them refuse to do, he said, *Let us commit our Souls to God, for our Bodies are theirs*. The Earl of *Leicester*, his Son *Henry*, and eleven other Barons perished in this Battle; and many thousands of common Soldiers were slain. *Montfort's* Death was attended with such Thunder and Lightnings, that some would have worshiped him as a Saint: But the King absolutely forbid it. This Battle delivered the King from Bondage, who with the victorious Prince went to *Winchester*, and called a Parliament; in which all that were of *Leicester's* Party, were deprived of their Estates, which were conferred upon others at the King's Pleasure; and the *Londoners* had their Liberties taken from them. Those who had escaped this Battle, took and defended the Isle of *Ely*: The Servants of the late Earl defended the Castle of *Killingworth* for six Months against the King and his Army, and then surrender upon honourable Conditions.

Glocester joins with the Prince.
A. D. 1266.

The Battle of *Evesham*.
The Barons overcome.

The Barons Estates confiscated.
Londoners lose their Liberties.

After this Parliament the King marcheth with his Army against the remaining Barons; upon which *Guy* and *Simon Montfort* submit, and are received into Favour; others fly into *France*, and some still defend the Isle of *Ely*. At length Conditions of Surrender are proposed, but the King's Council was divided concerning them; and *Mortimer* and others, to whom their Lands were given, oppose all Restitution. *Glocester* and his Party were for it, but could not prevail; upon which *Glocester* retires from Court, and refuseth to come when sent for; but dispatch'd Messengers to warn the King to remove Strangers from his Council, and to observe the Provisions of *Oxford*. Upon this a Parliament is called at *Bury*, whither all Persons who held Lands by Knights Service are summoned to appear with Horse and Arms, to subdue those Lords who held out the Isle of *Ely*. *Glocester* levies an Army; Messengers are sent to him to persuade him to come in, which he refused, yet he declares under his Hand

Guy and *Simon Montfort* submit.
A. D. 1267.

Glocester leaves the Court.

New Troubles.

Many Demands on the Clergy.

Hand and Seal, that he will never bear Arms against the King or his Son *Edward*: But that his Forces should pursue *Mortimer*, and his other Enemies. After this the Business of the Parliament went on; and the first Demand was made by the King and the Legate, for a Tenth of the Clergy for three Years. 2. It was required that the Clergy should be taxed by Laymen. 3. That they should give the Tenths of their Baronies and Lay-Fees, according to their utmost Value. 4. That the Clergy should pay 30000 Marks to discharge the King's Debts contracted for *Sicily*, *Calabria*, and *Apulia*. 5. That all the Clergy, who held Baronies or Temporalities, should in Person serve the King in his Wars. 6. That the whole Clergy should discharge the 90000*l.* which the Bishops of *Rochester* and *Bath*, and the Abbot of *Westminster* were bound for to the Pope's Merchants, for the King's Service when they were at *Rome*. 7. The Legate required, that they should throughout the whole Kingdom exhort Men to take the Cross for the Holy War; and lastly, it was urg'd, That the Clergy had sworn to yield to all the King's Demands. But the Clergy would comply with none of these Demands.

Barons solicited to submit.

The Legate also sent several Persons of the disinherited Lords, who held the Isle of *Ely*, to solicit them to return of the Faith and Unity to the Church, and to their Allegiance to the King. The Lords justify themselves, and exhort the Legate to reform such Things as were amiss, and that they might be restored to their Lands; that the Provisions of *Oxford* might be observed; and that they might have Hostages sent into the Isle, to hold it peaceably for five Years, until they could see how the King would perform his Promises. This

A. D. 1268.
Prince forces them to yield.

Obstinacy of the Lords did so exasperate the King, that the next Year he gathered a very great Army, and beset the Isle; and Prince *Edward*, with Bridges made of Boats, entred it in several Places, and compelled them to yield. In the mean Time *Glocester* with his Army came up to *London*, and was received by the Citizens: But the Legate, who then resided in the Tower, prevailed with him to submit to the King's Mercy. The King was reconciled to him, upon Condition, that if he ever raised any more Commotions, he should pay 12000 Marks. Having settled things thus at Home, the King marches into *Wales*, against Prince *Lewelin*, who, to prevent farther Mischiefs, purchased his Peace for 32000*l.* and

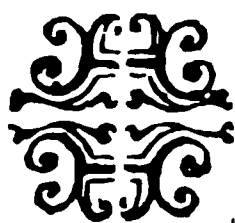
Earl of Gloucester submits.

reconciled to the King and had restored to him four Hundreds of his County, which had been taken away by the War. And thus an End was put to the first Barons War in England.

The next Year the Legate engages both the King's *A. D. 1269.* sons, *Edward* and *Edmund*, the Earl of *Glocester*, *Prince Edward* and many other Noblemen, to undertake the Holy *ward and others go to* War, with the King of *France*, who was resolved to the Holy War. make another Push, notwithstanding his former Disgrace. *K. Henry* now made it his principal Business to re-establish the Peace of the Kingdom, and to reform those Extravagancies the War had occasioned. By Proclamation he made the stealing of Cattle a capital Crime; and the first that suffered for it was one of *Dunstable*, who was hang'd for it. The next Year *A. D. 1270.* the King calls a Parliament at *Marlborough*, where the Statutes, bearing that Title, were enacted.

The Prince almost two Years after he had undertaken the Cross sets out for the *Holy Land*, accompanied by his Wife *Eleanor*, then with Child: And when many of his own People shew'd their Desires of leaving him, 'tis said, that he smote on his Breast, and swore, that if all his Followers should forsake him, he would yet enter *Ptolemais*, or *Acon*, though only with his Housekeeper, *Fowin*. This incited the People to proceed with him; only his Cousin *Henry*, the King of the *Romans* Son, had leave to depart, and was on Shore in *Italy*, where his Kinsman *Guy de Montfort*, Son of the late Earl of *Leicester*, murdered him in a Church, in the Time of Divine Service, in Revenge of his Father *Simon's* Death. *Richard*, King of the *Romans* died, soon after he had received the News of his unnatural Murder. *A. D. 1271.*

The very next Year *Henry* the Third, King of *England* *A. D. 1272.* died in the 65th Year of his Age, having reigned 56 *King Henry* Years and 20 Days; and was buried in the Abby Church *dies.* of *Westminster*.





The Reign of King EDWARD I.

A. D. 1272.
Edward, tho'
absent, pro-
claimed
King.

Returns
Home.

Is crowned.
A. D. 1275.

Curbs the
Power of
the Clergy.

Immediately upon the Death of *Henry III.* *Edward*, his eldest Son, was by the States of the Nation claimed King, and Fealty sworn to him, tho' he was absent, and they knew not whether he was living or dead. They caused a new Seal to be made, and appointed Ministers for the Preservation of the Peace, and the Management of the Treasure. While *K. Edward* remained in *Palestine*, he was dangerously wounded in three Parts of his Body with a poisoned Knife, by a treacherous Assassin; of which he had hardly been cured, had not his Wife *Eleanor* sucked the Poison out of his Wounds. Having relieved and fortified *Acre*, disappointed of the Aids he expected, upon the News of his Father's Death, three Years after his setting forth, he resolved to return Home. He took Ship for *Sicily*, where he was nobly entertained; thence he sailed to *Italy*, where the Pope, and other Princes of that Country shew'd him and his Retinue all due Honour and Respect. As soon as he was come over the *Alps* into *France*, he was met by many of the *English* Nobles, both Clergy and Laity; from thence he came down to *France*, where he was magnificently received, and treated by *K. Philip III.* to whom he did Homage for all his Lands held of that Crown. Leaving *France*, he went into *Aquitain*, where he spent some Time in directing his Affairs. And then, after six Years Absence, he came into *England*, and is crowned *September 19* by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, with *Eleanor* his Queen. Three Years after he was proclaimed King. Soon after his Coronation he called a Parliament at *Westminster*, where he had a Fifthteenth of the Clergy and Laity granted him; but the Liberality of the Clergy could not deter him from his Design of abating the Ecclesiastical Power, which by long and woful Experience of former Times he saw very prejudicial to the Regal Authority, especially when combin'd with the Nobility; and therefore setting high in the Opinion and Esteem of the World

The Reign of King EDWARD I.

222

now begins it: First, he deprives many of the Monasteries of their Privileges; took from *Westminster* the Return of Writs, granted them by Charter of King *Henry III.* his Father; and got the Statute of *Mortmain* to be enacted, to hinder the Increase of their Temporal Possessions. In the second Statute of *Westminster*, he confin'd the Jurisdiction of Ecclesiastical Judges to narrower Limits. Nor did he end here; but retained one Half of their Goods, both spiritual and temporal for one Year. This he obtained, notwithstanding their Grumbling, and the Pope's Bull to the contrary. So much were the Times altered since his Father's Reign.

The Statute of Mortmain enacted.

A. D. 1278.

As to *Wales*, which had always been struggling for Liberty, and a Retreat for *English* Rebels, a Quarrel was pick'd against *Leweline*, their Prince, for refusing on Summons to come to the King's Coronation, and after his first Parliament. *Leweline* excus'd it, because his Father broke his Neck in attempting an Escape out of the Tower; but offers to come to any other Place, upon Hostages, or to do Fealty to the King's Commissioners. Upon this Refusal the King enters his Country with Fire and Sword. *Leweline* not able to resist, makes his Peace, but upon hard Conditions. This Peace did not continue long; for *Leweline* not able to brook the Conditions granted him, took up Arms again, and is joined by his Brother *David*, whom the King had slighted. At first they gain some Advantages; but as soon as the King heard of their Revolt, being then at the *Devizes* in *Wiltshire*, he prepared a great Army to suppress them. But before he set out upon this Expedition, *John Peckham*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, to whom the *Welsh* had sent an Account of the Causes of their Revolt, went of his own Accord into *Wales*, to persuade *Leweline* to submit, but could by no Means prevail with him; for *Leweline* was assured from *Merlin's* Prophecy, That he should shortly be crowned with the Diadem of *Brutus*; for which Reason he would hearken to no Terms of Peace. Upon this the Archbishop excommunicated him and his Adherents, and the King entered his Country with a mighty Army. *Leweline* opposed the King, till he was slain in Battle by a common Soldier, who cut off his Head, and sent it to King *Edward*, who caused it to be crown'd with Ivy, and set upon the Tower of *London*. Thus died the last Prince of *Wales*.

Wales subdued.

A. D. 1279.

Leweline in Arms again.

A. D. 1282.

Leweline slain.

Wales. Shortly after *David* was taken Prisoner & adjudged in *England*, and drawn at a Horse *Shrewsbury*, then beheaded, his Body quarter'd, & set upon the Tower of *London*, and his four C sent to four other Cities. This was the first Ex of that Kind in *England*; but by this Example wards came into Use; and this King under who gan, had the Fate of such a miserable Death upon his Family; diverse of his own Brother's & dying upon Scaffolds. Just upon this Conquest Son *Alphonfus* died, a Youth of twelve Y Age: The Queen being then with Child, is sent

Edward born at *Carmarvan*, and titled Prince of *Wales*.

the King to *Carmarvan*, and there delivered of cond Son *Edward*, from thence called *Edward narvan*. The King, to please the *Welsh*, told would prefer one to be their Prince, who had no upon his Honour, who spake as good *Welsh* : *Welsh*, and was born among them. The *Welsh* with this, desired this new Prince: The King ed to them his young Son *Edward*, whom cepted. And thus was *Wales* united to *Englan* eleventh Year of this King's Reign, *A. D.* 12 The Nations this Union all the bloody Mischiefs, which offened to both Nations, were at an End, and came one People, governed by the same La under the same Prince, as may be seen by the S

A. D. 1284. *Rutland*, Anno Reg. 12^{mo}.

The next Year the King goes into *France* to mage to their new King *Philip the Fair* for & having before quitted his Claim to *Normandy* & K. *Edward* arbitrates the Difference between th

A. D. 1285. of *Sicily* and *Aragon*, his Kinsmen, and rede Prince of *Achana* out of Prison by a Ransom of

The Year following the King returns into & with his Coffers emptied by his Voyage, which fill again. And a very good Oportunity offe

The Judges by Corruptions. These he calls to an Accou punish'd them according to their Crimes; *Heng* fin'd seven thousand Marks; *Brompton* six i Marks; *Stratton* Chief Baron, thirty four thousand

Weyland's who's Estate is confiscated: In all, t came to an hundred thousand Marks in the which according to the Value of Money now, 300000 Marks. A great Sum from a few La

The Reign of King EDWARD I.

229

Next the *Jews* are banish'd; for which the Parlia-
ment readily granted the King a Fifteenth: And the
Jews Tallies and Bonds are all seiz'd, to an immense
Value. In short, the King's Impositions were very
great and many; particularly he rais'd vast Sums by *Quo*
Warranto, to examine into the Title of all Lands.
This was oppos'd by Earl *Warren*, who drew out his
Sword upon the Writ, and said, *By this I hold my*
Land, and by this only will I make good my Tenure.

Alexander King of *Scotland* dying without Heirs, six
Competitors pretend a Title to it. *K. Edward* takes
upon him to decide the Title, upon Pretence of a Superi-
ority from his Ancestors over that Kingdom. The *Scots*
make him Arbitrator, and the six Competitors are bound
to stand to his Award. The Matter was long debated
by the most learned in the Laws of both Nations, and
the Civilians of *France*; and after due Examination, it
was found that *Baliol* and *Bruce* had more Right than

A. D. 1296.
The *Jews* be-
anish'd.

Six Competi-
tors for the
Crown of
Scotland.

A. D. 1297.

the rest. The King goes Northward about this Busi-
ness, and *Eleanor* his Queen dies by the Way in *Lin-*
colnshire. This oblig'd the King to return with her

Q. Eleanor
dies.

Corps to *Westminster*, causing Crosses to be erected on
the Road where it rested, viz. at *Stamford*, *Walsbarn*,
Westcheap, *Charing*, &c. As soon as he had perform-
ed her Funeral Rites, he returned to his *Scotch* Affairs.
He first treats privately with *Bruce*, that if he would
pay Homage and Fealty to the Crown of *England*, he
would make him King of *Scotland*: This *Bruce* re-
fus'd, saying, he would not give up the Liberties of
the Country to get its Crown. Then he makes the
Offer to *Baliol*, who yields to it, and is crown'd
at *Scone*, and receives Fealty of the Nobility, except

Bruce; then comes to *Newcastle* upon *Tyne*, where
Edward was, and there with many of his Nobles
swears Fealty, and did Homage to him as his Sovereign
King of *Scotland*. Which Act of *Baliol*, tho' he did it for his Se-
curity, was his Undoing; for being very little belov'd
more, he now became less; and also by an unjust
Judgment given by him in the Case of the Murder of

King of
Scots does
Homage to
King *Ed-*
ward.

A. D. 1296.

the Earl of *Fife*; from which Judgment the Earl's Bro-
ther appeals to the Court of *England*. *K. Baliol* upon
this is summon'd to answer: He appears, and sits with
Edward in Parliament till his Cause was to be tried,
and then is cited by an Officer to arise and stand at the
Bar appointed for Pleading. He pleads his own

Q 3

Cause:

Wars be-
tween Scot-
land and
England.
A.D. 1296.

Scotland is
almost sub-
dued.

Cause: Which when he had done, he return'd
inraged with this Indignity; and resolving to revenge
he renews the antient League with *France*, deties *K*
ward, and renounces his Allegiance as unlawful
cause it was done without the Consent of the
And now began the Contest between the two Na-
which continued almost three hundred Years, with
Union of them by *K. James I.* *K. Edward* on the
other Hand enters into an Alliance with all the so-
Princes he could draw in, to strengthen his Party
and with his Confederates sets upon the King of *A*
who had summon'd *K. Edward* to appear and sit
in his Court, for certain Spoils committed by
English on the Coasts of *Normandy*. *K. Edward*
refusing to appear, is condemned to forfeit all his
territories in *France*, and an Army is sent to seize
who took *Bourdeaux* and other Places of Import-
which they fortified. Immediately *K. Edward*
over his Brother *Edmund*, Earl of *Lancaster*, with
verse Lords, seven hundred Men at Arms, and
of three hundred and sixty Sail. The King himself
upon *Balish*, and enters *Scotland* with four tho-
Men at Arms on Horseback, and thirty thousand
He first took *Berwick* with the Slaughter of
Scots or more; and after seiz'd on the Castles of
bar, *Roxborough*, *Edinburgh*, *Sterling*, and *St.*
flown. Upon this Success of *K. Edward*, *Balish*
for Peace, submits, and again swears Fealty to
and so did the *Scotch* Nobility, confirming it by
Charter under their Hands and Seals, except *W*
Douglafs, who chose rather a Prison than to submit
the *English* Conquest; and *Balish*, notwithstanding
Submission, is sent Prisoner into *England*. *K. Ed*
return'd, leaving Earl *Warren* Warden of all *Scot*
and a Treasurer, Chief Justice, and Commissioners to
the Homage and Fealties of all that held Lands
Crown, in his Name.

A.D. 1298. The King now at Liberty to execute his Design
against *France*, call'd a Parliament at *St. Edmund*
1), which granted him an eighth and a twelfth Part
their Goods, to enable him to carry on his Wars
the Clergy, upon a Prohibition from the Pope that
Lay Prince should tax them, would not advance
Farthing. Upon which the King seiz'd upon the
Temporalities of the Church; and put all the Clergy

The Reign of K EDWARD I.

233

of his Protection, whereby they were to have no Justice ^{Clergy put} in any of his Courts. This so amaz'd the Clergy ^{out of the} that many Bishops immediately grant him a fifth Part of their ^{King's Pro-} Goods, and so were receiv'd into Favour. The Arch-
bishop, who spirited the rest to hold out, had all his
Goods seiz'd, and all the religious Houses in his Dio-
cese taken into the King's Hands, allowing them only
so much as was necessary for their Sustainance: The
Abbots, Monks and Priests, unused to short Com-
mons, at length consented to give the King a fourth
Part of their Goods, and recover'd the King's Favour.
During this Contest with the Clergy, the King call'd a
Parliament at Salisbury, to which no Churchmen were
admitted, and in it he requires some of his Lords to go
over with him to his Wars in Gascoigne, his Brother
Edmund being dead there. They excusing themselves, ^{The Lords} the King threatned, that if they did not go, he would ^{refuse to go}
confiscate their Estates, and give them to others. Up- ^{to the Wars.}
on this Robert High Constable, and Bigod Earl Mar-
shal of England, declar'd that if he would go in Per-
son, they would attend him; otherwise not. At which
the King was very much offended. The Earl Marshal
said, that he would go any where with the King, and
march in the Vanguard, as by Right he ought to do.
The King replied, he should go with any other, tho'
the King went not in Person. The Marshal said, he
would not. Then the King in a Rage swore by G-d,
that he should go or hang; and I swear, said the Earl,
by the same Oath, that I will neither go nor hang; and
so departed without Leave.

These two Earls assembled many Noblemen and
others, to the Number of thirty Banners and 1500
Men at Arms. The King considering his Engagements
beyond Sea, lets the Matter drop for the present. The
King of France had sent for Guy Earl of Flanders, with
his Wife and Children, to come and make merry with
him at Paris; but instead of feasting, he made him his
Prisoner, and seizes his Daughter. Earl Guy, by the
Intercession of the Pope and others, gets his Liberty,
but could not obtain his Daughter's. Thereupon he
takes Arms, and defies the King of France, who im-
mediately enters his Country with 60000 Men. K.
Edward hastens to relieve him, leaving the Administra-
tion of the Kingdom in his Absence to the Prince and
some great Councilors; and to please the Clergy, takes

Grievances
of the Nati-
on brought
to the King.

the Archbishop of *Canterbury* into Favour: And being ready to embark, the Archbishop, Bishops, Earls, Barons, and Commons, send him a Roll of the Grievances of his Subjects. The King sends them this Answer, that he could do nothing without his Council, who were now absent from him, and requireth them to do nothing in his Absence prejudicial to the Peace of the Kingdom; and upon his Return he would set all Things in Order. And so he set forward in his Journey with 500 Sail of Ships, and 18000 Men at Arms. At his Arrival in *Flanders*, he finds the People rich and proud, distracted with popular Factions, and under no Command. In his Absence the Prince called a Parliament at *Tork*; where he readily consents to all the Articles demanded concerning the Rights and Liberties of the People, and never to tax them more but by Consent of Parliament. Upon this Compliance, the Commons grant a ninth Part of their Goods, and the Clergy a tenth and a fifth: Which Supplies satisfied the King's present Necessities. He continued that Winter at *Ghent*, where the Outrages of his Soldiers, caused the Inhabitants to take Arms, who kill'd many of his Men, the King with Difficulty escaping out of their Country. Upon which, the King patch'd up a two Years Truce with the King of *France*, and left Earl *Guy* to shift for himself; who shortly fell into the *French* King's Hands, and died with his Daughter in Prison for Grief. Tho' *Flanders* hereby became Subject to the King of *France*, yet the intolerable Exactions and Oppressions of the *French* contrary to their Liberties, caus'd the *Flemings* to unite and arm in Defence of their common Liberty: And they gave the *French* the greatest Blow they had ever receiv'd before at once, in a pitch'd Battle at *Courtray*, in which were slain the General of the Army, the Countable of *France*, and all their Leaders with 12000 Gentlemen. And their own Historians assure us, that in eleven Years Space this Quarrel with *Flanders* cost the *French* the Lives of 100,000 Men.

French
worsted by
the *Flemings*.

In *K. Edward's* Absence, one *Wallis*, a private Gentleman of *Scotland*, gets together a small Company of Men of desperate Fortunes, who watch'd all Opportunities to gain some Advantage over the *English*: In which he had such Success, that his Company increased as well as his Courage, and he is made their chief Com-

The Reign of King EDWARD I.

235

Commander, and in all Probability had redeemed his Country, had not private Emulation amongst themselves, ^{Walls of Scotland, his Success.} and the speedy coming of K. Edward prevented it; for ~~that~~ he had beaten the *English* in many Encounters, recovered many Castles, and regained *Berwick*. This made K. Edward, immediately upon his Return from *Flanders*, to prepare against *Scotland*, to revenge the Death of his Officers and Soldiers, and to recover his Castles. For the better effecting of this, he removes ^{Parliament} his Exchequer and Courts of Justice to *Tork*, where ^{at Tork} they continued above six Years; and here he call'd a Parliament, and requir'd all his Subjects who held of him by Knights Service, to be ready at *Roxborough* upon a certain Day; who thereupon assembled to the Number of 4000 barbed Horse and 4000 other Horse, and Foot in Proportion.

The Earls of *Hereford* and *Norfolk*, notwithstanding their former Contempt, attended him; but before they would act, they urge the Ratification of *Magna Charta*, and their Pardon, which they thought were not secure, the King being absent when he granted them. Some Lords and Bishops undertook for the King, that he should satisfy them when he had subdued these his Enemies. And then these two Earls and the Earl of *Lin-* ^{Saints raised} ~~coln~~ led the Vanguard at the famous Battle of *Fawkes*, ^{at Fawkes} where were slain of the *Scots* 200 Knights and 40000 Foot; but *Wallis* and some few others had the good Fortune to escape.

The King gave the Estates of the *Scots* who stood ~~that~~ to the *English*; and call'd a Parliament at *St. Andrews*, where the great Men of *Scotland* came and swore Fealty to him. The *Scots* Writers do mightily inveigh against K. Edward, for carrying away their Monuments of Antiquity, Records and Instruments of State, and their Marble Chair on which depended the Fate of the Kingdom. This Expedition being thus happily over, the King returns to *London*, and calls a Parliament at *Westminster*, in which after much Debate he grants a Confirmation of *Magna Charta*, and a farther Allowance of Disforesting, with the Omission of the Clause, *Salvo Jure Corona nostra*. The next Year the King ^{A. D. 1301.} being 62 Years of Age, marries *Margaret* the King of *France*'s Sister, and concludes a firm Peace with him; and his Son is affianced to the King of *France*'s Daugh- ^{Peace with France.} ter.

Scots complain to Pope Boniface.

Who opposes the King's Proceedings against the Scots.

A.D. 1307. King's fourth Expedition to Scotland.

Wallis executed for Treason.

Sir Nicholas Segrave's Case.

ter. And now the King calls in the base Coin called *Crocard* and *Postard*, which yielded some small Matter into his Coffers. But a third Expedition into *Scotland* emptied them again; wherein nothing was done but the recovering of *Sterling-Castle*. Upon the Conclusion of the Peace with *France*, the *Scots* being left out, send their Complaints to Pope *Boniface*, representing the afflicted State of their Country, the Usurpation of the King of *England* upon them, and his tyrannical Proceedings with them. The Pope having received this Remonstrance, writes powerful Letters to the King of *England*, commanding him to forbear all farther Proceedings against them, claiming what the Sovereign Authority over that Kingdom, as belonging to the Church. The King answers the Pope's Letter at large, proving from Antiquity, that the Dominion of *Scotland* had ever appertain'd to the *English* Crown, even from *Brutus* to his own Time. And at the same Time all the Nobility wrote to the Pope, claiming the same Rights, which they were bound by Oath to maintain, even with their Lives. The Pope upon this Answer, stir'd no more in the *Scots* Cause. And the King having been supplied with a fifteenth, upon Confirmation of the Charters, makes his fourth Expedition and Conquest in *Scotland*, and had Homage and Fealty sworn to him the fourth Time as Conqueror of it. After which he remov'd his *Exchequer* from *Tork*, to *London*, and render'd solemn Thanks to God and *St. Edward* for his Victory.

Soon after, *Wallis* betray'd by his Companion, is sent Prisoner to *London*, where he was tried and condemn'd according to the Laws of *England*, to be drawn, hang'd and quarter'd; and accordingly suffer'd the Sentence. Thus died *William Wallis* for the Defence of the Liberties of his own Country, in a strange one, and remains among the best Examples of Piety and Courage in that Kind. Sir *Nicholas Segrave*, one of the greatest Knights of the Kingdom, being accused of Treason by Sir *John Cromwell*, offer'd to justify himself by Duel; but the King would not grant it: Upon which, *Segrave*, without License, leaves the Camp, and crosses the Sea to fight his Enemy. The King enraged at his Contempt, order'd Justice to proceed against him. The Judges consulted three Days on his Case, and at last adjudged him

the guilty of Death, and his Goods to be forfeited to the King; but added, "That as he went out of the Nation, not in Contempt of the King, but to be reveng'd of his Enemy, it was in the King's Power to shew him Mercy." The King in Anger replied, "Have you been all this while consulting for this? I know it is in my Power to shew Mercy on whom I please; and who ever submitted to me, that has not asked of it? But I shall not do it for your Sakes, no more than a Dog's: Yet let this your Judgment be recorded, and for ever held as a Law." And so Sir *Reginald*, for Example, was put into Prison; yet afterwards by the Intercession of many of the Noblemen, the King restor'd him to his Estate.

Some Time after, the King sends out a new Writ ^{A Writ of} call'd *Tristition*, concerning all Sorts of Offenders; ^{Inquisition} which was so strictly executed, that from the Fines ^{call'd Tristition} which arising, the King's Treasure was vastly encreas'd: ^{Barons call'd common Council.} It was also by another Commission sent out at the same Time to examine into the Behaviour of Officers and Ministers of Justice; whereby many were found Delinquents, and paid dearly for it: Informers being in great Request at this Time. And now the King began to become a Terror to his Subjects, began to shew his Resentments to the Lords for their former Behaviour, ^{at D. 296.} during the late civil Contests. This so terrified *Bigot*, the Earl Marshal, that to regain the King's Favour, he made him Heir of all his Lands (tho' he had a Brother living,) except only 1000*l.* per Annum for Life. And for the same Offence he extorted great Sums of Money from others. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* he sent over to Pope *Clement V.* a Native of *Bordeaux*, who was respectful of the King, as having been once his Sovereign, and therefore ready to answer his Desires. And to secure this, the King sent the Pope a compleat Set of Gold Plate for his Chamber: Which had such an Influence on his Holiness, that he could deny nothing the King thought fit to ask, even to absolve him from his Oath to observe *Magna Charta*; an Act of as little Piety in the Pope, as Conscience in the King. But it was not long before he found the Error of this Action, and saw just Cause to reform it, having as much Need of his People's Love, as they of his Justice; for *Bruce*, Son of that *Bruce* who had been Competitor with *Balliol*, escaping out of *England*, became Head of the

John Comyn
murder'd in
Scotland.

the confus'd *Scots*, who crown'd him King, and agreed to support him in his Dignity. *John Comyn* Cousin German, wrote to the King of *England* to betray him; *Bruce* finding him at *Dunfries*, fell on him, and murder'd him in the Church there. This bloody Action blemish'd his Beginning, and rais'd a great Party against him. *K. Edward* sends the *Earl of Pembroke* and other Lords with a Party to relieve the Warden of *Scotland* who was retir'd to *Berwick*; follows himself with a great Army; and for his Attendance makes Proclamation, That all who by Profession or otherwise had Means for Service, should repair to *Westminster* at *Whitsuntide*, to receive the Order of Knighthood, and a Military Ornament out of the King's Wardrobe. Three hundred young Gentlemen assemble, and receive their Ornaments. The Prince was then knighted by the King, and created Duke of *Aquitain*; and the next Day he girds these 300 Knights with the military Belt, in the same Manner as himself receiv'd it. And now the King vows, that alive or dead he would revenge *Comyn's* Death upon *Bruce* the perjur'd *Scots*; and to carry on this War, the Clergy and Laity grant a thirtieth, and the Merchants a twentieth of their Goods. Thus furnished with Money, he sets forth for *Scotland*: In his March he receiv'd the News that the *Earl of Pembroke* had defeated the whole Army of the new King, and narrowly miss'd his Person; and his Brother and two Princes were taken and executed at *Berwick*. *K. Edward* march'd thro' the Country, and executed all he could find concern'd in *Comyn's* Murder; of whom the *Earl of Athole* is allowed the Honour of a higher Gall than the rest. The Countess of *Bowchan*, assisting *Bruce's* Coronation, is put into a wooden Cage, hung upon the Walls of *Berwick* for People to stare at. These Proceedings exasperate the Enemy, *Bruce* skulks about, only attended by the *Earl of Lennox* and *Gilbert Hay*. The King leaves *Scotland* and winters at *Carlisle*, where he calls his last Parliament, who mindful of the Pope's late Action, so for a Reformation of the Pope's Ministers, who required the Fruits of one Year's Revenue of every nunnery and religious House in *England*, *Wales*, and *Ireland*. Tho' this was denied, yet something was granted, which the King and the Pope's Legate divided betwixt them.

M. D. 1307.
K. Edward
revenge his
Death.

Parliament
at Carlisle.

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

237.

hem While the King was thus busied at *Carlisle*, *Bruce* in the Spring appears again with some Forces, defeats the Earl of *Pembroke*, and drives the Earl of *Glocester* into the Castle of *Ayr*; where he besieg'd him till the King's Forces came up, and drove *Bruce* again to his fastness. K. *Edward* sends for all that ow'd him Service to attend him at *Carlisle*; and tho' he was much indispos'd, in *July* he enters *Scotland* with an Army; but could not lead 'em far: For falling into a Dysentery at *Borough upon the Sands*, he died, having reigned 34 Years, 7 Months, and 21 Days, aged 68 Years. He was interred at *Westminster*, close by his Father, on the North Side of *St. Edward's Shrine*. R. Edward dies.



The Reign of King EDWARD II.

UPON the Death of the great King *Edward I.* his eldest Son, *Edward of Carnarvan*, now twenty three Years of Age, succeeded him with general Applause, tho' much inferior to him in all Respects. Never any Prince came to the Crown with greater Love of the Nation, or lost it in so short a Time: For before his Father's Funeral Solemnities were finished; contrary to his dying Precepts, he recalled *Pierce Gaveston* from Exile, and created him Earl of *Cornwal*, Lord of *Man*, Guardian and Lieutenant of *England*, and Disposer of innumerable Preferments. And because *Wal-*
ter Langton, Bishop of *Chester*, his Father's Treasurer, and like a faithful Servant, in his Father's Reign, reprov'd the Prince, for some leud Extravagancies, and complain'd of *Gaveston*, as the sole Promoter of them; the King, to punish such troublesome Virtue, imprison'd him, seized all his Goods and Temporalities, and gave them to *Gaveston*; and then, without the Advice of Council, removes most of his Father's Officers from Court. A. D. 1307. Edward II. begins his Reign ill. Gaveston recalled.

Soon after he passed over to *Bologne*, where he solemnized his Nuptials with *Isabel* the French King's daughter, with great Magnificence and Splendor; King marries Isabel the French King's Daughter.
there

there being present the Kings of *France*, *Normandy*, and *Sicily*, and three Queens, besides and a glorious Concourse of other Princes at *Gaveston* exceeded them all in rich Attire, and Magnificence, which raised the Envy and Contention of the whole Assembly, particularly of the Nobility; and so exasperated them, that at the King's Coronation they require him to be re-therwise they would put a Stop to that. The King, to avoid so great a Disgrace, prom- grant their Request at the next Parliament. standing this Promise, he appointed *Gaveston* to carry St. *Edward's* Crown before him at his Co- which increased the Hatred of the Prelates and Nobility against him. The Knights Templars thro' as in other Countries, are imprisoned, and the given to the Hospitallers; their leud and vici being assigned as the Cause.

King *Ed-
ward* is
crowned.

The Lords
prosecute
Gaveston.

A.D. 1309.

Forty one
Ordinances
made by the
Nobility.

The Lords now prosecute their Design against *Gaveston* in good earnest, who presuming upon the King's Favour, insolently scorn'd them as much as they could. The chiefest of his Enemies he gave full Names to; the Earl of *Lancaster* he call'd *Player*; the Earl of *Pembroke*, *Joseph the Foul*; the Earl of *Warwick*, *the Black Dog of Arden*. On this the Parliament unanimously besought the King to advise and treat with the Nobles concerning the State of the Kingdom, that by their Counsel they might avoid the Mischiefs which would fall upon the Kingdom by Neglect of Government; and urged it so far, that they not only consented, but took an Oath to ratify all Articles as should be concluded by them for the Welfare of the Kingdom. Upon this several, both of the Clergy, Nobility, and Commons, were selected to draw up these Articles; and when they were finished, the Bishop of *Canterbury* pronounced Sentence of Excommunication against all that shall dare to oppose or disobey Some of the Articles were: "That the King shall observe, and put in Execution *Magna Charta*;" "all Strangers should be banished: That ill Counsellors be removed; and, that the King shall not lead his Army into War, or go any where out of the Kingdom, without the Consent of Parliament." These Articles were Forty one, to which the King consented, and gave particular to the Banishment of his Favourite

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

619

whom he immediately sent into *Ireland*, who resided ^{Gaveston} there, not in Quality of an Exile, but of Lieutenant. ^{sent into Ire-} Within a few Months the King recalls him, and mar- ^{land.} ries him to his Niece, the Earl of *Glocester's* Daughter. But all this would not do; for the Nobility were re- ^{is re-called} solved to remove him from the King; besides, his A- ^{and married} mours were intolerable; for he sold the Jewels of ^{to Gaveston's} the Crown, and convey'd much Treasure out of the ^{Daughter.} Kingdom. Upon which the Barons send to the King, that unless he part with *Gaveston*, and observe the Ar- ticles lately agreed on, they would arm against him as a perjured Prince. The King at length unwillingly yields to banish his Minion *Gaveston*; and they also ob- ^{A. D. 1326.} tained this Clause, that if he be ever found again in the ^{Gaveston ban-} Kingdom, he shall suffer Death as an Enemy to the ^{ished again.} State. *Ireland* was not to protect him again, and *France* was unsafe for him; therefore he retires to *Flanders*, where he lurk'd for a While; but finding no Security, he without Leave returns to *England*, and committed ^{And returns.} himself to the King's Protection, who received him with great Satisfaction; and to have him out of the Eye of the Nobility, goes with him into the North.

Upon this the Lords arm, and ordain *Thomas*, Earl ^{The Barons} of *Launcester*, for their Leader, who was the Son of ^{take Arms.} *Edmund*, the second Son of *Hen. III.* a powerful and popular Subject. The Earl of *Glocester* becomes Me- diator between the King and Barons. The Lords send to the King in the Name of the whole Commonalty of *England*, beseeching him to deliver *Gaveston* into their Hands, or send him out of *England*. The King neglecting their Petitions, they advance with some Forces towards the North. The King, to secure *Gaveston*, puts him with some Forces into *Scarborough Castle*, and re- tires into *Warwickshire*. The Lords besiege *Gaveston*, ^{Gaveston} and soon oblige him to surrender; and afterwards con- ^{taken and} trary to the Engagements of some of the Barons, he ^{beheaded.} was beheaded at *Warwick*. And this was the Fate of the first Favourite we read of in our History.

The Lords having ob- tain'd their Ends upon *Gaveston*, and thereby finding the King's Weakness, assume to themselves greater Authority, and require a punctual Performance of all the Articles formerly granted, threat- ning the King upon his Refusal, to force him to it. Upon this the King sends ^{Bishops go} Prelates, and two Cardinals sent from ^{to the Lords.} the Pope, who receive them very peaceably;

peaceably; but refused to receive the Pope's Letters, saying, they were Swordsmen, and had not Letters to read Letters, and that there were worthy and learned Men enough in the Kingdom, whose Counsel they would use, and not Strangers." With this Answer

The Bishops prevail with the Lords.

they return to London; but the Bishops so far prevail with the Lords, that they agree to deliver up to the King such Horses, Treasure and Jewels, as they had taken from Gaveston; and the Treasurer and Keeper of the Wardrobe are sent to St. Albans to receive them.

Edward III. born.

About this Time Queen Isabel was delivered of a Son at Windsor, whom they named Edward. Shortly after a Parliament is called at London, wherein the King complains, "That his Barons had contemned him, and waged War in his Realm against him, and murdered his nephew." But they answered, "That they had not offended, but rather merited his Favour; having taken his Arms, not in Contempt of him, but to destroy his Nation's publick Enemy; a Man by whom the King's Honour was lessened, and the Kingdom's Substantialties wasted, and a dangerous Contest raised between the King and his Subjects, whereof otherwise they could never have had an End." Adding farther, "That they will no longer be deluded with vain Promises or Devices, but lay concerning their required Articles as they have been." The Queen and Earl of Gloucester at length

The Lords submit, and are pardoned.

make up the Breach; the Lords submit to the King and are pardoned all Offences. And then the State's Consideration of his great Wants, gave the King a Fifthteenth. About this Time the Earl of Warwick died, but not without Suspicion of Poison.

A. D. 1314.

While England laboured under these Distractions, Scotland united, and became very powerful under the King Bruce, who had quite destroyed all Factions, and almost recovered his whole Country. To curb the Growth of King Bruce, King Edward march'd into Scotland with 100000 Men, the most numerous Army that ever went thither. Bruce, with only thirty thousand Men, encounters this mighty Army, and gave England the greatest Overthrow it ever received; for in this Battle, (called the Battle of Bannock's Burn) there perished the Earl of Gloucester, and many other Lords; Knights Esquires and Gentlemen, and 50000 Soldiers, as the Scots write; our Historians acknowledge 10000 and the King escaped by Flight. Multitudes of all Se

Battle of Bannock's Burn.

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

(241)

were taken Prisoners. This Victory put the *Scots* in a very flourishing Condition both as to Arms and Wealth. The King would fain have repaired his Honour; but the disgusted People grew cold, and were willing to sit down with the Loss. The poor Borderers had the worst of it, and were so dispirited, that 100 of them would fly from three *Scots*. This great Misfortune was not single; but in the next Year many Calamities followed it, as Inundations, Dearth, Famine, and Pestilence, which exceeded any that had been before in this Nation. To remedy which, as much as Man could do, a Parliament was called at *London*, to abate and settle the Price of Victuals, after which it grew more scarce than before; for there happened such a Murrain to Cattle, and the Fruits were so destroyed by excessive Rains, that no Provisions could be got, and most people turned off their Servants, because they could not maintain them: Yet all these Miseries could not allay the Discontents and Hatred between the King and his Nobles. The *Scots* take Advantage of these Discontents, and miserably infest the Northern Parts. Some discontented *English*, under Colour of Resistance, took themselves all that they hindered the *Scots* from spoiling. Bruce, now absolute King of *Scotland*, sends his Brother into *Ireland* with an Army, who took many Places there, and got the Title of King for three Years. Thus all Things, both at Home and Abroad, went ill with *England*. Yet in the midst of these Confusions, two Cardinals made up the Breach between King Edward and the Earl of *Lancaster*; but the King privately sent a Knight with a Letter to the King of *Scots*, to procure the Earl's Death. The Knight was taken, and executed, and his Head set upon *Pontefract* Castle. This foul Action of the King brought many over to the Earl's Party.

The *Scots* having carried their Ravages as far as *York*, An Army is raised, and soon disbanded. Parliament is called. The King promises to observe the former required Articles. Upon which an Army is raised to oppose the *Scots*, which marched as far as *York*, and there falls into Mutiny, and is disbanded. The next Year one *Peter Spalding* treacherously betrays *Berwick* to the *Scots*. The King raises an Army, and besieges it. The *Scots*, to divert his Forces, entered *England* in other Places. And upon the Defection of the Earl of *Lancaster*, and the People of *York* being

Many great Calamities in *England*.

Price of Victuals settled.

A. D. 1317.

King and Nobles disaffected to each other.

An Army is raised, and soon disbanded.

A. D. 1318.

ing beaten, the King was obliged to raise the *Truce with the Scots.* *Berwick*, and conclude a Truce with the *Scots* Years, and so leaves those Parts dishonourably. *A. D. 1319.* In the Time of this Peace, a great Flame and a little Spark, which was kindled by this *Spencer* the Younger, buying *Powes-Land* of *William Brewes*, over the Heads of the Earl of *B* and the two *Mortimers*, who had before contra it, and desired to buy it, gets it from them all King's special Licence. The Lords complain Earl of *Lancaster*, of this Injustice; they, and many Lords enter into a Confederacy, by Oath, to die together in maintaining the Rights of the King and in procuring the Banishment of the two *Spencers* and Son. Under this Pretence they take and seize upon the Lands and Goods of those and then march to *St. Albans*; from whence they to the King, requiring him to banish the *Spencers* to grant a Pardon and Indemnity to themselves. King answered, "That *Spencer*, the Father, was " Service beyond the Seas, and the Son was g " the Cinque-Ports; and that it was against " banish any Person unheard." And then they swore, that he would never break his Coronation by pardoning such Offenders as the Barons were Answer so exasperated them, that they march their Forces towards *London*, and insult stiffly upon Demands, which, by the Mediation of the *Queens* Prelates, he at last granted, and thereupon published Edict, by which both the *Spencers* were banished. Father being abroad, kept there; and the Son about *England*. The Lords depart satisfied, as Indemnity.

The Queen in her Progress, sent to take Lodgings in *Leeds* Castle. The Governor told her, that neither the Queen, nor any Body else be admitted, without Letters from his Lord, the *Bedlesmere*. She complains of this Indignity King, who taking it to Heart, immediately sends his Army to *Leeds*, and takes the Castle, his Keeper, sends my Lord *Bedlesmere's* Wife and Children to the Tower, and seizeth all his Goods and Treasures. The King elevated with this Success, and instigated the Queen, raiseth an Army against the Barons of whom came in and submitted, as the two

Barons take Arms.
A. D. 1321.

The two *Spencers* banished.

Fresh Quarrels between the King and Barons.

King takes *Leeds* Castle.

A. D. 1322.

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

(243)

serv, and others, who, contrary to their Expectations, were sent to Prison. Upon this Change the Earls of Lancaster and Hereford retire Northward. The King pursues them, and at Barton upon Trent, beats their Army, and puts them to flight; and at Borough-Brigge, the Sheriff of York attacks them, slays the Earl of Hereford, and takes Lancaster Prisoner, with diverse other Lords. Lancaster is condemned and beheaded the same day before his Castle of Pontefract: many other Lords were executed, hang'd, drawn and quarter'd, at York, London, and other Places; and their Estates given to men newly advanced. This, since the Conquest, was the first noble Blood that was spilt, after this Manner, in England. The King puffed up with this Success, marches his Army into Scotland, tho' unprovided with necessaries. The Scots having Notice of it, retire to the Country, taking with them all the Provisions they could; by which Policy they vanquished the King's Army without Blows, and forc'd him to return to England with Dishonour; whither the Scots follow him, and set upon him unexpectedly, take his Treasure, and sack the Country to the very Walls of York. Sir Andrew Harkley, who took the Earl of Lancaster Prisoner, and for that Service was made Earl of Carlisle, being seized by the Spencers, is accused, degraded, hang'd, drawn and quartered, as a Traitor.

K. Edward the following Year was summoned by the French King to do Homage for Gascoigne. The Parliament decreed he should not go in Person; upon which the King of France seiz'd upon his Dominions. The King's Brother Edmund is sent over, to little Effect. The Spencers held it not safe for them, to let the King go over in Person; but the Queen and a small Attendance is sent over to accompany the Business. During which Negotiation the King demanded of his Parliament Money, to redeem the Earl of Bretagne, taken Prisoner by the Scots; but was denied him. The Bishop of Hereford was arrested, and accused of Treason in assisting the Barons. He refused to answer, being a consecrated Bishop. The other Bishops take him from the Bar, and deliver him to the Archbishop, till the King should appoint a Day for his Answer. Shortly after he was taken and conveyed; whereupon the Archbishops of Canterbury, York and Dublin, with ten other Bishops, went to the

Hereford slain, and Lancaster taken. Executed with many other Lords.

King's Expedition into Scotland. A. D. 1323.

Returns with Dishonour.

A. D. 1324. K. Edward summoned to do Homage to the French King.

Queen sent into France.

Bishop of Hereford arrested.

(R 2) Place

The Bishop
of Hereford
is refused by
the other
Bishops.

Loseth his
Estate.

Place of Judgment, and took him away with
This displeas'd the King, who commanded Edm
be made *ex officio Judicis*, against the Bishop, (th
sent) wherein he was found guilty, and all his
seiz'd for the King. But this lost the King the
on of the Clergy.

The *Spencers* grown to the Height of Lust
thro' Bride and the Spoils of the Barons, press
abridge the Queen's Maintenance and Household;
this was the Rock on which they split; for she
had managed her Negotiation so well, that all
rels should be ended, if Edward would make h
Edward Duke of Aquitaine and Ponthieu, an
him over to do Homage to the King of France.
ward complies, and the Queen is glad to ha
Son with her: And she being resolved on R
against the *Spencers*, besides her great Party in
had those in France, who encouraged her in the
mour; among whom was Roger Mortimer, los
caped out of the Tower.

Queen and
Prince pro-
claim'd Trai-
tors, and bur-
nished.

She invades
England

Pursues the
King.

But the Bishop of Exeter, who was with her
pecting her Designs, returns to England, and in
the King thereof, who sends immediately to the
and Prince to return; and upon their Delay,
claim'd them Enemies to the Kingdom, and bu
them as such, and sends out three Admirals to
the Coasts, and prevent their landing. The Que
formed of a Plot to murder her and her Son,
to the Earl of Heynault, a rich Prince, and to th
of Holland, to whose Daughter Philippa she cou
her Son, and gets Men and Money of him, and
at Harwich, where she was received with great
the discontented Nobility. As soon as this News
ed the King, he demanded Aid of London; but was
ed it. Then he promiseth, by Proclamation, t
to any Person that should bring Mortimer's Head.
King with his small Council retires into the We
pecking Assistance there; but none regarded him.
Queen pursued him, and at Oxford the Bishop o
reford took occasion to preach from these Words
Head aketh; from which he drew this Conclusion,
an aking and sick Head of a Kingdom was of No
to be taken off, and without that the Cure was
impossible. To put the better Face on the Q
Proceedings, it was artfully noised abroad, that

The Reign of King EDWARD II.

(445)

dinals, sent from the Pope, were in the Queen's
up to excommunicate such as took up Arms against
; and that she came only to deliver the Kingdom
n the Mistleaders of the King, the *Spencers*, the Chan-
or, and all their Adherents ; and that all others
ld be safe. To confirm which the Queen makes ^{The Queen}
clamation, " That nothing should be taken from ^{puts out a}
y Subject without paying for it, under the Penalty ^{Proclama-}
r taking to the Value of three Pence to lose a Fin-
er, six Pence the Hand, and twelve Pence the Head ;
nd that whosoever should bring to the Queen the
lead of young *Spencer*, should have as a Reward the
um of 2000*l.*" Thus the Queen made Head against
Husband, and led an innocent Son against his Fa-

he miserable King finding none to assist him, put ^{The King is}
b *Spencer* the Father, with some Forces into *Bri-* ^{abandoned.}
Castle ; and then for his own Security went on
d a Vessel, poorly attended, with Design to get
he Isle of *Lundy*, or to *Ireland* ; but by contrary
ids, was forced to land in *Glamorganshire* in *Wales*,
re *Blant* his Steward, and others, shamefully for-
g him, he was concealed in the Abby of *Neath*. ^{Is concealed}
he mean Time the Queen marches against *Bristol*, ^{in the Abby}
cks the Castle, takes it, and puts to Death *Hugh* ^{of Neath.}
er, the Governor, without Form or Tryal of ^{Hugh *Spencer*}
r, causing him, tho' Earl of *Winchester*, to be drawn, ^{er put to}
hang'd on the common Gallows in his Coat of ^{Death.}
our, and cut up before he was dead, and quar-

his done, she passeth to *Hereford*, and issued a Pro-
ation, " That if the King would return, and go-
rn the Nation as he ought to do, he should receive
e Government again, by Consent of the People."

the King not daring to trust himself to them, or
having sufficient Information, kept himself still con-
d : and thereupon they took the Advantage to dis-
of the Government, and the Prince is made Guar- ^{Prince made}
of the Kingdom, hath Fealty sworn to him ; and ^{Guardian of}
w Chancellor and Treasurer are appointed, to ma- ^{the King-}
the Affairs of State. ^{dem,}

ot long after the King was discovered ; and by
y, Earl of *Lancaster*, Brother to *Thomas* the late ^{King im-}
, and by others, taken and conveyed to *Kenelworth* ^{prisoned.}
le. The younger *Spencer*, *Baldock* the Chancellor,
(R 3) and

Several of
the King's
Friends Exec-
uted.

and *Simon Reading*, who were taken with the same, are sent to the Queen at *Hereford*. *Spencer*, who at this Time Earl of *Glocester*, is drawn and hanged at a Gallows fifty Foot high. *Simon Reading* was ten Foot lower than he: But *Baldock*, because he was a Priest, had the Favour to be starv'd to Death in the Gate.

A.D. 1327.
The King
deposed, and
the Prince
chosen.

The Confusion at this Time was general. The Citizens of *London* rise and force their Mayor, who was hearty for the King, to take their Part, let out the Prisoners, possess themselves of the Tower, put to death Sir *John Weston*, the Constable of it, and murder Bishop of *Exeter*, whom they hated; because he was the King's Treasurer, he caused the Judges to sit in *London*, by which means they were lawfully fined. After some Stay at *Hereford*, the Prince and the Prince return to *London*; where the Parliament being assembled, came to a Resolution to depose the King as unfit to govern, objecting many Arguments against him; and to elect his eldest Son *Edward* King in his Stead. Accordingly this was done in the most solemn Manner, in *Westminster-Hall*, with the universal Consent of the People present; and the Bishop of *Canterbury* made a Sermon upon this *Vox Populi, Vox Dei*, exhorting the People to pray for the King of Kings for a Blessing upon him whom they had chosen.

The Queen seeing what was done, began now to be too late, to reflect on her self, and to be very much concern'd at this Election; insomuch, that the Prince comfort her, was forc'd to swear, that he would not accept of the Crown without his Father's Consent.

Upon this Resolution, the Parliament decreed, "that three Bishops, two Earls, two Abbots, four Barons, three Knights of every Shire, and some Burgeſſes of every City and Borough, should be sent to the King at *Kenelworth*, to declare unto him the Election of his Son, and to require of him the Renunciation of his Crown and Royal Dignity; to which if he did not consent, the States were resolved to proceed as they thought fit." This most ungrateful Message delivered to him by two Persons, most obnoxious to him, the Bishops of *Hereford* and *Lincoln*. The King all in Tears confessed, "That he had been misled, and done many Things of which he now repented."

King per-
suaded to
reign.

Reign of King EDWARD III.

(147)

When, if he were to govern again, he would
was very sorry to have so much offend-
as that they should utterly reject him;
asked them that they were so favourable to him,
choose his eldest Son for their King." Which
proceeded to the Ceremony of his Resigna-
his Form was perfectly new, because without
it; *William Trussell*, a Judge, put it into the
the Law, to render it more authentick, and
in the same in this Manner: "I William ^{Mander of}
in the Name of all the Men of the Land of ^{his Resigna-}
and of all the Parliament Procurator, re-
tion. -
the Edward, the Homage that was made to thee
time since; and from this Time forwards, I de-
and give thee of all thy Royal Power; and I
never be attendant on thee as King, from this
Which being done, Sir *Thomas Blunt*, Stew-
e Household, by breaking his Staff, resign'd his
and declared, that the late King's Family was
d. This was done the 22^d of *January* 1327,
3^d Year of the King's Age, having reigned 19
Months, and 15 Days.

Reign of King EDWARD III.

A. D. the Third, Son of *Edward II*, being *A. D. 1327.*
been 14 and 15 Years old, began his Reign up- *Edward III.*
after's Relinquishment, and was proclaimed King *proclaimed.*
of Parliament, on the 25th of *January* 1327;
mediately issued out his Proclamation for prefer-
publick Peace, in which he declared, "That his
the late King, by the Advice and Consent of
Nobility and Commonalty of the Realm, made a
voluntary Relinquishment of his Regal Dignity to
being his eldest Son, and Heir to the Kingdom."
a Sunday the first of *February*, he was crown'd *And crown-*
after with great Solemnity. After which, *ed.*
the chief Nobility were appointed Guardians *12 Guar-*
of the Kingdom, till he should be of fit Age to *dians*
govern. *point*

govern. The Queen and *Mortimer* being of
ber, usurp the Management of the Whole
Queen's Dowry was so unreasonably enb
the King had scarce a third Part of the R
himself.

*Scots invade
England.*

Robert, King of *Scotland*, taking Advantage
unsettled Times, invades *England*. *Edward*
Advice of the *Scottish* Designs, put out a
tion commanding all Noblemen, and oth
tend him at *York* on *Ascension* Day. The
at the appointed Time; but shortly after
pened a great Contest between some *English*
ners in the Army, which not only caus'd th
of Blood, but prov'd a great Obstruction

*Edward
marches a-
gainst them.*

signed Expedition. After six Weeks Com
and about *York*, the King gave Orders for his
my to march against the *Scots*, whom they
camped in *Stanhope* Park, in the Bishoprick o
Here they surrounded them on every Side,
Spot of deep moorish Ground, and so con
for the Space of fifteen Days, that their
fail'd them. This constrained them to invent
their Escape; and theretore they prepared a gre
of Fleaks, Hurdles and Faggots, by the Help
the following Night, they and their Horses
Escape, and fled to the next Mountains.

*But they
escape.*

enraged at their Escape, immediately persues
could not find them, till after a Proclama
100 *l. per Annum*, and the Honour of Kni
be given to any who could inform him
were encamped; he was assured by one, tha
on a Hill, about six Miles from his Camp,
ed his Coming, with a Design to give him Ba
on this the King and his Army followed this
their Guide, and about Noon came in Sig
Enemies. King *Edward* by his Heralds c
Battle; the *Scots* refuse, because their Numb
above one third of the *English*; and the King
force them, because there was a deep rocky
tween them. In this Posture they contin
Days; and nothing was done worth Notic
Side, until the brave *James Douglass*, with
Horse, passed the River in the Night Time,
the *English* Camp, killing and slaying as he
to the King's Tent, from whence he retired w

*Douglass his
brave At-
tempt.*

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(249)

terrible Loss to his own Army. After which the Scots wanting Provisions, and having wasted all that might be useful to the English, retired in the Night, and got safe into their own Country. A Council of War was immediately called, who agreed, that it would be to no Purpose to pursue the Scots any farther. The King returns to *Durham* with his Army, and in three Days after to *York*. Here the Army was disbanded, and the Strangers sent home, well rewarded for their Services in this Campaign. Scots retire home.

During these Transactions in the North, the old deposed King remained close Prisoner in *Kenelworth Castle* in *Warwickshire*, with an Allowance of an 100 Marks per Month for his Expences; but deprived of all other human Comforts. The Queen and *Mortimer*, upon Suspicion that the King's Friends, who commiserated his Misfortunes, might attempt his Inlargement, removed his Keeper, the Earl of *Lancaster*, and appointed him two new Keepers, *Gourney* and *Matrevers*, who remove him from thence first to *Corse Castle* in *Dorsetshire*, then to *Bristol Castle*, and at length to *Berkley Castle* in *Glostershire*, and all this to disappoint his Friends, and prevent their Assistance. Some Writers say, that in *Berkley Castle* these two Keepers completed their Barbarity on the Body of the King; for on the 22^d of September, finding him in his Bed, they press'd heavy Bolsters on his Head; and that no Marks of Violence might be found upon him, thrust up a red hot Iron thro' a hollow Pipe, into his Bowels, and in this cruel Manner murder'd him. Those that viewed his Body, no Wounds appearing, gave out that he died of Grief. Thus tell the unfortunate King *Edward* the Second: His Body was carried to *Glocester*, and buried in *St. Peter's Minster*. Old King is ill treated.

All Obstacles to young *Edward's* Title being now removed, his Marriage with *Philippa* of *Heynault* is solemnis'd. The Ceremony was performed at *York* on the 24th of *January*, and on the first Sunday in *Lent*, the young Queen was crown'd at *Westminster*, with great Pomp and Glory. In *Whitsun-Week* a Parliament was held at *Northampton*; In which *K. Edward* first moved about his Title to the Crown of *France*. Next, by the Management of the old Queen and *Mortimer* a dishonourable Peace is concluded between *England* and *Scotland*, by a Match between the King's Sister *Joan*, and the A. D. 1328.
K. Edward married.
He claims France.

(130)

The History of ENGLAND.

A scandalous
Treaty with
the Scots.

the Prince of *Scotland*, being but seven Years of Age. In this Parliament the King, under the Direction of the Queen, *Mortimer*, and Sir *James Douglas*, by his Order, surrenders his Title of Sovereignty to the King of *Scotland*, and restores to them diverse Instruments, and Records of their former Homages and Fealties, done to the King of *England*, together with that famous Evidence called *Ragman Roll*; and the ancient Jewels, and Monuments, particularly the Cross of *Scotland*; and the *English* are prohibited to hold Lands in *Scotland*, unless they dwell there. These Trifles *K. Bruce* was to pay the Sum of 30 Marks to the Crown of *England*. For this and other such Pieces of publick Service, the King made *Mortimer*, Earl of *March*. Shortly after a Parliament was held at *Winchester*, where *Edmund*, Earl of *Arundel*, Brother to the late deposed King, is accused and condemned by his own Confession, for endeavouring to restore his Brother. This miserable Earl stood on a Scaffold, from one, till five a Clock in the Afternoon, and no Man would execute him; but at length a Wretch belonging to the *Marshalsea*, cut off his Head.

A. D. 1329.
Robert King
of *Scotland*
dies.

K. Edward
does Ho-
mage to the
French King.
A. D. 1330.

Mortimer
seiz'd.

The following Year *Robert*, King of *Scotland*, being worn out with his great Infirmity, died of a Leprosy the 24th Year of his Reign, leaving his young Son to succeed him. This very Year the new King of *France* summoned *K. Edward* to do him Homage for *Gascogne*, and other Territories in that Kingdom; accordingly he went over, and met the French King at *Amiens*, and did him Homage for his Lands held of that Crown. The publick Complaints and secret Whispers of the Nobility, who could no longer bear the exorbitant Power and haughty Carriage of *Mortimer*, whose malignancy with the Queen Mother occasioned a Rumour that she was with Child by him, at length rous'd a sleeping Lion in the young King's Breast; who in a Parliament held at *Nottingham*, resolv'd to destroy that powerful favourite, whose Interest was sufficient to ruin both the King and Kingdom. To prevent which, *K. Edward*, with the brave *Montague*, and a few valiant Followers, entred into *Nottingham* Castle by Night, by a secret Mine in a Rock, since called *Mortimer's*; and seiz'd upon *Mortimer*, with the Queen, and made him Prisoner to the Tower of *London* under a strong Guard.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(251)

Guard. The Queen has her great Jointure taken from her by Parliament, and is allowed but 1000 *l. per An.* Fourteen Articles are exhibited against *Mortimer*, in which he was justly accus'd "to have procured the late King's Death, and his Brother the Earl of *Kent's*; to have been the Author of the *Scots* escaping at *Stanhope-Park*, corrupted with a Gift of 20000 *l.* to have procured the late Marriage and dishonourable Peace with *Scotland*; and to have been too familiar with the Queen, &c." For these Offences he was condemned of high Treason, and drawn and hang'd at *Tyburn*, and his Body was kept hanging two Days for a Spectacle of Horror and Dishonour: Thus did *K. Edward* begin to wipe off the Stains, which during his Minority had blemish'd the State of his Kingdom. And executed.

This Year was born *Edward*, afterwards for his glorious Deeds call'd the *Black Prince*, whom Heaven seem'd to have sent for the Glory and Renown of the *English* Nation, and to be at once the Delight and Terror of Mankind. The *Black Prince* born.

Edward Baliol, Son to *John Baliol*, formerly King of *Scotland*, thirty two Years after his Father's Deposition, taking Advantage of the Youth of King *David* and the Factions in *Scotland*, set his Thoughts upon the Recovery of that Crown; accordingly he left *France*, and came into *England*, and privately got together all the *English* and *Scots* that were Enemies to *Bruce*. All Things being ready, *Baliol* with his Friends and 2500 Men well accoutred, set Sail and landed at *Kingcorm* near *Perth*; and to prevent all Hopes of Flight, the Vessels were sent back. With these *Baliol* soon made incredible Progress, beating the *Scots* in four pitch'd Battles, in which some Writers report, 60000 were slain. The News of these Victories soon spread it self thro' the Country; upon which great Numbers of the Lords and Ladies, and others, came to *Baliol*, and did him Homage, and swore Fealty to him: After which he went to *Scone*, where he was solemnly crown'd King, on the 24th of *September*. *Baliol* enters *Scotland*. A. D. 1332. Is very successful. Is crown'd.

This gave *K. Edward* a fair Opportunity to recover what the Nation had lost by *Mortimer's* late scandalous Peace. Accordingly he joins with *Baliol*, against *David* his Brother-in-law. But first to avoid the Imputation of Breach of Articles, he publicly proclaim'd, that he was not obliged to observe any League with *Scotland*. New Design on *Scotland*. A. D. 1333.

land, that was made in his Minority, without his own and the Nation's Consent. *K. Edward* goes in Person, and besieges *Berwick* both by Sea and Land. *K. David's* Party being sensible of the Importance of this Place, assembled all their Power to relieve it. The *Scots* put themselves in Order of Battle on *Hallidown Hill*, near *Berwick*: *K. Edward*, tho' much inferior in Number, on *Monday* the 19th of *July*, encounter'd the whole *Scots* Army and totally defeated them. In this Battle were slain of the *Scots*, 7 Earls, 900 Knights and Bannerets, 400 Esquires, and thirty two thousand common Soldiers. Two Days after this great Victory the Town and Castle of *Berwick* surrender'd to the King's Mercy. *Balio*l marches into the Heart of *Scotland*, taking Towns and Castles at his Pleasure: And about *Michaelmas* he calls a Parliament at *Pertb*, where the *English* Lords were restored to their Honours and Estates they claim'd in *Scotland*. And in this Parliament all Acts, Statutes, Ordinances and Grants, made by *Robert*, or *David Bruce*, late Kings of *Scotland*, were declared null and void. And *Balio*l, to strengthen his Alliance, first at *Edinburgh*, and afterwards at *New-Castle*, in the Presence of many great Lords and Commons of both Nations, did Homage to the King of *England*, as to his superior Lord; and swore Fealty to him, binding himself and his Heirs to hold the Kingdom of *Scotland* of him and his Successors for ever, and granting him the Possession of five Counties next adjoining to the Borders.

Many of the *Scott* Nobility enraged at *Balio*l's mean Submission, began to revolt from him, and to promote the Interest of *K. David*. This soon broke out into a War *Balio*l met and engag'd *K. David*; but after an obstinate Fight, his Army dispers'd, and himself was oblig'd to fly out of the Nation to the City of *Carlisle* for Refuge; from whence he writes to *K. Edward* for Assistance. A Parliament is call'd at *London*, who granted *K. Edward* a Tenth from the Clergy, a Fifteenth from the Temporality, and a Twelfth from the Cities and Boroughs. Upon which the King enter'd *Scotland* with his Army, and then joining with *Balio*l, he persued the Enemy as far as beyond *Cathness*. Then he returned towards *Berwick*: But shortly after, the Earl of *Dunbar* revolted in the *Highlands*, and renouced his Homage to both Parties; which obliged *K. Edward*

K. Edward
besieges *Berwick*.

Scots defeated.

Berwick surrenders.

A.D. 1334.

*Balio*l does Homage to *K. Edward*.

Scott Nobility revolt.

K. Edward's Expedition into *Scotland*.

The Reign of King EDWARD III. (253)

ward to remain the rest of the Year on the Borders *A. D. 1335.*
of *Scotland*. In the Spring K. *Edward* entred *Scotland* ^{His Success}
with a well disciplin'd Army both by Sea and Land; ^{there.}
he ravaged the Country as far as *Perth* without Oppo-
sition, and appointed *David* Earl of *Arbol*, Governor
of *Scotland*, to subdue the Places that held out. The
 Scots in some Skirmishes had several Times the Advan-
ge. In the mean Time the Earl of *Cornwal* entred
 Scotland, and destroyed *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle*, and
 the Western Parts that held out against *Baliol*; and
 after that marched to *Perth* to his Brother, lately re-
 turned from an Expedition in the *Highlands*.

While K. *Edward* remained at *Perth*, the *French*
 King sent Ambassadors to him, to mediate a Peace be-
 tween him and K. *David*, and to desire him to accom-
 pany K. *Philip* to the Holy War; to whom K. *Edward*
 turned this short and resolute Answer, "That by
 the Blessing of Heaven he was able at any Time to
 make War upon the Infidels without their Master's
 Assistance; and that he would undertake no foreign
 Expedition till he had subdued his Enemies the *Scots*."

Soon after this, many of the *Scotch* Nobility came and ^{Scotch Nobil-}
 submitted to K. *Edward*, and a Peace was concluded. ^{ity submit.}

When, having settled his Affairs in these Parts, the King
 in Autumn, returned into *England*. The Earl of *Arbol*
 laid Siege to the Castle of *Kildrumney*; but the *Scots*
 coming to relieve it, he was not only defeated, but lost
 his Life and Reputation. Upon which many Places in
 the North revolted, and declar'd for K. *David*. Upon *A. D. 1336.*
 Advice of this Revolt, K. *Edward* with 40000 Men,
 marched into the very Bowels of *Scotland*, ravaging the
 Country with dreadful Destruction wherever he came,
 till he had driven the Enemy beyond *Elgin* and *Inverness*.
 He left K. *Baliol* to subdue the rest, and in September
 returned triumphantly into *England*, having now made
 two successful and glorious Expeditions into *Scotland*.

K. *Edward*, now experienc'd and renown'd in Arms, *A. D. 1337.*
 set his Eye upon the Kingdom of *France*; and this ^{Beginning}
 Design was violently promoted by *Robert de Artois*, ^{of the Wars}
 who, being highly oblig'd by the *French* King's a- ^{with France.}
 warding the County of *Artois* from him to his Aunt
 Matilda, openly declar'd, that he would unmake the
 King by the same Power he had made him. *Philip* the
 French King, enrag'd at this, declar'd him a Traitor,
 confiscated his Estate, and forced him to fly out of his
 King-

Kingdom. In *England* he was generously entertain'd, and made Earl of *Richmond*: And here he became the grand Incendiary between the two Nations. *K. Edward*, that the World might know the Justice of his Pretensions, in a pious Epistle directed to the College

K. Edward's
Pretensions. of Cardinals, declar'd, 1. His Title to the Crown of *France*. 2. That his Ambassadors, offering to put the Cause to a civil Trial, were not only refused to be heard, but repuls'd with Danger of their Lives.

That the Court of twelve Peers, in giving the Crown from him, under Age, left the Office of Judges, and became Invaders. 4. That *Philip* had invaded his Territories in *France*. 5. That he had assill'd the *Scotts* their Insurrections against him: And lastly, had declar'd by his Actions, that his Honour, Power and Person were equally hated by him. *K. Edward* having made

His Allian-
ces. these Declarations, entred into an Alliance with *Leo* is the Emperor, the Earl of *Flanders*, and several other Princes in *Germany* and *Holland*. Having thus secured his Interest abroad, he was no less careful of his Country at home. To which End in a Parliament held at *Westminster*, it was ordain'd, that no *English* Wool should be transported. And for the Encouragement of

Woolen Ma-
nufactury re-
viv'd. foreign Clothworkers to come and settle here, many great Privileges were granted them, and an Allowance from the King, till they were fix'd in a competent Way of living: Also 'twas enacted that none should wear any foreign Cloth for the future, except the King, Queen, and their Children. In this Parliament the King created

First Duke
in *England*. his eldest Son *Edward* Duke of *Cornwal*, who was the first that ever had the Title of Duke in *England*.

1338.
Southampton
burnt. The *French* having got a Fleet ready, in Order to intercept any Forces that *K. Edward* should transport, came before *Southampton*, and by the Help of their Gallies, almost reduc'd it to Ashes; but with the Loss of their Commander, and 300 Soldiers were repuls'd the next Day.

Pope *Benedict* sent over two Cardinals to extinguish this increasing Flame: But one of them in Speech to the Clergy, seem'd to favour the *French* Clergy; upon which the Archbishop of *Canterbury* stood up, and protested that the Cardinal's Arguments were vain and frivolous. Whereupon they soon departed, and it was publish'd in all Parts of *England*, that *K. Edward* had a Right to the Crown of *France*, which he design'd to prosecute by all honourable Methods.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(253)

And now all Things being ready, K. *Edward* with
ay of his Nobility, went on Board his royal Navy
at *Harwich*, in Number about 500 Sail, and had a
perous Gale, till he arriv'd at *Antwerp*, where vast
ongs of People came from all Parts to see him,
his magnificent Court. After some Stay here, he
at to *Cologne*, whither the Emperor came to meet

K. *Edward*
goes into
Flanders.

The Interview was surprisingly pompous: In the
ist of the Market-Place, were two royal Thrones
Red, one for the Emperor, and one for K. *Ed-*
ward. Here the Emperor defied the King of *France*,

His Inter-
view with
the Emper-
or.

nounced him an Enemy to the Empire; and then by
rument under his Hand, he constituted K. *Edward*
Vicar General of the *Roman* Empire; and after
he enter'd into a League offensive and defensive
the Term of seven Years. After K. *Edward*'s Re-
to *Antwerp*, he form'd several Alliances with the
ids and Governors of the Low Countries, among
om he and his royal Family continued with great
re and Esteem above a whole Year. These Things

A. D. 1339.
K. *Edward*
enters
France.

s happily settled, K. *Edward* enters *France* with an
ny of 40000 Men, where in five Weeks Time he
ag'd the Territories of *Cambresis*, *Vernandois*, *Tieras-*
and Artois. In the mean Time K. *Philip* with great-
Numbers, was incamp'd in *Cambresis*, and resolved
to move from thence till he had fought his Ene-
s: To which End he sends a Message to K. *Edward*,

if he would chuse any open Place, he would give
Battle. K. *Edward* by a particular Herald, sent
the King of *France* a Challenge, to fight his whole
ny on what Day he would appoint, which was ac-
ted by K. *Philip*, who fixed on *Friday* the 22^d of

A Day of
Battle ap-
pointed.

per; but, when both Armies were drawn up in
ler of Battle, K. *Philip* refus'd to fight, being dis-
ragged by his Officers in a Council of War, and by
ters from the King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, who by
Rules of Astrology declar'd that he would be over-
ne if he fought with K. *Edward* at that Time. Up-
which the *French* retir'd into *Flanders*; and K. *Ed-*
ward seeing no Likelihood of an Action, remov'd to-
rds *Hainault*. And thus this Campaign ended.

The *Flemings* declar'd they would no longer engage
an offensive War against *France*, unless K. *Edward*
uld first assume the Title and Arms of that King-
dom.

A. D. 1340.

K. Edward
takes upon
him the
Arms of
France.

Comes into
England.

Puts to Sea
again.

Destroys the
French Fleet.

K. Edward
enters France.

dom. To this the King consented, and placed this Motto under his Shield, *Dieu Et Mon Droit, God and my Right*; declaring that his Confidence was only in God, and the Justice of his Cause. The February following the King leaving the Queen and his Children at Antwerp, sail'd for England; where in a Parliament at Westminster, he obtain'd Supplies to enable him to proceed in his intended Conquest: In Return he granted a general Pardon, forgave all Arrears of Farmers and Accountants, and all old Debts due to any of his Predecessors: And likewise he confirm'd *Magna Charta* and the Charter of Forests, with some others. And now nothing was talk'd of, but the Conquest of France. K. Edward being ready to repass the Sea, receiv'd Intelligence that the French lay near Sluice in Flanders, with a Fleet of 400 Ships to intercept him. Notwithstanding which the King put to Sea with between two and three hundred Sail, resolving to force his Way thro' the Enemy's Fleet. The two Fleets coming in Sight of each other, the French Admirals resolv'd, if possible, to take K. Edward; and falling down upon the English, an obstinate Fight began, which continued from ten in the Morning to seven at Night; when the French, tho' much superior in Number, were oblig'd to submit to the Strength and Courage of the English; and to avoid their Fury, Multitudes of 'em leap'd into the Sea, and not above thirty of the French Vessels escap'd. In this Fight the French lost about 30000 Men. This was the greatest Sea-Fight that had ever happen'd in the narrow Seas, and the first in which a King of England commanded in Person. At first none dared to acquaint K. Philip of this Disaster, but by Means of his Jester, who often cried out, *Cowardly Englishmen! Faint-hearted Englishmen!* The Frenchmen leap'd bravely into the Sea, and the Englishmen had not Courage to follow them: By which artificial Turn Philip was made sensible of this Overthrow. After this memorable Victory, K. Edward landed in Flanders, and shortly after enters France with the finest Army that ever any English King commanded, being near a hundred thousand well disciplin'd Men; where after ravaging the Country, he sat down before Tournay, designing to make it a Place both of Arms and Refuge. K. Philip on the other Side had provided an Army, not inferior to the other in Numbers; with which he advanced toward K. Edward.

war.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(237)

Edward's Camp. K. *Edward* sent him a Message, to avoid ^{Challenges} the Effusion of Blood, to invite him to single Com- ^{K. Philip,} bat, or to bring only a hundred Men into the Field; or otherwise within ten Days to come to a general Engagement. To which Challenge *Philip* would give no direct Answer, because the Message was not to him as King of *France*, but as *Philip* of *Valois*. All *Europe* stood amaz'd, and impatiently expected the Event of this War; when after three Months Continuance near *Tournay*, and no great Action perform'd, *Jane de Valois*, Sister to K. *Philip*, and Mother to K. *Edward's* Queen, by her admirable Management of her Brother and Son-in-law, brought both Kings to a Parley, which produced a Truce for one Year: And shortly after ^{Truce con-} both Armies were disbanded. Whereupon K. *Edward* ^{cluded for a} returned home with his Queen, who had remained three ^{Year.} years in those Parts, and had brought forth two Sons *Lionel* and *John*.

The King upon his Return began to redress the ^{A. D. 1341.} ^{*Edward* re-} abuses that had crept in during his Absence, by the ^{gulates A-} mismanagement of his chief Officers and Ministers of ^{buses at} ^{home.} State: Some he imprisoned, and turned others out of their Places. In the Prosecution of whom he was so active and vigorous, that *John* Archbishop of *Canterbury* boldly charged the King with the Breach of *Magna Charta*. The King made it appear that the Archbishop by his ill Management, in not performing his Duty, was the Cause of making him desist from his Designs; and that he privately practis'd against the King's good Fortunes in *France*. This occasion'd warm Contests between them.

About this Time the Pope put *Flanders* under an ^{Pope inter-} Interdict, for having sided with K. *Edward* against *Philip* ^{dicts Flaw-} King of *France*. But notwithstanding the Interdict, ^{dors,} they continued stedfast, and declar'd *Edward* lawful King of *France*, and *Philip* a Usurper. The Emperor ^{Emperor a-} *Lewis* abandoned K. *Edward*, and revoked the Vicar- ^{bandons K.} ^{*Edward.*} ship of the Empire, on Pretence that the Truce was concluded without him: This done, he entred into an Alliance with *France*. But this Defection of the Em- ^{A. D. 1342.} ^{New Con-} peror was soon made up by the bringing in a new ^{tests in} ^{*France.*} Ally, within the Body of the Kingdom of *France*: For there hapned a great Contest about the Succession to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, between *Charles de Blois* and *John de Montfort*. The Parliament of *Paris* de-
VOL. I (S) cided

cided this in Favour of *Charles*. Upon which *Montfort* repaired to *K. Edward*, to whom he did Homage for his Dukedom, was receiv'd with great Applause, and his Title acknowledged good. Each King having thus acknowledg'd a Duke of *Bretagne*, both in Honour thought themselves obliged to support the Title of their favourite Duke to the Dukedom. *Montfort* returned to *Bretagne* with Satisfaction and Assistance, and after some Encounters with the Enemy, was taken and sent Prisoner to *Paris*. His Lady pursued his Quarrel, and at the Head of his Forces, with *K. Edward's* Assistance surpris'd and defended many strong Places in *Bretagne*. Not long after *K. Edward* went over in Person to *Bretagne* with fresh Assistance, and lying before *Vannes*, an Army of 40000 Men came to give him Battle: But being just ready to engage, two Cardinals sent from Pope *Clement VI* concluded a Truce for three Years. *Montfort* died soon after, and so the greatest Part of *Bretagne* fell to *Charles de Blois*.

A three
Years Truce
between
France and
England.

Revolution
in *Scotland*.

During these Wars with *France* the Face of Affairs in *Scotland* was mightily changed: For upon *K. Edward's* Departure from that Kingdom, *K. David's* Party by the Assistance of *France* gained many Advantages over *Baliol* and his Adherents, who at length was obliged to abandon the Kingdom, and retired into *England*. Upon which *K. David* with his Queen, and many of the *Scots* Nobility, returned from *France* into *Scotland* after nine Years Absence, and peaceably entred upon the Government.

K. David re-
ford.

A D. 1343.
Statute of
Provisors.

King Edward, upon his Return, after the Truce with *France*, enacted the Statute of Provisors, upon this Occasion. Pope *Clement VI*. by Way of Provision had bestowed several of the best Benefices in *England*, upon Foreigners, his Creatures. For the Prevention of a Practice so odious to the King and Parliament, it was by this Statute made High Treason or Death for any Person to bring such Papal Provisions into the Kingdom. The King then in the most handsome Manner represented to the Pope, "how derogatory to the State of the Kingdom such Provisions were; and "how by these Usurpations of his Predecessors, not "only Strangers, but Enemies to the Realm, were "prefer'd before Natives: By which Means the Na-
tion's

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(259)

tion's Treasure was transported, the Churches un-
served, and many other Enormities occasioned, con-
trary to the Honour of God, and the Peace of the
Nation." In the Beginning of this Parliament, young
Edward was created Prince of *Wales*, and invested with
Coronet and a Ring of Gold.

Young Ed-
ward made
Prince of
Wales.

In the Beginning of this Year the King erected a spa-
cious Room in *Windsor* Castle, 200 Foot Diameter,
which he called *The Round Table*, at which he design'd
to treat all the Knights he had invited from foreign
States, to come to a solemn Tournament, to be kept
24 Days together; and issued out Letters of safe
conduct for that Purpose. *Philip*, the *French* King,
looked upon these Things as Preparations against him-
self; and therefore to prevent the Knights and great
Men of *Germany* and *Italy*, from repairing to K. Ed-
ward, he erected the same at his Court. He ended not
this; but his Jealousies against the King of *England* put
him upon open Acts of Cruelty, and caused him to put
Death several great Men of *Normandy*, *Picardy*, and
Flemish, only because they were *English* in Affection.

A. D. 1344;
Feast of the
Round Table
instituted.

upon which K. *Edward* declared, that the Truce was
broken, and he sent Word to his Holiness, to prevent
further Mediation; that the Sword, not the Tongue,
should determine his Right and Title. And to shew he
was in earnest, he immediately dispatched into *Gascony*,
valiant *Henry*, Earl of *Derby*, with a noble Army,
where he performed many great Actions, and took se-
veral Cities, Towns and Castles. After a glorious
campaign, in which he defeated a superior Body of
French, of whom 7000 were kill'd, he returns to *Bour-*
ne with a great Booty and many Prisoners. And
as we must not forget this noble Lord's Generosity
in the taking of *Bergerac* by Storm, where he gave the
whole Plunder to every Soldier, as he should seize it.

Truce with
France
broken.

A. D. 1345;

he named *Reth* seiz'd upon a House belonging to the
French, where he found an immense Sum of Money;
he acquainted the General of his Prize, to whom the ge-
nerous Earl answered, I have given my Word and Ho-
nour, and therefore the House and Money in it is thy
own, be it ever so much.

Earl of *Der-*
by's Genero-
sity.

By this Time K. *Edward*, having settled his Affairs
in *England*, and prepar'd a great Fleet and a brave Army,
resolved to go into *France* in Person, accompanied by
the Prince of *Wales*, then in the 16th Year of his Age,
together

A. D. 1346;
K. *Edward's*
Expedition
against
France;

King Edward
sawd lands in
Normandy.

Marches to
Paris.

His Passage
over the
Somme.

He waits
for the
French at
Cressy.

together with all the chief Nobility of the Nation whom, at *Southampton*, he made a short Speech which he charged them, "to behave themselves as Men, since he resolved to send back his Fleet to his first landing in *France*; but if any Man fail'd him, he had his Liberty to stay in *England*. To which they all answered, "That they were to follow so brave a Commander, were it to its self." After a few Days Sail he arrived at *Hogne* in *Normandy*, where he landed; and knighted the Prince, and some other young Quality, he entered into the Country, which disappointed him, resolving to take a full Revenge upon the Towns and People of *Normandy*, for the Blood of his Friends, who had been executed there during the late War. His Army, consisting of 30000 Foot and 1500 Horse, marched thro' the Country, making a dreadful havoc wherever they came, almost to the Walls of *Paris*, and then encamped at *Poissy*, K. Philip not coming out and fight him. After five Days the King passed into *Beauvoisis*, with Design to recover his own Country of *Ponthieu*. K. Philip on the Desolation of his Country, and looking upon Edward's Retreat as a Flight, marched after him above a hundred thousand Men, besides twelve thousand posted on the River *Somme*, at a Place called *La Zaque*, below *Abbeville*, to oppose K. Edward's Passage of the River there; where when K. Edward arrived, he found the Enemy so advantageously posted that the Passage was concluded to be impracticable. This Hero, resolved to pass, or perish in the Attempt, plung'd into the River, crying out, *They who will follow me*. Upon which he pressed forward, maugre all Opposition, gain'd the opposite Shore, soon put the Enemy to Flight, with the Loss of their Men. K. Philip, who thought himself secure, he being inclosed between the *Somme* and his numerous Army, lost all Patience, when he saw their Passage, and the Defeat of his Troops, he marched immediately after the *English*; who retired into *Ponthieu*, till they came near a Town called *Cressy*, where K. Edward encamped his Army in an open Country, and then declared, that he would wait there till he had recovered this Province, the Province of Queen *Eleanor*, his Grandmother; c

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(261)

ing, with his own Motto, *God defend my Right*. The *French* advanced with four Times the Number. K. *Edward* spent the Night in Devotions, and received the Sacrament with his Son and the chief Nobility. In the Morning he divided his Army, consisting of about thirty thousand effective Men, into three Bodies. The Prince of *Wales* commanded one; the Earls of *Arundel* and *Northampton* another; and the King the third. Then the King mounted on a Milk-white Nag, rode from Rank to Rank, and by his noble Speeches, inspired Courage into the most faint-hearted in the Army. Then putting the whole Army into the best Posture the Time and Place would permit, he committed his Cause to God, and calmly waited for the Enemy. When the good Order of the *English* was told to the King of *Bohemia*, he answered like an experienced Soldier, I see the *English* are resolved to conquer or die. About three in the Afternoon, K. *Philip*, at the Head of his vast Army, advanced; and ordered the *Genoese* Cross-bows to begin the Attack. The *English* Long-bows received them, broke them to Pieces, and put them to Flight, which caused a great Confusion in K. *Philip's* Army. Another Body of *French* fell on that Part which the Prince of *Wales* commanded, with such Fury, and superior Numbers, that any Commander but himself would have been obliged to submit; and a Message was sent to the King, who was with the Body of Reserve, to desire he would send him some Succour. The King asked, whether he was alive? The Messenger replied, *Yes, but in great Danger of being overpowered with Numbers*. Then replied the King with his usual Courage, *Let them know, that while my Son is alive, they send to me for no Assistance; for the Honour of this glorious Day shall be his*. Tho the Prince had hitherto behaved with incredible Courage, yet this Answer added new Life and Vigour to him, and his undaunted Supporters; so that this young General pressing forwards with an uncommon Intrepidity, far outdid his Father's and the World's Expectations. At length the *French*, finding by woful Experience, that their Numbers were unequal to such consummate Valour and Conduct as they found in the *English*, betook themselves to Flight, and the *English* obtain'd a compleat Victory; the Night putting an End to the Conflict. In this Battle the *French* lost the two Kings of *Bohemia* and *Majorca*; five Princes, and

K. *Edward*
prepares for
Battle.

Black Prince
obtains a glo-
rious Victory.

and many of the chief Nobility of *France*, *Brabant*, and *Germany*: Besides these, there fell 24 Banners of Knights, 1500 Gentlemen, 4000 Men of Arms, Esquires, and above 30000 of the Commons of *France*. And all this without the Loss of any of the Nobility, or of many of the common Soldiers: At this, *K. Edward* embraced his Son, with the Joy, commends his Valour, and both offer most hearty Thanks to the Almighty for his Goodness in giving them this Victory. The next day a Party was sent out to discover the vanquishing Army, who met many that knew not what had happened, but were coming to join the *French King*. They were attack'd, and slew 7000 of them; the rest fled: Many of Stragglers, and those who lost their Way, more slain than in the Battle. *K. Philip*, with a small Company fled to the Castle of *Braye*, where the Guarding who he was; he answered, *The Fortune of War* and being known, was let in. At *Amiens* he stood against *Godemar*, for suffering *K. Edward* to pass *Somme*, and threatened him with Death: But the Count of *Haynault* replied, That it was not in *Godemar's* Power to resist the King of *England*, when the Power of *France* could not. *K. Edward*, on the other Hand, resolving to make the best use of his Victory, went directly, and laid Siege to *Calais*, the chief Port of *France*; and having invested it both by Sea and Land, resolved to reduce it by Famine. *John de Vienne*, Governor, for the better Subsistence of his Forces, forced out of the Town 1700 poor uselefs Men, and shut the Gates against them; which when *K. Edward* saw, instead of driving them back, and driving them out of an unprecedented, and most Christian Compassion, permitted them to pass through his Camp unmolested, giving them all a good Dinner, and Pence a piece, and Liberty to go where they pleased. *Philip* resolved if possible, to relieve this beleaguered Place. Accordingly he prevailed with his allies, the *Scotts*, to make a Diversion in *England*; he gathered a Force sufficient to attack *K. Edward's* his Trenches. *David*, King of *Scotland*, entered *England* with an Army of above 60000 Men, not doubting Success, because the main Strength of the Nation was with the King in *France*. But he was soon convinced of his Error; for *K. Edward's* heroick Queen,

K. Edward
besieges *Calais*.

His Generosity.

Scotts invade *England*.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(263)

d of her Nobility and Forces, met them, and gave The Scots
beaten and
King David
taken.
such an Overthrow, that they lost at least 15000
upon the Spot; K. *David*, with a great Number

Persons of Distinction, were taken Prisoners. This
ended on a *Saturday*, just six Weeks after the Battle

of *Bressay*. To compleat the Triumphs of this glo-
rious Year, Sir *Thomas Dagworth* with 800 Men of Sir Thomas
Dagworth's
Valour.

Men, and 100 Archers, overthrew *Charles de Blois* in
battle, with great Slaughter, tho' he had the incre-

ased Odds of thirty to one. Not long after *Charles de*

was lying at the Siege of *Roche-Darien*, with 1200

Men, 600 armed Men, 2000 Cross-Bow-Men, and

Numbers of other Infantry, Sir *Thomas*, with on-

ly 500 Men of Arms, and 400 Archers, attack'd him,

and drove all his Forces out of the Field, and took *Charles*

himself Prisoner.

During these Successes in diverse Parts, K. *Edward* A. D. 1347.
Calais in
great Di-
stress.
went in Person before *Calais*; the Garison was re-

duced to a languishing Condition; all their Provisions
were spent, as appeared by a Letter from the Governor

Philip, which accidentally fell into K. *Edward's*

Hands. This Letter K. *Edward* sent immediately to

Philip, requiring him to hasten to the Relief of *Ca-*

lais which for his Sake suffered such Miseries. Up-

on this K. *Philip* advanced with an Army of 150000

; and about the latter End of *July* offered K. *Ed-*

ward Battle; which for the present he refused: But as

as he had received a Reinforcement of 17000

he not only offered the *French* King Battle, but

at his own Cost would fill up the Trenches, and re-

move all Impediments. This generous Offer so ter-

rified K. *Philip*, that he set Fire to his Tents, and re-

turned with Precipitation to *Amiens*. Upon which the

Governor of *Calais* took down the *French* Standard, and

placed that of *England* in its Place, and begged a Par-

ley, which K. *Edward* granted upon these Terms: Surrendered
to K. Ed-
ward.

First, six of the chief Burghers of the Place should come

to him, bare-headed and bare-footed, in their Shirts,

and with halters about their Necks, and the Keys of the

City and Castle in their Hands, and submit themselves

to the King's Pleasure; and he would shew Mercy

to the rest. The six that came in this Manner to the

were ordered to immediate Execution; but the Queen's
mercy.

affectionate Queen, by her Intercession, obtain'd
their Lives, took them into her Apartment, new cloath-

ed them, ordered them a Dinner, and six Napier; and then set them at full Liberty. As worthy of so great a Princess! And thus the City of *Calais* was put into the Hands of *K. Edward*, which continued in the Possession of the *English* above two hundred Years after. Upon the 3^d of the Town, by the Mediation of two Cardinals, others, a Truce for one Year was concluded, sworn to by both Kings. *K. Edward* having Sir *Amery de Parv*, an *Italian*, Governor of it, and settled his other Affairs in *France*, returned *England* with great Glory and Renown.

Calais made an English Colony.

K. Edward returns.

A. D. 1348. Elected Emperor of Germany.

And to add to his Glory, this Year the States many elected him their Emperor, and sent Ambassage to him, to desire him to accept of the Empire; but the King modestly declined it, telling his Ambassadors, that he would not undertake so great a thing, till he had gain'd the Crown of *France*, which Right belonged to him.

A. D. 1349. A great Plague.

The Year following, God was pleased to visit the *English* Nation, by sending a dreadful Plague amongst them, which raged with such Fury, that the Church-Yard called the *Charter-House*, in the City of *London*, were buried above 50000 Persons in that died in *London*.

Design to betray Calais.

During these Calamities, Sir *Amery de Parv* to surrender *Calais* for 20000 Crowns to Lord Governor of *St. Omers*; of which *K. Edward* took Notice, went thither, with the Prince of *Wales* and several of the Nobility, the very Night it was betrayed, and lodg'd himself in the Castle to seize the Money was actually brought and paid; Knights, and 100 Men of Arms were let into the Castle, and immediately made Prisoners to their surprise, by the King's Guards, who lay undisturbed. The Lord *Charny* lay under the Town with considerable Force, to take Possession of it as soon as the Gates were open; but the King issued out at one Gate, and the Prince at another, and fell so furiously on him, that he routed his Forces, and took him several great Men Prisoners. The next Night he ordered a splendid Supper, as well for the Prisoners as for his Nobility; and to their great Surprise, (till then *incognito*) coming in amongst them, he

King in Person prevents it.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(265)

Lord Charny, that it was cowardly to steal that from him by Night, which he fairly won by Day. And having made Sir John Beauchamp Governor of Calais, the King returned into England in Triumph, bringing with him the chief of the Prisoners.

And now the renowned Edward, resolving to give A.D. 1350. the highest Incouragement to all martial Virtues, instituted the most noble Order of Knighthood, called the Order of the Garter instituted. Garter. As to the Original, Form and Nature, End and Design of this Order, the Reader may consult Mr. *Asmole's* elaborate Treatise upon that Subject. About this Time some Spanish Men of War, who before had done the English Merchants much Damage, appear'd in the British Chanel. The King upon Notice of this, immediately got what Ships ready he could, and went on board in Person, with the Prince of Wales, came up with the Spaniards near Winchelsey, attacked them, tho' much superior to him in Number and Force; and after an obstinate Fight, obtained a complete Victory over them. Spanish Fleet defeated. He took 26 of their Capital Ships, sunk many others, only a few made their Escape. This Year died Philip King of France, and was succeeded by his Son John, Duke of Normandy, who renewed the Truce with the English till Pentecost in 1356. But this Truce was not well observed on either Side, each Nation taking what Advantage they could upon the other. Sir John Beauchamp, Governor of Calais, being out with 300 Men at Arms, and 200 Archers, on Horseback, to see what they could get, was attacked by the Lord Beaulieu, worsted, and taken Prisoner. Sir Robert Herle, who succeeded him as Governor for the present, marched out, and with inconsiderable Loss, returned with so large a Booty of Cattle, that a fat Ox at Calais would hardly yield sixteen Pence Sterling. Various Successes in France. The Earl of Lancaster also, lately made Duke (and the second in England) was sent by the King to Calais, who burnt and plunder'd all the Coasts, set Fire to above a hundred Vessels, and returned to Calais with great Booty and many Prisoners. A.D. 1352. In Bretagne Sir Walter Bently and Sir Robert Knolls, with 300 Men at Arms, and 600 Archers, attacked the Marshal of France, with four Times their Number, and defeated them. In this Encounter, 13 Lords, 140 Knights, 100 Esquires, 500 Men at Arms, and great Numbers of common Soldiers were slain; and 9 Lords, 140 Knights and Esquires,

quires, taken Prisoners. All this was done in Breach of the Truce. In the same Year *Gaiffes* be- tray'd to the *English*. this the *French* King complain'd to the King of *land*; who answered, that *Philip* his Father, by buying to purchase *Calais* in the same Manner, had the *English* Commanders, that buying and selling Towns was no Breach of the Truce.

A. D. 1353. K. Edward resolving to make *England* a flock as well as glorious Nation, settled the Mart of Wool at *Westminster*, *Chichester*, *Canterbury*, *coln*, *Warwick*, *Tork*, *New-Castle*, *Exeter*, *Caerm*, *Bristol* and *Hull*; judging it better to advance his Towns than let Foreigners run away with the Advantage, as they long had done: And the Parliament enacted many wise Ordinances for the government ordering this Staple. It was in this Parliament common Harlots, in Order to be rendred modest, were requir'd to wear Hoods striped with verse Colours; and to wear their Garments the Side outwards. In the next Parliament the *Lorger Mortimer*, Grandson to the famous *Mortimer* was attainted and executed 23 Years before, was restor'd to Blood, and the Judgment against the father revers'd.

A. D. 1354. About this Time great Mediation was made Pope to reconcile the two Kings of *France* and *gland*, and to establish a Peace; but to no Purpose. For K. *John* of *France* giving the Dukedom of *comy* to his Son the *Dauphin*, K. *Edward* being the same on his Son the Prince of *Wales*, commanding him to defend his Right with the Sword.

A. D. 1355. New Con- tacts about *Gastony*. Black Prince enters it. Prince, with many great Lords, 1000 Men at and 1400 Archers, sail'd immediately for *France* where he performed many Actions worthy his and Courage. And K. *Edward*, to facilitate the Designs, went in Person into *France*, where ravag'd the Country as far as *Hesdin*, and then turn'd back to *England* to recover the Town of *wick*, which the *Scots* had taken by Surprise; they burnt, dismantled, and then abandon'd it. King call'd a Parliament, which granted a Supply upon every Sack of Wool. K. *Edward* entered *land* in a hostile Manner. At *Roxborough*, *Bali*

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(262)

the Kings of Scotland, surrendered to K. Edward all Right and Title he had to that Kingdom, reserving a Pension of 2050*l.* per An. David the other being still a Prisoner. In the mean Time the va- A.D. 1356.

Prince of Wales did nothing but Wonders in it, continually infesting the Country, taking Cities, Towns and Castles, and gaining prodigious Booty, which he returned in a triumphant Manner to France. K. John at length having got an Army of 15000 Men, advanced towards this invincible Prince, but had but about 8000 Men with him; and overtook him near the City of Poitiers, where both Parties prepared for Battle. The Prince, riding from Rank to Rank, told his Men, "That Victory was in the Hands of God, and not always gain'd by Multitudes; which they obtain'd, immortal Honours would be their Reward, or else Death would put an End to their Hours: But for his own Part he was resolved either to die or conquer." A bloody Battle ensued, and continued above four Hours, with various Success.

But at length the English, by their Conduct and Courage, gain'd a compleat Victory. K. John and his Son Philip, then about thirteen Years of Age, were Prisoners. This great Victory was obtain'd on the 19th of September, to the Renown of the English and the English Nation. Such were the Numbers of the slain of both high and low, as considering the small Number of the English, would appear incredible in Story: Besides, when the English returned to the Chace, they found they had twice as many Prisons as themselves: And therefore let most of them take their Paroles, and fixed their Ransom at a moderate Rate. The Loss on the English Side was very considerable; not one Lord was kill'd. The Prince is modest, civil, and most obliging Behaviour to his royal Prisoner, gain'd himself the Respect and Veneration of all Men. The Prince having spent the Winter at Bourdeaux, in April set Sail for England, arriving at Plimouth, and by easy Journeys came to London, where he made a magnificent publick Entry thro' the City, till he came to Westminster-Hall, which was at Noon; where in the most solemn Manner he presented to the King his Father, the Person of K. John Prisoner, whom K. Edward met, and caress'd him as much Respect as if he was only come to give him

Battle of Poitiers

John King of France taken Prisoner.

A.D. 1357. Prince with French King arrive in England.

him a Visit. K. John and his Son were honourably lodg'd and entertained in the *Savoy*, and the rest were fixed in other convenient Places. And now *David* King of *Scotland* (who had been a Prisoner here about eleven Years) was releas'd, upon paying a Ransom of 100,000 Marks Sterling, and upon Condition of demolishing certain Forts and Castles.

David K. of Scotland releas'd.

A. D. 1258.

A Tournament at Windsor.

Q. Isabel dies.

Miseries of France.

A. D. 1259.

K. Edward invades it.

A. D. 1260.

A Peace given to France.

This Year on the 23^d Day of *April*, the Feast of *St. George* was to be held at *Windsor*, attended with publick Joustings and Tournaments: And the King by Proclamation declared, that all that would come to it should have his Letters of safe Conduct for three Weeks. This Year died *Q. Isabel*, K. *Edward's* Mother, in the sixty third Year of her Age, after about 4 Years Confinement. *France* suffered all the Desolations and Miseries, that can be imagined; it being without a Head, the Members at Variance with each other, and the whole Kingdom over-run with dissolute Soldiers of diverse Nations, who having no General to restrain them, wasted all at Pleasure, and by unheard of Insolences discover'd all the Miseries of Anarchy and Confusion.

Notwithstanding two Cardinals at the *English* Court had laboured to put an End to those Troubles, yet the *French* could not be prevailed on to do any thing for the Liberty of their King. K. *Edward* therefore looking upon himself as deluded by the *French*, sail'd from *Sandwich* with a Fleet of 1100 Sail for *Calais*; from thence with an Army of 100000 Men he set forward. The Army was divided into three different Bodies, commanded by the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Prince of *Wales* and himself. The Terror of these Armies, which they could not oppose, soon put the Duke of *Burgundy* upon a Composition; and for a Sum of two hundred thousand Florins of Gold he saved *Burgundy* from being plunder'd. At length the King advanced to the Walls of *Paris*, which the Regent of *France* kept with a powerful Army. K. *Edward*, after having ravaged the Country as far as *Chartres* and *Orleans*, at length granted a Peace to the miserable *French*, upon these honourable Conditions: " That he should keep

" all his Territories in *France*, without any Dependence upon the King of *France*: And that the *French* should pay for their King's Ransom, 500000*l.* That Hostages should be given as Sureties; and that the King

" of

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(269)

of *England* should renounce all Right and Title to the Crown of *France*. That the *French* should not assist the *Scots*, nor the *English* the *Flemings*." And the King of *Navarre* and his Brother were included in the Articles: This Peace was concluded the 8th of *May*, 1360. Soon after which, K. *Edward* honourably conducts K. *John* to *Calais*; and at their Parting, each express'd a hearty and affectionate Regard for the other.

French King releas'd.

As K. *Edward* in this Peace had shewn an unprecedented Generosity to his Enemies, so he was willing to be equally bountiful to his own Subjects; and therefore restored by his Letters-Patent, all the Houses, Lands, and Estates to the Priors-Aliens, which were taken from them 23 Years before.

A. D. 1361.
Lands restored to the Priors-Aliens.

The Prince of *Wales* being in the 31st Year of his Age, married *Joan* Countess Dowager of *Kent*. The next Year he was made Prince of *Aquitain* or *Gascony*, and was solemnly invested with that Principality by his Father. This Year the Parliament pass'd that memorable Statute which ordains, That all Pleading in the Courts of *Westminster* should be for the future in *English*; which had been before in *French*. The King being 50 Years old, proclaim'd a Jubilee, granted a general and free Pardon to all Debtors to the Crown and Criminals; and also confirmed *Magna Charta* again. And now he declar'd his second Son *Lionel*, Duke of *Clarence*; his third Son, *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and his fourth Son *Edmund*, Earl of *Cambridge*. After which he spent the rest of the Year in publick Diversions, and taking a Progress thro' many Parts of the Kingdom. In the Beginning of the following Year, Prince *Edward*, with the Princess and a noble Retinue, sail'd for *Gascony*, where he kept a very splendid Court for the Space of three Years, and governed the Country with a great deal of Clemency: And in the mean while K. *Edward*'s Court had been honour'd with the Presence of three Kings at the same Time, viz. *David* of *Scotland*, *John* of *France*, and *Peter* of *Cyprus*; who all three, together with K. *Edward*, were at once entertained by Sir *Henry Picard*, Merchant, and formerly Lord Mayor of *London*, at a noble Entertainment he made at his own House.

A. D. 1362.
All Pleading to be in English.

A. D. 1363.
Black Prince goes into Gascony.

Four Kings entertained by one Man in London.

In the Beginning of the following Spring, *John* King of *France* was taken dangerously ill of a languishing Distemper, which put an End to his Life, on the 8th

of

(270)

The History of ENGLAND.

A. D. 1365
John King
of France
dies.

of April, to the great Grief of K. Edward, his
and the French Nobility. K. Edward made him-
ble Funeral at his own Expence, and caused him
to be transported into France, where it was interred
the 7th of May at St. Dennis. This Year the
Forces which K. Edward had formerly sent to
Montfort, against de Blois, acquired great Honour
their Valour, in a pitched Battle against Charles
Blois, whom they entirely routed. This Battle
fought at Auray, near Vannes. The Loss on the
my's Side was very great: For there were slain
of Blois himself, his Brother John, and many
Lords, a thousand Men of Arms, with a great
ber of common Soldiers; and many were taken Pri-
ers; after which Montfort, with the Consent of
King of England his Protector, did Homage to
the new King of France as Duke of Brittany
was accepted.

Battle of Au-
roy.

At this Time indeed, there was scarce a Part
World in which there was any Action, where the
of English Valour had not spread: Even one John
wood a Taylor, when he left England, revived the
Discipline so much in Italy, that he received Honour
ment from the Italian Princes, and got such Riches
and Riches by his Valour, that his Fame and
remain among their most renowned Princes for
to this very Day.

English Va-
lour how
much re-
nown'd.

A. D. 1366.
Pope's Pre-
tensions
quash'd.

This Year the Pope demands of K. Edward the
mous Tribute from England and Ireland, which was
granted by K. John. The King enraged at this
exorbitant Pretences, resolved to curb his Pride
lessen his Authority in the Nation; and therefore
a Parliament to discuss this important Affair, and
a full Deliberation they declar'd, "That neither
" John, nor any other King could bring himself
" Kingdom to any such Subjection, without the
" sent; And farther resolv'd that they would re-
" Pope to the utmost of their Power, if he made
" farther Claims in that Respect." Thus this
Demand of his Holiness was quash'd for ever
we do not find it was ever demanded since.

A. D. 1367.

This Year the renowned Prince of Wales, up-
on earnest Requests and great Promises, with the
sent of K. Edward, undertakes to assist Peter, King
Castile, to recover his Right against his natural

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(271)

ry who was made King, and *Peter* deposed. Accord-
g he pass'd over the *Pyrenean* Mountains into *Spain* Black Prince
a well disciplin'd Army of thirty thousand Men. assists Peter
y, to secure his new acquired Kingdom, had got of Castile.
ther a hundred thousand *Castilians*, *French* and *Sa-*
rs. These two unequal Armies met upon the Bor-
of *Castile* near *Najara*, and a general Battle en-
where the heroical Prince of *Wales* obtain'd a
mpleat Victory, with the Death of many thousands His Victory
his Adversaries; and *Bertram* the *French* General, at Najara
a many others, were taken Prisoners. *Peter*, as
as the Battle was over, returned his humble Thanks
he Prince for having regained him his Crown; who
ied, Sir, give your Thanks to God alone for this great
lory. The Prince continued with *Peter* till he had
ac'd him on the Throne at *Burgos*.

he Prince having done more than could be expect-
demands of *Peter* a Reward; but he being unable
unwilling to gratify the Prince, he was forced to re-
to *Bordeaux*, without Money to pay his Soldiers. Returns un-
er this *Peter* was again deposed and murdered by satisfied.

Brother *Henry*. The Prince, to pay his Army,
a'd his own Plate into Money; and when that prov-
insufficient, he laid a new Tax upon his Subjects of
fenny, called *Chimney-Money*; which provoked them
a dangerous Revolt. They appeal to the Court of
for Redress, and Prince *Edward* is summoned to Is summon-
at the Court at *Paris*, to answer these Com- ed to appear
plaints. The Prince answered, that he would come at- at Paris.
ded with sixty thousand Men. The King of *Eng-*
d complained to the Pope and the Emperor, of the
lack of Peace: This last made a Journey into *France*,
reconcile the two Kings, before whom the *English*
ambassadors alledged, that the *French* were the first In-
gers of the Treaty, by seizing *Pontbien*, and several
its of *Gascony*. The *French* alledged on the other
nd, That K. *Edward* had not made that publick Ro-
ciation of the Crown of *France*, which the Treaty
liged him to, nor did he withdraw his Troops out of
as soon as he ought; and that therefore the
each was on the *English* Side. Thus both Sides had
ir Pretences, but neither would come to an Agree-
ent.

Upon this the King call'd a Parliament, in which A Breach
laid before them the Breach of the Peace. He with France
then

then desired Supplies, and obtain'd them; and by the Advice of Parliament, he re-assumed his Claim to the Crown of France; and altered his Seal accordingly. The Duke of Lancaster invades France on the Side of Calais, while the Prince of Wales was attempting to gain the revolted Towns on the other Side; but not much was done, and the Duke returned Home. The Earl of Warwick goes over with Forces, but dies in the Expedition.

Queen Philippa's Death.

A. D. 1370.

Sir Thomas Knollys, his Aid in France.

Black Prince takes Limerick by Storm.

He returns to England. A. D. 1371.

Duke of Lancaster returns.

Flemings defeated at Sea. A. D. 1372.

This Year the Nation was sensibly grieved for the Death of the most excellent Queen Philippa, who had been Wife to K. Edward 44 Years, and had him 12 Children. Sir Thomas Knollys, with his Aid in France, over-ran the Country as far as the Loire, rased Vermandois, Champagne, La Brie, and the Isle de France; and burnt all round Paris; yet the King of France would not march out of the City to oppose him. The Duke of Lancaster was sent with Forces to take the Black Prince, who was besieging Limoges, which he took by Storm, after a Month's Siege, putting above 3000 of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and bled the City to the Ground.

The Black Prince being now in a declining Condition, with respect to his Health, was advised by his Physicians to return into England, which he did, with his Princess, and Son Richard, born at Bourdeaux. He left his Brother, the Duke of Lancaster, to manage Affairs in Gascony, and returned to England, where he surrendered the Dukedom of Gascony to his Father, to be disposed of according to his Pleasure. The French, taking the Advantage of his Absence, won many Castles and Towns in Gascony; and the Loss of Sir John Chandos, a brave Commander, revived their Hopes. Long after, the Duke of Lancaster, and his Brother the Earl of Cambridge, returned out of Gascony, with their Ladies, Constance and Isabella, both Daughters of Peter, late King of Spain, whom they married; the Duke thereupon styling himself King, and his Brother Queen of Castile and Leon. About this Time the Duke of Hereford beat the Flemings at Sea, and took a great many of their Ships.

The following Year, the French having besieged Calais by Land, and Henry King of Castile assisting them by Sea, the Earl of Pembroke was sent to their Relief with forty great Ships; but being suddenly attacked

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(273)

by the *Spaniards*, after a bloody Fight, he was defeated, ^{*Spaniards*} himself taken Prisoner, and all the Fleet destroyed. ^{destroy the} *Robert*, notwithstanding this, held out. K. *Edward* resolving to relieve it, went in Person on board his Fleet with a mighty Force; and while they were under Sail, a violent Storm arose, and drove the whole Fleet back to the Coast of *England*, to his great Disappointment, and the useless Consumption of 90000*l.* Sterling. But this did not discourage him, nor oblige him to give over his Care for this important Place, which the *English* still defended with so much Courage and Bravery against the Enemy. *John*, Duke of *Bretagne*, married to *Mary*, ^{A. D. 1373} K. *Edward's* Daughter, resolved to venture his Fortune in the Service of the *English*, whom he intirely loved, came over to *England*, and had a Supply of Men and Money granted him, with which he made Head against the *French*, with various Success. In the mean Time the Duke of *Lancaster* marched with a powerful Army from *Calais*, and ravaged thro' the Body of the Kingdom of *France*, till he came to *Bordeaux*; and did incredible Damage to that Nation, meeting with very little or no Opposition in the Way; tho' by Distempers, and Want of Provisions, during these tedious Marches, he lost many of his Men, and most of his Horse. Not long after, a Day was appointed to decide the Fate of the Nation by a set Battle between the Duke of *Lancaster's* and the Duke of *Anjou's* Forces; but this was prevented by an untimely Truce, to which K. ^{A Truce} *Edward* had consented by reason of the Black Prince's Indisposition. The *French* made great Rejoycings, and boasted as if they had gained a compleat Victory; tho' what they gained, was no more than the common Effects of Policy. *Glequin* in the mean Time did much Damage to the *English* Party in *Guienne* and *Bretagne*; against whom Sir *Robert Knolls* acquitted himself in so extraordinary a Manner, that he alone was thought a fit Match for *Glequin*, and *Glequin* alone for Sir *Robert*. ^{*Lancaster ravages France.*}

The following Year the Duke of *Lancaster* returned ^{*English Affairs decline*} into *England*; upon which almost all *Gascony* revolted. ^{in France.} to the *French*; who taking Advantage of K. *Edward's* Age, the Prince's Sickneſs, and the Success of their Policy more than their Valour, began to shew themselves again. At *Bruges* a Treaty of Peace was negotiated; but all on the *French* Side was Colour and Pretence,

for at the same Time they made secret Preparations for new Attempts.

This Summer one *Alice Peirce*, a Person of no Quality, had by her Beauty and Artifice so much prevailed upon the aged King, as to be taken by him for his Mistress; and he having lately given her the new Title of *Lady of the Sun*, she rode from the Tower of London to *Smithfield* in a triumphal Chariot, accompanied with a vast Number of Lords, and Knights, Ladies, every Lady leading a Lord or a Knight by his Horse's Bridle, till they came to *Smithfield*, where a solemn Justing, or Tournament was performed.

A. D. 1375. The Duke of *Bretagne* suffered very much by the patch'd up Truce; and *Glewin* got more Advantage than he could by his Army, for the Duke had been driven him out of his Territories. All Wonder at this Management will cease, if we consider the Position of the *English* Affairs at this Time. The Prince of *Wales* was in a very bad State of Health; Plots were on foot by diverse Interests at Home; the Duke of *Lancaster* had an Eye to the Succession; Domestic Affairs grew disturbed; the King's Age was abused and ruled by his Concubine *Alice Peirce*, and his Treasures haunted by others; All which Things being sufficiently known to the *French*, they made a very advantageous Use of them.

A. D. 1376. The aged K. *Edward* was very sensible of all this, and to cure it, if possible, he called a Parliament at *Westminster*. The King's Wants and Weaknesses were laid before the House, and Supplies desired; but in the Offer of Contributions, they unanimously exhibited great Complaints, charging the King's Officers with fraud and Practices; and petitioned the King to remove from Court, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Lord Chamberlain *Latimer*, Dame *Alice Peirce*, and Sir *Richard* &c. The King, to get a little present Supply, removed these Persons. The Prince of *Wales* seem'd to find fault with these Proceedings for the sake of his Son *Richard*, finding some Reason to fear the Duke of *Lancaster*. The King being now in the 50th Year of his Reign, granted as a Pardon as another Jubilee, which was kept with Magnificence. But this Jubilee was soon changed into Sorrow throughout the Nation, for the Death of a Prince, one of the most renowned for Magnanimity.

Black Prince dies.

The Reign of King EDWARD III.

(275)

our and Bravery, as well as Humanity, Courtesie, Wisdom, that ever graced the *English* Name and Honour. He died in the 46th Year of his Age, on the 8th of *June* 1376; and was interr'd at *Canterbury* with great Solemnity.

After this, the King recalls such Persons as by Petition *A. D. 1377.*

of the Parliament had been removed; and *Peter de Maule*, Speaker of the said Parliament, and a true Englishman, who had nobly expressed the Mind of the People in the aforesaid Reforms, was condemned to perpetual Imprisonment, by the Instigation of *Alice de Lacy*, and was committed Prisoner at *Nottingham*, with much Difficulty he regained his Liberty in about two Years Time.

John of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, governed as if he had been King; notwithstanding which the good old *K. Edward's* Affections were directed upon *Richard* the eldest Son of the late Prince of *Wales*. To shew this, he first made him Earl of *Chester*,

not long after Prince of *Wales*; and for a full Assurance and Security to his Succession, *K. Edward* persuaded all the Nobility of the Realm to take an Oath to accept and defend Prince *Richard* as lawful Heir and King of *England* after his Decease: And he caus'd him to take Place of all his own Children at an open solemnity in *Feast*.

His Son *Richard* declared Heir to the Crown.

About this Time the famous Dr. *John Wickliff* declared against the Abuses of Churchmen, Monks and Religious Orders; and publickly maintained several material Points and Propositions against the Church of *Rome*;

John Wickliff opposes Church-Power.

particularly against the Pope's Supremacy, the Infallibility of the Church, and Transubstantiation: And had gained many Disciples call'd *Lollards*, a Word implying a Sort of Weeds; tho' in Reality they endeavour'd to extirpate all pernicious Weeds, which Time, Sloth, and Fraud had introduced into the Church. The Pope condemned twenty three of *Wickliff's* Propositions as heretical;

whereupon *Wickliff* was cited to appear before the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and others in *St. Paul's*. The Duke of *Lancaster* and Lord Marshal conducted him thither, who order'd *Wickliff* to sit, having much to answer: The Bishop forbade it; at which the Duke told him, that he had rather pull him out by the

Hair of the Head than suffer such Indignities. The *Lollards* were so enraged at this Treatment of their Bishop, that the Duke and Lord Marshal with Difficulty

Great Dis-
turbance in
London.

culty escaped their Fury. The next Day the *Londoners* assemble in a mutinous Manner, break open the Marshal's lun, and set at Liberty some Prisoners; but missing the Marshal, they went to the *Savoy*, (the Duke's Palace) where by Mistake they murder'd a Priest instead of the Lord Marshal, and then they went and defaced the Duke's Armouries in the open Market. The Duke was enraged at this, and would not desist from prosecuting his Revenge against the *Londoners*, till he had procured the Lord Mayor and Aldermen of the

Which cau-
sed the Lord
Mayor and
Aldermen to
be removed.

City to be turned out of their Places, and others put in their Room: And Sir *Nicholas Brember* was elected Lord Mayor, and other Aldermen were appointed. The good old King used all his Endeavours to have reconciled the *Londoners* to his Son the Duke of *Lancaster*; but falling sick, he was prevented. The King now weaken'd

King falls
sick.

with innumerable Toils and Age, was forced to relinquish the World, as the World did him, before his Breath was gone. For first his Concubine *Alice Perrin* packed away what she could snatch, even to the Ring off his Fingers, and left him. Then his other Attendants surted upon what they could find, and marched off: And even his Counsellors forsook him in his last Agonies, when he had most need of them: And thus this poor King was deserted by all, and left alone in his Chamber; which a poor Priest of the House observing as he pass'd by, approach'd his Bed-side, and finding him yet breathing, call'd upon him to remember his Saviour, and to ask Mercy for his Offences; which the King did in a very devout and humble Manner, shewing all the Signs of Contrition, and with his last

His Death.

Breath express'd the Name of Jesus. Thus died this valiant, wise, and victorious Prince, at his Manor-House of *Sheen*, (now *Richmond*) on the 21st Day of *June*, 1377, in the 64th Year of his Age, having reigned fifty Years, 4 Months, and 27 Days. He was in-

And Burial.

terred with all the Pomp and Magnificence imaginable, on the South Side of the royal Chapel in the Abby-Church of *Westminster*, close by his beloved Consort *Philippa*; where his Tomb is still to be seen, and near it his large Sword is kept, which the King is said to have used in his Wars with *France*.



The Reign of King RICHARD the Second.

RICHARD the Second was surnamed *Burdeaux*, ^{1377.} from a City of that Name in *France*; he having ^{His Age and} been born there, when his Father *Edward* the Black ^{Descent.} Prince was Duke of *Aquitain*. He succeeded his Grandfather *Edward* the Third, in the Throne of *England*, *June* 21, 1377. Altho' he was no more than eleven Years of Age when he began to reign, yet so great a Pregnancy of Wit above his Years, so sweet a Disposition of Mind, set off with an admirable Beauty of Body, appeared in him, that the People were enamoured with him; and therefore accepted him for their King, with great Joy and universal Satisfaction, for the Sake of that incomparable Prince *Edward* his Father: And upon this Stock of Merit he maintained himself longer in the Affections of his People, than by any worthy Action of his own. The first Action he undertook, after he was King, was the Re- ^{The Duke}conciliation of the Duke of *Lancaster* and the City of ^{of Lancaster} *London*; in the Management of which he shewed a ^{and Lon-} Moderation and Prudence far beyond what could be ^{dones recon-} expected from his Years; for the Citizens of *London* having gotten certain Intelligence of King *Edward's* approaching Death, did the Day before his Grandfather's Decease address him, being then Prince of *Wales*, giving him Assurance of their Fidelity and Service, if the present King should die: And also petitioned him to be a Mediator for them between his Uncle the Duke of *Lancaster* and themselves. In answer to which Address he returned them not only Promises of his Love and Favour to their City, but also of his Endeavour to effect what they desired; and accordingly the very next Day he spoke to his Uncle about it, and prevailed upon him to submit to his Decision of the Difference.

1377.

July the sixteenth was appointed for his Coronation; the Nation thinking this a fit Opportunity of giving a Testimony of their Affections to him, by a general Consent, all Things were so prepared, that it might be as splendid and magnificent as could be. On the Day before the Coronation, the King rode through the City to *Westminster*, in great State, being regally attended by his Noblemen, and Persons of Distinction; the Citizens, as he passed along, giving him great Demonstrations of their Affections and Loyalty, having adorned their Balconies with rich Tapettry, and caused several costly Pageants to be made; the Conduits run with Wine, and the People saluted the King with loud Acclamations, and Wishes of Prosperity and Blessing.

The King took up his Lodgings at *Westminster* the Night, and was crowned the Day following, in the Abbey-Church, by *Simon Sudbury*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, with the usual Ceremonies of anointing, giving him the Sword, taking an Oath from him for the good Government of the Nation, and requiring the Consent of the People, to have him for their King, by asking them if they would be subject to this Prince as their lawful Ruler, and be obedient to his Commands.

The Oath that he took was somewhat larger than what we find was taken by former Kings:

The King's
Oath.

That he would permit the Church to enjoy all her Liberties; That he would reverence her Ministers, and maintain the true Faith; That he would restrain Violence and all Oppression, in all Sorts of Men; That he would cause good Laws to be every where observed, especially those of St. Edward, King and Confessor; and would also cause all evil Laws or Customs to be abrogated: Lastly, That he would be no Respector of Persons, but would give right Judgment between Man and Man, and would chiefly observe Mercy in all his Decrees or Judgments, as God should shew Mercy to him.

Which Form of the Coronation Oath, with some small Alterations, has been administered to all succeeding Kings and Queens ever since. *John of Gaunt*, King of *Leon* and *Castile*, and Duke of *Launcester*, made the noblest Figure of any other at the Coronation, and claimed the Right of being Steward of *England*, to carry the King's principal Sword, and be his Carver.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

243

t Day. Here it is to be observed, that Sir *John Dim-* 1. Ri. II.
ck, in Right of the Manour of *Scrivelfey*, in *Lin-*
shire, was admitted to serve as Champion, to de-
fend the King's Title against all Opposers; but how
that Custom of a Champion had been in Use be-
fore that Time, does not appear.

Being crowned he went to *Westminster-Hall* to Din-
ner; but before he sat down, he created four Earls, viz. Several Cre-
ations at the
Coronation.
Uncle *Thomas Woodstock*, Earl of *Buckingham* and
Warwick, *Thomas Mowbrey*, the younger Brother of
the Lord *Mowbrey*, Earl of *Nottingham*, his Tutor,
Richard Anglesme, a *Gascoign*, Earl of *Huntington*, and
Henry Peirey, Earl of *Northumberland*. He also made at
the same Time nine Knights. The next Day a very de-
corous Procession was celebrated by the Archbishops, Bi-
shops and Clergy, to pray for the Peace of the Realm,
and prosperous Reign of the King. A Sermon was
preached by *Thomas Brinton*, Bishop of *Rocheſter*,
in which he pathetically exhorted all Men to Peace
and Unity, conjuring all those of a superior Degree,
to treat the Common People with Gentleness, and the
People willingly to obey their Superiors; but in an
official Manner, he exhorted the Nobles who were
about the King's Person to shew him a religious and
pious Example, lest they should bring down the
curse of the People upon them, by their Flattery or
excess. The young King being thus settled in the
throne, and by Reason of his tender Age, unable to
conduct the Government was committed to the Care of
the King's Mother, his two Uncles, *John of Gaunt*,
Duke of *Launceſter*, and *Edmund* Earl of *Cambridge*,
and certain Bishops.

But notwithstanding the Affairs of the Realm were The French
and Scots in-
fest England.
brought into so good a Posture, yet the *French* and *Scots*,
old Enemies of the Nation, thought the King's
weakness a fit Opportunity to annoy it. The *French*,
who had, in the Time of the Reign of King *Edward*,
been making Preparations for that End, a little before
his Death, and had manned out a Fleet to take Revenge
for all the Losses they had sustained by his victorious
conduct, did immediately upon his Decease, and while
the Nation was busied in settling their new King, in-
vade the Coasts of *England*, and did much Mischief, Rye and the
Isle of Wight
plundered and
burnt.
for several Months, without Opposition; and on *June*
twenty ninth, put in at *Rye* in *Sussex* with fifty Sail

1177. of Ships; and having rifled and plundred it, set fire. From hence they coasted to the Isle of Wight, and entered it, without Opposition; and put the valuable Goods on board their Ships, coming with the People for a thousand Marks to forbear ing their Houses: But not being able, after several attempts, to make themselves Masters of *Castell*, which was bravely defended by Sir *Harold*, they left the Island, and returning back, attacked *Winchelsea*, but found the Town, so fortified and garrisoned by the Abbot of *Bath*, that they could not take it. However the French sent to the Abbot to let it from Assault; but the Abbot returned them answer, That he had no Reason to redeem what was lost. The French not being able to draw the garrison out of the Town, to a pitched Battle, but without Success. In the mean Time the French Party to *Hastings*, who finding it almost empty of Inhabitants being gone to succour *Winchelsea*, set it on fire, and utterly consumed it. Their next attempt was upon the small Town of *Rottingham*, where the Inhabitants whereof defended themselves bravely, but having killed many of their Enemies, a hundred of themselves being slain, in the End they were beaten; the Prior, Sir *John Falsely*, Sir *Chemy*, and some others, who headed them, being Prisoners. The French likewise plundred several Towns as *Portsmouth*, *Dartmouth* and *Plymouth* along that Coast, and having filled their Ships with Spoils, they returned home, and soon after they arrived, besieged the Castle of *Arde*, which was delivered up to them for a Bribe, by the Treachery of *Guernsey*, a German, who being afterwards taken, *Hugh Calverly*, Governor of *Calais*, was sent into England, to receive the deserved Punishment of his Treason.

The Scots invaded England. In the mean Time the Scots were not idle; they assaulted the Town and Castle of *Roxborough*, having gained it, tho' not without considerable loss to themselves, they plundred it of all that was valuable, and then burnt it. So unsafe was *England* at that Time, when it had neither a Fleet to defend the Sea, nor regular Troops to oppose the Enemy by Land, there being very little, or no Care taken for the security of the People; but whether out of Negligence

Winchelsea
bravely de-
fended by
the Abbot of
Bath.

The Castle
of *Arde* given
up by the
French.

The Reign of K. RICHARD II.

245

g^g; or want of Shipping, is uncertain. However, ^{1. Ri. II.} Duke of *Lancaster*, who had the chief Management of the publick Affairs, brought upon himself an able Odium, by not endeavouring their Relief ligently as his Place, and the People's Necessities, ^{red.}

or were the civil Affairs much better managed; for our King's Protectors and Governors let him have his Will, and suffered those about his Person, whose Principles, and ill Examples, corrupted his Nature; and giving him false Ideas of Glory, he him think it consisted in a riotous Way of living and in conferring extravagant Honours and Gifts on his Favourites.

About *Michaelmas* following the Parliament met to ^{First Parlia-} remedy the Disorders, and provide for the Security of ^{ment.} Nation.

The first Thing they went upon was the petition of the Commons, to appoint a Council to be joined with the King's Officers, and advise him in the Affairs of Government; and then they proceeded to the punishment of *Alice Pierce*, the late King's Concubine, who, during his Reign, had been the Cause of many Mischiefs, and for that Reason had been banished from the Court, and made to take an Oath, that she should never return again; but she kept her Oath no longer than till the Fear of the Parliament was removed, but returning, became as insolent as ever; and caused Sir *Peter de la Mare*, the Speaker of the House of Commons, to be imprisoned. The Parliament thought it fit to take Cognisance of these impudent Actions, and agreed by a general Consent, that she should be executed, and all her Goods confiscated. Then they

proceeded upon providing a Navy, for the Defence of the Nation against the *French*, and *Spaniards*, their Confederates; and granted the King two Tenths of the Clergy, two Fifteenths of the Laity; but upon these Conditions, that the Money so collected, should be deposited into the Hands of *William Walworth* and *John Peckham*, two eminent Citizens of *London*, who were sworn, that it was expended for the Use of the Publick; and also resolved, that for the future, the King should maintain his State, and Wars, out of his own Revenues, which if well managed were judged sufficient to maintain both.

Alice Pierce
banished.

Taxes granted.

1378.
Several Actions of the English against the French.

These Masters being thus settled, the Parliament broke up. After the Rising of the Parliament the Governors of the Nation having received Information that the *Spanish* Fleet richly laden with Wines and other Commodities lay at *Sluice*, waiting only a fair Wind to return, they sent out a great Fleet under the Command of the Duke of *Bretagne*, Earl of *Buckingham*, the Lords *Latimer* and *Fitzwater*, to intercept them; but by contrary Winds they were shatter'd and dispersed, and so could effect nothing at that Time. Sir *Hugh Calverly* the Governor of *Calais* was so fortunate in his Adventures against the *French*; for making an Inroad towards *Bulloigne*, he plunder'd twenty six Vessels besides Barges which lay in the Haven; in his Return drove away to *Calais* a great Box of Oxen and Sheep, and so both plentifully supplied and enrich'd his Garrison. He also recovered the Castle of *St. Mark* which had been betray'd to them by the *cards*; and some small Time after he with his Garrison made an Attempt upon *Etaples* upon a Fair-Day when the Merchants of *Paris*, *Amiens*, *Bulloigne*, and *Laurel*, had brought great Quantities of Goods thither to sell, which all became an easie Prey to the *English*.

In the mean Time the Fleet under the Duke of *Buckingham* being equipped and furnished, put out to Sea, and cruising upon the Coast of *Bretagne* near *Brest*, took eight *Spanish* Ships, and might have taken more, if the tempestuous Weather, and their own Divisions, had not been an Impediment to their Success. Besides the King's Ships, which were employ'd against the Enemy, diverse Towns and private Men took all Opportunities of annoying the *Enemy*. The Inhabitants of *Winchelsea* and *Rye* to revenge their late Sufferings fitted out a Number of Ships with Cannon and Provision, and made an Inroad into *Normandy* entering the Towns of *St. Peter's Haven* and *Willelmus*, and plunder'd them, where they found and brought away many of the Goods which the *French* had lately taken from them, and after they had fired the Houses, they took the Ships, and got home safe with their Booty. The Lord *Piercy* with one great Ship and some other Vessels met a Fleet of fifty Sail of *Spanish* and *French* Merchants Ships, of which he took twenty two, the rest escaping.

About this Time the Duke of *Lancaster* desired Leave of the King to retire to his Country Seat at *Killingworth* Castle; but before he retired settled such Governors about the King, as were more pleasing to the People, viz. *William Courtney* Bishop of *London*, *Edmund Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, and several others. He also desir'd that the Money granted the last Parliament, might be put into his Hands to secure the Nation from its Enemies, promising to take Care to guard the Coasts from the Incursions of the *French* and their Confederates for the Year ensuing. This Proposition was granted, and the Duke immediately set about providing a sufficient Navy, and hired eight Ships of *Bayonne* to join it. But before the Ships were ready, one *Mercer* a desperate Scot, (whose Father had been taken not long before by some Northern Vessels, and by the Earl of *Northumberland* committed Prisoner to *Scarborough* Castle) having gotten together a small Number of *Swish*, *French*, and *Spanish* Ships, entred the Haven of *Scarborough*, siezed several Ships in it, and carried them away to *Scotland*. This Success very much encouraged him and his Crew, so that they greatly infested those Seas. And tho' the Duke of *Lancaster* had undertaken to prevent those Mischiefs, yet no Body appeared to oppose the Pirates, so that those Parts of the Kingdom labour'd under many Calamities from them.

2 Ri. II.
Duke of
Lancaster re-
tires from
Court, but
undertakes
to secure the
Nation from
the *French*.

Upon hearing this News, *John Philpot* an Alderman of the City of *London* taking Pity of his Fellow Subjects, resolv'd upon a Relief at his own Charge; and fitting out such a Number of well-built Ships, as would conveniently carry a thousand Men, and having furnished them with Ammunition and Provision, he put to Sea, commanding himself as Captain, and finding out *Mercer* and his Comrades, he engaged them, and after a smart Dispute took them, carrying *Mercer* himself and all the Vessels he had before carried away from *Scarborough*, and fifteen *Spanish* Bottoms more that lay in the Harbour laden with rich Goods.

Alderman
Philpot's .
Bravery.

Mr. Philpot returning to *London* with Spoils and Victory, was received with the Acclamations of the People, but without any Welcome from the Nobility, who envied him the Honour; and therefore he was sent for to appear before the Council, to give an Account of this Action, some of them blaming him for daring to do it without a Commission from the King

1378. and Council; and besides, he was charged by the Earl of *Stafford* with acting very illegally in levying Arms in the King's Dominions without his Leave. To which Charge Mr. *Philpot* made a modest and ingenious Defence, telling them, "it was not out of any Desire or ambitious Aim to get himself a Name or raise to himself the Reputation of being a great Soldier, that induced him to venture his Money and Men to vanquish the *Scotch* Pirate, but merely out of Love to his Countrymen, and for the Honour of the Nation, that the Sloth of such as could to have secur'd the Nation, might not ruin the People, and make it contemptible. This Answer gave such Satisfaction to the Council, that he came away with as much Commendation from some of the Noblemen as he was received with Applause by the City.

The Duke of Lancaster's Preparations and Success.

The Duke of *Lancaster* in the mean Time lay at Anchor with his Ships, getting in Provision and Ammunition, but very dilatorily. Sir *Peter* and Sir *Philip* Courtney, who had the Command of some English Ships belonging to the Fleet commanded by the Earl of *Salisbury* and *Arundel*, being out at Sea, and espying certain Vessels belonging to the Enemy, attack'd them, and it proving to be the whole *Spanish* Fleet, tho' they fought bravely, yet they were beaten, many of the Men slain and themselves taken Prisoners. But the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Arundel* had that Success in their Voyage to *Bretagne*, which made them some Compensation for their former Loss; for the King of *Navarre* having fallen into Variance with the King of *France*, and desirous of an Alliance with the King of *England*, a Confederacy was established between them, and for a Sum of Money lent him, the Haven of *Cherbourg* was put into the Hands of the English, whereby they had at all Times an easy Entrance into *Normandy*. And the *Spaniards* did not escape long without making some Retaliation for the Loss sustained on the Account of Sir *Peter Courtney*; for those Ships of *Bayona* that coasted about the Kingdom to defend it, took fourteen *Spanish* Ships and their Cargo.


Pope Gregory sends a Letter to King Richard, requiring him to assist the Bishops in suppressing John Wicliffe and his Adherents.

At the latter End of this Year, Pope Gregory XI. sent a Letter to King *Richard*, requiring him to assist the Bishops in suppressing *John Wicliffe* and his Adherents.

ents, but the Favour that *Wichliff* found is a sufficient Demonstration, that the Heat of the Bishops Spirit found but little Encouragement. The Pope's Letters to the King and Bishops, on this Account, are printed at large in *Fox's Acts and Monuments*, in the Beginning of this King's Reign. 2. Ri. II.

About Midsummer, the Duke of *Lancaster* having gotten his Ships completely equipped, he put out to Sea, and landing his Forces in *Bretagne*, laid Siege to *St. Malo de Lisle* : But tho' the Siege was managed by the Earls of *Buckingham*, *Stafford* and *Warwick*, and other Noblemen of great Experience; yet it was so well defended by the *French*, that the Duke was obliged to raise the Siege and return home. St. Malo besieged.

On the eleventh of *August*, some small Time after the Duke had left *England*, a barbarous Murder was committed in the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, which, whether the Duke was concerned in or no, is not certain; yet there were such Grounds for Suspicion, that it redounded much to his Dishonour. The Occasion was this; In the War which King *Edward* the Black Prince carried on in *Spain*, for restoring *Peter* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, two Gentlemen, *Robert Haul* and *John Shakel*, did by their Valour take the Earl of *Denia* Prisoner; in Reward of which Bravery the Prince had given the said Earl to them, to make the best of his Ransom. The Earl afterwards made an Agreement with them for his Liberty, and left his Son as an Hostage, till the Ransom was paid; which the Earl neglecting to pay, his Son remained with them several Years. The Duke of *Lancaster*, having married one of the Heiresses of the Crown of *Spain*, was kept out of her Right by her Uncle; and he contriving how to recover his Right, thought the Restitution of the Earl's Son would oblige his Father to engage in his Interest: and therefore sends in the King's Name to Mr. *Haul* and *Shakel*, to deliver up their Prisoner; and upon their Refusal he caused them to be sent Prisoners to the Tower. The Gentlemen, after some Time, made their Escape thence, and got to the Sanctuary, at *Westminster*. Sir *Allen Buxhal*, Constable of the Tower, a great Friend of the Duke, contrived with the Lord *Latimer* and Sir *Ralph Ferrers*, who were two of the Duke's Creatures, to take them by Force out of the Sanctuary, and with a Company of fifty Men armed, A barbarous Murder committed in the Sanctuary at Westminster.

1378.  ed, went into the *Abbey-Church*, when the Monks were at Prayers, and seized upon the two Gentlemen. Mr. *Hawl* endeavouring to defend himself, was slain together with his Servant, and a Monk, who assisted him: But Mr. *Shakel* was carried away to the Tower again, from whence he obtained not his Freedom till he resigned his Prisoner to them, on Condition he should receive an hundred Marks *per Annum*, and that the King should found a Chantry of five Priests, to pray for the Soul of Mr. *Hawl*, and his Servant. The Archbishop, and Bishops, so highly resented this Violation of the Sanctuary, that they excommunicated all that were concerned, or assisted in this Murder, excepting the King, Queen, and Duke of *Lancaster*. The King taking this as a Reflection upon himself and the Duke, sent Order to the Bishop to cease it; but he not regarding the Order, was summoned to *Windsor*, but would not appear. Upon this the Duke of *Lancaster* told the King, in a Rage, if he would give him Leave, he would fetch the Bishop to him by Force, in Spite of those Rebels, the *Londoners*; which Words lost the Duke the Good-will of the Citizens, and heightened their Suspicion, that he was the Author of the Murder.

Second Parliament, 1378.
Acts and Taxes.

In *October*, the Parliament out of Displeasure taken at the *Londoners*, met at *Glocester*, where many Things were propounded, but few concluded; however, they granted the King a Subsidy upon Wool, made some other Acts; and then having largely debated the Legality of the Election of the two Popes, *Clement* and *Urban*, they enacted, that Pope *Urban* was duly elected, and ought to be accepted and obeyed, under certain Penalties. At this Time the Archbishop complained of the late Violation of the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, desiring, that effectual Methods might be taken to secure the Privileges of Sanctuaries: But the Nobility objecting the Abuses of them in protecting Debtors, &c. The Archbishop dropped the Motion, lest they should be totally deprived of those Advantages.

The Scots invaded England.

The Parliament being up, *Robert* King of *Scots*, by the Instigation of the King of *France*, raised an Army to invade the Borders of *England*; and one *Alexander Ramsay*, a valiant Scot, with forty of his Countrymen, surprised the Castle of *Barwick*, and putting Sir *Robert Boynton*, and the whole Garrison, to the Sword, made themselves Masters of it, and opened a free Passage

lage for the whole Army into *England*. Advice of this coming to the Earl of *Northumberland*, to whom the keeping of that Town and Castle was committed, he immediately set about raising an Army out of those Parts for the Recovery of it; and with the Earl of *Nottingham*, and some other Lords, having gotten an Army of above a thousand Men, well armed, he marched to *Barwick*; and finding that the Townsmen had broken down the Draw-bridge, which was the only Way the Scots had to get into the Town; so that *Ramsay*, and his Men could have no Assistance from his Army which lay near, he laid Siege to the Castle, and took it, putting all the Scots to Death, except *Ramsay*, who was saved partly for his Valour, and partly, that he might discover the farther Designs of the *Scottish* Army. Being flushed with this Success, the Earls and Lords of the *English* Army, sent out a Party of six hundred Men, to pursue the Scots Army, who, upon the Loss of *Barwick*, were withdrawn a little Way into the Country: But Earl *Douglas* waiting an Opportunity, fell upon them, at such a Disadvantage, that he utterly defeated them.

2. Ri. II.


About *Christmass*, Sir *Robert Rouse*, who had the Summer before, been appointed Governor of *Chierburg*, and had done many brave Actions against the *French*, in taking Sir *Oliver Gueselin* Prisoner, and other Adventures, was called home, and Sir *John Herelston* put in his Place. Sir *Hugh Calverly* was also removed from his Government at *Calais*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* appointed in his Place; and Sir *Hugh* was made Admiral, and joined in Commission with Sir *Thomas Piercy*. The Earl of *Salisbury* began his Office with an Inroad into *France*, taking a great Booty. Sir *Hugh* was likewise as active against the Enemy at Sea, as he had formerly been at Land; for he soon took seven Merchants Ships, and one Man of War.

The Captains of *Chierburgh* and *Calais* changed.

About this time, the Popes began to stir up a holy War, for the Establishment of themselves singly in the Papal Chair; each of them sending his Agents into all Nations, that submitted to him, to animate them to undertake a War against his Competitor.

War between the Popes.

A little after *Easter* the Parliament assembled again at *Westminster*, and gave the King a Poll Tax with a particular Exemption of the Commons, and therefore it lay more heavy on the Nobility and Gentry.

A Third Parliament: and its Acts and Taxes.

1378 For Dukes and Archbishops were to pay twenty Marks, Bishops, Earls and mitred Abbots six Marks, Monks ten Groats, and Gentlemen and all other of the Clergy at a certain Rate, but the Commons paid nothing. Another Act was pass'd about the Privileges of Sanctuaries, and particularly of that at *Westminster*, which being found to be abus'd to protect Debtors, it was enacted, "that all such Debtors as after they have made over their Goods and Lands by Feoffments, Deeds of Gift or otherwise to their Friends, and had for Protection fled into Sanctuary, Judgment should pass against them, and Execution be awarded upon their Goods and Lands, which were without such privileged Places, as well such as are given by Custom or otherwise.

A Plague in the North.

The next Summer the Plague so afflicted the Northern Counties of *England*, that the Inhabitants were in great Numbers constrain'd to remove their Habitations into other Parts of the Nation, and they who remained there were so frequently infested with the Incursions and Robberies of the *Scots*, that the Country was in Manner depopulated.

The Duke of Bretagne returns home, and has Aid to settle him.

The Duke of *Bretagne*, who came over into *England* the first Year of this King's Reign to beg his Assistance against his rebellious Subjects, who joining with the King of *France*, had expell'd him out of his Dominions, was by his Nobles invited to return home and take upon him the Government of his Country. His Solicitations for Aid had met with but small Success, because the Duke of *Lancaster* thought to have got his Dukedom for himself, and for that End was over thither with a powerful Army; but the Constable of *France* opposing him, he was obliged to give over the Design. The Duke of *Bretagne*, now having sufficient Aid granted to attend him into his own Country, and greater Forces promised to be sent after him, was by Sir *Hugh Calverly* and Sir *Thomas Piercy* set on Shore in his own Country, where he was receiv'd with a great deal of Joy. But because it was expected that the French Faction would be troublesome to him, an Army was sent after him, to maintain him in his Dignity; but in their Passage, they met with such a violent Storm that they could not come nigh the Shore of *France*, twenty five of the Ships were lost, most of the Captains and a great Number of Soldiers were drowned.

The Reign of K. RICHARD II.

253

. This unhappy Accident was accounted a just Judgment from Heaven upon them for the Wickedness they had committed on Shore, by plundering Houses, burning Churches, ravishing Women, and forcing them on Board with them to satisfy their Lusts, whom, when the Tempest began, they inhumanly cast into the Sea.

Sir John Harlestone and his Garison, who kept the Town of *Chierburg*, having Intelligence that the French had laid up great Quantities of Provision in a Church and Mill, sallied out, and possessed themselves of them, not guarded and defended by the French: But were afterwards set upon by a Party of French that kept *launburg* a Counter-Garison to *Chierburg*; whereupon there followed a furious Battle, and tho' the French were superior in Number, by the Assistance of a few Men out of *Chierburg*, they obtain'd a compleat Victory, and taking the Governor himself and one hundred and twenty Soldiers Prisoners, they carried their Booty to *Chierburg*. But this Advantage over the French by Land, was soon after allay'd by as great a Loss to the English at Sea. For several English Ships then lying in the Haven of *Bretagne*, under the Protection of a Castle that was garison'd by English, the French sent a Squadron after, and sending one Ship into the Haven, with Design either to fire them, or decoy them to pursue it, that by that Means they might fall into their Hands. The English not suspecting the Design, pursued the Ship, and the Commander of the Castle, and his Men went on Board in Order to assist in taking it, and so fell into the Ambuscade. And tho' they fought bravely, yet being overpower'd the French took the English Ships but so shatter'd, that they could not carry them home, and but few Prisoners, the Captain and most of his Men being killed; and the rest escaping to the Shore.

About the Feast of *Hilary* the Parliament met again, and sat till the Beginning of *March*; this Parliament granted to the King a Tenth of the Clergy, and a fifth part of the Laity, upon Condition that the King should not summon another Parliament till the *Michaelmas* twelvemonth after; but this Stipulation he did not perform.

The Duke of *Bretagne* having been disappointed of the Assistance which he expected from *England*, and which was prevented by the Storm, but not knowing the

3. Ri. II.

The English at *Chierburg* assault the French.

Fourth Parliament.

Aids sent to the Duke of *Bretagne* and their Sur

1380. the Reason of their not coming, sent a fresh Petition to the King for Assistance; and accordingly seven or eight thousand Men were raised to be sent to him under the Command of the Earl of *Buckingham*, and because the *French* Gallies infested the *British* Seas, they landed at *Calais*, in Order to travel thro' *France* into *Bretagne*. And tho' they did much Harm to the *French* in their Passage, yet they met with no Opposition from them. The Duke of *Burgundy* would fain have oppos'd them, and the People who were injur'd by them would willingly have repress'd their Insolencies; but King *Charles* being a politick Prince, gave strict Commandment to the People not to engage them, ordering them to keep themselves and their Castles close in their Towns, while they passed by, so that when they arrived in *Bretagne*, they met with but cold Reception, which Disappointment did more Damage to the *English* than they had done to the *French* in their March; and so the Policy of *Charles* outdid the Force of the *English*, tho' he did not long survive to see the Success of it. For he having been poison'd about the Time that the *English* landed at *Calais*, was with much Difficulty preserved by a German Physician till the 25th of September, and died just as the *English* were passing the *Sartie*, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Charles VI.* being but twelve Years old. Soon after this a Peace was concluded, and the *English* were sent home, to the great Displeasure of the Earl of *Buckingham* and the whole Army.


Charles the French King dies.

The French much annoy England.

While the Duke of *Buckingham's* Army were passing *France*, the *French* and *Spanish* Armies very much infested the Coasts of *England*, especially in the Western Parts, where they took several Ships, and at length entering the River *Thames*, plunder'd and burnt the Town of *Gravesend*, returning with much Booty. But the trading Towns of the West set out a Fleet to chastise their Insolences, which meeting with the *French* pursued them and forc'd them into *Kingsale* in *Ireland*, where they were so attack'd by the *Irish* on one Side and the *English* on the other, that above four hundred of the Men were kill'd, most of their Ships taken, besides twenty one Vessels which they had before taken from the *English*. But four of their most desperate Captains escaping, being enrag'd at their Loss, mustered up what Force they could, and came upon the *English*.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

255

Coasts, plundering, burning, and killing in a most + R. U.
rageous Manner. And tho' they were opposed by 
People, they burnt the Town of *Winchester*, and put
Abbot of *Battel* to Flight, who came to defend it ;
after they had plundered and destroyed *Rye*, *Hastings*,
Portsmouth, they retired.

The *Scots*, who were always confederate with the *Scots*
French against the *English*, were forward enough to <sup>The Scots in-
vade Eng-
land.</sup> tribute their Assistance : and whereas the *French*
acted only as Pirates, without any Declaration of War,

Scots invaded *England*, under Pretence, that the
townsmen of *Newcastle* and *Hull* had taken one of
their Ships, worth six or seven thousand Marks ; al-
though they had not taken it from the *Scots*, but the
French Pirates. Upon this Pretence the *Scots* entered
Cumberland and *Westmoreland*, with a considerable Body
Men, ravaging and laying waste the Country, and
killing away about forty thousand Head of great and
all Cattle, out of the great Forest of *Inglewood*, and
coming to *Penrith* Fair, they seized upon all the Goods.
The Merchants and Tradersmen hearing of their
coming, had fled, and left their Goods to save their
lives ; so they carried off a considerable Booty, re-
turning home by the City of *Carlisle*. The Earl of
Northumberland, who was Guardian of those Northern
Parts, having Notice of these Depredations, was pre-
paring a sharp Revenge against them ; but, to the great
order of the People, was forbidden by the King and
Council, to proceed against them, till the Treaty with
them was over, to see whether they would make any
satisfaction, or not.

About *Michaelmas*, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls <sup>A Treaty
with the
Scots.</sup> *Warwick*, *Stafford*, and other Noblemen, went with
great Army into the North, and lay on the Borders
in order to treat with the *Scots* : The Negotiation,
which lasted a considerable Time, ended only in a
Truce till the *Easter* following. The Truce indeed
gave no Security to the *English*, because the *Scots* al-
ways made use of such Cessations of Arms to plunder
England with less Hazard ; for they never observed
it any longer, than till a fair Opportunity of break-
ing it was offered.

Another Parliament was summoned to meet in No- <sup>Fifth Parlia-
ment</sup> vember at *Northampton*, and this Place the King chose
rather than *London*, because he was resolved to punish

1380.



one *John Kirby*, a Merchant, who was much concerned in killing a *Genoese* Merchant, who not sell a Shipload of Spices, he had, at so long as the *Lords* would give him, fearing, that if fered in the City, it might occasion some Trouble he was tried and hanged at *Northampton*.

The King's
Marriage ne-
gociated.

The Parliament broke up about *Christmas*, the rising of which a Marriage began to be betwixt the King and the Sister of the *Emperour* *many*; about which the Duke of *Tarfalia* and of *Braxades*, were sent over to treat with the King, and the Match was concluded. The Cardinal was a very gainful Negotiation for himself, by selling Indulgences, Confessional Letters, Pottentive Absolutions, and Dispensations, to the Superstitious and Clergy, at dear Rates.

The Truce
with the
Scots renewed.

The Truce with the *Scots* being now to expire, the Duke of *Lancaster* was sent into *Scotland* to procure a Prolongation of it for three Years. The Duke was the more zealous to promote a Truce at home; because, as he thought, he had a opportunity of recovering his Wife's Right to the Kingdom of *Spain*, put into his Hands, by the Breach betwixt the King of *Portugal*, and the Usurper. For the King of *Portugal* had sent to the Duke to assist him, and the Duke had sent his Brother the Earl of *Cambridge* with the Lords *Beauchamp* and *Botreux*, with a considerable Force to help him, designing to follow himself with a greater Force, as soon as Things were brought into a secure Posture in *England*. But while lengthening the Peace with the *Scots*, an uneasiness and very dangerous Disturbance arose at Home on the following Occasion.

The Rebel-
lion of *Jack*
Straw: the
Occasion of
it.

The Poll-Tax before-mentioned began to be collected in the Spring, which being in it self very distasteful to the People, and also the Collection of it managed by indiscreet and uncivil Officers, raised such Murmurs in most Counties of *England*, that they were almost in all Places ripe for Rebellion. The Government of the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Exactions and Corruptions of Lawyers and Attorneys, the Oppressions of Lords of Manors by their Tenures of Villains, had sat very uneasy upon their Stomachs a great while, and they longed for a Deliverance from them, in a more especial Manner from the insupportable

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

257

OF their Lords, whose Slaves and Servants they 5 Ri. II.
were, doing all their Work, and Drudgery,
sowing, sowing, carrying their Dung, cutting their
wood, and carrying it to their Houses, and therefore
ready to embrace any Opportunity of obtaining
Liberty: And they received no small Encourage-
ment so to do by the Sermons of a seditious Priest,
named *John Ball*, who in his popular Discourses told
the People, "That all Men were equal by Nature;
that as Children of *Adam* no Man is better than ano-
ther; that if God had appointed any Men to Slavery,
he would have declar'd who should be Lords and
who Servants; that Servitude which is gotten by
unjust Force, is confirm'd by as unjust Laws; and
therefore he advised them to go to the King, and
reclaim their Liberty, which if they could not obtain,
to recover it with their Swords." The Rebellion
began at *Darimouth* in *Kent*, where a rude Col-
lector of the Poll-Groats, having turn'd up the Coats of
a young Girl, the Daughter of one call'd from his Trade
Tyler, at *Deptford* in *Kent*; he was so enrag'd that
he beat out the Collector's Brains with a Hammer.
This Fact was approv'd by his Neighbours, who being
resentful that he would be punish'd for it, ga-
thered together to defend him, and in a little Time
there came a great Multitude. For not only the People
of *Kent*, but of *Essex* also, united themselves in one
body, and as tho' his Case had been common to them
resolved to vindicate themselves and him from all
Oppressions and Abuses. *Wat Tyler* became Head
Captain of this Mob, which being grown, as he
thought, strong enough to meet any Resistance, and
to vindicate themselves from any Wrongs, which
they, in their Opinions, suffered from their Superiors,
first engaged them one to another with an Oath,
that they should be true to King *Richard*, and to the
rest of the Commons of *England*, that they would
never receive a *John* (meaning the Duke of *Lancaster*)
for their King, and that they would persuade all
their Neighbours to join in the same Cause, and would
never yield to the Payment of any Tax, but a Fifteenth.
Being firmly united by this Oath, they began their
march from *Maidstone*, which was the Place of their
Rendezvous, towards *London*, plundering, as they
went along, all who would not join with them. At
Vol. II. S Black.

1381.

Black-Heath they had a general Muster, where appeared to be sixty thousand, or as some say, a hundred thousand, chiefly consisting of Villains, Tenants, Debtors, Country-Clowns and Crum. The King having Notice of the Approach of so Multitude in an Army, sent to them to know Cause of their meeting in so tumultuous a Manner to which they answered, *that they were come to the King about Matters of Importance, and desir'd to come to them.* Upon the Delivery of this it was debated in Council, whether he should receive them or no. Some were of Opinion, it was a good Way to appease them; but the Archbishop of Canterbury, the Chancellor, and Sir Robert Hales the Treasurer were utterly against it, as not safe for the Person. This Advice was followed, and the Cause of the Rebels rejected; which as soon as they knew they vow'd they would cut their Heads off, with the Authors of it: But the King being apprehensive that to deny them would provoke them, went as far as *Rotherhithe* to speak with them. They pleas'd to see him, and petitioned him to come on Shore among them; but that not being granted, they were disgusted, and conceived a greater Displeasure against the Persons about the King.

Rebels come
to London,
and their
Actions
there.

As soon as the King was gone, they march'd directly to *London*, and entred *Southwark*, plundering the wealthiest Inhabitants, letting out the Prisoners in the *King's-Bench* and *Marshalsea*, whom they killed their own Company. The Mayor and chief Men of the City adhered firmly to the King, and shut up the Gates against them, but some of the Commoners taking their Part, and the Rebels threatening to burn the Borough of *Southwark*, unless they had free passage into the City, the Gates were opened to them, and being entred, they declar'd they only came to search for Traitors to the Kingdom, and to put to Death such as they called the Enemies of the People. They burnt the Archbishop's House at *Lambeth*, and the Duke of *Lancaster's* House in the *Savoy*, with all the rich Furniture, throwing his Gold and Jewels into the *Thames*, not suffering any Man to save any Thing. When one of their Company took a Piece of Plate, they put it into his Bosom, they call him into the Fleet, declaring they did not come like Thieves.

Reign of King RICHARD II.

139

themselves by Plunder, They set also St. John's
n, *Smithfield* on Fire. They put to Death
officers of the Law, they could get into
and entering into the *Temple*, destroy'd all
and Records of *Chancery* they could find;
Law-Books and Writings of the Students.
Manner they treated all the Inns of Court.
divided themselves into three Bodies; one Part
in the City, under the Command of *Jack Straw*;
offed themselves at *Mile-End*, and the third
hill. The King and his Guards, (tho' twelve
were so much afraid of them, that they per-
ish to enter the *Tower*, and to take from thence
ishop of *Canterbury*, the Chancellor, and Sir
the Treasurer, whom they beheaded on
In like Manner, in the City they were
to Foreigners, especially the *Flemings*, taking
em out of the Sanctuaries whither they were
elter, and beheading them. The *Shibboleth*
to distinguish them was *Bread and Cheese*,
hey could not pronounce as the *English*, they
beheaded them. But their glorious Pretences
ing publick Disorders, and punishing bad Mi-
strate, were sullied by *Wat Tyler's* private Re-
beheading *Richard Lyon* his old Master, because
erity to him when he was an Apprentice.

ncil was call'd by the King to advise what
were best to be taken, and it was resolved
ing should offer them all in general a Pardon
was past, and grant them Charters of Freedom
n their Liberties for the future. According-
g, attended with many of his Nobles, went to
of them who were at *Mile-End*, and were in
bout sixty thousand, where he told them, *be*
King, demanding *what they would have?* They
him, *They desir'd he would make them, their*
Lands, free for ever, so that they might
be called or reputed Bondmen. He granted them
re; upon which the major Part of the Re-
cially the *Essex* Men, returned home, leav-
ome of their chief Men to get their Pardon
ter of Freedom pass'd and sign'd. But *Wat*
his *Kentish* Men, in Number about twenty
remained still unsatisfy'd, and persisted to kill
er whom they pleas'd. The King after

The King's
Method to
appease the
Rebels.

1381.

made more advantageous Offers to them, sending three several Charters, but nothing would be accepted. Yet they pretended they would be quiet upon reasonable Conditions, and *Wat Tyler* said, *he would on Peace if he liked the Conditions*. The King being desirous to know what those Conditions were, as the Peace of the Nation being willing to comply with them, he with many of his Nobles, his Guard, Mayor and Aldermen of the City of London, went to Smithfield, and sent Sir *John Newton* to summon *Wat Tyler* to come and treat with him about the Articles to be inserted in their Charter. Sir *John* thought it Condescension enough in the King to send a Subject, hastened *Wat Tyler* to attend him hastily, but he haughtily bid him tell his Master, *he would come when he saw his own Time*: and tho' he was ward, yet he marched so slowly as tho' the King waited for him. He making this Delay, Sir *John* sent to him again, to quicken his Pace, and as he approach'd him mounted, *Wat Tyler* was so offended, that he told him it became him to alight his Horse in his Presence, and drew his Dagger, *John* to kill him; and tho' he was in the Presence the King would not lay aside his Fury; upon which the King commanded Sir *John* to deliver up his Dagger to him and submit. The King and *Wat Tyler* meeting, he shew'd but very little Respect to the King, and his Demands were as exorbitant; for he demanded that the ancient Laws of the Realm should be read; that the Sword which was born before the Conqueror should be delivered to him, and many other Things not fit to be granted. Upon which *Henry Watworth* the Mayor of London and Alderman present, Men of an undaunted Courage and a true Loyalty, being incensed at *Tyler's* Insolence, told the King, *that Tyler's rude Behaviour was dangerous, and that being within his Jurisdiction, he might have Liberty to arrest the Traitor, and he would lose his Life if it did not succeed*. The King at first being doubtful of the Issue of such an Attempt, was willing to permit it, but at last consented. A Mayor waiting an Opportunity, and observing *Tyler* play with his Dagger as if he designed some fatal Blow, and then to lay his Hand on the King's Bridle, he came up to him, immediately with his Dagger struck

the Head, and *Philpot* running his Sword into his Body, he fell dead at the King's Horse's Feet. *Wat Tyler's* Party seeing their Captain slain, urged one another to revenge his Blood, crying, *Our Captain is murder'd*, *let us revenge his Death*, and bent their Bows to shoot at the Murtherers, as they called them. The King considering the Danger the Mayor and Alderman were in, clapping Spurs to his Horse, rode bravely up to them, saying, *What! will you kill your King? Never grieve for the Death of a Traitor; I will be your Captain and Leader; follow me into the Fields, and I will grant you what you desire.* This had so great an Influence upon them, that they laid aside their Intentions of killing the Mayor, and march'd with the King into *St. George's Fields*, thinking themselves secure of obtaining their Requests from him. In the mean Time Mr. *Walworth* the Mayor posted to the City and brought with him a thousand Citizens well arm'd, who were got together and commanded by Sir *Robert Knowls*, waiting to be Assistant to the King, when it should be most seasonable; so marching immediately in good Order into *St. George's Fields* to the King, the Rabble seeing them, were terrified, and flinging down their Arms, beg'd the King's Pardon, which he granting them, they fled, and got home as fast as they could. The Nobles who attended the King advised him to execute three or four hundred of them immediately for a Terror to others: But the King could not be brought to consent to that, but order'd that the City of *London* should give them no Entertainment, and that the Heads of them should be apprehended and punished according to Law. However he sent them the like Charter he had granted to those of *Essex* and other Countries.

The Tumult being thus appeas'd, the King, in Reward of the good Service, that the Mayor and Alderman *Philpot* had done him, with so great Hazard of their own Lives, confer'd the Honour of Knighthood upon them, and *John Standish*, *Nicholas Brambre*, *Nicholas Twisford* and *John Lawcid* Aldermen; and in perpetual Memory of the Loyalty of the City of *London*, commanded the Dagger to be added to their Arms, and gave an hundred Pounds a Year to Sir *William*, and forty Pounds a Year to the rest. This Tumult being quieted, the King return'd to the Tower, where

5 Ri. II.

Wat Tyler
kill'd and
the Rebels
dispersed.

1381. he was receiv'd by his Mother with exceeding great Joy.

Rebels in other Parts of the Nation. This Spirit of Rebellion was not confin'd to London, but had spread it self thro' several other Parts of the Nation, upon the same Pretences, by the Instigation of the same Emillaries *John Ball* and *John Wraw*, two seditious Priests, who had contributed very much to the rising of the *Kentish* Rebels, they having a special Talent of haranguing the People into Discontents and Rebellion. Near *St. Edmund's-Bury* *Robert Westbrom* an Inn-keeper and *John Wraw* the Priest, had got together a Body of fifty thousand Men, who went about the Country plundering and murdering Lawyers, Justices, and all such Persons as they imagined to be the Instruments of keeping the People in Slavery. They beheaded the Lord Chief Justice *Sir John Cressdike*, and also *John of Cambridge*, the Prior of *Bury*, forcing the Monks of the Abbey to bring forth and burn those Writings, by which the Privileges of the Monastery over the Townsmen were granted and confirm'd, and that the Abbot, who had escaped from them, should not recover his former Privileges, they took a Cross, Chalice and Jewels belonging to the Monastery as Pledges, to oblige the Abbot for the Recovery of them to seal a Release of all Services to them. Great Numbers also appear'd about *St. Albans*, under the Command of a common Chandler, who committed unheard of Outrages and Cruelties.

There were also the like Tumults in *Cambridgeshire*, and many Mischiefs done, and also in the Isle of *Ely*, and in *Norfolk*. *John Littlester* a Dyer of *Norwich* headed a vast Mob, and was stiled by them King of the Commons; they with the like Fury destroy'd the Lawyers, Lords of Manors and others. These Rebels thought themselves more politic than their Fellows in other Parts of the Nation; for they compell'd the Lord *Scaler*, *Sir John Brewes*, *Sir Stephen Hales*, *Sir William Morley* and *Sir Robert Salle*, and other Gentlemen to join with them, both to increase their Numbers, and to make their Party more considerable. But *Sir Robert Salle* having too much Loyalty to be of the Party of such a rebellious Rabble, and too much Courage to conceal his Sentiments of their unjustifiable Proceedings, reproving the Attempt

and the ill Conduct of it, was knock'd on the Head by them, but the rest of them sav'd their Lives by servile Compliances; for they were forced to serve *Littester* upon their Knees, and applaud his brave Endeavours for the Liberties of the People. The Rebels likewise attempted to bring the Earl of *Suffolk* to unite with them, but he having notice of their Designs, made his escape in Time, and went to the King. When News was brought them of the Proclamation of Pardon to the Rebels about *London*, they still kept in a Body, and sent three of their chief Leaders with Sir *William Morley*, and Sir *John Brewes*, with a large Sum of Money, which they had extorted from the Citizens of *Norwich*, to save their Town from being burnt, to obtain their Pardon.

s. Ri. II.


Henry Spencer Bishop of *Norwich*, a Man of a martial Temper, being zealous to free his Diocese from such Disturbers of the publick Peace, was at that time marching with eighty Lances and a few Archers towards the Rebels, and being met near *New-Market* by Messengers from the Rebels, of whom he enquired into their Number and Condition, and finding that three of the Chief of them were in the Number of those Messengers, he beheaded them, and set their Heads up at *New-market*; and being informed that their Camp lay at *North-Walsbam* strongly entrenched, he with Sir *William Morley*, and Sir *John Brewes*, gathered an Army of such Gentlemen and others as flock'd to them in their March, assaulted and routed them, and having taken *Littester* and several others of his Associates, he beheaded them, but sent *John Wraw* the Priest with several others to *London* to be punished according to their Deserts.

The Bishop
of *Norwich*
defeats the
Rebels.

The Troubles of the Nation being thus a little quieted, tho' not settled, the Regency thought it necessary in order to complete the Quiet of it at present, and to secure it for the future, to raise an Army; the King therefore summoned together all his Friends about *London*, and also sent to such Persons of Interest in the Countries, as he knew to be well affected, to attend him, and to bring along with them what Men they could, well armed; so that by this means in a few Days time he had got a gallant Army of above forty thousand Men, whom he mustered himself in Person at *Blackheath*. No sooner had the King gotten together this

The King
raises an
Army.

1381.
A second
Rising in
Kent and
Essex.

Force, but he receiv'd News, that the People were risen again in *Kent*, and at *Billecca* in *Essex*; the King resolv'd to go himself into *Kent* with Part of his Army, and to destroy the whole Country, and to send the Earl of *Buckingham* and the Lord *Piercy* to quell the *Essex* Men, who petitioning the King for their Liberty, tho he had promised it before, he made this reply; *they were born Villains, and so they should remain.* However by the earnest Persuasion of the Lords, the Fury of his Passion was something allay'd. The Earl of *Buckingham*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy*, with a considerable Number of Forces were sent down into *Essex*, who finding the Rebels intrench'd between *Billecca* and *Hasfield Peverel*, within Ditches and Carts, they attack'd their Camp and routed them, killing five hundred, and taking eight hundred Horses; the rest making their escape to *Colchester*, solicited the Inhabitants to join with them, but they refusing, they went from thence to *Salisbury*, but were so closely persued by the Lord *Fitz Walter*, that they were almost all either slain or taken Prisoners. The like Success had the King's Army over the Rebels in *Kent*: These Disturbances being thus composed, a general Quietness appeared all over the Nation, which facilitated the Punishment of these Heads of the Rebels who were reserved for Justice.

Several Rebels executed.

Sir *William Watworth*, the Mayor of *London*, had taken several of the Ring-Leaders of the Rebels, *Jack Straw*, *John Kerby*, *Allen Threader*, and *John Sailing*, who had made his boast, that he had killed the Archbishop of *Canterbury* with his own Hand; these Persons being seiz'd within his Jurisdiction, were by Law to be tried before him, and accordingly receiv'd Sentence to be beheaded, and were executed.

Jack Straw's Confession.

Jack Straw, without any Promises or Hopes of Pardon, confess'd ingenuously, when he was at the Place of Execution: 'That had they been successful in their Enterprise, and could have gotten all the Power into their own Hands, as they had no small Reason to hope, being so very strong; they intended to have slain the King, Noblemen, Bishops, Knights, especially Monks, Canons, the Hospitallers, Parsons, and all the richest and wealthiest of the Commons, seized upon their Possessions, leaving only the Friars and Mendicants to administer Sacraments and divine Service: And when they had thus gotten all into their Hands

Hands, they would have established new Laws for the Government of the Realm, which they had contriv'd to divide among their Leaders. *Wat Tyler* was to be King of *Kent*, and others of them in other Countries were to have their petty Kingdoms. This he said was true, as God should help him in these his last Moments.

John Ball the Priest, who was taken near *Coventry*, was sent up and tried before the King at *St. Albans*, with others of the Rebels; which were brought thither from *Hartford* Goal. *Ball* behav'd himself towards the King with great Irreverence and Insolence, and tho' he was advis'd to tender his Submission, and to beg Pardon, yet he would not hearken to the Advice, but treated his Advisers contemptuously; so he was condemn'd and executed with fifteen others, on *July 15th*. As for the rest of the Rebels, who were in several Counties of the Nation, the King sent out his Judges with Commissions to try them. The chief Justice *Tresilian* went into *Essex*, and the King himself went with him, and was present at their Examinations. The *Essex* Men address'd themselves bare-foot to the King for Mercy, in a Body of about five hundred, and obtain'd it, upon Condition, that they should surrender up to Justice the chief Instruments of raising the Rebellion, which they did; and being too many to be executed after the usual Manner, which was by beheading, they were hang'd ten or twelve on a Beam at *Chelmsford*. The like Execution was also done in other Counties where the Rebellion had been, nor did the Lords of Manors deal with their Tenants with less Severity, punishing many of them with Death, so that, as it was computed, no less than fifteen hundred suffered. This Rebellion was afterwards imputed to the Principles of *Wickliff* and his Followers, of whom *John Ball* is said to have been one; but that this Aspersion was an Invention of the Monkish Historians to blacken the Doctrines of the Protestants, seems very plain; in that the Rebels us'd great Cruelties to some of the *Wickliffites*, as also the Duke of *Lancaster*, and in that *Wickliff* himself who did then reside at his Parsonage of *Lutterworth*, was never in the least called in Question for this Rebellion; and tho' it is said that *John Ball* who was a *Franciscan* Fryar, was imprisoned by the Archbishop for preaching *Wickliffe's* Doctrine, yet it is very probable that not his

S. RI. II.

Wickliff's
Doctrines,
no cause of
this Rebel-
lion.

Opinions,

1381. *W* Opinious, but his Discontents, made him forward to promote these Disturbances of the Nation, and therefore the Blame ought not to be laid, either on *Wickliff* or his Doctrines.

The Duke of Lancaster in Scotland, during this Rebellion.

During the Time of these Disturbances in England, the Duke of Lancaster continued in Scotland, more for the Security of his own Person, to whom, he knew, they bore a deadly Hatred, than to conclude the Peace; for upon the first News of these Commotions, he suddenly clapt up the Peace with the Scots, because if they had heard of them, they would certainly have rejected all Propositions for it. And altho' the Scots were vex'd that the Duke had by his Policy debar'd them from a great Advantage upon England; yet they made him an Offer of twenty thousand Men, to guard him against the Rebels, if he had a Mind to return home, or if he would rather stay there till the Storm was over, they offer'd him the Accommodations of *Holy-Rood House*, the latter of which the Duke accepted of and stay'd some Months in Scotland, after the Conclusion of the Peace. His Stay there gave the Rebels an occasion to report, that the Duke of Lancaster was gone over to the Scots, and had obtain'd of them an Army to invade and conquer England; but as soon as the Rebellion was over, the Duke cleared himself of that Aspersions, by sending an Account to the King of the Reasons of his Stay; assuring his Majesty, that if he had any Suspicion of his Disloyalty, he would either come to him without Attendants, or at his Command go into a voluntary Exile. But the King giving no Credit to the Report, sent him Word he might return with his Retinue; and when the Duke arriv'd at Court, gave him a hearty Welcome.

A Quarrel between the Duke of Lancaster, and Earl of Northumberland.

Not long after his Arrival a furious Quarrel happened between the Duke of Lancaster and Earl of Northumberland; because Sir *Matthew Redman*, Governor of *Berwick* under the Earl, had by the Earl's Orders denied Admittance to the Duke into that Garrison, when he was on the Borders of Scotland. The Duke complaining of this to the King, in the Presence of the Earl, and accusing him of Infidelity, Ingratitude, and Disobedience; the Earl being a Man of a warm Temper, broke out into foul and reproachful Language against the Duke, nor would he forbear altho' the King commanded him Silence; upon which the King order'd the Earl

Earl

Earl to be arrested and imprisoned, but he was set at Liberty, by the Earls of *Warwick* and *Suffolk* undertaking for his Appearance at the next Parliament. About this Time the King made *William Courtney* Bishop of *London*, who was a zealous Opposer of *Wickliff* and his Doctrines. 5. Ri. II.

The Parliament met again about the beginning of *November*, and the Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Earl of *Northumberland* attended it with very great Retinues of Men in Arms. The Earl and his Men were lodg'd in the City, the Duke and his Company in the Suburbs, and both went daily to the Parliament-house, attended with their Guards, to the great Terror of the Citizens. The Debate of the Houses about the Quarrel of these two great Men, took up so much Time before it was fully decided by the King, that they could not proceed to any other Business, before News came of the Arrival of the Queen at *Dover*, and so the Parliament was prorogued to give Attendance at her Reception, and the Celebration of the Marriage: For a great Number of the Nobility, and Members of Parliament, were sent down to *Dover* to receive her, and honourably conduct her to the King's Presence. The Mayor, and Aldermen, and a great Number of Citizens, met her at *Black-beath*, and attended her into the City with great Honour, and so she was conducted to the King at *Westminster*. Sixth Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

A few Days after she was married to the King by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, by the Name of *Anne*, Daughter to the late Emperor *Charles IV.* and Sister to the present Emperor *Wenceslaus*. Her Coronation, which was with great Splendor and Magnificence, followed soon after, all the Nobility of the Nation attending, and sparing no Cost, to heighten the State and Glory of that Day. These Solemnities being ended, the Parliament met, and enacted several good Laws, for the Benefit of the Publick; and among the rest enacted, That all Manumissions, Obligations, Releases, &c. made by Force and Compulsion, in the late Tumults, should be void: And also an Act to indemnify such Persons, who had done any Thing in their own Defence, against the Rebels, out of the ordinary Course of Law. That such Persons, as in the late Troubles had lost Deeds, or any other Writings, upon Proof of the Contents, their Effects should be confirmed otherwise The King's Marriage, and Queen's Coronation.

1382.

The Death
of the Earl
of March in
Ireland.

wife to them: And at the Request of the Lords and Commons, the Lord Scroop was made Chancellor, and Sir Hugh Seagrave Treasurer.

About this Time Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, Lieutenant of Ireland, died in that Nation, having by his prudent Government, settled that barbarous People in great Peace and Order. He left one Son, Roger, who succeeded him in the Earldom, and one Daughter, Ann, who by Richard, Earl of Cambridge, was Grandmother to King Edward IV. About this Time, John Wickliff published an Explication of several of his Doctrines and Opinions, which the Archbishops and Bishops were very zealous to suppress.

Seventh Par-
liament, its
Acts and
Taxes.

The Parliament met again at Westminster, May the 6th, in which, at the earnest Petition of the Knights of the Shire, John Wraw, who had been active in the Rebellion in Suffolk, was tried, and after a legal Trial was found guilty, and was drawn and hanged. In this Parliament one very memorable Act is said to have been made, which began the first Persecution that ever was in England, for the Sake of Religion. By it, it was enacted, that Commissions should, upon the Certificate and Requests of the Bishop into Chancery, be directed by the Chancellor to the Sheriffs, and others, for the apprehending certain Preachers of Heresy, who without the Licence of their Ordinaries, preached not only in Churches and Church-Yards, but in Market-Places, and other Places of Concourse, Sermons full of Error and Heresy, and their Followers; and to keep them in strong Prisons, until they shall justify themselves according to the Law of the holy Church. By the Authority of this Act, the Bishops did not only prosecute the Followers of Wickliff's Doctrine, with great Severity, but procured Commissions from the King, directed to themselves, to prosecute them, and so cruelly imprisoned them in their own Houses, and punished them as they pleased. But this Act, tho' put in our Statute-Book, was not passed by the Assent of the Commons, (as Mr. Fox, in his *Acts and Monuments*, page 406, shews,) but was fraudulently obtained by the Bishops of the King, to wreak their Malice against those whom they were pleased to call Hereticks. This Parliament also granted the King a Subsidy; but upon Condition, that it should be employed in preparing a Navy to guard the Nation by Sea.

The first
Act for pun-
ishing
Hereticks.

This

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

269

In this Year *John Northampton* alias *Comberton*, Mayor 6. R. II.
London, observing, with Sorrow, the Lewdness and
auchery of the Citizens, set about the Suppression Several me-
morable
them with great Application, and it is said he was put things hap-
pened.
it by *John Wickliff*, because he saw the Bishops
isters tolerated all Manner of Lewdness, for Mo-

He severely punished all such as he found guilty
Whoring, by imprisoning them, as well the Men
he Women; and causing the Women to be carried
the Street with their Hair shorn, after the Manner

Thieves, in those Days, were usually exposed to
me, with Trumpets and Pipes playing before them;
was he more favourable to the Men. The Bishops
e highly displeased at the Mayor, for this Refor-
ion, and forbad him, pretending, that the Punish-
it of such Immoralities, belonged to their Jurisdi-
n, rather than the Mayor's: But that did not at all
r him so long as his Mayoralty lasted.

About this Time a great Earthquake happened, which Several Ac-
cidents this
Year.
ok down diverse Houses, and Churches, and chief-
Kent. This happened upon Queen *Anne's* Arri-
in *England* from *Bohemia*, and as soon as she had
er Foot on Shore, the Ship in which she came over
g much shattered and broken; which was the more
rvable, because his second Wife brought a Storm
her to the *English* Coasts, in which the King's
gage was lost, and many of his Fleet cast away.
many Days after that, a *Water-Shake* (as it was
ed) happen'd, which dashed the Ships in the Havens
iolently one against another, that many of them re-
ed great Damage.

At *Newcastle* upon *Tine*, as two Ship-Carpenters
e squaring a Piece of Timber, wherever they hew'd,
od issued forth in Abundance, as Sir *John Hayward*
tes This Year the use of Guns came in, and Sir
Calverley, Governor of *Calais*, was the first
employed them in the *English* Service. And at
St. *Thomas's* Day, such great Rains fell that caused
at Inundations, drowned many Villages, and broke
vn diverse Bridges.

The King being now arrived at the seventeenth Year
his Age, began to discover his Inclinations. He The King's
Disposition
at seventeen
Years of
Age.
cted the State and Magnificence of a King, was ge-
ous and liberal, exceeding all his Ancestors in stately
quipages, and the pompous Gallantry of a Court:

But

1380.

His Favourites.

Lord Scroop
the Chancellor removed,
and the Oc-
casion of it.

Eighteenth Par-
liament, and
its Acts.

But he did not relish the barthenfom Cares and to-
ous Atchievements of a Crown, giving himself
Ease and Pleasures, and bestowing his Favours
those, who by their Flatteries encouraged and ap-
ed him in that Course of Life. The chief of
were the Archbishop of York, the Earl of Oxford,
Michael de la Poole, a Merchant's Son of London,
the Lord Chief Justice *Trefilian*: And whilst he
bore the heavy Toils of Government, scarcely re-
ing Thanks for their Pains, these Persons had the
the Company, and the Favour of the King, which
ed great Discontents in the one, and raised Pride
Insolence in the other. One of these Favourites
obtained a Grant of some of the King's Revenues
went to the Lord Chancellor *Scroop*, to have it
firmed by the Great Seal: But the Chancellor
knowing, that Gifts ought to be the Rewards of
only, and that it was hardly agreeable to the Tra-
posed in him to confirm those Grants rashly, that
King had given indiscreetly, put him off with this
swer, "That the King was himself much in Debt,
" that all Profits of the Crown were therefore
" employed for the Benefit of the King; where-
" he refused to set his Seal to such Grants, till
" King was of greater Age and Judgment. The
itioner goes presently to the King, and represent-
Chancellor's Refusal with aggravating Circumstances
the King impatient of Opposition, sends to him,
mediately to deliver up the Seal; but he refused to
sign it, till the King came in Person to demand
which he soon did: And at parting with it, the Ch-
cellor, with all due Respect, told him, "That since
" Fidelity to his Interest was so displeasing to him
" never would again serve him in any Place of T-
" tho' he would obey him as a good Subject." The
King gave the Seal to *Robert Braybrook*, Bishop of *London*,
but it much disgusted the Parliament, who
put the Lord *Scroop* into the Place, and also dis-
sented the People, who from the Opinion they had
his great Knowledge and impartial Justice, account-
him the best Person in the Nation for that Office.
Soon after this, the Parliament met at *Westminster*,
who when they had confirm'd the Charter, and
Laws, according to the usual Custom; made an
That Deeds enrolled, that had been torn and del-

Reign of King RICHARD II. 271

should be exemplified under the King's 6. Ed. II.
and that such Exemplifications should be
force as the Originals. Mr. Fox in his
monuments, Page 406, sets down a Petition
ment, wherein the Commons humbly
e King, that the Act made the last Ses-
the Bishops Authority upon their Certifi-
cancy, to require Commissions to ap-
d imprison the Preachers, Maintainers
s of *Wickliff's* Doctrine should be dis-
cause it was procured without their Con-
e King yielded to their Petition.
ding this, by the Artifices of the Bishops,
Repeal was repress'd, and Prosecutions
Virtue of that surreptitious Act, without
rd had to the Repeal.

ment granted the King a single Fifteenth
ch the King granted a general Pardon to
in the former Rebellion, some of the
s being excepted.

Time the second Holy War began, to be The War be-
ngland. For Pope *Urban* had sent over tween the
e Bishop of *Norwich* granting large Par- Antipopes.
nd promising as great Imputations of Me-
ness, as if they were to go against Turks
to all such as would either go in Person,
Money, to maintain a War against Pope
dversary. And the Clergy preaching up
his Expedition, had engag'd many of the
Gentry, as well as the common People
t.

latter End of the Summer, the Earl of Earl of Cam-
turned with the *English* Army under his bridge re-
it of *Portugal*, much dissatisfied with the turns out of
f his Expedition. For besides that he *Portugal*.

King of *Portugal* very backward in his
as tho' he was scarcely resolv'd upon a
his dilatory Proceedings, had given Time
Spain, to procure such Aid out of *France*
as was too strong to be oppos'd. The
rs, being weary of Idleness, could not by
s of their General be kept from attempt-
g, and so invaded some of the neighbour-
ies in *Spain*, and taking them, put Gari-
sons

1382.

W

sons into them; but the King of *Portugal* was at it, that he refus'd to pay the *English* account Agreement; but they resolving to plunder the *C* and pay themselves, he came to an Agreement with them, clap'd up a Peace with the King of *Spain* sent them away. But this unexpected Treatment censured the Earl, that he departed very angry, and not leave his Son behind him, tho' he had been married to the King of *Portugal's* Daughter.

Ninth Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

Soon after *Christmas*, the Parliament met against *minister*, to whom the Consideration of the *Exp* against the Adherents of Pope *Clement* were was debated and disallow'd; but, the Clergy made Interest, that at length it was permitted, and to the Charge of the Expedition, the Fifteenth, which had been lately granted to the King, was appropriated in lieu thereof a Tenth of the Clergy was given to the King.

The Bishop of *Norwich's* Expedition against the Abettors of Pope *Clement*.

The Bishop of *Norwich* having obtain'd this Engagement, immediately sent Letters to all Persons in his Diocese to preach up the Merit of this Holy War, to pronounce Pardon of Sin to all, who would do it, and the same was done by the Parsons in the Dioceses; by which means by the beginning of Spring, he had gotten together an Army of ten thousand Foot, and two thousand Horse. Most of the Noblemen engaged in it, because the Duke of *Castile* oppos'd it, and would not join in it, unless he would have made War upon the King of *Castile*, who was also of Pope *Clement's* Party. Sir *Hugh Calverly* and several other Knights accompanied the Bishop in this War, and *April 23^d* they put to Sea, and landed at *Calais*. When they were arriv'd there, they came to a Consultation, which Way they should best direct their Forces: Some advis'd to invade *France*, but the

Flanders invaded, and the *Flemings* conquer'd.

was for invading *Flanders*, which they did, and in the beginning of *May*, besieged and took *Graveling*, *Dunkirk* and *Mardyke*, in less than three weeks. Upon this, the Earl of *Flanders* sent to the Bishop to know the Reason why he made War upon him, he return'd him Answer, because he had a Commission to assault all the Abettors of Pope *Clement*. The *Flemings* replied, they then were his Friends and being for Pope *Urban*. But this did not divert him from his Territories, therefore the Duke re-

ny of twelve thousand Men, engag'd them near *7 Ri. II.*
raide, but was routed, having nine thousand of his
 n slain, and the *English* became Masters of all the
 untry between *Gravelin* and *Sluice*, and got as much
 ill as laden 41 Ships, of the Riches of the Coun-
 The Earl of *Flanders* being thus reduc'd to the
 rest Ebb of Fortune, solicited the King of *France*
 Succour; and being seconded by the King of *Bur-*
 dy, prevail'd, and the King of *France* raised an Ar-
 of a hundred thousand Men. In the mean Time,
English having been reinforced with twenty thou-
 Gauntiers, laid Siege to the City of *Ipres*, but the
 of *Flanders* hastening out the *French* Army against
 oblig'd them to raise the Siege, and retire to *Bur-*
 g, in which they fortified themselves, with Wag-
 is set upon the Rampiers, and Ditches. The *French*
 sed them and besieged them, but by the Mediation
 the Duke of *Bretagne*, a Composition was made, *The French*
 upon surrendering the Town to the *French*, the *drive the*
 igh should have safe Conduet with Bag and Baggage *English out*
Calais, and so all the Places they had taken fell into *Flanders.*
 Hands of the *French*. The Bishop of *Norwich* sent
 rd to King *Richard*, of the Posture of his Affairs,
 n which the King ordered the Duke of *Lancaster* to
 en over, with all the Force he could get, to relieve
 Bishop; but he delay'd so long, that the Bishop had
 all, and was landed in *England*, having left behind
 the Prey that they had gotten, and burnt the Ships
 they might not fall into the Enemy's Hands. Which
 nagement the King so resented, that he seized upon
 Bishop's Temporalities, and imprisoned Sir *Thomas*
per, and Sir *William Elmham*, soon after their Return.
 After the *English* Army were gone, the *French* and *The French*
 ts began their usual Ravages on the *English*, the *and Scots in-*
 ts by Land, and the *French* by Sea. The *Scots* in- *vad Eng-*
 ed the Northern Borders, drove away a great Booty *land.*
 Cattle, took the Castle of *Wesk* and burnt it. The
 mb sent out several Ships to infect the Coasts, and
 oy the Passage into *Gascoign* and *Flanders*. The
 ts met with no Opposition till the Parliament met,
 raised a Tax to defray the Charge of the Expedi-
 s. The Inhabitants of *Portsmouth*, and the neigh-
 uring Towns, fitted out some Ships to defend their
 asts, who after a sharp Engagement, took five *French*
 ps. Another Squadron of *English* Ships took eight
 ol. I. T French

1383.

Tenth Par-
liament, its
Aids and
Taxes.A Peace pro-
pounded be-
tween the
English and
French.Only a Truce
concluded.A Convoc-
tion of the
Nobles, in
which the
Duke of
Lancaster,
was accused
of Treason.

French Ships, having on board one thousand Tun of Wine.

About the Beginning of *November*, the *Parliament* met, and resolved, that a puissant Army should be raised, to repress the Insolence of the *French*, and gave the King half a Tenth towards it; and because it would take up some Time to raise an Army, they ordered a Tax to be allowed to the *North* to guard the Borders, till the *Scots* could arrive. The *Scots* hearing this, sent the King for the Continuance of the Truce, which had broken; but their Suit was denied.

The King providing, and the Command of this Army, to the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Buckingham*, gave Orders to be ready to march early in the *Spring*.

The Duke of *Bretagne* seeing Matters to rise between the *English* and *French*, he therefore exhorted the *French* King to come to a Peace, and which he with all Speed, acquainted the King.

The Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earl of *Buckingham*, *Thomas Holland*, and *Sir Thomas Piercy*, were sent as Commissioners for *England*; the Duke of *Berry*, the Duke of *Loan*, and the Chancellor of *France*, were for the *French*. But the Demands of the *French* were so excessive, that no Peace was concluded, but for a Truce for ten Months was agreed on. In the Truce the *Scots* were included, and the *French* by the Truce were to give the *Scots* notice of it. But the Duke of *Flanders* dying, the Duke of *Burgundy*, who married the Earl's Daughter, was so taken up with himself in his Government, that it was forgotten to make Preparations for invading *Scotland*, being contented that the *English* proceeded in the Expedition. In the *Spring*, the Duke of *Lancaster* and Earl of *Buckingham* marched down thither with a great Army, and the Country waste, with Fire and Sword, as the Duke of *Burgundy*, out of which the Inhabitants were stripped of their Goods. The Duke of *Burgundy* of it, immediately dispatch'd an Embassy to make up the Breach. But the *Scots* having

much Damage, were very hardly brought to forbear Revenge, tho' it was no Breach of the Truce, because it had not been confirm'd with the *English*.

A little after *Easter*, there was a Convocation of the Nobility at *Salisbury*, in which one *John*

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

241

John Fryar, appear'd, and exhibited an Information 7. Ri. II
to the Duke of *Lancaster*, that he had a Design to
away the King, and usurp the Crown, relating
Circumstances, as render'd the Accusation very
ible. The Duke not knowing what had hap-
pened, came into the King's Presence, and perceiving
ing to shew some Displeasure in his Countenance,
saw. The King having consulted his two Chap-
lains about it, sent for the Duke, and told him by whom,
how he had been charg'd with high Treason. The
Duke did not shew any Surprise of Mind at it, and gave
Answers to every Particular, that the King was sa-
tisfied. But that which tended much to the Duke's Advan-
tage in this Affair was, that the same Fryar had also accus'd
Lord *Zouch* of the same Treason, who being sick at
the time, was brought to Court to be examin'd in a Lit-
ture, when he solemnly denied the whole Accusation up-
on which he was acquitted, and return'd home;
whereafterwards became an utter Enemy to all Carmelite
Friars. But the Duke desiring that the Fryar might
be kept in safe Custody, till he had cleared himself of
what he had charg'd him with, the King ordered him to
be committed to the keeping of the Lord *Holland* in the
Tower. The Night before the Trial was to come on,
the Duke was to clear himself in a publick Judica-
ture, the Lord *Holland*, and Sir *Henry Green*, entering
the Fryar's Lodgings, put him to a cruel Death, by
hanging him up by the Neck, and Privy Members, and lay-
ing a great Stone upon his Breast, which broke his Back;
the next Day they drew his Body through the Streets,
as they had done this by publick Authority, and he had
justly suffered as a Traitor. And tho' the Duke was
generally thought to be innocent, and the Fryar a false
accuser, before this cruel Action; yet this did the Duke
Dishonour, and made his Innocency more suspected.
The Scots notwithstanding the Truce so lately made,
did not forbear revenging the Injuries that they had
received from the *English*, and therefore infested
the Borders with continual Inroads and Plunderings all
the Summer, and in particular did much Damage to
the Inhabitants of *Northumberland*. Whereupon the
King of *Northumberland* and *Nottingham*, raised an
Army of six thousand Archers, and two thousand
Men, and pursued the Scots, ravaging the Country as
far as *Edinburgh*, and return'd in Safety.
The Truce which had been made with the *French*,
and

The Scots
break the
Truce and
invade Eng-
land.

The Truce
renewed
with France

1584.

Lancaster was sent over again with a very splendid equipage, to endeavour either to conclude a Peace, or renew the Truce for a longer Time, and afterwards continued there a considerable Time, he returned with the News of the Continuation of the Truce till May. While the Duke was in France, one *John Thompson* an Alderman of London, was accused by his own Chaplain of a Conspiracy against the Government, and raising Stirs in the City. At his Tryal before many of the Nobility at Reading, he pleaded nothing in his own Defence, but that he was not to be condemn'd in the Absence of the Duke of Lancaster. Being found guilty, he received Sentence that all his Goods should be confiscate, and himself suffer perpetual Imprisonment, at an hundred Miles distance from his own House, which Sentence was immediately executed, he being sent to *Tintagil Castle* in Cornwall. He had also two Associates, *John Manners* and *Richard Norbury*, who suffered the like Punishment.

Eleventh
Parliament,
its Acts and
Taxes.

Recovery of
the Earl of
Northumberland.

November the 12th, the Parliament met at *Westminster* and presently set about raising Money for the which threatned the Nation from the *Scots* and which they did very liberally; in Compensation whereof, the King passed several Laws for the reformation of Justice. During the Time this Parliament was sitting, the *Scots* invaded England, and the Town and Castle of *Berwick*, by bribing the Governor, who having been put in by the Earl of *Northumberland*, to whom the keeping of that Castle did belong by Inheritance from his Ancestors, to great Blame upon the Earl. For the Duke of *Albany*, who had no good Will for the Earl, so agitated the Matter, that he had near persuaded both the House of Parliament, that the surrendring it to the *Scots* was a treasonable Conspiracy between him and his Duke, but the King taking notice of the Prejudice and Injury of the Duke, permitted the Earl to go down to recover it, tho' many of the Nobility were for imprisoning him. The Earl went down into the North accordingly, and bestrid himself so briskly among his Friends, that he soon got together an Army, which he besieged the Castle so straitly, that it was surrendered in a few Days, but upon better Conditions than they had given to the *English*; viz. that they should march out with their Arms and Baggage, and th

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

277

Earl should pay them down two thousand Marks; to which the Earl consented, because he was desirous to recover it in as little Time, and with as little Loss to the Nation as possible. This set him right again in the good Opinion both of King and Parliament. About his Time two Combats were fought before the King, one between *John Wallis* an *English* Gentleman, and a *Navarre* Esquire, and the other between *John Welsh* and a *Navarrois*. The *English* Gentlemen were Victors, and the *Navarrois* hanged as false Accusers; for in those Days Victory in these single Fights was accounted a Token of Innocency.

The Duke of *Lancaster* being the King's Uncle, and chief Governor, was the greatest Obstruction to the ambitious Designs of the King's Favourites; who growing impatient of Delays, were busy in contriving all the Ways possible to remove him, if not out of the World, yet out of the King's Affections; so that he was now in great Danger of losing both his Honour and Life by their Contrivances. For these Parasites having by forged Crimes and Accusations incensed the King against him, they intended to have had him suddenly arrested and tried before Judge *Tresilian*, who being a Man perfectly framed to their Interests, they knew would be ready enough to condemn him upon such Evidence as they should produce. But these Designs coming to the Duke's Ear, who knowing that Innocency would not be sufficient Guard against their bloody Designs, fled to *Pontfract*-Castle, and drawing in all his Friends of the Nobility to his Assistance, fortified himself strongly against his Adversaries. The King's Mother foreseeing that if the King persisted in his Resentment against the Duke, the Foundation of a Civil War was laid between the Nobility and the King's Favourites, she therefore, altho' she was a very corpulent Woman, and unfit for Travel, undertook the Mediation between the King and Duke, and took many Journeys from one to the other, and in the Conclusion, by the Duke's dutiful Submission, brought them to a thorough Reconciliation, to the great Satisfaction of the Nation and her own Honour.

The Truce between the *English* and *French* being to expire in *May*, the *French* resolv'd to make War upon the *English* vigorously, as soon as it was ended; and accordingly first of all sent the Duke of *Bourbon* with an army into *Aquitain*, to drive the *English* out from

8 Ri. II.

The Duke of Lancaster plotted against

The French and Scots make War on the English.

1380. thence, and afterwards fitted out a great Fleet, which he furnished with Land Soldiers, to invade the Coast of England; and sent Admiral de Viennes into Scotland with a thousand Men armed, besides Cross-Bows to strengthen them and enable them to make the strongest Opposition, and divert the English the more. The Scots were not at all pleased at the Arrival of the French, chiefly because their Country being barren, could not afford Forage for Strangers, without some Prejudice to the Inhabitants, and besides thinking themselves strong enough to encounter the English. But the French Admiral promising the King of Scotland a large Sum of Money for the Damages they should sustain, and for their Assistance, he agreed to raise an Army of thirty thousand Men to join with the King of France.

King Richard raises a great Army and invades Scotland.

King Richard and his Council coming to the Knowledge of these joint Proceedings against the English Nation, were diligent to provide against both, and sent into all Parts of the Kingdom to summon together an Army, and fitted out a strong Navy under the Command of the Lord St. John's, and Sir Thomas Piercy. The Apprehension of an Invasion had that Influence upon the Minds of so many, to excite them to stand up for the Defence of the Publick, that in a short Time the King had an Army of three hundred thousand Men. The Duke of Lancaster was immediately sent with sixty thousand towards Scotland, the King intending to follow with the rest as fast as he could. The Scots, before they heard of the Approach of the Duke of Lancaster, were very busy in plundering, burning and killing wherever they came: But no sooner had they News of that, but they retreated home, and withdrew themselves with their Cattel into the Mountains, so that the Duke met with no Opposition. The King being arrived at York, received the News of the Retreat of the Scots, yet proceeded in his Journey, and joined the Duke, and destroyed the Country of Scotland as far as Edinburgh, and burnt the City, all but the Abbey of Holy Rood, which was spared at the Duke of Lancaster's Intercession, because he had been civilly entertained there in the Time of the late Rebellion. The French would have engaged the English Army, but the Scots shewing them the Numbers and Strength of the English from the Hills, dissuaded them from that Attempt, and advised them to wait for a more probable Way of revenging themselves by invading England on another Side. And accordingly

The King enters Scotland.

Accordingly the *Scots*, not long after passing over the Hills, made an Inroad into *Cumberland*, and did much Damage. The King remained but five Days about *Edinburgh*, and in his Return heard of the Incursions of the *Scots* into *Cumberland*. The Duke of *Lancaster* advised the King to carry his Army beyond the *Fritbs*, to stop up the Passes that they might all fall into his Power, which had it been done they could not have avoided; but the Earl of *Oxford*, who was most in the King's Favour, and whose Advice he principally followed, suggested to him that the Duke of *Lancaster* designed to bring his Person into Danger, and ruin his Army by long and tedious Marches. Upon his Suggestions the King neglected the Advantage, but gave the Duke very hard and opprobrious Language, and return'd home. While the King was on his Way home, a Murther was committed by the Lord *Holland*, the King's half Brother, on the Earl of *Stafford*'s eldest Son, which caused great Trouble in the Army. The Murther was so foul, being committed without any Provocation on the Part of the Lord *Stafford*, who was kill'd upon the Road, going to the Queen, whose menial Servant he was, that the King resolved to punish the Lord *Holland* by Law; and accordingly he commanded him to be seiz'd, and his Goods to be confiscated: But he avoided the Storm, by taking Sanctuary at *Beverly*, and the King's Mother was very importunate with him to pardon him; but not prevailing, she fell sick, by Reason of Discontent, and within four or five Days died, after which the King's Fury against his Brother gradually diminished. The *Scots*, upon their Return home, found their Country so miserably harassed and wasted, that they turned their Fury upon the *French*, who had incited them to this War, and stripping them of all they had, sent them home.

9 Ri. II.

The King's Justice in punishing Murther.

In the mean Time the *French* Navy had no better Success against the *English* by Sea, than the *Scots* and *French* had by Land: For altho' the *English* Fleet, thro' the Neglect of the Commanders, did not act their Part to that Advantage it might have done; however it kept them from landing, and the Inhabitants of *Calais*, *Portsmouth* and *Dartmouth*, with their Ships, took about thirty *French* Ships, and eleven more which they lost by Storm, much lessened their Fleet, and depriv'd them of the Triumph they flatter'd themselves with. And thus the *French* Expedition was at an End.

Several French Ships taken.

1385.
Twelfth
Parliament
in Ads and
Taxes.

The Parliament met again at *Westminster* the Monday after *St. Luke's Day*, in which a Contest happened about raising a Subsidy then granted the King; for after the Laity had granted a Fifteenth and a half, the Clergy refused to bear their Proportion of a Tenth and a half, as was the usual Custom, and the *Archbishop Courtney* flatly denied the Payment of it. This Refusal so incens'd the Commons, that they petitioned the King that he would seize upon their Temporalities. But the King, who was always a great Favourer of the Church, answered, "that he would continue the Patronage he had always shewn to the Church, so long as he lived, and would rather gratify the Clergy's Humour, than offer any Injury to their Function. This Answer so prevail'd upon the Clergy, that they voluntarily gave the King a Tenth Part of their Benefices, which was so pleasing to the King, that he told them that it was more acceptable to him than if he had received four Times as much by Compulsion; and upon the Petition of the Bishops who came to tender the Subsidy to him, he restored the Bishop of *Norwich* his Temporalities, which he had kept in his own Hands for some Years. In this Session of Parliament, the King made several Promotions, creating several Dukes, Earls, and one Marquiss; and by the Authority of this Parliament, *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, was publickly proclaimed Heir Apparent to the Crown of *England*. The King's Uncle *Edward* Earl of *Cambridge*, was created Duke of *York*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Buckingham*, the King's other Uncle, was created Duke of *Gloucester*, with a Settlement of a thousand Pounds per annum upon each to support their Dignity. *Michael de la Poole* was made Earl of *Suffolk* with a considerable Pension, which occasioned some Discontent. But what rais'd the greatest Envy, was the Promotion of *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, who without any Thing more to recommend him than his Handsomeness, was by an unusual Title created Marquiss of *Dublin*, and had a Grant of all the Revenues of *Ireland*, excepting some few Royalties reserved to the Crown, upon paying the annual Sum of five thousand Marks. The extraordinary Fondness the King shew'd to this handsome Favourite was Cause of great Scandal to them both. This Year the celebrated *John Wickliff*, after he had made great Numbers of Profelytes, died of a Fever.

Dr. Wickliff's
Death.

The Reign of King RICHARD II.

287

The *Monkish* Writers of those Times boldly ascrib'd his death to the Judgment of God, and that the Use of his Tongue was taken away as a Punishment for his Heretical Sermons. He was buried in his own Parish-Church at *Easterworth* in *Leicestershire*, where his Bones lay undisturbed for forty one Years, till by a Decree of the Council of *Constance*, they were dug up and burnt as those of a Heretick.

The King and Queen kept their *Christmas* this Year at *Eltham* in *Kent*, where they kept open Court, and a most magnificent and princely State feasted and entertained all the Nobility of the Nation, and foreign Princes or their Ministers, which was the usual Custom of those Times, at the three great Festivals of the Year.

At this Time *Leo* King of *Armenia*, who had been expelled out of his Dominions by the *Turks*, came into *England* to the King, endeavouring to make a Peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*, that he might engage them both against the *Turk*, who was the common Enemy of Christianity; but the Animosity between the two Nations was too great for them toarken to any moderate Terms of Agreement, so he did not succeed; but he was nobly entertain'd by the King and Nobility for two Months, and presented with many rich Gifts: And the King, by the Advice of his Privy Council, settled a yearly Pension of a thousand Pound upon him at his Departure. About the same Time, *Roger* Earl of *March* having receiv'd Intelligence that the wild *Irish* had done much Damage to his Estate in *Ulster*, he undertook a Voyage into *Ireland* to repress them, and rescue his Lands from their Depredations; but soon after his Arrival, the *Irish* being assembled in a great Company, assaulted and took his Castle, and slew him and almost all his Retinue. He left behind him two Sons and three Daughters: His two Sons *Edmund* and *Roger* died without Issue; *Anne* his eldest Daughter was married to *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, then eldest Son of the Duke of *York*, by whom she had *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, the Father of *Edward IV.* *Eleanor* was a Nun, and *Alice*, if she was ever married, left no Children.

In the Spring of the Year the King of *Spain* pretending a Right to the Crown of *Portugal*, by his Wife, made War upon that King, and besieged *Lisbon*. The *Portuguese*, by the Help of some *English*, had twice encountered

9 Ri. II.

Leo King of Armenia

9 Ri. II.

Leo King of Armenia

came over to King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

King Richard.

1368. countred the *Spaniards*, and as often foil'd them, but could not raise the Siege. Wherefore the King of *Portugal* thinking that the Duke of *Lancaster*, who was King of *Spain* in Title, would gladly lay hold of an Opportunity to make himself King *de facto*, sends an Ambassador into *England* to the Duke, to beg his speedy Assistance, and promise him an easy Recovery of his Right, in that he alone had twice foiled the *Spaniards*, and that their Arms being united, would infallibly effect a Conquest. The Duke had for some Time been making Preparation for this Expedition, and he having been very much encouraged to it by the King and his Friends, who were very desirous to have him out of the Way, readily embraced the Offer; so mustering up all his Forces with Speed, began his Voyage thither in the Beginning of *May*. His Fleet consisted of eighteen Ships and seven Gallies, commanded by Sir *Thomas Piercy* as Admiral: His Army, which consisted of twenty thousand Men, *viz.* two thousand Men of Arms, eight thousand Archers, and ten thousand others, was commanded by the Lord *John Holland*, who had married his Daughter as Constable; and Sir *Thomas Moreaux*, one of his Marshals, and many Noblemen attended the Duke to share in his Fortunes. He carried along with him his Wife the Lady *Constance* Princess of *Spain*, and her Daughter *Catherine* and his other Daughter *Philippa*. Before his Departure he and his Dutcheess took their Leave of the King and Queen, and the King presented the Duke with a Silver Crown, giving Commandment that his Men should obey him as King of *Spain*; and the Queen presented his Dutcheess with another Silver Crown, with many good Wishes of Success in obtaining their Right. The Duke in his Passage by *Brest* with his Army made a Visit to Sir *John Roche*, then Governor of the Town, who complaining to him that he was much infested by two Forts lately built by the *French* to annoy his Garison, the Duke sent out a strong Detachment under the Lord *Fawceter* to demolish them, but the *French* defended them so bravely, that it cost them many Lives; but at length, the *French* Governor, the Lord *Maletret*, being wounded, and most of the Men in the Fort slain, they surrendered upon Capitulation, and the Forts were demolished. After this brave Exploit, the Duke set Sail from *Brest*, and passed along the Coasts of *Gallicia*, and landed with his whole Army at the *Groin* the 9th of *August*. They

The Duke
of *Lancaster*
call'd King
of *Spain*.

The Reign of K. RICHARD II.

283

They tarried there a Month, and the Duke went to *Compostella*; in the mean Time the Lord *Holland* kept his Army in Action, and took many small Garisons in the neighbouring Country, and many others voluntarily submitted to the Duke, because his Dutcheſs was with them, who was the right Heir to the Crown of *Spain*. The Season not being fit for Action, the Duke consulted with the King of *Portugal*, about their Expedition at *Monſon* in the Spring, and it was agreed that they would invade *Spain* with their united Forces, and to confirm their Alliance the Duke affianced his Daughter *Philippa* to the King of *Portugal*.

While the Duke of *Lancaster* was in his Passage to *Portugal*, the King of *France*, who had for some considerable Time been meditating an Invasion upon *England*, thought he had now met with an Opportunity in which he could not fail of the Success he desired; because he imagined the Duke of *Lancaster* had emptied his Nation both of Commanders and Soldiers: And upon this Notion raised such a mighty Army, and provided such a Fleet, as if he intended at once to make an entire Conquest of *England*. He is reported to have had a numberless Army in which were twenty thousand Noblemen, with a proportional Number of Commons; and fifteen hundred Ships. They had also fram'd a wonderful Wooden Wall, three Miles in Compass, and twenty Foot high, with a great Number of Towers, with which they design'd suddenly to have enclos'd their Camp. But the Lord *Beauchamp*, the Governor of *Calais*, took three of their Ships laden with Part of the Inclosure, which the King caus'd to be set round *Wincheſter* to secure that Town; he took also another Ship full of great Guns and other Instruments of War. The News of these mighty Preparations put all the important Affairs of *Chriſtendom* to a Stand, and also bred a Terror into the *Engliſh*. Upon this King *Richard*, for the Security of the Realm, got together an Army of two hundred thousand Men, and with Part of them, beſieged all the Sea-Port Towns, and posted another Part to defend the naked Shores in the Places where they were most likely to land. The City of *London* pulled down many Houses to make their Defence more easy from them, and guarded the Walls. Publick Fasts were appointed to lament their Dangers, and implore the Protection of God from their Enemies. All good Men

10 Ri. II.
~~~~~

The French  
make vast  
Preparations  
against Eng-  
land.



Men bewailed the approaching Invasion, as an inevitable Scourge for the Sins of the Nation, and upon nothing but Death or Servitude. And about Michaelmas a Parliament was called to consult for the Nation's Safety, which met accordingly; but the King brought such Numbers of Men along with them, ready if the French should land, that not only the but all the Towns twenty Miles round London, filled with armed Men, who for Want of Pay, were very detrimental to the Inhabitants. At the opening of the Parliament the King demanded a present Sum to pay those Armies he had already got for the Defence of the Nation, and to make such other Provisions against the Enemy, as the Affairs of the State required. The Parliament being sensible of the Danger the Nation was in, readily consented, but thought it not proper to put any great Sums into the Power of the King, who was so pliable to the covetous Humours of his Favorites, who made his Revenues but a Prey to enrich themselves.

Thirteenth  
Parliament  
for Aids and  
Taxes.

For the Chancellor Michael de la Pool had more than one Year's Time, by farming the King's Towns and other Incomes, purchased an Estate of a thousand Pound a Year in Land, besides great Sums of Money which he kept in Bank. The Parliament then unanimously resolved to have him removed with all his Associates, or else to give the King no Tax. They signified to him by a Petition, wherein they presented not only the Misdemeanors of the Chancellor in his Office, but also the Poverty of the People, who ought not to be pressed farther than Necessity required, which they humbly conceived was not so great, but if the Chancellor were brought to a just Account of the Revenues of the King, and the great Debts which were in the Hands of the Chancellor, would be sufficient to defray them. This Petition was received very ill by the King, who commanded them to mention no such Matters, but immediately proceeded to the Business for which they were summoned; declaring, that he would not suffer Suits, or at their Instance, remove the meanest Servant Boy in his Kitchen, and then removed to Elsbam, where he might avoid giving any farther Answer to it. He gave Order with the Chancellor to press them to grant a Sum, and to demand four Fifteenths in his Name.

The King  
and Parlia-  
ment disa-  
gree, and the  
King leaves  
it.

The Lords and Commons being sensible of the Danger of the King's Retreat, told him plainly, that

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

281

ld give no Answer to his Demand, unless the King  
self were present, and he removed the Chancellor from  
Office. Intelligence was soon carried to the King, of  
Proceedings of the Parliament, and he immediately  
Orders to them to send down forty of their wisest  
nbers to him to *Eltham*, to declare to him the Rea-  
and Grounds of their Actions. This Message caused  
at Debate, it having been said that the King had a De-  
to ensnare and destroy them; but at length both Houses  
ed that the Duke of *Glocester* and Bishop of *Ely* should  
id the King in the Name of the whole Parliament, and  
King consented it should be so. When they came into  
presence, after they had paid him all due Reverence,  
with great Submission delivered their Message to  
Effect; "That the Lords and Commons in Parlia-  
ment assembled desired nothing more than to live in  
peace and Quietness, as good Subjects, under his Go-  
vernment; that as he might lawfully once a Year  
summon a Parliament, and require the Presence of  
the Lords and Commons at it, that by mutual Advice  
and Consent they might reform all Oppressions,  
Wrongs, Extortions, and other grievous Enormi-  
ties in the Realm, and enact such wholesome Laws  
were for the Peace and Welfare of the King's  
subjects, so they were met according to their Duty,  
and had no other Design than to pursue those Ends;  
that his late Absence was a great Discomfort to them;  
and since there was an old Statute, whereby it was  
enacted, that if the King, not hindered by Sicknes or  
necessary Business, did absent himself forty Days from  
his Parliament, they might return home, they should  
be oblig'd to leave him if he still denied them his Pre-  
sence." The King in Anger replied, "That he per-  
ceiv'd his People went about to rebel against him, and  
that he thought it better to desire the Assistance of the  
King of *France*, than to submit to his own Subjects."  
The Lords replied, "That the *French* King was the most  
violent and most inveterate Enemy of the Nation;  
that as he usurped his Dominions in *France*, so he  
usurped after the *English* Throne; and therefore no  
Assistance was farther to be expected from him,  
than such as might be a fair Pretence for him to  
lose the Possession of his Right: That such Resoluti-  
ons could proceed from nothing but the desperate  
Advice of his evil Counsellors, who by their Policy  
sought

10 Ri. II.



10 Ri. II.  
10 Ri. II.  
10 Ri. II.  
10 Ri. II.

1384. *W* "fought to uphold a Breach between him and his Parliament, which would end in his and his People's Ruin; wherefore they besought him to lay aside all Prejudice against his good Subjects, and to return to his Parliament, which no less sought and desired his Felicity and Presence."

The King returns to his Parliament.

These, and other Arguments to the same Purpose, had so good an Effect upon the King, that he promised to follow their Advice, and accordingly came to the House soon after; and without much Reluctancy, granted a Commission to the Duke of Gloucester, Earl of Arundel, and certain other Noblemen and Bishops, to survey and examine the State of his House and Courts, all his Officers and Ministers Rents, Profits and Revenues; to correct and amend any Faults and Offences prejudicial to his Person and Crown; and particularly to call *Michael de la Pool*, Earl of Suffolk, the Chancellor, to an Account about the Management of his Office. *John Ford*, alias *Fordham*, Bishop of *Durham*, was removed from being Treasurer, and *John Gilbert*, Bishop of *Heresford*, put in his Place. And because the Realm had, for some Years past, been badly governed, and that by the great Corruption of the King's Officers, the publick Revenue was consumed, the King insufferably defrauded, the common People by heavy Taxes miserably impoverished, the Administration of all Publick Affairs was put into the Hands of thirteen Persons, chosen by the Parliament, who had Power to inspect and determine all Affairs, Causes, and Complaints, arising from Matters of this Nature, from the Death of *Edward the Third*, till that Time.

The Duke of Arundel, and the Earl of Nottingham, were appointed Admirals, and sent to Sea with a strong Navy to defend the Coasts, and hinder the Landing of the Enemy. *Robert de Vere*, Marquis of *Dublin*, created Duke of *Ireland*, was at the Petition of the Lords and Commons, ordered to be sent to *Ireland*, before the next *Easter*, and they consented that he should have thirty thousand Marks paid to him for his Equipage, and to support his Charge there; and they consented to, that the Nation might be rid of so dangerous a Person, and so ill a Counsellor. While these Things were doing by the Parliament, the Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Arundel, and other Lords in Commission, had examined and tried Chancellor *Pool*.

The Duke of Ireland sent to Ireland.

and found him guilty of many high Crimes, Frauds, and Treasons; whereupon they not only deposed him from his Office, but confiscated his Estate of a thousand Pound a Year, and imposed on him a Fine of twenty thousand Marks. The Parliament also granted the King half a Tenth, and half a fifteenth. Then the Parliament broke up, and the King made this Protestation, *that for any Thing that was done in that Parliament, he designed it not to the Prejudice of himself or his Crown.*

10 Ri. II.  
Michael Peol found guilty of many Crimes, deprived and fined.

The King of *France* held on his Purpose of invading *England*, notwithstanding these Preparations were made for its Defence; and having gotten all Things ready for the Enterprize, waited at *Shrice*, from *August* till the Middle of *November*, for the coming of the Duke of *Berry*, and a fair Wind: And a fair Gale blowing on *All Saints Day*, tho' the Duke of *Berry* was not arrived, he chose rather that the Duke should follow him, than lose so fair an Opportunity; and accordingly he set sail: But when they had sailed about seven Leagues, the Wind changed on a sudden, and drove them back again with much Loss. The Duke of *Berry*, who was always averse to the Attempt, had delay'd his coming, on purpose to prevent or discourage it. However, he arrived at *Shrice* before the Wind favoured them again; and it being then *December*, and so the Winter pretty far advanced, he very strenuously dissuaded the King and Council from proceeding any farther, as being both unsafe for his Kingdom and Army; and so that chargeable Design came to nothing.

The French Invasion hindered by cross Winds.

A quite different Account of this Affair was carried to *Spain*; for there it was given out, that the *French* Army were actually landed in *England*; and therefore the King of *Portugal's* Council advised him, that he should defer his Marriage with the Daughter of the Duke of *Lancaster*, till the Event of the Expedition of the *French* in *England* should be known; for if that proved successful, as they thought it probably might, his Alliance with the Duke of *Lancaster* would be of no Worth to him. This occasioned some Coldness in the Duke's Affairs in *Portugal*, tho' for the present the Reasons of it were concealed from him.

The King of Portugal defers his Marriage.

The Parliament being gone home, the King was at Liberty to follow his partial Affections and unsteady Resolutions; for as if their Sufferings had been undeserved,

Michael Peol's Fine forgiven, and he received into Favour.

1577.

The Duke of Ireland

restored to

Favour.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

The Duke of Gloucester

and other

Peers, to be

restored.

deserved, or inflicted against his Will, he received Favour again, with great Expressions of Love, of Persons, who were such heinous Offenders in the of the Parliament; and to the no small Grief Trouble of the Nobility, not only immediately the Fine, that had been imposed against *Michael la Pool*, Earl of *Suffolk*, the Chancellor, but, as he had intended to make him Satisfaction for the W he had suffered by redoubling his Honour, he him to be clothed in royal Robes, and sit at with him, and that in Publick at Christmas Fe The Duke of *Ireland* and Archbishop of *York* admitted to greater Intimacy with him than ever they became the three only Persons, whom the particularly delighted in. They were not wanting to improve this doting Humour of the King to their advantage; and they imagined the best Way to procure it, would be by a sharp Revenge upon the chief Instruments of their Disgrace, whom they looked upon to be the only Obstacles of their Ambitious Aims. They easily persuaded the King, "That all they suffered for his Sake; That their Crimes were forgiven; That he should make him odious to the People; and, That he could not protect them, who did nothing but by his Command, and for his Interest, it would not be long but he would be too weak to defend him." That the main Aim of those ambitious Nobles, Enemies, was to dethrone him, by disgracing his Ministers: For it is an easy and popular Interest, that the King is not fit to rule, who knows not whom to trust; and he must be a bad Prince, and hath bad Officers." By these, and such like Arguments, the King was easily wrought upon, so that those whom they accounted their Enemies, as to court readily with them, to put any Contrivance in Execution for their Destruction. The Duke of *Gloucester*, the Earl of *Suffolk*'s Judges, were look'd upon as the most eminent, and therefore the first Plot was taken off the Duke of *Gloucester*; then to proceed to rest, as their first Attempt had Success. And this was contrived under the Pretence of Friendship: For *Nicholas Exton* having prepared a Treat for some Peers and great Men, at Sir *Nicholas Bramber*'s House in the City; they invited the Duke thither, he contrived, that the Duke should be either surprised

personal

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

289

or assassinated, while he was in his Mirth, and not suspecting any such ill Design : But this Villany was so much abhorred by Sir *Nicholas Exton*, the Mayor, that being asked by the King to give his Consent, or at least Conivance at the Execution of it, he declared, *he would never embroe his Hands in innocent Blood*; and accordingly gave the Duke notice of it privately, desiring him to provide for his present and future Safety; which he did by not going to the Feast.

The Earls of *Arundel* and *Nottingham*, who by Order of Parliament were appointed Admirals of the Navy, to defend the Nation, and to annoy the *French*, did all the Winter, with the utmost Diligence endeavour to furnish themselves with able Ships and stout Men, were ready in the Spring, and having received Advice, that the *French*, *Flemish*, and *Spanish* Fleet, lay at *Rochel*, laden with Wine, waiting for a Wind to sail to the several Ports to which they were bound, they put to sea with all Expedition in Order to intercept them, and had the good Fortune to meet with them; and after a short Engagement, took an hundred Sail of them, chiefly fraught, with nineteen thousand Tun of Wine, besides other Commodities. These Ships being brought to divers Ports of the Nation caused so great a plenty, that Wine was commonly sold for a Mark a Tun, and the best for not above twenty Shillings. Their Shares they generously gave among their Friends, and having refitted their Ships, put out to Sea again. The Success of their first Achievement struck such a terror into the Minds of the Enemy, that in their second they met with but very faint Opposition, though they landed in many Places on the Coasts of *Flanders*, and plundered and burnt the Country at their Pleasure; and arriving at *Brest*, they took a new Fort which the *French* had lately built, to annoy the Castle; and having put a Garrison in it, and supplied it with Plenty of Provision and Ammunition, they returned home.

These Earls having added to their courageous and brave Exploits a generous Contempt of their own Profit, and a warm Zeal for the common Good and Publick Safety; so high an Opinion of their Worth was raised in the Minds of all Men, that they became the subject of publick Praise and Admiration. But this made for their Disadvantage at Court; for it heightened the Indignation of those that were managing against

10 Ri. II.

*The English Fleet does great Service under the Earl of Arundel,*

1387. the Earl of *Arundel*, and his Party, that those Men whom they had decreed to Destruction should be thought most worthy, not only of Life, but Honour too, by all Men; and lest for these brave Actions, the King himself should conceive a favourable Opinion of them, they endeavoured by all their Artifices, not only to lessen, but blast the Reputation of them, telling the King "That tho' the common People cried up the late Action of the Earls of *Arundel* and *Nottingham*, in taking the *Flemish* Fleet, as a brave and glorious Achievement; yet to such as could see farther into Things, it was really far otherwise; for by their robbing the Merchants, all our foreign Trade would be spoiled, and no Nation would care to trade with us, who lived much upon the Ruin of them. So that tho' a small Gain did redound to the Nation by their Piracy, it would prove an inestimable Damage in the End. These Calumnies they had biassed the King's Mind to look upon his Admirable great Service to be a Disservice; so that when they came to Court, they could easily perceive that their good Actions were made a Crime, at which they were so disgusted, that they resigned their Office, and retired to their private Habitations.

Duke of *Ireland* put away his Wife, the Duke of *Gloucester's* Niece.

Tho' the King's Favourites had met with the late Disappointment in acting against the Life of the Duke of *Gloucester*, yet this did not discourage them from further Attempts, but they were still forming new Designs against him. The Duke of *Ireland* knowing him to be a Person very jealous of his Honour, and impatient at the least Contempt of his royal Blood, having married his Niece, tho' Granddaughter to King *Edward* the third, and a Lady of considerable Beauty, and irreproachable Virtue, put her away, on purpose to affront and provoke the Duke; and married one *Lancetona*, a *Belgian* Lady, one of the Maids of Honour to the Queen. The injured Lady being Cousin German to the King, hoped to have some Redress by appealing to him; but petitioned him often to no Purpose, her Husband being too deep in the King's Favour, for her to hope for any Justice from him. But the Duke of *Gloucester* could not forbear shewing his Resentment of the Injury done to his Family, and told the King plainly, he would revenge the Injury his Kinswoman had received. The Duke being a Man of great Power, and a rough Disposition,

position, this Menace added Spurs to the wicked Con-  
trivances of the King's three Favourites, and their Party, 10. Ri II.  
they being apprehensive their own Lives were in Dan-  
ger, if the Duke were not suddenly taken off. By such  
Means and Practices as these, King *Richard*, from be-  
ing highly respected and beloved, came to be generally  
hated and despised by the Nobility and People.

The Duke of *Ireland* being, according to the Reso-  
lution of the late Parliament, to go into *Ireland* at Duke of Ire-  
land's pre-  
tended Voy-  
age into that  
Nation.  
*Easter*, which now drew nigh, great Preparations were  
made for his Departure, as if he had been in earnest;  
and soon after *Easter* he set out on his Journey to  
*Wales*. In his Passage thither he was accompanied in  
State by the King, the Earl of *Suffolk*, Judge *Tresilian*,  
and some others, who staid with him there some Time,  
till they thought the Expectations of the Nation being  
satisfied, he might return again without much Notice  
being taken. In this Retirement, which was designed  
for the Concealment of their mischievous Consulta-  
tions, they employed all their Wits to find out Me-  
thods to compass the Ruin of those they accounted their  
Enemies; and coming back to *Nottingham*, they began  
to make some Essays, how their Devices would suc-  
ceed. The first Project was, to suppress them by Several Pro-  
jects to de-  
stroy the  
Lords.  
Force, and in Order to effect this, they summoned all  
the Sheriffs of the neighbouring Counties, to come to  
the King at *Nottingham*, and inquired of them, what  
Forces they could raise, to assist the King against the  
Lords, if they were required to do it? The Sheriffs an-  
swered, "That the People were generally persuaded, that  
" the Lords were the King's Friends, and that they  
" sought the Good of the Nation in all they did; and  
" therefore they believed they should get very few to  
" oppose them." Then they enquired of them, whe-  
ther they could not, by their Power and Interest, choose  
such Men for the next Parliament, as the King should  
nominate to them, and approve as most faithful to  
him? They answered, "That the People would be  
" very hardly deprived of their ancient Privilege of  
" choosing their Members of Parliament; and that if  
" there were a true Freedom observed in choosing, it  
" would be almost impossible to impose any Persons a-  
" gainst the People's Liking, especially since they would  
" easily guess at the Design, and the more resolutely  
" stand upon their Right." They were a little startled



at the Answer of the Sheriffs, because they had Dependence upon this Invention, imagining, that was done by a Parliament, would carry a Face with it, and so their private Revenge was turned into a publick Punishment: But failing Point, they dismissed the Sheriffs, and betook selves to their last, and most desperate Stratagem, was to ruin them by Law. And for this Purpose King sent his Summons to all the Judges to him at Nottingham. The Chief Justice *Tresilian*, one of the Cabal, had drawn up several Articles, have the Opinion of the rest of his Brethren them. Sir *Robert Felbnap*, Chief Justice of the Common Pleas, Sir *John Hale*, Sir *Roger Falsborp*, & *William Burgh*, and other Judges of the same, went according to the Summons; upon which solemn Council was called the eleventh of August the King demanded of them the Judgment of the upon these following Questions, and required their Faith and Allegiance, to deliver the true Sense of the Law upon them, viz.

The meeting of the Judges at Nottingham, and their Resolution of several Questions.

1. *Whether the Statute and Commission made in Parliament, were prejudicial to the King's Prerogative.* They all unanimously answered, *Yes*, because it obtained against his Will.

2 and 3. *How those Persons ought to be punished, who were either eager to procure it, or moved the King to send to it and grant it?* They said, With Death; the King would pardon them.

4. *How they ought to be punished, who forced the King to grant it?* They said, As Traitors.

5. *How they ought to be punished, that restrain the King so far from exercising his Prerogative, that he cannot remit Penalties or Debts owing to him?* They replied, As Traitors.

6. *Whether, when the King hath ordered the Parliament to proceed upon certain Articles, the Lords and Commons may refuse, till the King shall grant what he commands of him?* They answered, That to resist the King's Commands, in such Cases, was High Treason.

7. *Whether the King may not dissolve the Parliament when he pleases?* They resolved, he might.

8. *Whether, since it was a Prerogative of the King to punish the Offences of, or remove all publick Officers?*

## The Reign of King RICHARD II.

293

Judges, the Lords and Commons, without the King's permission or Order, might impeach such Officers and Judges in Parliament? They determined, That they might not; and it was Treason in any, or all the Members of Parliament, to attempt it.

9. What Punishment they deserved, who moved, or sought in a Statute, by which Edward the Second was deposed, to be a Precedent for the above-mentioned commission? They defined, As Traitors.

10. Whether the Judgment given against Michael de Pool, Earl of Suffolk, was erroneous, and be reversible? They said, That it was erroneous, And reversible in every Part; and that if it were again to be done, they would not pass it.

They having given these Resolutions, the King required them to subscribe them, and set their Seals to them, in the Presence of the Lords, and other great persons there assembled. The Chief Justice Trevelyan, and those of his Bench, readily complied: But Sir Robert Felbnap, with those of his Bench, refused to subscribe, nor would do it, till the Duke of Ireland and Earl of Suffolk, by severe Menaces, forced him to it; which, that it was contrary to his Conscience, the Lords he spake are a sufficient Testimony: *I want by an Hurdle, an Horse, and an Halter to bring me to the Death I deserve: If I had refused it, I had suffered by your Hands: And now I have gratified the King and you, I deserve to die for betraying the Nobility of the Kingdom.*

The Matters being thus prepared, a Jury was sent from London to Nottingham, who very readily indicted the Duke of Gloucester, Earls of Arundel, Warwick, Darby, and Nottingham, of High Treason, for what they had done in the last Parliament; and upon a formal Hearing before the Judges, they were condemned to die; and their Lands being forfeited to the King, were distributed among his Favourites.

About this Time there happened a great Disturbance in the Church. One Walter Disse, a Carmelite Fryar, who had formerly been Confessor to the Duke of Lancaster; having, by the Favour of the Duke, obtained of Pope Urban, a Liberty of conferring the Honor and Privileges of the Pope's Chaplains, on such persons as would purchase them with Money; Peter Wateles, an Augustin Fryar, and a Favourer of Wickliff's

The Lords condemned by a Jury of Londoners.

Monkish Hypocrisy discovered by one of their Brethren.

1387. *Wickliff's* Doctrine, desirous to have Freedom from monkish Confinement, and the Society of those vile Persons he liv'd with, got himself to be admitted the Pope's Chaplain, and immediately left the Monastery. He was a learned and pious Man, and after his Release, spent his Time much in preaching. He abhorring the wicked Lives of the Monks, which he had with great Sorrow taken notice of, while he lived among them, his Zeal was stirred up to blame their Hypocrisy and wicked Actions, so unbecoming a strict Profession of Religion. His Discourses were much applauded by the People, who were generally disaffected to the Monks, and addicted to *Wickliff's* Doctrine, which his Invectives did favour of. The Monks being impatient of Reproof, shew'd the utmost Dislike to him and his Sermons, frequently disturbing his preaching; so that what through the Controversy between the Monks and his Auditors, who would sometimes come to Blows, even in the Churches, and what through Fear of them, he was constrained to give over his preaching, and betake himself to Writing; to which he was advised by his Friends, (some of which were very considerable Persons, viz. Sir William Nevil, Sir Richard Starry, and Sir John Montacute.) In his Writings he charged the Monks with many horrid Crimes, as Sodomy, Murder, and Treason, of which he gave convincing Proofs, naming the Persons, both Actors and Patients, that his Relations were credited by all Persons; so that they believed the Monasteries to be no better than he had called that from whence he came, *The Devil's Dungeon*. The Bishops were very angry at these Books, and looked upon them as the Disgrace of the Clergy in general, and were therefore very zealous to suppress them; and in Order thereto, obtained of the King a Commission directed to all Sheriffs, and Justices, commanding them to search for, and seize all heretical Books, and to suppress *Lollardy* throughout the Kingdom; and tho' this took no great Effect for the present, yet it allay'd the Heat and Contest between the Monks and their Enemies.

The Bishops  
Zeal for the  
Monks.

The Lords  
clear them-  
selves.

The Judgment which the King and his Favourites, by means of the Compliance of the Judges, had pass'd upon the Duke of Gloucester, and other Lords, tho' absent, was no sooner given, but a full Account of all the Proceedings was carried to them; and tho' the Duke

like of *Glocester* was a Man of a hot and cholerick temper, yet the Sense of his Duty to the King, taught him to provide for his own Defence, by a more sub-<sup>2 Reg. II.</sup> sive Way, than immediately taking to Arms. There-  
fore sending for the Bishop of *London*, he represented  
his Case to him, and also that of the other condemn'd  
Lords, and having taken a solemn Oath upon the E-  
vangelists, that he was studious of the Safety and Prof-  
ity of the King's Person, and Realm; and never had  
conceiv'd so much as an undutiful Thought against  
him, much less had done any Thing which might de-  
serve so severe a Sentence, as was pass'd upon him;  
and desired him to wait on the King, to mediate a Re-  
conciliation between the King, himself, and the Lords;  
The Bishop readily undertook the good Office, and  
prov'd so good an Advocate, that the King seem'd sa-  
tisfied with the Duke of *Glocester* his Uncle. But  
The Earl of *Suffolk* being by, and knowing that if the  
reconciliation were compleated, it would prove fatal  
to him, interposed, and with a virulent Charge of Bo-  
nality and Rebellion laid against the Lords, quite al-  
tered the King's good Inclinations to Peace; for which  
The Bishop took the Liberty to tell him, *that it became him  
to be wholly silent, since he stood condemn'd in Parliament,  
and liv'd only by the King's Grace, and Favour,* upon which  
The Bishop was commanded out of the King's Presence, and  
return'd without Success in his Negotiations to the Lords.

When the Bishop was come back, and had given an  
account of his ill Success, they immediately resolv'd  
to raise what Force they could, and to stand up in  
their own Defence, and expostulate with the King why  
he sought their Death, and suffer'd himself to be go-  
vern'd by such Traitors.

The Lords  
provide an  
Army for  
their own  
Safety, and  
unite.

The King and his Friends thought to prevent any  
opposition from them, by siezing them singly, before  
they could get together, and therefore sent the Duke of  
*Northumberland*, to apprehend the Earl of *Arundel* at  
his Castle at *Rygate*; but the Duke found him so well  
warded, that he was obliged to dissemble the Reason  
of his coming, and let it pass for a Visit: The King  
therefore sent a strong Force to surprise him; but the  
Earl suspecting what after happened, had made his es-  
cape to the Duke of *Glocester* at *Harringey Park* near  
*Wigmore*, and there they joined their Forces with the  
Earls of *Warwick*, *Nottingham* and *Darby*. This  
news being carried to the Court, much surpris'd the

1347. King and his Friends, whereupon a great Council was call'd to consult what was best to be done in this critical Conjunction. The Archbishop of York advised the King to raise an Army to repress them; but considering an Army of fifty thousand could not be soon enough raised, and if they were, yet very few of them would fight against the Lords, this Proposal was rejected.

The Duke of Ireland, and Earl of Suffolk, advised him to make the King of France his Friend, by resigning Calais, and all his other Dominions beyond Sea to him. And accordingly, as *Walsingham* says, the King resolv'd upon a Voyage to France, in order to have made an Agreement with that King, to have surrendered up Calais, and other important Places to him, upon Condition he would assist him to subdue his rebellious Nobility. But the Lords Party being now grown powerful, they having mustered above forty thousand, it broke all the King's Measures, and prevented that Voyage. The King therefore being in great Confusion, and being willing one Time to divert himself with the rambling Discourse of a crack-brain'd Knight, call'd Sir Hugh de Linn, ask'd him jocularly, what he should do with the Lords at Haringey Park; to which Sir Hugh very gravely replied, *Let us march out Sir, and kill every Man of them; and then by God's Eyes, you'll have bravely destroy'd the most faithful Subjects in your Kingdom.* The three Favourites knowing that nothing but Arms could secure them from the Fury of the Lords, therefore gave this desperate Counsel: But quite different Proposals were made by those whose Guilt and Fears were less. The Earl of Northumberland assured the King, that the Lords tho' now in Arms were his true and faithful Subjects; and therefore humbly requested of the King, that he would send to them, and enquire the Reason of their Assembling with such a Number of People, and he did not doubt but he would give him Satisfaction. This Proposition was approv'd by the Majority of the Council, and the King himself assented to it. Whereupon the Archbishop of Canterbury, and Bishop of Ely, were sent to tell the Lords, that the King had no Mind to commence a War against his Subjects, but would know the Cause of their Discontents, and therefore desired them to meet him the next Sunday in Westminster Hall, and there exhibit their Complaints. The Lords were willing to meet the King, but were suspicious of the treacherous

A Meeting  
agreed upon  
between the  
King and  
Lords.

treacherous Designs of those that were about him, and told the Bishop, that upon Promise of Protection, they would certainly attend his Majesty. The Bishop of *Ely* engag'd himself upon Oath, that if there were any dangerous Designs laid against them, he would not fail to give them timely Notice of it; and upon that they promised him to meet the King at the Day appointed. The Night before the Time of Meeting, a Message came from the Bishop, giving them Information, that an Ambush of a thousand armed Men, under the Command of Sir *Thomas Trivet*, and Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, was laid in the *Mews* to surprise them, and therefore they should either not come, or come guarded with a sufficient Force; upon which the Lords came not. The King came to *Westminster* Hall according to Appointment, but the Lords not coming, he demanded with some Warmth of the Bishop, why the Lords did not appear, according to the Promise they had sent by him? The Bishop very plainly and boldly answered, that the Lords had received certain Information, that a Plot was laid against their Lives, in the *Mews*, which being so contrary to the Faith of a Prince, they thought it in vain to treat with him. The King being startled at this Answer, as tho' he had not been privy to it, swore he knew nothing of it, and presently gave Order to the Sheriffs of *London* to search the Place mention'd, and if they found any such Thing, either to kill or take them; but the chief Actors having notice of the Discovery, had dispersed themselves before this could be done. However upon the King's fresh Promise of their Security, they not long after did attend him in *Westminster* Hall, but strongly guarded.

11 Ri. II.  
W

The King being seated on his Throne arrayed in his royal Robes, the Lords kneeled submissively before him, and the Bishop of *Ely*, who was Chancellor, deliver'd the King's Mind to them in a short Speech, telling them, 'That the King hearing of their riotous Meeting in *Haringey Park*, tho' he was advised to repress them by Force, which he could easily have done; yet out of his princely Clemency, had chosen to put gentler Methods first in Execution, to avoid the Effusion of his Subjects Blood if possible; and therefore had sent for them, to know the Reasons and Causes of their Discontents, and why they in so tumultuous a Manner had drawn together such a

The King and Lords meet in *Westminster* Hall, and are reconciled.

1387.

' Number of People.' The Lords made answer, ' That  
 ' it was not out of any ambitious or turbulent Humor,  
 ' that they had taken Arms; for they neither affected  
 ' his Crown, nor envied his Peace, but through an un-  
 ' avoidable Necessity of preserving his Person and  
 ' Realm, and securing their own Lives from the impend-  
 ' ing Dangers, which were falling upon them, by such Per-  
 ' sons as were Enemies to both, and shrowded their  
 ' ill Actions under his Favour; that the Duke of *Ire-*  
 ' *land*, Earl of *Suffolk*, Archbishop of *York*, Sir *Robert*  
 ' *Tresilian*, Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, and some others, were  
 ' those Traitors to the King and Realm, that they  
 ' were afraid of, and sought to remove; because so  
 ' long as they were in Place and Favour, the Nation  
 ' must be miserable, nor could any Man be safe; and  
 ' that they had not brought any false Accusation against  
 ' them, they declar'd themselves ready (if his Majesty  
 ' would yield to it) to justify what they had alledg'd by  
 ' single Combat;' and then threw down their Gloves  
 at the Challengers. The King having heard them  
 with much Calmness, gave them this rational and mo-  
 derate Reply, ' That supposing it were true, which  
 ' they had alledg'd, yet they had taken a very improper  
 ' Method to rectify their Grievances, which ought to  
 ' be done by Rules of Justice, not Acts of Rebellion;  
 ' that their present Tumults were of very ill Conse-  
 ' quence, and would encourage the Multitude to make  
 ' use of the like Methods, which would be difficult to  
 ' repress; that he would speedily call a Parliament,  
 ' wherein the Persons accused should appear, and all  
 ' Matters of Difference should be adjusted, and all  
 ' true Causes of Trouble or Fears, to themselves, or  
 ' the Nation, be removed; and in the mean Time would  
 ' pardon all that was past, and take them into his Pro-  
 ' tection.' The King having finish'd his Speech, took  
 the Duke of *Glocester* by the Hand, and raising him  
 from his Knees, bid the rest rise; then retreating with them  
 into a private Chamber, gave them a Treat, and after  
 the Treat was over, gave them leave to depart. The  
 Lords were thoroughly satisfied with the King's Be-  
 haviour towards them; and after the King had put forth  
 his Proclamation of Pardon, they looked upon all  
 Things in a certain Way of Settlement, at the Meet-  
 ing of the next Parliament.

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

299

The Duke of *Ireland*, and the other Persons accused, <sup>11 Ri. II.</sup> were not present at the late Interview of the King, and Lords; and the Lords thought it not safe to dismiss their Army, lest there should be some secret Contrivance still on Foot against them. And this Suspicion was <sup>The King privately raises an Army against the Lords.</sup> very fortunate: For notwithstanding the seeming Sincerity of the King's being reconcil'd to them, yet the Duke of *Ireland* had a secret Commission, to raise an Army of the King's Friends about *Chester*, and to come to *London*, in which they hoped to find such Assistance, as to be able without Difficulty to subdue the Lords. Tho' this was acted with great Privacy, and at so great a Distance, yet the Lords had notice of it, who therefore contriv'd to intercept the Duke in his Way to *London*; and therefore sent the Earl of *Derby* with a strong Party, to post themselves in the Countries, through which he was to pass. The Duke of *Ireland*, having raised a Body of six thousand Men, stout and well armed, out of *Cheshire* and *Lancashire*, was marching towards *London*; but the Earl of *Derby*, and his Party met him at *Radcot-bridge* near *Barford* in *Oxfordshire*, and had broken down the Bridge to force them to fight. The Duke of *Ireland* was surpris'd at their meeting him, and being fearful of his own Fate, perswaded the Gentlemen to retreat. But Sir *Thomas Molineux* being a Gentleman of great Courage, replied, 'that it was but a Party of the Lords Army, and that commanded by the Earl of *Derby*, a Man famous, neither for Courage, nor Conduct; and that if they should give Ground to these, they could not hope to effect any Thing else against the whole Power of the Lords, and therefore encouraged them to prepare for a Fight. The next Day a Fight began, which was very sharp, and lasted long; but in the End, Sir *Thomas Molineux* was slain, and most of his Men were either kill'd or taken. The Duke saw the Beginning of the Engagement, but fled before he saw to which Side Victory inclin'd, and swimming over the River *Thames*, made his escape, quitting his Horse, because he could not make the farther Bank, and got away on Foot. His Horse, Baggage, and Armor were all taken, with a great Sum of Gold; and in his Trunk, was found a Letter sent to him by the King himself, wherein he commands him to hasten to *London*, with what Speed he could, and promises to live and die with him. The Duke fled

The Earl of *Derby* vanquishes the Duke of *Ireland*.



1688.

to *Holland*, and from thence into *France*. This Victory prov'd to the Lords, in a Manner, the Overthrow of their Enemies; for the Duke of *Se* never return'd, and the Earl of *Suffolk* fled to his ther at *Calais*, who was Captain of that Fortref. King betook himself to the Tower, and chief *J* *Trefilian*, the Archbishop of *Tork*, and all the rest of Party withdrew from *London*, and lay conceal'd. At this Time an Envoy from the King of *France* was with Letters, in which Letters of safe Conduct went to King *Richard*, the Duke of *Ireland*, and someti to come to *Boloign*, where he would be ready to receive him, and then was to take Possession of *C* and other Fortresses, for which, *Walsingham* says, he already paid King *Richard* Part of the Money.

The Enemies of the Lords thus disappear, they had no visible Opposition, whereupon they marched with their Army of forty thousand to *London*, and muster'd at *Clerkenwell*. The bishop and some other Peers desired the King to descend to a peaceable Composition of Affairs; but set light by their Advice, and told them, 'That would soon dissolve of themselves without any' ty, their Multitude would in a short Time consume all their Provision, and then they must break in Pieces of Course.' Notice of these Words being carry'd to the Lords, they swore they would not depart from *London*, before they had spoke with the King; and he given him notice of it, they set a strong Guard at the Tower, that he might not escape privately. King being thus beset, condescended to a Treaty, sent the Archbishop to acquaint them with it. Lords were joyful at the News, but fearing Treachery, if they treated with the King in the Tower, desired him to meet with them at *Westminster*, but he sending them the Keys of the Gates, Towers and strong Chambers, and permitting them with hundred Men, to search all Places, and clear away Suspensions, they at length receded from that Design. The Duke of *Glocester*, and Earls of *Warwick*, *Bedford*, *Derby*, and *Northampton*, were the chief Managers of the Treaty with the King, who receiv'd them in the Pavilion of State, and then retired with them into Chamber.

The Lords there charged him with many unjust

The King and Lords meet again and the King confesses his faulty Management.

honourable Actions, against the Nation and themselves, viz. 'That he had by forg'd Crimes, and an unjust sentence, conspired with his Favourites at *Nottingham*, take away their Lives; which tho' they had at their meeting at *Westminster*, been sparing to upbraid him with, out of Respect to his Honour, because they were with an amicable Agreement like to go forward, yet now they could not but lay before him, because they had since found Letters from him to the Duke of *Ireland*, to raise Forces in *Cheshire* against them, even at the Time of their former Treaty; by which Action he added Perfidiousness to Cruelty, and plainly shew'd that his Favour and Grace then pretended as but a Vail to his ill Designs against them. That he had made an Agreement with the *French King*, (as some Letters, which they had intercepted, and then shew'd, they made appear) to resign *Calais*, and his other Dominions on that Side to him, upon Condition that he might enjoy them as an Homager to his Crown, and that Letters of safe Conduct were sent to him, to complete this Agreement, which was indeed to betray the *English* Possessions, purchased with so much Blood, into their Enemies Hands.' They likewise mentioned many lesser Grievances by the ill conduct of the Ministers of State, employ'd by him. The King had but little to say in his own Defence, but falling into an ingenious Confession of his Errors and Misgovernment, with Tears, agreed to meet them the next Day at *Westminster*, and rectify whatsoever was just by their Consent. Upon this Promise, the Lords departed, except the Earl of *Derby*, whom the King desired to stay with him, as an Instance of his Resolution to join with them in settling the Disorders of the Nation; which he express'd much Satisfaction in, while the Earl was with him, but the Earl being detested, consulting with those about him, who buzz'd in his Head, that that Meeting would tend much to the Hazard of his Person, and would end with a great diminution of his Authority, he fully resolv'd against it.

The Lords met the next Day at *Westminster*, according to Appointment, but the King came not, nor would leave the Tower; which when they understood, they sent him word plainly, 'That if he would not meet them according to his Promise, they would certainly chuse another King, who should have more  
' Regard

1388.

The King's  
bad Mini-  
sters arrested  
and secured.

‘ Regard to the faithful Advices, and Services of his Lords than he had.’ This Message wrought the King into a Compliance, and he met them the next Day in *Westminster Hall*. The main Thing that the Lords insisted upon, was that several traitorous Persons should for the Honour of the King’s Person, and the Good of the Nation, be removed from Court, to which the King, tho’ not very freely, consented. And accordingly the Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Durham*, and the King’s Counsellor, *Fryar Rustock*, and the Bishop of *Chichester*, were strictly forbid to come into the King’s Palace, in his presence; the two first which were fled. The Lord *Zent*, *Barnel*, and *Beaumont*, also the Knights, *Sir Alberich de vere*, *Sir Baldwin Berford*, *Sir John Worth*, *Sir Thomas Clifford*, *Sir John Level*, and *Sir Richard Adderbury*, were likewise banish’d the Court, and oblig’d to give Security for their Appearance at the next Session of Parliament. Likewise some Ladies of no good Reputation, as the Ladies, *Moban*, *Molings*, *Poynings*, and *Worth*, were forced to find Sureties for their Appearances the next Parliament. And several others, who were greater Offenders, or at least more open and prejudicial to the Nation, were imprisoned, as *Sir William Ellingham*, *Sir John Salisbury*, *Sir Simon Barly*, *Sir James Barnish*, *Sir Nicholas Dagworth*, *Sir Thomas Trivet*, *Sir Nicholas Bramber*, *Sir John Beauchamp*, Keeper of the King’s privy Purse; *Nicholas Lake*, Dean of the Chapel, *Richard Clifford*, *John Lincoln*, and *John Motford* Clerks, and *John Blake* Barrister at Law, who were ordered to be tried the next Parliament.

Fourteenth  
Parliament  
its Acts and  
Taxes.

The Time drawing near, when the Parliament was to meet, tho’ it was by the general Consent of the King, Lords and Commons; yet he knowing it would prove fatal to his Friends, contrived all Means possible to prorogue it; but not daring to insist upon his Prerogative at that Time, it met on the 3<sup>d</sup> of *February*. The Lords came to it with such Attendants as seem’d necessary for their Safety. The Commons resorted to it with great Diligence, because of the general Expectation they had of a compleat Reformation of all Disorders, which they so well effected, that it was call’d the *Wonder-working Parliament*. On the first Day of their meeting, they caused all the Judges that were sitting in *Westminster Hall* to be arrested. Their Crime was

‘ That

That in the last Parliament they had over-ruled the <sup>11 Ri. II.</sup> Actions and Determinations of the Lords with their Advice and Directions, and had assured them, that all was done according to Law, but afterwards had given the King a contrary Judgment at *Nottingham*, and had deliver'd it as their Opinion, that the Actions of the said Parliament were illegal and traitorous. The Judges had nothing to plead in Excuse, but their Fears of the Duke of *Ireland*, who threatned their Ruin unless they gave such Answers as he desir'd; and therefore they submitted themselves to the Parliament; who considering that the whole Affair was managed by the Chief Justice *Tresilian*, and that the others were surpris'd and forc'd to give their Opinions, they only banish'd them for their Lives, and confiscated their Goods, but resolv'd to deal more severely with *Tresilian*, when they could apprehend him. In the next Place, they proceeded against the Duke of *Ireland*, the Archbishop of *York*, the Earl of *Suffolk*, the Chief Justice *Tresilian*, and *Nicholas Bramber* the Lord Mayor of *London*, who being fled from Justice, were summoned to appear, and for Non-Appearence, were sentenced to perpetual Banishment, and their Estates confiscated. Some small Time after the Chief Justice *Tresilian* was discover'd by one of his own Servants, and liez'd at an Apothecary's at *Westminster*, where he had lain concealed to get Knowledge of the Parliament's Transactions. Being brought before the Parliament, he receiv'd Sentence to be drawn to *Tyburn*, and have his Throat cut, which Judgment was immediately executed. Sir *Nicholas Bramber*, who had been several Times made Lord Mayor of *London* to serve the Court-Designs against the Lords, and by his illegal Cruelties in that Office, had murdered many of the Lords Friends, for which Services he was to be made Duke of *Troy*, (which some say was the ancient Name of the City of *London*) was condemned to be beheaded with the same Ax (as some write) with which he had inflicted the same Punishment on others. Sir *James Barnish*, Sir *John Salisbury*, *John Blake*, *Thomas Uske* and *John Beauchamp* were all drawn and hang'd for the same Crimes. Sir *Simon Burley* Constable of *Dover-Castle* was beheaded, being accused of conspiring to deliver up that Castle to the *French*, tho' this was not prov'd against him, and tho' the Earl of *Derby* interceeded much for him, yet to the Duke of *Gloucester's* morose Temper he fell a Sacrifice. The

The Judges punished.

Judge *Tresilian's* Punishment.

Sir *Simon Burley* unjustly put to Death.

1388.

The Parliament hoping that those Persons who were the chief Causes of the Disorders of the Nation being remov'd, all Things would be settled, the King and Parliament, as if all Things were to begin anew, agreed to ratify their Resolutions of doing their Duty to each other by an Oath. The King promised to stand by the Lords in governing the Realm, and took his Coronation-Oath again, and the two Houses of Parliament swore Homage and Fealty to him. This being done, they granted the King half a Tenth of the Clergy, and half a Fifteenth of the Laity, and some other Subsidies. They likewise granted twenty thousand Pounds to the Lords, out of a Tax upon Leather and Wool, in Consideration of their Labour and Expences, for the Honour, Profit, and Safety of the King and Kingdom. After which an Act of Indemnity was pass'd for the Pardon of all other Persons concern'd on either Side during the late Insurrections; and the Parliament declar'd, *That considering the tender Age of the King, and the Innocency of his Royal Person, nothing should be accounted any Fault or Dishonesty in his Person in any Manner, nor should turn to his personal Prejudice by any Contrivance or Interpretation whatsoever*; and then was dissolv'd, the King being discontented and angry at what he had done in it. At that Time the King created John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon.

Extraordi-  
nary Swarms  
of Gnats.

This Year, while the King was at his Palace at Sheen, now call'd *Richmond*, in the Month of July, there appear'd on a sudden such innumerable Swarms of Gnats, that they darkned the Air. They skirmished and fought in Parties; the slain fell down to the Ground by Heaps, and being swept together with Brooms, were found to be many Bushels full; above a third Part of the whole came off Conquerors, and flew away.

Earl of Arundel sent to assist the Duke of Bretagne.

The Duke of Bretagne being under the Displeasure of the King of France, because he had imprison'd the Lord *Guesclin* the Constable, fear'd an Invasion; whereupon the Earl of Arundel being made Admiral again by the Parliament, put to Sea with a great Navy, well stor'd with Land Forces, and several Noblemen to assist the Duke. The English Fleet arriv'd at *Roche*, and landing some Forces, began to lay waste the Country about *Marrant*; but a Peace being suddenly concluded between the French King and the Duke, the Earl return'd, and in his Passage met with the French Fleet, of which

## The Reign of King RICHARD II.

305

he took eighty, and invaded the Isle of *Beas* and burnt it, and also took the Isle of *Oleron*. 12. Ri. II.

The Truce between the *English* and *Scots* being lately expired, the *Scots* thinking the Dissentions of *England* to be an advantageous Juncture for them to invade it, did not let the Opportunity slip; and as soon as their Preparations were ready, entred the bordering Countries, plundering, burning and killing in every Place where they came. The first Place they came to, was *Gillestland* in *Cumberland*, where they committed great Barbarities: They shut up the Inhabitants in their Houses by two hundred in a Company, and set them on Fire: Their next Inroad was to the North, and coming to *Newcastle*, they were met by the Earl of *Northumberland* and his Sons *Henry* Lord *Piercy*, surnamed *Hotspur*, and *Ralph*, with a small Force to oppose them. The young Noblemen being desirous of Honour were very eager to engage them. Earl *Douglas*, who commanded that Party of *Scots*, was as forward to join the Battle. The Fight was at *Otterburn*, and Earl *Douglas*, seeking by Force to extort his Name from him, encountered the Lord *Piercy* singly; but being equal'd in Courage, and overmatch'd with Strength, he was slain. But the Victory was hardly compleated, before the Earl of *Dunbar* came upon the *English* with a much greater Force, and having slain the greatest Part of them, he took the Lord *Piercy* and his Brother Prisoners.

In September the Parliament met again, and made several Acts for the Benefit of the Publick, and among the rest, one for the removing the Staple of Wool from *Middleburg* to *Calais*. They also granted the King a Fifteenth of the Clergy, and a Tenth of the Laity, and then broke up. Fifteenth Parliament, its Acts and Taxes.

Soon after the rising of the Parliament, a Treaty of Peace was set on Foot between *England*, *France*, and *Scotland*. The Commissioners of each Nation met at *Balingham*, a small Town between *Calais* and *Bulsign*, and after long Debates, came at length to agree upon a Truce between the three Nations for three Years. While the Treaty was carrying on, the *Scots* had made several IncurSIONS into *Northumberland*, and carried off great Booties, which the Earl of *Nottingham* was not able to prevent, because his Force was inferior to theirs. The *Scots* were so well pleas'd with their Robberies, that the News of the Truce was very coldly

1389 coldly receiv'd by them, and they were not easily persuaded to accept of it.

An eminent Quarrel between the Oxford Scholars. There was a great Contest between the Oxford Scholars this Year. The *Welsh*, who were always proud and quarrelsome, having united the Scholars of the Southern Parts to their Side, began to abuse the Northern Scholars, who being very numerous, stood up together in their own Defence; and much Mischief was done on both Sides. At length the Matter came to this issue, that they would determine all by a pitch Fight; but the Duke of *Glocester* hearing of it, and being much concern'd not only at the ill Example, but also the ill Consequences of it, found Means to prevent it, and caused several of the *Welsh*, who had been the Authors of the Broil, to be expell'd the University, and others of them to be punish'd with the usual Mulcts of the Academy, and so settled the University in Quiet and good Order again.

The King being of Age assumes the Government of his Kingdoms. The King was now full one and twenty Years of Age, and the Lords Regents, either not knowing or not willing to take any Notice of it, did not resign; he therefore resolv'd to take the Government into his own Hands, and for that Purpose, calling together a great Council of his Nobility at *Westminster*, demanded of them, what Age they suppos'd him to be of? They answer'd, "That they thought him to be something above one and twenty." The King then replied, "That it was unreasonable, that he should be denied what his meanest Subjects enjoy'd, who at that Age came into the Management and full Possession of their Birthrights, and were no longer under Guardians and Tutors, and therefore he challenged the Government of his Kingdoms out of their Hands." The Lords, tho' they feared the ill Consequences of his Rule, yet did not deny what he required, but yielded up their Power entirely to him: However, the King was not so well satisfied with their so readily doing it, but that he declar'd publicly, "That he renounc'd their Rule, and from thenceforth did assume to himself as much Power of governing, disposing Affairs, and administering Justice in his Realm as any of his Predecessors, the Kings of *England* did, and might lawfully use and exercise." And that he might give them Instances of his Power, and to try their Submission, made an Alteration among the great Ministers of State, the Lord Chancellor, the Treasurer, the Lord

Admiral, and several others. Many <sup>13 Ri. II.</sup> is he made in the Court, which was ac-

Model of a worse Management than for some Time carried on by the Lords. ers of *Wickliff* were very sensible that The Bishops mies Heads were otherwise employed, concerned at rable Juncture for them to propagate the spread- and accordingly had so far advanc'd, that *Wickliff's* Doc- trine.

become a form'd Church, and in many ation had regular Congregations, with ualified to preach and administer the Sa- e State being thus at Peace, the Bishops nto Matters of Religion, which during les they had neglected. The Bishop of otten, from one that had been of their ular Account of all their Party, and Condition. The Bishop of *Norwich* ely, that if any were found in his Dio- make them *hop headless*, or *fry a Fag- Swinderby*, a Priest, suffer'd as an Bishop of *Hereford's* Diocese; but as ount of any other that suffer'd, it is pro- e Imprudence in himself brought his him. The main *Popish* Doctrine that oppos'd, was their Pilgrimages to Ima- the *Rood* and *Lady of Walsingham*.

*Glocester* not being of the King's Coun- The Duke ouragement to some Court-Parasites to of *Glocester* and therefore they accus'd him of a for- falsely ac- cus'd of it he was about to raise an Army and Treason.

g; the Duke was thereupon privately ex- rg'd with the Accusation, but he cleared o well that both the King and his Coun- Forgery. The Duke beg'd of the King rs of the false Accusation might be pu- King would not permit it.

ing was under the Apprehension of one The Duke more formidable arriv'd in *England* which of *Lancaster's* Return of *Lancaster* out of *Spain*. And altho' for out of *Spain*, ears he had undergone a various Fortune, and his Suc- cess there.

Conclusion. At his first Entrance into *Maniards* came over to assist him in reco- se's Right against the Usurper, and his ery where victorious, so that he met with



1389. as good Success as he could have desired. The Spanish Army, under the Command of Don Alvarez de Pereda, was totally routed, and the Spaniards so terrified with the Loss, that they kept themselves close in their walled Towns. But the Heat and Unkindness of the Climate so afflicted his whole Army with mortal Diseases, that he lost many of his best Men, particularly the Lord Fitzwalter, and the rest were rendered unfit for Service. And the Spaniards which had sided with the Duke were so angry with the English for making such Havock in their Country, that they deserted him, by which Means the Duke and his Friends were left so weak and exposed to the Enemy, that in great Sorrow and Anguish of Mind he lamented his Misfortune, and beg'd of God who judges of every Man's Right, to interpose on his Behalf, and give him an honourable Conclusion of the Expedition; and that God heard him in his Trouble, may be judg'd by the Event. Indeed the Duke had some Hope to retrieve his Loss, by sending into England for Recruits; but the Troubles there were such, that the King could not spare him any: This farther encreas'd his Grief. The Duke therefore having obtain'd Leave of the King of Spain, that his sick Soldiers might remain in Spain, till they recovered their Health, departed in much Grief to Bayona City in Gascoigne, and there remained in much Melancholy for his ill Success. But there Providence made Way for that happy Conclusion which the Duke desir'd: For the Duke of Berry, Uncle to the King of France, made a Proposition of Marriage with Katharine the Duke's Daughter and Heiress to the Crown of Spain after the Death of her Mother. This sortous'd the Thoughts of the King of Castile and Leon, lest that Match, by the Union of two such potent Interests in France and England, should bring greater Danger to his Throne, than her Mother had; that he by the Advice of his Council earnestly solicited the Duke of Lancaster, that his eldest Son should marry his Daughter. The Offers of the King of Spain being more agreeable to the Duke of Lancaster than the Duke of Berry's, a Marriage was concluded upon the following Conditions, " That after Prince Henry of Spain had married the Lady Katharine, the Duke of Lancaster's Daughter, they should be called Prince and Princess of Asturia, so long as the present King lived. 2. That the Kingdom of Spain, still

The Duke of Lancaster murders his eldest Daughter to the King of Spain's Son.

“ the Death of the present King, should descend to the  
 “ said Princes, and the Heirs of their Bodies; and for  
 “ want of such Heirs, to *Edmond* Duke of *York*, who  
 “ had married the other Daughter of King *Peter*, and  
 “ to his Heirs. 3. That the King of *Spain* should pay  
 “ the Duke of *Lancaster* two hundred thousand Pound  
 “ towards the Charges of his Expedition, and ten  
 “ thousand Pound a Year, during his and his Dut-  
 “ chesses Life at *Bayon*.” This being concluded on,  
 the Duke returned with Joy into *England*; and hear-  
 ing that a Difference began to arise between King *Rich-  
 ard* and his Nobles, upon which Account the King  
 had summoned a great Council to meet at *Reading*,  
 the Duke posted thither to pay his Duty to the King,  
 and to reconcile them, which he happily effected.

While the *Christmas* Carnivals were kept at Court, The young  
*John Hastings*, Earl of *Pembroke*, learning to joust Earl of Pem-  
 broke killed  
 (which was an Exercise much used in those Times) at Jousts.  
 with Sir *John St. John*, received an unfortunate Blow  
 on the Bottom of his Belly, which proved his Death.  
 He was much lamented, because he was a hopeful No-  
 bleman, a generous and affable Person; but it seems as  
 tho’ it were a Fate intailed upon the Family, to meet  
 with an untimely Death; for it was an Observation  
 made by many, that from the Time of *Aumer de Va-  
 lence*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who was one of the Peers,  
 who condemned *Thomas* Earl of *Lancaster*, at *Ponte-  
 fact*, about eighty Years before, none ever lived to  
 see his Son, tho’ the Descent in the whole Blood lasted  
 all the While. This was deem’d a just Punishment of  
 the Sin of their Ancestors against that Nobleman, whom  
 the Pope canonized for his Virtues as a State Martyr.

The Parliament met at *Westminster*, after the Feast Sixteenth  
 of *St. Hilary*, and divers Things were enacted for the Parliament,  
 Good of the Publick, the most remarkable of which its Acts and  
 were against the Procurement of Pardons for Mur- and Taxes.  
 ders, Treasons, and Rapes. The Commons having ob-  
 served, that the King’s Pardons were an Encourage-  
 ment to such Facts, petitioned the King that he would  
 oblige himself, not to grant any Pardons for those  
 Crimes. But the King refused to do it, because he  
 would not deprive his Crown of a Branch of its Pre-  
 rogative; but yet passed an Act much to the same Ef-  
 fect, viz. That all Persons, who procured a Pardon  
 for any guilty of the said Crimes should be fined ac-  
 cording

1390.


According to their Quality ; an Archbishop, or Duke, a thousand Pound ; a Bishop, or Earl, a thousand Marks ; an Abbot, Prior, or Baron, five hundred Marks ; and inferior Ranks, two hundred Marks, and a Year Imprisonment. The Parliament granted the King Subsidies ; and at the rising of it, the King made *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, Duke of *Aquitain*, and had him installed by the Cap and Bonnet, and also *Edward* the eldest Son of the Duke of *York*, Earl of *Rutland*.

Several unhappy Accidents.

In the Beginning of the Spring several unhappy Accidents befel *England*. The Plague raged sorely, especially in the North, so that many thousands died of it ; and it was particularly observed, that its Effects were most malignant upon young Men, who were most easily infected with it, and rarely escaped ; there died of it, in a few Weeks Time, eleven thousand in the City of *York*. At the same Time there was a great Scarcity of Corn, so that a Bushel of Wheat was sold for thirteen Pence, which was thought a great Price in those Days. In *March* there arose such a tempestuous Wind, that it blew down many Houses, and did a great deal of other Harm in several Parts of the Kingdom.

An English Army sent against the *Saracens*, and another into *Prussia*, which had both Success.

The *Saracens* of *Barbary* being very troublesome to the *Genoese*, and by their Numbers threatening the Ruin of their Territories ; the Citizens of *Genoa* begged the Assistance of the *English* and *French* ; who thinking it the common Interest of *Christendom*, to keep these *Barbarians* out of *Europe*, therefore the King of *England*, sent an Army under the Command of *John Beaufort*, natural Son of the Duke of *Lancaster*, over to *France*, to join the Forces to be sent by the *French* King, on the same Expedition. They marched through *France* to *Genoa*, and there took Shipping, to assault the Infidels in *Africk*. The *Saracens* had planted themselves upon the Shore, to oppose their Landing, and were ready prepared to engage them at their first Entrance : But the *English* and *French* Archers soon made Room with their Arrows, for their Landing, and having slain a considerable Number of them, put the rest to Flight. Then the *English* and *French* marched directly to *Tunis*, and besieged it, and in a small Time took it, having slain the King's Brother, several great Men, and above four thousand of the *Barbarians*. The King himself, and a considerable Party fled into the Castle, and held

in his Weeks. But in the End, being very much <sup>14 Ed II.</sup>  need for Provisions, he was constrained to de-  
 ce, and offered them a large Sum of Money  
 in his Country. The *English* and *French* tho'  
 been much disaffected by Sickness in their Camp,  
 upon other Conditions, that they should carry  
 away with them, and have such Christian Pri-  
 as they had taken, delivered to them; and that  
 they should oblige themselves, that from thence-  
 they would cease from plundering *Italy* and  
 which Conditions having obtained, they re-  
 home, laden with Riches and Honour. This  
 only Voyage in which the *English* and *French*  
 successful in their Union, for before they were  
 defeat the Deluge of their Arms by their in-  
 junctions.

*Lithuanians* having by their Inroads much af- <sup>As Army</sup>  
 flicted, and reduced the Inhabitants to great Mi- <sup>sent against</sup>  
 the *Poles* entreated King *Richard* to send <sup>the Lithuanians</sup>  
 succour, and accordingly an Army was sent <sup>to the assistance</sup>  
 under the Command of *Henry* of *Lancaster*, Earl <sup>of Hereford</sup>  
 of *Gloucester*, who not only drove the *Lithuanians* out of  
 but also invaded their Country, and took one  
 Cities, the Earl of *Derby* himself being one  
 first who scaled the Walls, and erected the  
 Banner upon them, to the great Honour of  
 and the *English* Nation, and having restored  
 them to Peace and Safety, he returned home.

As these Things were transacting abroad, all <sup>The King</sup>  
 being quiet at home, the King diverted him- <sup>with sports and</sup>  
 with Feats of Arms, as Juits and Tournaments, <sup>and other</sup>  
 in which twenty four *Englishmen* challenged all Co- <sup>of Arms</sup>  
 and were encountered by so many Foreigners,  
 much Valour and Art. These Exercises were  
 to be performed in *Smithfield*, and to begin  
 Sunday after *Michaelmas* Day, and were pro-  
 by Heralds in all the Courts of Christendom.  
 Earls of *St. Paul* and *Osborne* came over from  
 to be Spectators of this Trial of Courage and  
 which was deservedly admired.

In these Juits and Tournaments it may be observ-  
 ed that the Solemnity began at the Tower of *Lon-*  
 don with a noble Cavalcade of sixty Ladies, richly  
 adorned, who riding upon fine Palfreys, led every  
 their Knight by her Side, by a silver Chain, gar-



ly made against his Profit would lye no longer dormant, as they had for some Time done ; and therefore gives his Nuntio Instructions to require of King *Richard*, to abolish and repeal the said Statutes and Proclamation, so far as they tended to derogate from the Church's Liberties , declaring that otherwise he thought himself oblig'd in Conscience to proceed against all such Persons, who had been instrumental in making those Laws, according to the Severity of the Canons. The King seem'd to give a favourable Ear to the Nuntio's Words, and having communicated them to his Council, ordered him to stay till the Parliament, and then he should receive a full Answer to all his Demands.

14 Reg. II.


This Spring, the Duke of *Glocester* went into *Prussia*, to the great Trouble of the People ; he was always accounted the Darling of the People, but before this Voyage, it was not well known how great a Share he had in their Affections, who then discover'd them by their Heaviness at his Departure. He had a very rough and dangerous Voyage, as if Providence had been as much against it as the People ; for he was in his Return by a violent Tempest driven to the Coasts of *Norway* and *Denmark*, and at last with great Difficulty arrived at *Timonth*, where having tarried a short Time to refresh himself, he return'd to his Seat at *Pleshey*, receiving extraordinary Expressions of Joy from the People for his safe Arrival, all the Way in his Journey thither.

The Duke of Glocester's Voyage into Prussia.

Many great Calamities afflicted *England* this Summer, which seem to have been presag'd by certain strange and dreary Clouds, which hid the Sun for six Weeks together, and very much obscur'd the Light of it ; its Beams at first appeared red and bloody, and remain'd all the forepart of the Day upon the Face of it ; but about Noon they turn'd black, and permitted little or no Light till Night.

The Nation variously afflicted.

Immediately after the disappearing of this Phenomenon, both Pestilence and Famine afflicted the Nation ; the Plague broke out in several Parts, but raged most violently in *Norfolk*, and about *York*. In *York* there are said to have died above ten thousand, and in *Norfolk* a greater Number. The Famine chiefly afflicted *London*, and the Countries adjoining, which were not so much afflicted with the Plague, but labour'd under a great

1392.  great Scarcity of Corn, insomuch that the Poor of the City were fed at the Charge of the City, two thousand Marks being taken out of the Orphans Stock to buy Corn; and the twenty four Aldermen were oblig'd to contribute twenty Pounds a Piece for that Purpose, that the Wants of the Poor might not create them Troubles. The Corn was sold to such as had Money, at a moderate Price, and to such as had no Money, upon Trust, to be paid the next Year; and so they not only preserv'd the Peace of the City, but gain'd a good Opinion of all Men for their Charity, and Care for the Good of the Publick. A plentiful Harvest succeeding, put an end to these Calamities; but the unwholsom Food that many had liv'd upon in the Times of Scarcity, had thrown them into Fluxes, and other Distempers, of which they died in great Multitudes. About this Time, *Henry Hotspur* Earl of *Northumberland* and Governor of *Calais*, was called home, and made *Warden* of the *Marches* in *Scotland*, and the Earl of *Nottingham* made *Lieutenant* in his Place.

Eighteenth  
Parliament  
its Acts and  
Taxes.

The Parliament, according to the King's Promise to the Pope's Nuncio, met immediately after the Feast of *All Souls*. And several Things were enacted for the Good of the Publick; but that which was thought of the greatest Benefit at that Time, and since hath done great Service in the Church, was the Act about *Impropriations*, concerning which it was enacted, 'That in every Licence to be made hereafter in Chancery for the Appropriation of any Church, the Bishop of the Diocese should have Power to reserve a convenient Sum of Money out of the Fruits and Profits of it, to sustain the poor Parishioners of the said Church, and to endow a perpetual Vicar, sufficiently to supply the Cure of Souls constantly.' This Act was the Original of most of our Vicaridges. The Pope's Complaint against the Statute of *Provisors* was prefer'd to the Parliament, and the King, and Duke of *Lancaster* labour'd all they could to have it repeal'd; but by all their Endeavours could not obtain it, yet by much Importunity it was allow'd, that notwithstanding the Provisions of the Pope were accounted an intolerable Grievance to the Nation, yet the King by his Proclamation should have Power to dispense with the Execution of the Statute. The Duke of *Lancaster* being design'd to go very soon to *Amiens*, to treat of a final Peace with

The Pope's  
Nuncio an-  
swer'd by  
Parliament.

King of *France* in Person, and it being thought ne-  
 cessary he should be attended with a stately Equipage,  
 the Honour of the Nation; the Parliament granted  
 King a Tenth from the Clergy, and a Fifteenth  
 to the Laity, to support the Charge. And because  
*English* were under Apprehensions of an Invasion  
 in *Scotland*, another Tenth and Fifteenth was gran-  
 ted but upon Condition that it should not be collected,  
 as the *Scots* were so troublesome, that an Expedition  
 against them were judg'd necessary. These Things  
 being done, the Parliament were sent home.

The Duke of *Lancaster*, Bishop of *Durham*, and  
 other Noblemen, attended with a Train of eleven  
 hundred Horse-Men, set forwards soon after *Christ-*  
 mas, towards *France*, to the Place of Treaty at *Amiens*.  
 The King of *France* having heard a great Character of  
 the Duke for his Wisdom and Prudence, made as mag-  
 nificent Preparations for his Reception, as if he had  
 been the greatest Emperor in the World, and met him him-  
 self at *Amiens*, attended with the chief Peers of *France*.

The Charges of the *English* Ambassadors were born by  
 the King of *France*, from the Time of their coming  
 in *Calais*, to their Return thither again. At the  
 Treaty divers Propositions were made on both Sides;  
 nothing was concluded, but that the Truce which was  
 made at Mid-summer, should continue a Year longer.

While this Treaty was carried on in *France*, King  
*Richard* kept the noblest Court of any King in *Europe*,  
 his Subjects by his Example abandon'd all Thoughts  
 of Frugality, and gave themselves over to Luxury:

Great was the Excess of Diet, the Pomp and Gran-  
 deur of his Court, in Apparel inimitable, in Number of  
 servants incredible; ten thousand Men fed daily on his  
 table, and three hundred were employ'd for the Service  
 of his Kitchen, and the Queen had three hundred Wo-  
 men in her Service; and by these Means he became in  
 want of Money, and sent to the Citizens of *London*,  
 to borrow of them a Thousand (or as others say ten  
 thousand) Pounds but they denied him; and hav-  
 ing understood that an *Italian* Banker had under-  
 taken to furnish the King with the Money, they beat  
 and abused him so grossly, that he was in Danger of  
 death. The King being displeas'd at this rude Denial  
 of the *Londoners*, advis'd with his Council how he  
 could deal with them, and they advis'd him to chastise  
 their uncivil Behaviour by Arms; but he wisely wav'd

15 Ri. II.  
 Taxes gran-  
 ted by the  
 Parliament.

The Duke  
 of *Lancaster*  
 goes to *A-*  
*miens*, to  
 make a  
 Peace with  
*France*.

The Splen-  
 dor of the  
 King's  
 Court.

The *Londo-*  
*ners* refuse  
 to lend the  
 King Mo-  
 ney.



1392. his Resentment, till another Opportunity, which he quickly found out.

Soon after the Duke of Lancaster was arriv'd in England, the King call'd a great Council, like a Parliament, at Stamford, to consult about the Peace to be concluded with France, or to resolve upon a War, as soon as the present Truce was expir'd. The King had been put upon this Determination by the Duke of Lancaster, because the King of France had engaged him to hasten the Peace, that he might restore Leo King of Armenia, and subdue the other Barbarians, who were troublesome to Christendom.

But this Council after long Debates came to no Conclusion, and the rather because at that Time, the King's Cousin the Duke of Gelderland came over to England, and promising him an Assistance of a considerable Body of Men to make War upon France, or the Scots: if there were occasion, he advis'd the King to make no Agreement with the King of France, but upon such Conditions as were advantageous and honourable to himself, and Realm. Which Offer made the King more indifferent for the Peace, and more resolute to obtain good Conditions if it were carried on.

About this Time an unhappy Accident fell out in the City of London, which tho' from an inconsiderable Beginning proceeded so far, as to cause the Citizens to stand as much in Need of the King's Favour, as he lately had of their Money. The occasion was this: A Baker's Man carrying a Basket of Bread thro' Fleetstreet, as he pass'd by the Bishop of Salisbury's Palace, one of the Bishop's Servants took a Loaf of Bread out of his Basket; the Baker endeavour'd to take it from him, but was worsted by the Servant, and wounded in the Scuffle; the People gathered together to apprehend the Bishop's Servant, but his Fellow Servants got him into the Palace, and secur'd him. The People enrag'd at this Rescue, first demanded the Servant peaceably by a Constable, but he being denied, the Mob, who neither lov'd nor fear'd the Bishop altho' he was Lord Treasurer, became very outrageous, and endeavour'd to break open the Gates, and being resisted threaten'd to fire them. The Mayor, Sheriffs, and Aldermen, having Information of this Tumult, endeavour'd with all the Care and Speed they could to repress it. But the Company was grown so numerous

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

317

s, and justly provok'd, that neither Persuasion nor 16 Ri. II.  
orce, would for a long Time prevail with them, but  
last by much Intreaty, they were appeas'd, and went  
ictly Home. The Bishop, who was at that Time at  
*Windsor* with the King, and who hated the *Londoners*,  
cause they were commonly reputed Favourers of  
*Wickliff*, represented the Matter to the King with all  
Favour possible, on the Side of his own Servants,  
d all the Aggravations on the Part of the Citizens,  
resenting the Tumult, as a malicious Outrage, not  
ly against the Church, but the State, he being both  
easurer and Bishop. The King who had not forgotten  
late Affront offered him by the *Londoners*, in not  
iding him the Money he desir'd, needed no great Ag-  
vations, to make him lay hold on this Opportunity  
being reveng'd, in a furious Rage threatened to raze  
City; but some of the Nobility bringing him into a  
ter Temper, he sent for the Mayor, and Officers of  
City, and objected many Crimes and Disorders a-  
inst them, to which they made a modest and plain  
efence, but nothing was accepted as sufficient,  
the Mayor was made a Prisoner at *Windsor*,  
d the rest were committed to other Goals, and  
the Liberties and Privileges of the City seiz'd into  
King's Hand; and he put in a Governor under the  
le of the *Warden of the City*, and the Terms and  
urts of Judicature were remov'd to the City of  
k. The Citizens in this Condition, were in great  
content, and made humble Suit by the Queen, the  
ke of *Glocester*, the Bishop of *London*, and other  
oblemen, to the King, that they might be restor'd to  
ir antient Privileges; and at length prevail'd so far,  
the King came into the City of *London*, where he  
s met with the most imaginable Pomp and Magnifi-  
ice, and he, and the Queen, being presented by the  
izens, with each a Crown of Gold of great Va-  
; sent for their Charter and other Grants of Liber-  
of their City, and caus'd them to be perus'd, and  
owing some, and cancelling others, restor'd the City  
uin to their antient State, except their Government  
a Mayor, which they could not obtain, till at seve-  
Times they presented the King with two thousand  
arks of Gold, and ten thousand Pound in Silver.  
hich severe Usage lost him the Affections of the  
izens ever after. The Bishop of *London*, who was  
a prin-

King; seizes  
the Liber-  
ties of the  
City.

The City  
restor'd to  
their antien:  
Privileges  
again.

1392. a principal Instrument in bringing about this Reconciliation, was much honour'd by the Citizens all his Life for it; and after his Death, the Mayor, Aldermen, and many of the chief Citizens went nine Times a Year in solemn Procession to *Winchester*, where he lay buried, to pray for his Soul, and for the Souls of all Christians, as a grateful Return of his Kindness to them.

The Duke of *Glocester* ready to go to *Ireland* is forbidden. About this Time, the *Irish* revolted from their Subjection, and the Duke of *Glocester* having been first made Duke of *Ireland*, was supplied with Money to raise an Army to repress them. And when he had with great Application provided an Army, and was ready to go thither with a considerable Force, his great Enemies had, before he came thither, subdued the Rebels; and the chief Leaders of them had determined to submit to him, as soon as he should arrive. But the Duke's Enemies, envying him the Honour, prevail'd with the King to countermand him.

Nineteenth  
Parliament,  
its Acts and  
Taxes.

The Parliament met at *Winchester*, and among diverse Acts, for the Benefit of the Publick, that of greatest Note was the Act called the Statute of *Provinciaria*, by which it was enacted, " That whereas the  
" Bishop of *Rome*, under Pretence of an absolute Su-  
" premacy over the Church, took upon him to dis-  
" pose by his Mandates, of most of the Bishopricks,  
" Abbacies, and other Ecclesiastical Benefices, of  
" Worth, in *England*; and if the Bishops did upon  
" legal Presentments of the Patrons of such Benefi-  
" cies, institute any Clerks to them, they were there-  
" upon excommunicated by the Pope, to the great  
" Damage, and unjust Wrong of the King's good  
" Subjects: And whereas the Bishop of *Rome* took  
" upon him to translate and remove the said Bishops  
" either out of the Realm, or from one See to another  
" within the Realm, without Knowledge of the King  
" or Consent of the Bishops themselves: If any Per-  
" sons shall purchase, or cause to be purchased, in the  
" Court of *Rome*, any such Translations, Sentences  
" of Excommunication, Bulls, or other Instruments  
" to the Detriment of the King, and his Realm, both  
" they, and such as bring, receive, notify, or put them  
" in Execution, shall be put out of the King's Pro-  
" tection, and their Lands and Tenements, Goods  
" and Chattels, forfeited to the King, and their Bodies  
" attach'd, if they can be found, Process being made  
" out

<sup>1</sup> out against them, by the Writ called *Premuniri facias*, as is ordained in other Statutes of Provisors. 16 Ri. II.

The Pope resented this Statute very highly; he was before very peevish for the Statute of *Mortmain*, and other Acts against his Encroachments; but this put him into such a Fury, that he wrote a Letter to the Duke of *Bedford*, wherein he calls the Act *Statutum execrabile*, a cursed Statute, and the Passing of it, *Fædum & tarpe facinus*. In this Parliament the King had no Tax of the Laity, but the Clergy gave him a Fifteenth towards the Charges of the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, in their negotiating the Peace with *France*.

In the Time of the Session of this Parliament, *Robert de Vere*, Earl of *Oxford*, died at *Louvain*, in great Anguish of Mind and Poverty; and his Honour of Earl of *Oxford* was conferred by the King, on his Uncle, the Lord *Anbery de Vere*. The Lord *Thomas Piercy* was made Lord High Steward, the Lord *William Scroop* Vice-Chamberlain, and soon after bought the Regality of the Isle of *Man* (for that Isle was reputed a Kingdom, and the Lords of it crowned with a Crown of Gold) of the Earl of *Salisbury*; and the Lord *Thomas Beaumont* was made Constable of *Dover* Castle, and Warden of the Cinque Ports.

In the Spring of this Year the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, together with other Peers, went over to *France*, with full Commission to conclude a Peace both by Sea and Land, between the Kingdoms of *England*, *France*, and their Allies. The Place of Treaty was *Balingham*, where stately Tents being set up, they entred upon the Treaty, and several Proposals were laid down and argued on both Sides. The *French* insisted upon having *Calais* raz'd: But the *English* answered, that they had no Power to treat of that Matter, and that, if they intended to conclude a Peace, they must not mention it any farther. This smart Reply put an End to that Demand. Then the *English* Dukes insisted, that the Countries on that Side, which had of late been either in the Possession of King *Edward* the Third, or King *Richard*, their Master, should be restored, and the *Florens* which were left unpaid, by Reason of the War, should now be paid. The *French* would by no Means yield to either, and so the Debates were adjourned for nine Days, that the Kings on both Sides might be made acquainted with them.

But

1393.  
A Peace for  
four Years  
made with  
France.

But the King of *France* falling into his old Distemper, the Frenzy, a Peace was concluded for four Years only. However, this did not please the Duke of *Gloucester*, who in 1393 was intirely for War with *France*, which he thought formerly so advantageous to *England*. It was so desirable to the People, whom the Duke sought by all Means to please.

Several calamitous Accidents befel the Nation.

After the Conclusion of the Peace, the King made Sir *Thomas Piercy*, the younger, Lord Warden of *Bordeaux* and *Aquitaine*, and he was sent thither. Such violent Thunder and Lightnings happened in many Parts, that many Houses and Stacks of Corn were beat down and burnt by them. And in other Parts, as *Suffolk* and *Northfolk*, such Abundance of Rain fell, that the Floods washed away many Houses and Bridges. The Pestilence raged in *Essex*, and swept away great Multitudes. Three *Scottish* Gentlemen challenged three *English* to fight at Jufts, viz. the Earl of *Mar*, the Lord of *Argyll*, Sir *William Darrel*, the King of *Scotland*'s Banner-Bearer, Sir *Pierce Courtenay*, the King of *England*'s Standard-Bearer; and one *Cockburn*, Sir *Nicholas Hawkirk*. The *English* were Conquerors in this Trial of Manhood: for the Earl of *Mar*, and *Cockburn*, were unhorsed by their Opponents; and the Earl of *Mar* was so bruised and wounded by the Fall, that he died in his way home; *Darrel* ran five Courses, and was so equally matched, that neither of them were Victors.

Twentieth  
Parliament,  
its Acts and  
Taxes.

The Parliament being met at *Westminster*, a little after the Feast of *St. Hilary*, the King desired a Tax to enable him to make an Expedition into *Ireland*, to reduce it by Force, for as it now stood it was an insupportable Burden to *England*; for whereas it formerly brought thirty thousand Pound per Annum, into the Treasury, it now cost *England* thirty thousand Marks yearly, to preserve the Dominion of it. The Parliament consented, and the Clergy granted him a Tenth, if he went to *Ireland*, and but half a Tenth, if he did not go thither in Person.

The King  
goes to *Ireland*.

The Parliament being up, the King made a good Preparation for his Journey into *Ireland*; but when he was just ready to go, his beloved Queen *Anne* died at *Sheen*, near *Richmond* in *Surry*, which put a Stop to his Proceedings, for some Time. The King was

as passionately grieved for her, when she died, as he had been fond of her while she lived, insomuch that he 18. Ri. II.  
 “curst the Place of her Death, and hated it so ever  
 “after, that he would never come there, but com-  
 “manded the Buildings to be demolished.” She is said  
 to have been a Princess of great Worth, for Beauty,  
 Charity, good Humour, and Piety. She is likewise  
 said to have first taught the *English* Ladies the modest  
 Custom of riding on Side-saddles, whereas before they  
 rode astride like Men. In the blind Age she lived in  
 she is said to have enjoyed Light, and could not en-  
 dure the implicit Devotion of the *Romish* Church;  
 she had the Gospels in *English*, and several good Ex-  
 positions upon them. She was a Favourer of *Wickliff’s*  
 Doctrines, and had several of his Books; which after  
 her Death, being carried by her Maids of Honour in-  
 to *Bohemia*, became a Means of promoting the Re-  
 formation there.

A funeral Sermon was preached for her by *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *York*, in which he commended her highly for the great Pains she took in the Study of the Scriptures, and reading godly Books; in which he said, she was more diligent than the Prelates themselves, tho’ their Office and Business required it. She was interred at *Westminster*. Her funeral Obsequies being celebrated, the King, tho’ full of Grief, proceeded in his designed Expedition, and being attended by the Duke of *Glocester*, and other Noblemen, set out for *Ireland*, September the eighth, with an Army of four thousand Horse, and three thousand Foot. The King landed with his Army at *Waterford*, in the Beginning of *October*: He encamped very warily, expecting that the *Irish* Rebels would at first make a vigorous Assault; but they thinking themselves too weak to oppose the King’s Forces in a pitch’d Battle, did nothing but by Surprise, either falling unexpectedly upon some Part of the King’s Camp, or upon straggling Foragers; then retiring into their boggy Woods and Mountains, when the King’s Forces advanced towards them: But altho’ by this means they saved their Persons, yet they lost their Estates, by leaving them and their Towns exposed to the Mercy of the King’s Army; who made so good an Advantage of it, that the *Irish* were obliged to come Ireland sub-  
dued,  
 in and submit to the King, to save their Estates. The  
 Chief of these were four Kings, viz. *Oneal*, the great  
 King

1194. King of Meath; Brine, King of Thomond; Arthur Macmur, King of Leinster, and Conbur, King of Chervo and Dap. These King Richard courteously entertained and kept with him, lest, if they returned to their People again, they should relapse into their former Rebellion. The King kept his Christmas at Dublin that Year, and call'd a Parliament there, summoning all his Subjects to the Parliament in Ireland, not only those who had continued loyal, but also those who had lately submitted, that by shewing them Favour impartially, he might oblige them equally to Fidelity for the future.

Strange Appearances in England. This Year an Apparition of Fire was seen in divers Places in England, in several Forms; sometimes like a turning Wheel burning, sometimes like a Barrel with Flames of Fire flashing out at the Head, and sometimes like a long burning Lance: When it appeared to any Persons, it would go as they went, and stop when they stopped. About this Time a Head was made, while the Parliament, called *The cruel Parliament*, was sitting, which spoke of it self, and said, *The Head shall be cut off; the Head shall be lift up aloft; the Feet shall be lift up aloft above the Head.* This Holingshead supposes was done by Necromancy.

Twenty first Parliament, in Alice and Taxes. In February, the King's Uncle, the Duke of York, Lord Warden of England, called a Parliament by the King's Order, to furnish him with farther Supplies, to carry on his Expedition; and the Duke of Glouster came from Ireland, to represent to them the State of the King's Affairs there. The Parliament readily granted the King a Tenth of the Clergy, and a Twentieth of the Laity, and withal, sent a Petition to the King, that Things might be settled in Ireland with as much Expedition as could be. While the Parliament was sitting, the Followers of Wickliff, the called *Lollards*, being grown very numerous among the common People, and having gotten some Friends in the Houses of Parliament, were encouraged to attempt a Reformation of the Disorders of the Churchmen, both in Doctrine and Manners; and did present to the Parliament several Conclusions, in Opposition to the present Tenets and Orders in the Church, and not without some Assurance of Success. They were in Number twelve, and delivered in Words to this Effect.

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

323

fect. 1. "That Pride, through the Greatness of the 18 Ri. II.  
 "Temporalities, daily increased in the Church, and  
 "Faith, Hope, and Charity decay'd. 2. That the pre-  
 "sent Priesthood was not a Priesthood of Christ's In-  
 "stitution. 3. That the Cœlibacy of the Priests was  
 "the Cause of Sodomy, Whoredom, and other foul  
 "Sins. 4. That Transubstantiation engaged Christians  
 "in a brutish Idolatry. 5. That Exorcisms and Con-  
 "secrations were not of divine Appointment, but ma-  
 "gical Incantations. 6. That it was very unseemly  
 "for the Prelates to be Justices of Peace, and Cu-  
 "rates Civil Officers. 7. That Prayers for the Dead  
 "were a bad Motive of Alms-giving. 8. That Pilgri-  
 "mages to Crucifixes, to our Lady's Image, &c.  
 "were idolatrous. 9. That Auricular Confession  
 "makes Priests arrogant and proud, and is an Encou-  
 "ragement of Sin. 10. That Manslaughter and War  
 "for temporal Gain, or Religion Sake, is unlawful.  
 "11. That Womens Vows of Chastity produced much  
 "Sin. 12. That a Multitude of Arts and Trades that  
 "were not necessary, were a Means of begetting  
 "much Pride and Vanity among Christians." These  
 Positions were not only presented to the Parliament,  
 but were fixed upon the Doors of *St. Paul's Church*;  
 and met with a very favourable Reception in both  
 Houses of Parliament; and had so great a Party for  
 them, that the Prelates were afraid that all their gain-  
 ful Doctrines and Practices would not be long tole-  
 rated, if the King did but give his Consent; therefore  
 in order to pre-engage the King, the Bishops bestirred  
 themselves to save their tottering Church. The Arch-  
 bishop of *York*, Bishop of *London*, and many of the Cler-  
 gy, being, as was supposed, sent by the Archbishop of  
*Canterbury*, took a Voyage to *Ireland*, to complain to  
 the King of the Insolence and Prevalence of the *Here-*  
*sicks*, and to entreat him to interpose his Power in the  
 Defence of the Church; for without his Assistance, it  
 was in great Danger of being ruined. The King gave  
 Ear to the Importunities of the Bishops, and promised  
 them his Protection; and having made what Dispatch  
 he could, to settle his Affairs in *Ireland*, came home to  
*England* about *Easter*.

Presently after his Arrival, he began to examine into The King's  
 the Cause of the Bishops Complaints, and finding that Actions a-  
 some of his Officers and Servants, viz. Sir *Lewis Clif-* gainst the  
*Lollards,*  
 for d,



1395. *W*ford, Sir Thomas Latimer, Sir Richard Story, and Sir John Latimer, had been most forward to uphold and encourage them, he had them call'd before him, and made them take an Oath, that they would not thenceforward hold or maintain any such erroneous Opinions, telling them, that if they were found again so to do, they should certainly die for it. He likewise gave the Bishops a Charge to execute their Offices diligently in their Dioceses according to the Canon, to correct all Offenders, to search after and examine all English Books, to root out all erroneous Teachers and Doctrines with all their Endeavours, and to bring all the People into the Unity of the Catholick Faith. He likewise sent out a Commission into every County, appointing several Persons zealous for the Church to search out the *Lollards*, and their Books, and the Favourers of them, charging them to use their utmost Diligence to find them, and to commit them to the next Goal till he should give farther Orders concerning them. The Bishops having receiv'd this Encouragement, were several of them very active; and the Archbishop immediately began a Metropolitan Visitation, to make strict Search for the *Lollards* and their Books, and excommunicated all Persons who held any of the Opinions of *Wickliff*, at the Cathedral in *Lincoln* and *Leicester Ains*, and made several recant and do Penance at *Oxford*, and other Places. But the Laity and several of the Bishops did not shew as much Zeal in persecuting them, as the King had done in exciting them to it; for we do not find there were any Prosecutions of the *Lollards* by the Laity.


The Archbishop visits to suppress the *Lollards*

Both the Popes confirm'd by National Councils in France and England.

This Spring the *French* King call'd a Council of his most able Divines at *Paris*, and requir'd their Decision of the Question, which of the Antipopes was to be acknowledged for the Head of the Church; and they after much Debate, determined that Pope *Clement* was lawfully chosen and ought to be accepted as Head of the Church; and confirm'd this Determination by the Seal of the University of *Paris*. The King of *France* sent a Copy of this Decision to King *Richard*, upon which he summoned a Convocation of his most able and learned Divines to meet at *Oxford*, and they after mature Deliberations, determin'd that *Urban* and his Successors were to be acknowledged for the Head of the Church, and warranted their Judgment by the Seal of the University.

## The Reign of King RICHARD II.

325

ersity of *Oxford*. So that the Breach in the Church <sup>19 Ri. II.</sup> was made wider than it was before, and the Schism much more justifiable. 

This Summer the *Danish* Rovers did very much in-<sup>Danish Ro-</sup>fest the *British* Seas, and on the Coasts of *Norfolk* they vers pillage the Coasts. track'd several Merchants Ships belonging to *Norwich*, whose Cargo was valued at twenty thousand pounds, and took them. The Inhabitants of those Parts being provok'd by the Injuries receiv'd, man'd out some Ships to fight them; but after a sharp Engagement were defeated, and many of them taken Prisoners, whom they made to pay great Sums for their Ransom.

The Archbishop of *Canterbury* purchas'd a Bull of <sup>The Arch-</sup>the Pope to levy 4 *d.* per Pound, upon all the Spiritual bishop taxes the Clergy. promotions and Benefices within his Province; tho' the Clergy were generally disgusted at it, yet they paid it out of Fear; but the Prebendaries of *Lincoln* refus'd to pay it, and appeal'd to the Pope; but the Death of the Archbishop prevented the farther Progress of the Controversie. His Death was look'd upon as no small security to the Followers of *Wickliff*, to whom he was bitter Enemy. The Bishop of *Salisbury*, who was Lord Treasurer, died much about the same Time, and was by the King's Order buried among the Kings at *Westminster*; and *Roger Walden* Secretary of State and Treasurer of *Calais*, was put in his Place.

The King out of the Love he bore to the Duke of <sup>The Duke of Ireland's</sup> *Ireland*, had his Corps fetch'd from *Brabant*, where it Body is brought into *England* to be more honourably interr'd. It was first embalm'd, <sup>England and solemnly interr'd.</sup> and then being richly adorn'd with Robes, a Chain of Gold about its Neck, and rich Rings on its Fingers, it was put in a Cypress Coffin. The King himself came to view his Body, and to shew his Affection to him, touch'd him and look'd on his bare Face, and attended the Corpse accompanied with the Countess of *Oxford*, his Mother, and several Bishops and Abbots, to *Coln* Priory in *Essex*. But very few or none of the Nobility would shew any Respect to his Reliques, for the Hatred they had to him when alive, because they look'd upon him to be a great Enemy to the common Good, so long as he was in Power or Favour.

The Duke of *Lancaster* being arriv'd in *Aquitain*, <sup>The Duke of Lancaster goes into Aquitain, to take Possession of it.</sup> summoned the Lords and Chief Inhabitants and declared

1396.

clar'd to them, that their Country was given to him and his Heirs, for an Inheritance, by the King of *England*, and desir'd their peaceable Subjection to him as their supreme Lord; but they return'd him this Answer, That their Country was inseparably united to the Crown of *England*, and therefore they would never be subject to him any otherwise than as Lieutenant of the King of *England*. So this Grant being recall'd, the Duke remain'd there governing as the King's Lieutenant only, which Station he manag'd so well, being wise, moderate, and liberal, that he gain'd the Love and willing Submission of all the People; so that lest the Grant which the King had so lately recall'd, should be obtain'd against his Will, he sent for him home, and so cast himself of that Jealousie. The Duke being return'd, staid a little while at Court, and then retir'd to his House at *Lincoln*, and married the Lady *Katherine* *Warford*, who had been his Concubine in his Wife's Days, and had born him two Sons *Thomas* and *Henry*, and one Daughter, whom he named *Beaufort*. Tho' the Court Ladies much dislike'd this Match, and several of them despis'd her, yet her prudent Behaviour overcame their Passions and she became very grateful to them in a short Time.

King *Richard* and desires the Lady *Isabel* the French King's Daughter to Wife.

The King's Mind inclining to a second Marriage, and desiring a firm Peace with *France*, he sends an Embassy thither, to treat of a Marriage between himself, and the Lady *Isabel*, the Daughter of the King of *France*, who was then but eight Years of Age. This Lady had not long before been promis'd in Marriage to the Duke of *Bretagne*'s Son, but this being thought a more advantageous and honourable Match, and in all Probability, like to settle the Peace so much desired between both the Crowns, the former Contract was dissolv'd, and she was assur'd to the King of *England*.

The Pope's Letters to King *Richard* and to suppress the Lollards and repeal the *Provisors* Act.

Pope *Boniface* IX, who after the Decease of Pope *Urban*, had got into the Papal Chair, having receiv'd Information from several Bishops in *England*, that notwithstanding their Endeavours to suppress them, the Followers of *Wickliff* grew more numerous, and were spread almost into all Parts of the Nation, writes a very pathetic and earnest Letter to King *Richard*, to assist the Bishops in the Cause of God, as he call'd it, against the heretical Teachers of his Realm, and to take Care that the late Statutes of *Provisors*, call'd the *Provisors*, and *Quare impedit* Acts should be abolish'd. But the King being taken up with Matters of State, re-  
remains

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

327

cially about his Marriage, took little or no Notice of <sup>20 Ri. II.</sup>  
so that it did not produce the Effects desired.

In the Beginning of the Spring, the King sent his Embassadors into *France*, to settle certain Points of Agreement, necessary for the Completion of the Marriage: One of which was, that a Truce for thirty Years, should be solemnly entered into by both Nations. The Articles being agreed to on both Sides, the Lady *Isabel* was married by Letters of Proxy, to the Earl *Marshall*, in the Name of *Richard* King of *England*; and was from that Time called.

King Richard's Marriage, and the Peace between England and France settled.

She was called the *Queen of England*. Matters being thus settled, the King went to *Calais*, to accomplish what had been agreed to on both Sides: His two Uncles, the Dukes of *Lancaster*, and *Glocester*, with a great Number of Noblemen and Gentlemen attended him. The Place of Treaty was a Town between *Guisnes* and *Arde*, where rich Pavilions were erected for the two Kings, who being met, and having solemnly sworn to observe the Laws of Amity at this Interview, came to a Conference about the Peace, and having agreed on a Peace for thirty Years, upon certain Conditions, they swore solemnly upon the Evangelists, to observe and keep it faithfully. Then the King of *France*, with his own Hands, deliver'd his Daughter to King *Richard*, and he receiving her, protested, he took her as the Token of a perpetual Peace between the two Nations, and then delivered her to the Dutcheßes of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, who convey'd her honourably to *Calais*. The two Kings staid some Days in their Pavilions, assisting each other, and having taken Leave each of other, departed home. King *Richard* return'd to *Calais*, and stay'd there a few Days, until he was married by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the Church of *St. Nicholas*, and then sail'd with his Queen to *Dover*, and from thence proceeded on his Journey to *London*. They were met at *Black-beath*, by the Mayor, and Aldermen of the City, in their Robes, and a great Number of Citizens in rich embroider'd Liveries, and conducted to *Windsington*. On the 6<sup>th</sup> of *January*, the Queen was crown'd at *Westminster*, with all the State and Magnificence that could be devis'd. But the Duke of *Glocester* shew'd much Discontent, both in his Words and Actions, as well at the King's Marriage, as the Peace, and advis'd the *Londoners*, not to pay the Tax granted for carrying on a War with *France*, because there was no Peace. The Citizens would have follow'd his Advice

1396. had not the Duke of *Lancaster* assur'd them, that the Peace was settled at a great Expence; but the King was very much displeas'd at the Duke of *Glocester*, for his Management in that Affair.

Twenty second Parliament, its Acts, and Taxes.

Soon after *Christmas*, the Parliament met at *Westminster*, and made many Laws for the common Good; one of which enacted, That no Persons, Lords, or Commons, except the King's Officers in doing their Duty, should ride armed. In this Parliament, the Duke of *Lancaster* obtain'd a private Act, to legitimate the Children he had begotten on the Lady *Katharine Swinford*, before his Marriage with her; and his eldest Son by her *Thomas Beaufort*, was made Earl of *Somerset*. The Parliament gave the King a Tenth, and so was dissolv'd.

King Richard oppresses his Subjects by Loans.

All Things seem'd now to be in a peaceable and quiet Condition in *England*, and there being Rumours spread abroad, that King *Richard*, either was now, or else very shortly to be chosen Emperor, he thereupon began to take greater State upon him, and a more sumptuous Way of Living, than ever before: To maintain which, he fleec'd his Subjects, and borrow'd large Sums of Money; so that there was scarce any Man of Quality, Prelate, or Commoner in the Kingdom, but were oblig'd to lend him Money; which procur'd him the ill Will of the trading Part of the Nation. And he resolving to remove out of the Way, all such as had, or might oppose him, and thinking his Uncle the Duke of *Glocester* was the Chief of them, design'd to begin with him, and ruin him first, not by Law, but by secret Contrivances, and accordingly laid hold of the following Opportunity.

Brest restor'd to the Duke of Bretagne, for which the Duke of Gloucester receiv'd the Money.

A little after the Dissolution of the Parliament, the Duke of *Bretagne* sent over a Sum of Money, for the Payment of which he had engag'd the Haven of *Brest*, and deliver'd it up to him, to discharge that Debt, and recover the Town to himself again: The King receiv'd the Money, and resign'd it up to him. The Duke of *Glocester*, knowing the Haven to be a Place of great Importance to *England*, was highly displeas'd at this Point of Justice, unusual among Princes; and being one Day at Court, where he saw many of the Soldiers who were lately come from *Brest*, being out of Employment, crowding about the Hall, told the King, That those poor Men had been ill paid, and now were

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*


329

ing no Employment, knew not how to live.' The King replied, That it was not his Fault, he would take Care they should be paid. The Duke answered, "That it had been better they had continued where they were; he should first have taken a Town by his own Valour and Conduct, before he resigned what his Ancestors had left to him." The King immediately changing his Countenance, said, *What is it you say, Uncle?* The Duke then repeated the same Words again: Whereupon the King in a great Passion replied, "Think you that I am a Fool, or a Merchant, to sell my Land? No, by St. *John Baptist*, no: But our Cousin, the Duke of *Bretagne*, having paid the Sums, for which the Town and Haven of *Brest* were engaged to me, Reason and good Conscience required, that I should restore it." The King hated the Duke ever after, for the Brand of Cowardice he had put upon him.

Immediately after this *Guido* Earl of St. *Pauls* was sent by *Charles*, King of *France*, to visit and complement the King and Queen; who arriving at Court before the King's Passion was throughly cooled, and being admitted into great Familiarity with the King, he being one Day discoursing with the Earl, complained to him of the factious and mutinous Behaviour of his Uncle, the Duke of *Glocester*, towards him, viz. That he openly disliked his Marriage, and used his utmost Endeavours to break the Peace, so happily concluded between *England* and *France*, by stirring up a Rebellion among his Subjects. Upon hearing the King's Complaint, the Earl made this Reply, "That he had no Way to secure himself, and the Peace of his Kingdom, but by taking away his Life; for when a Subject is grown so great and popular, it is impossible for a King to be safe, so long as he is alive." The King easily assented to his Counsel; and that he might not want Pleas to justify what he had in a Manner determined to put in Execution, he from that Time observed very narrowly, every Word and Action of the Duke, interpreting every Thing in the worst Sense, as Desire of Revenge or Jealousy had suggested; and thought him so diseased a Member, as could not be cured without cutting off. He complained very grievously of him to the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *York*, his Brothers, and others of the Nobility: But as he found the Generality

20. Ri. II.

Earl of St. Paul comes into England, and advised the King against the Duke of Glocester.

1397.  nerality of the Nobility had a good Opinion of the Duke, so also his Brothers told him, "That tho' their Brother *Glocester* was somewhat rash in his Words, yet they knew him to be of truly loyal Principles, really studious of his Majesty's and the Realm's Happiness; and that he would not do any Thing prejudicial to either." These Words seem'd somewhat to abate the King's Resentment: But soon after the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Huntington* informed the King, that the Duke of *Glocester* was much discontented, that his own Counsels were not followed, and had uttered many seditious Speeches, as that the King was misled by the evil Counsellors he daily had about him; That he was not fit to govern, and therefore ought to be removed from his Throne; That he would undertake a Reformation of Things, and to that End had conspired with the Earls of *Arundel*, *Warwick* and *Darby*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Abbot of *St. Albans*, and Prior of *Westminster*, (the two last of which had encouraged him in the Attempt, by pretending, that it had been revealed to them in a Vision, that King *Richard* should destroy the Kingdom by his Misgovernment) to take him and his whole Council, and punish them according to their Demerits. The King's Anger was so sharpened against the Duke of *Glocester*, by these Accusations, that he enter'd immediately into a Consultation with the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Huntington*, and others, to apprehend the Duke and his Confederates suddenly, and put them to Death, which was effected in the following Manner. The Duke of *Glocester* was at his House in *Pleshey* in *Essex*, suspecting nothing of what was resolved against him. The King himself, with the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Huntington*, having laid an Ambush of armed Men in *Epping-Forest*, went early in the Morning, with a small Retinue, to the Duke of *Glocester* at his House, and finding him in bed, caused him to get up, and pretending, they wanted his Assistance in some eminent Business of State, they took him along with them to *London*. The Duke went away presently with the King, taking only five or six Attendants with him. When they came to the Place where the Ambush was laid, the King clapping Spurs to his Horse, rode away; and the Earl Marshal arrested him, and the Soldiers tying him, carried him blindfold to a Barge, and having put him on Ship-board, they carried him

The Duke  
of *Glocester*  
apprehended  
and murder-  
ed.

to *Calais*. He being either too popular, or too innocent to be brought to a publick Trial in *England*, was there, after a formal or pretended Trial before Judge *Rikell*, an *Irishman*, condemned, who sent Word to King *Richard*, that the Duke, upon his Examination, confessed all that was alledged against him; upon which he was ordered to be executed. But *Thomas Mowbrey*, Earl Marshal, to whom the Execution was committed, is said to have been so unwilling to put him to Death, altho' he was the Person who arrested him, that he would not do it, till the King threatned him with Death, if he did not execute his Orders. Whereupon, as tho' he was ashamed to be seen an Instrument of such a base Act, he caused him to be smothered by Pillows, or Feather Beds, privately.

The Seizure of the Duke of *Glocester* was managed so secretly, that there was no Noise of it; and the King carried it with so even a Countenance to the Earls of *Warwick* and *Arundel*, that he invited them to Dinner with him: But while they were in their Mirth, he caused them to be arrested, and committed them close Prisoners to the Tower. At the same Time the Lord *Cobham* and Sir *John Cheyney* were apprehended and sent Prisoners to the Isle of *Wight*. The People being much amazed at these Proceedings, a Proclamation was put out to assure the People, that they were seized for new Crimes, which should be proved against them at the sitting of the next Parliament. In the Interval, between the seizing of the Lords, and the meeting of the Parliament, the King and his Friends were busily employed in laying a sure Train for their Ruin; and all Endeavours were used to procure such a Parliament, as would be ready to concur with the King's Designs. And certain of the Nobility, whom the King could best confide in, were employed to impeach them of High-Treason, viz. the Earl of *Rutland*, the Earl of *Nottingham*, Earl of *Kent*, Earl Marshal, Earl of *Huntington*, Earl of *Somerset*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Lords *Spenser* and *Scroop*, Vice-Chamberlain, whose Greatness and Honour was thought sufficient alone almost to justify a false Accusation. Things being thus prepared, lest the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *York*, or the Friends of the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, should attempt their Rescue, the King provided a strong Guard of *Cheshire Men*, and four thousand Archers, besides the Forces

24 Ri. II.

The Earls of *Warwick* and *Arundel* imprisoned in the Tower.

he




1397.

The twenty  
third Parlia-  
ment, its  
Acts and  
Taxes.

he had commanded the Lords of his Party, to bring with them, to attend and guard the Parliament; and at the same Time to be an Awe upon any Members, that should be refractory.

The Parliament met at *Westminster*, about the Middle of *September*; the Duke of *Lancaster* being doubtful of his own Safety, brought with him a strong Body of Men to defend himself; but the King sending some of the Nobility to give him Assurance, that there was no ill intended against him; and that nothing should be done against the Lords, but with his Advice and Concurrence, he was prevailed upon to dismiss his Forces. But the Lords of the King's Party, especially those who were to manage the Impeachment, brought great Troops of armed Attendants, which they quartered in the Towns about *London*, all the Session. The Session was opened by *Edward Stafford*, Bishop of *Exeter*, who was then Lord Chancellor, who in a grave Speech delivered, "That the King was of absolute and uncontrollable Authority, inferior to none but God; That all Persons, that shall dare to lessen or limit his Power, upon any Pretence whatever, are worthy of Death, as wicked Traitors." This Speech within the House being seconded with the Guards without, was accounted a plain Indication, that not Law, but arbitrary Power, was to order Matters that Sessions. In the Lower House Sir *John Bussy* was chosen Speaker of the House of Commons; and he, and other Members, who were in the King's Interest, had a strong Party, so that they could carry all Things as they pleased; and accordingly a Vote passed presently, "That any one that should be convicted of opposing the King's Power and Regality, should suffer as a Traitor." Having laid these Foundations of Action, the King by his Attorney preferred his Complaint of Rebellion and Treason against *Thomas Duke of Gloucester*, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and several others. Sir *John Bussy* having aggravated the Crimes and Ingratitude of the said Peers, first required, That since the King's former Grace and Favour had wrought so little upon them, their Pardon might be revoked; which being done, as he required, he demanded Judgment upon them for their late Crimes, and particularly for Treason, in compelling the King to grant them a Commission to govern

in the Realm; and upon the Archbishop for pro-<sup>21 Ri. II</sup> viding those Commissions, and granting their Pardons. 

The Archbishop stood up to make his Defence, but the King commanded him Silence till the next Day; he appeared again the Day following, but the King commanded him, by the Bishop of *Carlisle*, to go Home; he did so, and came no more to the House. After the Archbishop was gone, the King commanded the Bishops to choose for themselves a Procurator, because it was lawful for them to be present in Cases of Blood; of which they chose Sir *Thomas Piercy*, and departed from the House. Then the King granted a Commission to twelve Peers, of which the Duke of *Lancaster* was Chief-Steward, to examine and try them for all Crimes and Treasons laid against them. The King had, in Order to their Trial, a little before prepar'd a Building of a great Hall. When the Day of their Arraignment came, and the Earls were brought forth to their condemnation, the Appellant Lords accused them as Traitors; "1. For forcing the King to grant them a Commission for the Government of the Realm. 2. For usurping the Regal Authority in holding a Parliament in Prejudice of the King's Royal Dignity, under Pretence of that traiterous Commission. 3. For traiterously murdering Sir *Simon Barley* and Sir *James Barnisb*, two of the King's Liege Subjects, without the King's Consent. And 4. For raising a traiterous Insurrection at *Haringey Park*, and entering armed with the Duke of *Glocester* and Earl of *Warwick*, into the King's Presence;" and then severally taking down their Gloves, offering to justify their Accusation by Fight.


*Richard Fitz-Allen* Earl of *Arundel* Earl of Arundel tried and condemned. answered first, and boldly denied the Charge, saying, that he was not a Traitor in Thought, Word or Deed; and that what he acted, either by Virtue of the aforesaid Commission, or while he was in Arms with the Duke of *Glocester*, and the Earl of *Warwick*, was not done with any ill Intention against the King's Person, but for the Good of the King and his Realm, which he did not doubt but he could make good against any or all the Appellants by Fight, if it would please the King to permit him so to vindicate his Innocency against their false Accusation."

As his firmest Plea, he added, that those very Acts, reasonable, were pardoned to him by the King's Grace,

1397. Grace, and that not only more publickly with the Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Warwick, but he had a special and particular Pardon for himself. The Duke of Lancaster and Sir John Busby replied to this, "That both those Pardons were revoked by the King, his Lords and his faithful People assembled in Parliament, and therefore could not avail him in this Case." The Earl replied, "that the Revocation of his Pardon was not done by the People; for they lamented him; but by him and his Company, who love no faithful Dealings." Then the Duke of Lancaster asked him if he had any Thing farther to alledge for himself? But he said, "the King's Pardon was freely granted him, and the Benefit of it, he hop'd, would not be denied him, for he insisted upon it." But that being overruled, they proceeded to give Sentence upon him in this Form, *I John, Steward of England, judge thee Richard, to be a Traitor; and I condemn thee to be drawn, hang'd, beheaded and quartered; and thy Land entail'd and entail'd, from thee and from thine Heirs of thy Body descending, to be confiscated.* This Sentence, according to Custom, was releas'd in respect to his Blood; but he was beheaded on Tower-Hill the same Afternoon. He behav'd himself with much Courage and Calmness in his Sufferings. As he was carried to Execution, he gave all the Money he had to the Poor, that he might have their Prayers. Several Noblemen attended him to his Execution, and among the rest, three that were nearly related to him, the Earl of Nottingham, who had married his Daughter, the Earl of Kent his Sister's Son, and the Earl of Huntington; he could not forbear taking Notice of the Forwardness of these Men, and therefore told them, "It had been more decent for them to have been absent; but since they pleas'd themselves in his Misfortunes, he could forget them, that their Miseries in a short Time would be as remarkable as his then were." When he had said this, he turned to the Executioner, and felt the Sword, bidding him do his Office as carefully and speedily as he could, and kneeling down, his Head was severed from his Body at one Blow. His Body was interred in the Austin-Fryars Church in Broadstreet, London. His Death was much lamented by the Common People, with whom he was in great Esteem for Valour, and his Love of the common Good. Divers Reports went

Beheaded on  
Tower-hill.

above

about, that Miracles were done by his Reliques, and <sup>21 Ri. II.</sup> that his Head was miraculously cemented to his Body;  which, together with the good Opinion People had of him, caus'd him to be honour'd as a Martyr. *Walsingham* affirms, that the King was often haunted with an Apparition or Imagination of his Ghost; for he no sooner clos'd his Eyes to Sleep, but he fancied *Arundel* stood by him. His Lands, which were confiscate to the King, were annexed to the Earldom of *Chester*, which was thereupon advanced to a Dutchy.

*Thomas Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, was next brought to his Trial, and accused of the same Articles of Treason. To which he answer'd, "He never knew it was <sup>Earl of War-</sup> <sup>wick tried</sup> <sup>and banish-</sup> <sup>ed.</sup> Treason to ride so arm'd as he confess'd he had done in *Haringey Park*; but since the Judges had declar'd it to be so, he beg'd the King's Pardon, and besought the Nobles to intercede for him to his Majesty. The King ask'd him, "whether he acknowledged himself guilty of the Treason charg'd on him? The Earl answer'd, "that he could not deny it, and wish'd he had never seen the Duke of *Glocester*, and Earl of *Arundel*, by whom he was led into it." Then the King having confer'd a little while, with the Duke of *Lancaster*, and receiv'd the Request of several Peers to save his Life, told the Earl, "that the ingenuous Confession of his Fault had more pleas'd him, than all the Profit of their Lands could, and therefore he would pardon his Life." But his Estate was seiz'd upon for the King's Use, and the Earl was banish'd into the Isle of *Man*, where he and his Lady are said to have liv'd in great Poverty in their old Age; for tho' there was an Allowance ordered of four thousand Marks *per Annum*, for their Maintenance out of the Estate, yet it was so badly paid, they were put to great Streights. The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who had been summoned to answer to the said Treasons, but was excus'd by the King, and pardon'd, together with the Archbishop of *York*, Bishop of *Winchester*, and some others, was at the earnest Importunity of some in the House of Commons, banish'd, and his Temporalities seiz'd into the King's Hands. The Lord *Cobham* and Sir *John Cheney* were indicted and condemn'd for the same Treasons, but by the Intercession of some of the Noblemen they had their Lives given them, but were condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment.

While

1897.  
The Duke  
of Gloucester,  
tho' dead  
condemned.

While the Trials of these Peers were carrying on in England, a Certificate was sent over from the Earl of Nottingham from Calais, where he was Governor, and Judge Rikel read a Confession of several Treasons, which he said were owned and acknowledged by the Duke of Gloucester under his own Hand. The Appellants, upon this petitioned, that the same Sentence should be pronounc'd against him, tho' dead, which had pass'd upon the Earl of Arundel, which was done accordingly; but his Body was allow'd to be delivered to his Friends, who procur'd it to be convey'd to Plesby in Essex, and inter'd it honourably in the Tomb in the Church, which he had caus'd to be erected in his Life-time.

Several Acts  
of Parlia-  
ment.

The Parliament sat after the Trials of the Peers, till near Christmas, and among other Acts, they enacted, That all Benefices or Gifts, granted, or alienated by those that were already condemn'd, or should be hereafter condemned by this Parliament, granted since the tenth Year of this King, should be revoked and made void. That all such, as give either Counsel, or Aid, or Favour, to the Children of such as were, or should hereafter be condemn'd in this Parliament, should be punish'd as Traitors. That all the Lords Spiritual and temporal should swear, inviolably to observe whatsoever in this Parliament was enacted, and that the Censures of the Church should be pronounced by the Prelates, against all those who should oppose or violate the same.

In the Time of this Session, the King ordered, that the Arms of King Edward the Confessor should be added to his own, and bare them together, *per pale*. And having a Mind to see the Forces of the City of London, in a Body, caused them to muster before him on Black-beath. And then he prorogued the Parliament till after Christmas, which was appointed to meet at Shrewsbury.

Twenty  
fourth Par-  
liament.

The King having remov'd his Enemies, either by Death, or Banishment, kept a magnificent Christmas at Litchfield, and went thence to Shrewsbury, to meet the Parliament at the Time appointed. As soon as he arriv'd there, he entertain'd all his Nobility and Commons, at a sumptuous Feast, at which he created five Dukes, four Earls, a Dutches, and a Marquess, viz. Henry Earl of Darby, Duke of Hereford, the Earl of Rutland, Duke of Albermarl, the Earl of Kent, Duke of

of *Surrey*, the Earl of *Huntington*, Duke of *Exeter*, <sup>21 Ri. II.</sup> the Earl of *Nottingham*, Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earl of *Somerset*, Marquiss of *Dorset*, the Lord *Spencer*, Earl of *Glocester*, the Lord *Nevil*, Earl of *Westmorland*, *William Scroop*, Earl of *Wiltshire*, and *Thomas Piercy*, Earl of *Worcester*. Among whom he dispos'd of the greatest Part of the Estates of the Duke of *Glocester*, Earl of *Arundel*, and *Warwick*, to oblige them more firmly to be his Friends. At the same Time also, he made the Earldom of *Chester* a Principality, and took upon himself the Name and Title of Prince of *Chester*.

As the King sought all Means to strengthen himself, and enlarge his Power; so he had a Parliament, that contributed what they could to promote his Designs: <sup>Several Acts of Parliament.</sup> For they enacted; That the Commissions granted by the King to several Noblemen, to inquire into, and reform Abuses, in the tenth Year of his Reign, should be repealed, as extorted from him by Threats, and that no such Commission should be granted for the future; and that the Heirs of such Persons, as had been sentenc'd by the said Commission, should be restor'd to their Inheritances, Lands and Possessions, but should not exact the Revenues of the Possessors from that Time, That it should be high Treason for any Person whatsoever, *First*, to compass, or imagine the Death of the King. *Secondly*, To contrive his Deposition. *Thirdly*, To ride armed, or make War against the King in this Realm. Or *Fourthly*, To disclaim the Homage due to him; and that the Heirs of all Persons, who were convicted of any of the said four Articles of Treason, should be for ever depriv'd of the Lands and Possessions of their Ancestors, and should not be allow'd to have an Action of Claim for them. The King also obtain'd of this Parliament, that the whole Power of both Houses, should for a Time, be put into the Hands of certain Persons, nominated by himself, *viz.* the Dukes of *Lancaster*, of *York*, of *Aumerle*, of *Surrey*, of *Exeter*, the Marquess of *Dorset*, the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Salisbury*, *March*, *Glocester* and *Wiltshire*; Sir *John Baskby*, and some others. These Persons, were empowered by Virtue of the said Grant, to hear, and determine all Matters and Petitions not ended in the last Session of Parliament; and by Virtue of this Grant, they concluded and determin'd in a Manner what they pleas'd. The Parliament granted the King a Tenth,

1398. and a half of the Clergy, and a Fifteenth and a half of the Laity, besides some Duties on Wool, &c. and then broke up. The King after this, granted a general Pardon to all Persons, but fifty, not named, which was done to keep the Nobility in Awe, the King being at Liberty to except, by that Means, whom he pleas'd.

Discontents  
about the  
last Parli-  
ament.

The King having by these Methods establish'd his Power, and set himself beyond all Opposition and Contradiction, thought himself sufficiently secure, and in a Manner, an absolute Prince, which is what he had a long Time a strong Inclination to be. But this produc'd many Discontents among the common People, and the whole Fabrick proving weak, was soon follow'd with a total Ruin. Altho' the Parliament was dissolv'd, yet there was great Murmuring about many Things that attended it, and were done by it. As *First*, 'That it was a Parliament not freely chosen, but pack'd by the King's Interest, and consisted of Men impos'd on the Shires and Towns, by the King's Authority. *Secondly*, That it was wholly managed by Court Favourites, and had bent all its Endeavours to destroy the Liberties and Privileges of the People. *Thirdly*, That tho' the Duke of Gloucester was so illegally murdered, they were so far from punishing the wicked Actors, that they approv'd their Deeds. *Fourthly*, That the Lords, who had deserv'd well of the Nation, and were pardon'd all irregular Actions, were made guilty by an unprecedented Power of revoking their Pardons. *Fifthly*, That by disannulling the Grants of the condemned Persons, made so many Years before, they had deprived many honest and good Men, both menial Servants of the said Lords, and others, of their lawful Inheritances and Estates. *Sixthly*, That they had not only laid heavy Taxes on the Nation themselves, but had exalted the King's Authority to such a Pitch, and allow'd him such a Power of Acting, that he need not observe any Laws but his Will.' These Matters concurring with other Causes of Complaint, partly grounded on the Grants of Parliament it self, his imposing the Oaths so severely on all Persons, to observe inviolably the Ordinances of it, and *Busby's*, *Bagges's*, and *Green's* farming the Taxes, who exacted them with the utmost Rigour and Severity; and partly on the King's

OWN

*The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

339

22 Ri. II.

own Management; as, that he was lavish in his Expences, lewd in his Manners, and partial in his Favours: That he discountenanc'd his antient Nobility, and prefer'd such to the nearest Attendance about his Person, who were neither eminent for Birth nor Virtue; that the Revenues of the Crown were squandered away upon them, and thereby the Nation impoverished: That such of the Clergy were preferred to Bishopricks, and other Dignities in the Church, as either join'd with him, or favour'd him in his lewd Courses: By these Things, the Affections of the People were so alienated from the King, that they were ready for a Revolt, upon the least Temptation; of which an Occasion happened soon after, as followeth.

The Dukes of *Hereford* and *Norfolk* happening to ride together, between *London* and *Branford*, fell into a friendly Discourse, concerning the Affairs of State. The Duke of *Hereford*, having observed how much the People's Affections declin'd toward the King, deliver'd his Thoughts freely to the Duke of *Norfolk*, telling him, 'That the present Management, and Ministers, were very distasteful to the Nation in general; that the King was made odious by his mean and bad Counsellors, who not only rais'd the Envy of the Nobles, by enjoying the Favours which were their due, but gain'd him the Hatred of the People by their Conduct, which manifestly tended to their own, not the publick Interest; and therefore he advis'd the Duke of *Norfolk*, who was a Privy Counsellor, and had an easy Access to the King's Ear, to advertise the King of it, that he might by a prudent Alteration of Things, prevent the ill Consequences which would certainly follow; adding, that it was not out of any ill Will he bore to the King, or an Humour of finding Fault, that he said this, but out of a pure Desire of the Happiness of the King, and his Government.' The Duke of *Norfolk* seem'd to assent to the Truth of what the Duke of *Hereford* had said, and promised him to represent it candidly to the King: But being sensible how ungrateful such a Message would be to the King, gave a very invidious Relation of the Duke of *Hereford's* Words to him, adding such aggravating Expressions of his own, as made them seem like a Calumny, both of his Majesty and Government. The King being enrag'd at the Duke of *Hereford*, sends for him to appear before

The Conference between the Dukes of *Hereford* and *Norfolk*.

The Duke of *Norfolk* accuses the Duke of *Hereford*.



1598.

before the Council, to answer the Accusation. The Duke did appear, and having heard what the Duke of Norfolk had said of him, thank'd the King for his Favour, in giving him Liberty to answer for himself, and then confess'd ingenuously what he had said to the Duke of Norfolk, and with what Intention; but accused him of misrepresenting and perverting his Words, which he offer'd to justify against the Duke of Norfolk by Combat, if the King would please to permit him. The Duke of Norfolk not being willing to suffer the Disgrace of recanting, or refusing to defend what he had said; stilly avouch'd the Truth of his Relation, and throwing down his Glove, accepted the Challenge. The King was unwilling to grant them the Combat, and endeavour'd to pacify them, but not prevailing with them, he swore by St. John Baptist, that he would never more concern himself to make them Friends, and granted them a Combat to be fought at Coventry, the 17<sup>th</sup> of September following, and accordingly order'd a Stage to be erected for that Purpose; but having been inform'd how dissatisfied the People were, that so valiant and heroick a Nobleman, as the Duke of Hereford was, and capable of being so serviceable to the Nation, should be suffer'd to justify his Innocence by the Hazard of a Combat, he permitted them to meet at the Time appointed, and bid Defiance each to other; but before they engag'd, put an End to the Quarrel by banishing the Duke of Norfolk for his Life, as having by his false Information, sowed Discord between the King and his Peers; and the Duke of Hereford for ten Years, as not altogether guiltless of the Calumny. The Duke of Hereford, when he took his Leave of the King, had four Years of his Banishment releas'd, and went into France for the other six Years, where he was very honourably receiv'd by King Charles the VI. The Duke of Norfolk went into Germany, and from thence to Venice, where he died through Trouble and Melancholy.

Both the  
Dukes ban-  
ished.

King fined  
seventeen  
Counties.

The Duke of Hereford being gone, who was the only surviving Person of the popular Lords, who were likely to head a Faction against the Court, the King and his Ministers, were encourag'd to proceed more arbitrarily, than they dar'd to attempt before. For the Duke had not left England long, before the King impos'd a great Fine upon all the chief Inhabitants of sever-

sever-

seventeen of the Eastern Counties of *England*; and having by his Agents, persuaded them to acknowledge themselves Rebels, upon Assurances of Pardon he afterwards compell'd them to secure their Pardon, and his Favour for the future, by subscribing blank Charters, by which they oblig'd themselves to pay him such Sums of Money, as he should please to require; as some a thousand Pounds, others a thousand Marks, and such large Sums; and oblig'd them also to swear inviolably to maintain the Statutes of the last Parliament. The Citizens of *London* were very much offended at this Oath, and these Charters, and therefore they required their Sheriffs, who were ordered to levy them, to oppose the Imposition. . This their refractory Opposition so angered the King, that he threaten'd them with more than usual Severity. But *Roger Walden*, the new Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Bishop of *London* interceeding for them to the King, he promis'd to forgive them; but was not as good as his Word, till he had squeez'd great Sums of Money out of all the richest Citizens, by his blank Bonds, and Charters, as he had done from the Clergy and Gentry of the seventeen Eastern Counties.

And extorts great Sums, from the *Londoners*.

On *New-years-day*, the River near *Bedford*, that runs between *Swelstone* and *Harewood*, divided it self, and became dry, for almost three Miles; and much about the same Time the Bay Trees dried up and withered, without any unusual or extraordinary Cold, which were afterwards thought to portend the great Changes in State, which happened the Year ensuing. About *Candlemas*, died *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, fourth Son of *Edward III.* and was honourably interr'd in *St. Paul's Church*, on the North-side of the high Altar. By his Death the Dukedom of *Lancaster*, with all his other Honours descended to his eldest Son, *Henry Duke of Hereford*, who was then in his Banishment at the Court of *France*; and he not being present to take Possession of his Inheritance, it became a Prey to the Court Harpies. For tho' the King had granted to the Duke of *Hereford*, when he left *England*, a Power by his Letters Patents, to sue out by his Attorney a *Livery* to any Lands or Possessions, holden of the King *in capite*, which might befall him in his Absence, and also a Respite of his Homage till he should return, for a reasonable Fine: Yet contrary to all Faith and Justice,

Several Accidents.

1399.  
The King's  
Injustice to  
the Duke  
of Hereford  
after his Fa-  
ther's Death.

Several of  
the Nobility  
being dis-  
gusted, re-  
tire from  
Court.

the King revok'd his  
of *Lancaster's* whole  
Banishment, which by the  
made perpetual. This unkingly and arbitrary proceed-  
ing brought an Odium upon the King, not only among  
the Commons, but the Nobility themselves, who be-  
gan to be in Doubt of their own Security, under so  
easy a King, and such covetous Counsellors. The Duke  
of *York*, the only Uncle of the King, that was then  
surviving, tho' he did not seem much concern'd at the  
Murder of his Brother the Duke of *Glocester*, was so  
much disgusted at their Proceedings, that he, and his  
Son, the Duke of *Anmerle*, retir'd from Court, to his  
Country-house at *Langley*, and other Noblemen finding  
the King look cold upon them, retired from Court.  
The Duke of *Hereford*, found more Favour and Pre-  
ferment in *France*, than the Severity he suffered by the  
Loss of his Inheritance in *England*; for being reputed  
one of the richest, as well as bravest Princes in the  
World for Valour, he was courted to marry the Daugh-  
ter of the Duke of *Berry*, the Uncle of the King of  
*France*. But as soon as King *Richard* had Notice of  
this Design, he dispatch'd over the Duke of *Salisbury*,  
immediately to prevent it, insinuating that it would be  
a great Dishonour to a Lady of the Royal Blood of  
*France*, to be married to an *English* Rebel, and noto-  
rious Traitor, and so hindred the Match.

The Earl of  
*Arundel's*  
Son escapes  
out of his  
Confinement.

The Bishop  
of *Chalcedon*  
comes into  
*England*.

The Irish re-  
volt, and the  
King pre-  
sents over in Per-  
son against  
them.

About the Time of the Duke of *Lancaster's* Death,  
the Earl of *Arundel's* eldest Son, who had been kept a  
close Prisoner, ever since the Death of his Father, in  
the House of the Earl of *Exeter*, got over to his Un-  
cle the late Archbishop *Arundel* at *Cullen*. The  
Bishop of *Chalcedon* came out of *Greece* into *England*,  
with apostolical Letters from the Pope, exhorting all  
well disposed Persons to assist the Emperor of *Constantinople*, with a liberal Contribution of Money, to en-  
able him to defend *Christendom* against the Inroads of  
the *Tartars*, and to encourage them so to do, he pro-  
mis'd them a plenary Pardon of their Sins: But this  
Affair met with no Success, being impeded by the Re-  
volt of the *Irish*. For *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*  
and *Ulster*, (who had been lately declar'd Heir Appa-  
rent to the Crown, and made Lieutenant of *Ireland*)  
being besieged at *Kentis* by a strong Body of the *Irish*,  
was slain in a Sally against them, and the *English*  
Towns

was left as a Prey to the *Irish*, who under the Command<sup>22 Ri. II.</sup>

*brian Mackmore*, and others, committed great Spoil, Barbarity upon the King's Subjects there. The News of this Rebellion was very perplexing to the King and his Council; for as it would be a great Shame to them to lose that Nation, which had cost so much to conquer, and had been held so long by the *English*; so also they were not prepar'd for War, nor with Money to make Preparations. However at last, it was resolv'd, that the King would raise an Army, and go over thither in person to reduce them. But in Order for this Expedition

the King's Ministers were obliged to use many Expedients, partly borrowing of the Bishops and others, and the King's Letters Patents, and partly extorting it from those that were unwilling to lend him, so that though he rais'd an Army, it was with the great Discontent of the whole Nation. In the Spring, the King and his Council were ready to embark; but that he might not increase the Queen in Discontent, he ordered Jufts to be celebrated several Days; and about *Whitsuntide* set sail

from *Milford Haven*, with his Army in two hundred Ships, and landed at *Waterford* in *Ireland*. The Duke of *York* was left his Deputy in *England*, with Orders to his Son the Duke of *Gloucester*, with some Reinforcements to his Army. Before they embark'd, while he was at *Bristol*, he had Information that the Earl of *Northumberland*, and some other Noblemen were conspiring to raise an Insurrection in his Absence: Where-

upon the King sent a Pursuivant to the Earl and his Associates, with Orders to attend him, with all the Estates they could get together. The Earl of *Northumberland* sent the King this Answer, 'That it was not expedient to draw away the Strength of the North, to go against the *Irish*, whom a less Force than what he had with him, was enough to subdue, because by that means, he should expose those Countries to the Inroads of the *Scottish* Borderers, who waited all Opportunities, as the King well knew, to make their Advantage of *England*, and were no longer Friends, but they wanted an Occasion to shew their Enmity for their own Gain to themselves; that since there was no Council appointed of those in his Absence, he hoped his Majesty would be better advis'd, than to require Attendance, which would be a greater Disadvantage to him at Home, than his Service could profit him

The Earl of *Northumberland* accus'd of Treason, and his Estate confiscated.

The Earl of *Northumberland's* Answer to the King.

1399. ' him Abroad.' 1

crafty Evasion,  
that he was guilty or  
and therefore set'd on  
any farther Attempts,  
his Associates Traitors, pr

The King being landed

The King's in *Waterford* to refresh his  
Arrival in  
Ireland, and  
Action there

forward to *Kilkenny*, where he determin'd to halt some Time, and wait for the Arrival of the Duke of *Amberle*. The Rebels were terrified by the Approach of the King's Army, and they did not dare to appear; but according to their usual Manner, kept close in the Woods, and made their Attacks upon the *English*, as they could take them at a Disadvantage. But the *English* being well acquainted with their Artifices, were so well prepar'd for them, that they slew many of them. When the King had waited at *Kilkenny* a Fortnight, and the Duke of *Amberle* did not come, he marched forward, and invaded the Country of the Arch-rebel *Mackmore*, who skulking in the Woods with about three thousand Men, valued little the King's Army. The King having with him two thousand five hundred Pioneers, set them to work to grub up the Woods, and open Passages for his Army; but they could by no Means come at *Mackmore*, and his Party. *Mackmore's* Uncle, and some of the *Irish* of the better Fashion, came to the King with Withes about their Necks, and submitting themselves to the King, he pardoned them. Upon this, the King invited *Mackmore* himself to come in, and accept of the same Mercy; but he considering that the *English* could not subsist there long, for Want of Provisions, refus'd to submit; but offered to lay down his Arms upon Assurance of Pardon for his past Offences, and his Liberty for the future. The King was so much enrag'd at this Answer, that he swore he would not leave *Ireland*, till he had *Mackmore* dead or alive; and being oblig'd to retreat to *Dublin*, to refresh and victual his Army, the first publish'd a Proclamation, wherein he promis'd a great Reward to any Person, who should bring *Mackmore* to him dead or alive; and after he had rested and refreshed his Army for fifteen Days, he drew it out into three Divisions, and sent them to environ the Enemy on all Sides, and by all Means possible to reduce them. As the King

looked upon this Answer as a confirm'd in his Opinion, that he had been accus'd of a Crime, to deter him from being proclaimed him and entered his Journey to *Ireland*, Ireland, stayed some Time

Army, and then marched forward to *Kilkenny*, where he determin'd to halt some Time, and wait for the Arrival of the Duke of *Amberle*. The Rebels were terrified by the Approach of the King's Army, and they did not dare to appear; but according to their usual Manner, kept close in the Woods, and made their Attacks upon the *English*, as they could take them at a Disadvantage. But the *English* being well acquainted with their Artifices, were so well prepar'd for them, that they slew many of them. When the King had waited at *Kilkenny* a Fortnight, and the Duke of *Amberle* did not come, he marched forward, and invaded the Country of the Arch-rebel *Mackmore*, who skulking in the Woods with about three thousand Men, valued little the King's Army. The King having with him two thousand five hundred Pioneers, set them to work to grub up the Woods, and open Passages for his Army; but they could by no Means come at *Mackmore*, and his Party. *Mackmore's* Uncle, and some of the *Irish* of the better Fashion, came to the King with Withes about their Necks, and submitting themselves to the King, he pardoned them. Upon this, the King invited *Mackmore* himself to come in, and accept of the same Mercy; but he considering that the *English* could not subsist there long, for Want of Provisions, refus'd to submit; but offered to lay down his Arms upon Assurance of Pardon for his past Offences, and his Liberty for the future. The King was so much enrag'd at this Answer, that he swore he would not leave *Ireland*, till he had *Mackmore* dead or alive; and being oblig'd to retreat to *Dublin*, to refresh and victual his Army, the first publish'd a Proclamation, wherein he promis'd a great Reward to any Person, who should bring *Mackmore* to him dead or alive; and after he had rested and refreshed his Army for fifteen Days, he drew it out into three Divisions, and sent them to environ the Enemy on all Sides, and by all Means possible to reduce them. As the King

## *The Reign of King RICHARD II.*

345

given these Orders, and the Army were on the march, the Duke of *Aumerle* arrived in *Ireland*, with a Reinforcement, in 100 Ships; the Conjunction here, with those with the King before, brought soon of the *Irish* into Subjection, that he had reduced *Ireland* into as intire Obedience as ever, had he not been led home. But it being his Fate to rule no longer, Dignity came thus to a Period.

The Nobility, Gentry, and common People, having fled, and intolerably oppressed by the King and his Favourites, for many Years past, began to long for Relief; and laying hold of the Opportunity the King's Absence had put into their Hands, of putting their Designs in Execution, contrived to put the Crown on another Head, from whom they might expect to be governed with more Prudence and Clemency. The person whom they esteemed the fittest to sway the Scepter of these Realms, was *Henry of Bullingbroke*, Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, who had as well a legal Title to it, as he had all the Qualifications fit to make an excellent King. He was a Prince of great Wisdom, Courage and Experience; a Friend to the Nobility, and a Lover of the common People, and having suffered so severely by the Cruelty and Injustice of a bad King, was most likely to make a good one.

The Duke of *Northumberland*, and his Friends, who had of late, for a bare Suspicion, suffered so much, were among the most forward in this Enterprize. The Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, was then in *France*; they therefore took up a general Resolution, to send him with all possible Privacy and Speed, giving them Assurances of their Assistance in settling him on the Throne. Their Requests and Desires they sent over to him in a Letter, by trusty Messengers, to Archbishop *Arundel*, who was then in *Bretagne* in *France*, importuning him also by Letters, to be their Advocate with the Duke to comply with them. The Bishop being a Fellow-sufferer with them, readily accepted the office; and going along with the Messengers to *Paris*, obtained of the Duke of *Hereford* a Meeting, as private as the Importance of the Matter required. The Messengers having delivered their Letters from the Nobles and Commons of *England*, were seconded by the Archbishop, with the best Persuasions that Reason could invent, or Rhetorick urge. He represented to the Duke,

22 Ri. II.

The Conspiracy to depose King Richard, with the Reasons and Causes of it.

The Duke of Lancaster and Hereford solicited to take the Crown.

1399.

Duke, the Misery of the present State of the People of England, "That they were utterly ruined and destroyed by the ill Management of the publick Affairs; in which, tho' the King himself was not actually concerned, yet so long as he employed and upheld such unfit Ministers, he could not be thought fit to govern; That it is far more intolerable to be Slaves to mean Persons, than to the King himself; and therefore so long as the King could not be won from maintaining their Pride and Tyranny over his Subjects, it was hardly any Crime to depose that Person, who left his Power in such base Hands, That the present Condition of the Nation was so low and distracted, that nothing but a present Remedy can save it from utter Ruin; for the antient Honour of the Nation for Chivalry was degenerated into Effeminacy, and the Men that were famous for their Courage and Conduct, either put to Death or banished; the Nobility was contemned and slighted, the Gentry abused, and the Commons miserably spoiled and taxed, and that not to support the Government, but the Pride and Avarice of their Fellow Subjects; that the Relief of these Grievances could not be expected from any Hands but his, reasonably; not only because he was so eminent for all warlike Achievements, but because he had so near a Relation to the Crown; and therefore the Nation had devolved their Hopes of Ease entirely upon him, which he in Honour and Duty ought to endeavour, especially since they had resolved to stand by him in the Attempt; and it could hardly prove unfortunate to him, where so much Love, Power and Interest were united." The Duke, tho' he had all the Reason in the World to give ear to those Proposals, it being the only Way left him to revenge the barbarous Death of his Uncle, recover his Estate and Honour, and set himself at Liberty from an uneasy Banishment, and restore his Family and Children to their natural Rights, yet he was very cautious of accepting, and told them, "That tho' he was sensible of the bad State of Things in England, which stood in great Need of a present Redress, and was much obliged to his Countrymen for their good Opinion of him; yet he was not insensible of the great Danger in attempting the Deposing of a King, and the Fickleness of the People's

The Duke  
of Lancaster's Answer.

ple's Affections; which, tho' they might lead Men into hazardous Attempts, yet seldom held up to carry them through; and therefore could hardly think it prudent to trust to them. He declared himself free from all ambitious and aspiring Thoughts, being now of more staid Years and Consideration; and if he should engage in so difficult an Action, it would be more for the Love of his Country, than his own Honour; that tho' it was some Motive to rescue him and his Family from Ruin, yet it was much greater to retrieve a whole Nation; and therefore, since the Nobles and Gentry had gone too far to retreat with Safety, he would rather run the Hazard of his own Life, than desert them; and so dismissed the Messengers with Promises of Acceptance, if the Nobles and People of *England* would hold to their Petition." This Answer was carried back with all possible Speed and Privacy, upon which the Nobility set about raising all the Men they could, to receive him; and the Duke himself carried the Matter very closely. He desired Leave of the King of *France*, to go and pay a Visit to his Kinsman, the Duke of *Breagne*, that he might pass the more unsuspected, into *England*, whither Archbishop *Arundel*, Thomas Earl of *Arundel*, his Nephew, Lord *Cobham*, and diverse other Gentlemen of Note, attended him, to the Number of about eighty, being accommodated by some Ships, and Men, for the Design. He set Sail from Port *Blanc* in *Bretagne*, for *England*; and being arrived on the Coasts, he hovered about some Time, to observe in what Forwardness the Nobility were to receive him, and where he might land with the most Safety. The Duke of *Northumberland* and his Friends had so well disposed the People of the *North*, that he found a very kind Reception; and therefore he landed at *Raven-Spurg*, in *Hullerness* in *Turksbire*. Upon the first notice of his Arrival, the common People flocked in to his Assistance, in great Numbers; and the Earl of *Northumberland*, his Son *Henry Hotspur*, the Earl of *Westmoreland*, the Lords *Willoughby*, *Rosse*, *Darcy*, *Nevil* and *Beaumont*, and many other Persons of Honour and Interest, came with a considerable Body of Men to him; so that in a very few Days, his Army was grown to near sixty thousand Men, well arm'd and accoutred.

The



1399.  
The Duke  
of York  
raises an Ar-  
my against  
the Duke of  
Lancaster.

The Duke of York, to whom the Regency of the Nation was committed, during the King's Absence, having Intelligence of this Insurrection, took the most effectual Methods he could, to meet the impending Danger; he immediately calls a Council to consult by what Means they might secure the Nation in its Obedience to King Richard, and defeat the Designs of the Invader. The Chief Persons in the Council, were the Bishop of Exeter, Lord Chancellor, the Earl of Wiltshire, Lord Treasurer, John Busby, Henry Green, John Baggot and John Russell, Knights.

The King's  
Party resolve  
to leave Lon-  
don.


In this Council it was resolv'd, that it was best to leave London, which had always been inclin'd to the Lords Party, and had been lately disoblig'd, and to raise an Army about St. Albans, either to oppose the Duke at his Landing, or before he had gotten any considerable Body of Men together. An Army was rais'd; but when they understood they were to fight against the Duke of Lancaster, they declar'd unanimously, they would not oppose him, because his Quarrel was so just, and they did believe he came not for the Crown, but the Restoration of his Right, which it would be the highest Injustice to keep him from. This so discouraged the King's Friends, that they dismiss'd their Army, and betook themselves to other Methods for their Security. The Duke of York, and Bishop of Exeter, kept a good Body of Men; but the Lord Scroop, Busby and Green fled to Bristol, and fortified themselves in the Castle: Baggot made his Escape into Ireland.

The Duke  
of Lancaster  
marches to  
London.

The Duke of Lancaster having met with that Success which was beyond his Expectation, was encourag'd thereby to proceed in his Design, and having taken an Oath to the Lords, "that he would neither procure nor permit any bodily Harm to be done to King Richard; that he would require only the Lands which were descended to him by Inheritance from his Father and Right of his Wife; that he would obtain that the Commons should be eas'd of their Taxes and Subsidies, cause the King to send home his Guard of Cheshire Men, and bring him to a better Order of Government; he made all the Haste he could to London. His Army increased daily in his March, partly by reason of the good Inclination the People had toward him, and partly through the Encouragement that was given them by Archbishop Arundel, by his Pardons from

## The Reign of King RICHARD II.

349

from the Pope, promising Remission of all their Sins <sup>23 Ri. II.</sup> to such as should assist the Duke against his Enemies.  The Duke of York had gotten an Army to oppose the Duke of Lancaster, but they would not fight against him; and so he was obliged to pass by him, to meet King Richard at his Landing in Wales. The Duke of Lancaster being arriv'd at London, was receiv'd with all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy: The costliest Entertainments by Pageants, Processions and Banquets were made, as Expressions of their Happiness at his Presence; all their Promises and good Wishes were bestow'd on him; but on King Richard and his Party, nothing but Railings and Curses. The Duke having secur'd the City of London to himself, marched towards Bristol, where Scroop, Busby, and Green, the three great Instruments of the Misery of the Nation, had fortified themselves, sending out Parties on all Sides to plunder and seize the Estates and Persons of all such as would not join with him and his Confederates. The Duke's Army laid Siege to Bristol-Castle, and after four Days took it, with the Lord Scroop, Busby, and Green Prisoners. The Hatred of the People toward them, was so great, that it would admit of no Delay of their Punishment; for which Cause they were immediately arraign'd before the Constable and Marshal, and being found guilty of Treason in misleading the King, were beheaded. After this Execution, the Duke of York himself became not only a Friend, but a chief Counsellor to the Duke of Lancaster. The Parties which the Duke had sent out, took the Bishop of Norwich, Sir William Elmham, Sir Walter Burley, John Golifer, and Lawrence Drew, Esquires. From Bristol the Duke march'd to Chester, which receiv'd him with great Joy, and yielded their Charter up to him. From Chester he sent his Son with the Duke of Gloucester's Son into Ireland, but the latter was drowned in his Passage.

While these Things were thus carrying on in England, King Richard was in Ireland, and had no Intelligence of it; for the Irish Seas were so tempestuous for near six Weeks that no Vessels could pass, so that the Duke of Lancaster met with but very little Opposition before he was settled in England.

The News of the Duke of Lancaster's Invasion of England, and the Success he had therein at last arriv'd in Ireland, and put the King into strange Perplexities

The News of the Duke of Lancaster's Invasion of England arriv'd on of Ireland and in Ireland

and Agonies; but what Course was best to be taken, he knew not, but at last resolv'd to hasten with his Army into *England*, and give the Duke Battel, before he should be join'd by his Friends; and likewise to make the Duke of *Lancaster's* Son *Henry*, and the Duke of *Glocester's* Son *Humphrey*, Prisoners in the Castle of *Trim*. The Duke of *Aumerle* advised and earnestly persuaded the King, not to go into *England* himself till the whole Fleet was ready, as it might be in a few Days, and to send some of his Friends before, to gather him an Army, that he might land without Danger. The King followed this Counsel, and sent the Earl of *Salisbury* before, to procure an Army of *Welsh* and *Cheeshire* Men against his Arrival, which he had promised should be within six Days. The Earl landed at *Conway* in *Wales*, and sending Letters to the Gentlemen in those Countries that still adher'd to the King's Interell, he soon rais'd an Army of forty thousand Men, ready to march with the King against his Enemies. But there being a Report rais'd that King *Richard* was dead in *Ireland*, and the King not coming at the Time appointed; the Army was put into such a Fright, that they would by no Means enter upon any Action till they saw the King, but were persuaded by the Earl of *Salisbury* to wait fourteen Days longer for the King's Arrival; but on Condition, if the King came not in that Time, they should return home. The King did not leave *Ireland* till eighteen Days after, and was three Days in his Passage; so that the fourteen Days being claps'd, and the King not arriv'd, they returned home. They were no sooner separated, but the King with his Forces, landed at *Milford Haven* in *Wales*, attended with the Dukes of *Aumerle* and *Exeter* and others of the Nobility; and leaving the Army with the Duke of *Aumerle*, he went to *Conway* in a Disguise, to see what Body of Men the Earl of *Salisbury* had gotten together to receive him; but to his great Mortification found his Delays had depriv'd him of the Assistance of his Friends, which both he and the Earl of *Salisbury* very much lamented. While the King was gone to *Conway*, the Duke of *Aumerle* gave it out, that the King had quite left his Army, and was fled; so dismissing every Man to provide for his own Safety, he fled himself with five hundred Men, to the Duke of *Lancaster*. And the Earl of *Worcester*, who was Steward of the King's House, broke his

King Richard  
lands at  
Milford Haven.

his Staff in the midst of the King's Servants; and so dissolving the King's Family, went along with the Duke of *Aumerle*. The *Cheshire* Men went to *Conway* to the King, and there meeting with others of their Countrymen, they made up a considerable Army, and took up a Resolution to maintain King *Richard's* Right against the Duke and his Adherents. But the King having been inform'd, that all the Castles from the Borders of *Scotland*, as far as *Bristol*, had been surrendered into the Hands of the Duke of *Lancaster*; and that the Generality of the Nobility, Gentry, and Commons of the North and South Parts of the Nation, had joined him, and that his trusty Friends and Counsellors had been beheaded at *Bristol*, he despaired of all Success; and calling his Army together, dismissed them to their own Homes, determining to submit himself to the Duke of *Lancaster's* Mercy, rather than to hazard the Lives of those who were so loyal to him in vain: And so he, with the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey*, the Bishop of *Carlisle*, Sir *Stephen Scroop*, and about ten more of his fast Friends, betook himself to *Conway-Castle*, resolving to defend themselves there till he could obtain some good Terms.

23 Ri. II.



The King dismisses his Army, and betakes himself to *Conway Castle*.

The Castle of *Conway* was not only a very strong Fortress, but so situated on the Sea-Shore, that they might easily make their Escape into *Ireland*, if streightned by a Siege. This was the only Castle of Consequence that held out against the Duke of *Lancaster*, who was hastening thither with all his Army; but the King had so well secur'd these Advantages, that he did not fear all the Force of his Enemy. The Duke being sensible how impossible it was to get the King into his Power by Force, while he kept himself in this Castle, where Force of Arms would be of little Use, against so strong a Fortress, and in so mountainous a Country, call'd a Council of those Peers who were of his Party, who being of his Mind, it was advis'd by Archbishop *Arundel*, that the King who was always simple and credulous, should be dealt with by Policy; and that whereas he had not long before sent the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey* to the Duke of *Lancaster* to know what he intended, certain Messengers should be sent to the King with this Answer, " That he sought nothing but a peaceable Settlement of Things for the Good of the Nation, and that if he would be pleas'd to

A politick Contrivance to get the King into the Duke of *Lancaster's* Hands.

" call

1399. "call a Parliament, wherein those who had barbarously murdered, or advis'd the Death of the Duke of *Glocester*, should be punish'd, and other Irregularities of Government reformed, he and the Duke would be good Friends; only the Duke should have his Pardon of all Offences granted upon his begging of it upon his Knees, and enjoy the Office of High Judge, as his Ancestors had it for an hundred Years, to himself and Posterity." This Advice being approv'd, the Earl of *Northumberland* was sent with four hundred Lances, and a thousand Archers, to deliver this Answer to the King. The Earl in his Way had the two Castles of *Flint* and *Rutland* delivered up to him. When he arriv'd at a narrow Passage near the Town of *Conwy*, he divided his Men into two Ambushes, and posted them under a Rock, giving them Command to keep it; and himself with five Men only went to the Town, and sent an Herald to the King to acquaint him that he was sent by the Duke of *Launcester* with a Message about an Agreement with him, and therefore desir'd that safe Conduct should be granted him. The King, not suspecting any Deceit, allow'd it him, and the Earl entering the Castle, deliver'd his Message to the King and Earl of *Salisbury* with much Seriousness, and confirm'd it with a solemn Oath taken upon the Sacrament, that the Duke should perform what he had promised in his Name, and that if the King pleas'd to go to the Duke, and confirm those Proposals, he should depart whither he pleas'd afterwards. The King not suspecting any Treachery, agreed to meet the Duke of *Launcester*, and settle the Agreement, intending to go afterwards into *Wales*, and gather an Army to secure himself against all future Hazards. The Earl hasten'd the King away with him to the Duke, and being mounted on Horseback, attended with the Earl of *Salisbury*, Bishop of *Carlisle*, Sir *William Peribee*, and Sir *Stephen Scrope*, who attended him, rode along with him to conduct him. The King desir'd the Earl of *Northumberland* to ride before to *Rutland*, to provide a Dinner, which he seem'd to be very ready to do, and rode apace from them; but went no farther than to the Place where his Ambushes lay, and having given them Notice of the King's Approach, staid there while the King came up. The King seeing such a Number of Men with the Earl, found he was betray'd; but being on all Sides enclosed

The King taken by the Earl of *Northumberland*, and carried to the Duke at *Launcester*.

enclos'd with Rocks, he had no Way to escape: The Earl perceiving the King's Surprise, went to him, and falling on his Knees, told him, they were a Guard which he had appointed to attend his Person. The King answered him, they were needless, and not according to his Promise, who had assur'd him he would not have above six Persons with him; and being angry, he said he would go back to *Conway*: But the Earl then began to be plain with the King, and told him, that now he had him in his Power, he would conduct him to the Duke of *Lancaster*, as he had engag'd to do ten Days before. The King was forc'd to go forward, and having din'd at *Rutland*, was conducted to *Flint-Castle*, where he lodg'd that Night. The Duke of *Lancaster* having Notice of the King's Arrival at *Flint-Castle*, drew up his Army the next Morning, consisting of an hundred thousand Men, round about the Castle; and sent the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Earl of *Rutland*, and Sir *Thomas Piercy* to the King, to prepare and discourse him, and the Duke himself waited on him in the Afternoon. The Duke was receiv'd by the King with much Calmness of Temper and obliging Carriage, he saying to him, *Cousin of Lancaster, You are welcome.* To which the Duke replied, *I am come sooner than you appointed me, because the Fame of your People is, that for these twenty one Years you have govern'd ill and rigorously, for which they are highly dissatisfied; but if Heaven pleases, I will help to govern them better for the future.* And when the Duke told him, "that he came to obtain the Restitution of his Lands and Honours, thro' his favourable Permission;" the King replied, "that he was ready to accomplish his Will:" And when the Duke added farther, "that since the People complain'd of his rigorous Government for these twenty two Years, he was now resolv'd to help him to govern better;" the King replied, "Fair Cousin of *Lancaster*, since 'tis your Will to do so, it pleaseth us well." This Discourse being ended, the Duke ordered the King's Horses to be brought out, and the King and his Friends being mounted, he was conducted to *Chester*, where he was confin'd in the Castle under the Care of the Duke of *Gloucester's* and Earl of *Arundel's* Sons, who hating him for the Murther of their Fathers, were very watchful to keep him for the Day of their hop'd for Revenge. The King was after-

23 Ri. II.


The King and Duke meet.

1399. wards remov'd from *Chester* to *Newcastle* in *Staffordshire*, where the old Earl of *Warwick* being recall'd from his Banishment in the *Ile of Man*, went to upbraid him with his Severity towards him. From thence he was carried to *Litchfield*, and lodg'd in the Castle, from whence he had like to have escap'd out of a Window; but being discover'd, was the more strictly guarded. From thence in a few Days he was carried to *London*.

When the Duke of *Lancaster* was arrived within six Miles of *London*, the Mayor and Companies met him in their Liveries, with Trumpets sounding before them, and paid him much more Reverence than the King himself. When the Duke was come within two Miles of *London*, he made a Halt, and enquired of the Citizens, what he should do with the King? Who, as some say, answer'd, "that they, in Behalf of the Commons of *London*, desired, that he would cut off the Head of *King Richard* and all that were taken with him." But the Duke replied, "that such an Act would prove an everlasting Reproach unto him and his Adherents; but he would carry him along with them to the Tower of *London*, and then leave him to the Judgment of the Parliament." Accordingly he was carried to *Westminster*; but he lodg'd but one Night there, but being carried the next Day to the Tower, to be kept close Prisoner, till the meeting of the next Parliament, there was a Conspiracy of several of the Citizens to have kill'd him as he pass'd thro' the City, but the Mayor and Aldermen having Notice of the Design, prevented it.

The Duke of *Lancaster* having staid some Days in the City, at the Bishop of *London's* Palace, and *St. John's* Hospital without *Smithfield*, retir'd for a small Time into *Hertsfordshire*. When he was at *Chester*, he caus'd Writs to be issued out in the King's Name, for summoning a Parliament, which was to meet on the last Day of *September*, against the meeting of which he and his Friends were busy in consulting how Matters should be manag'd, and at length came to this Conclusion, that *King Richard* should no longer govern the Nation; but they were for making Use of the most plausible Methods of dethroning him. Many Things were propounded; among which, the Duke of *York* advis'd, that *King Richard* should both voluntarily resign his Crown, and be solemnly deposed by the Parliament also; be-

Consultations to depose *King Richard*.

cause, as he said, tho' the Judgment of Parliament <sup>as Ri. II.</sup> may make him be thought worthy to be deposed, yet  his Deprivation will never be just, unless he joined in a Resignation. His Advice was approved, and accordingly put in Execution: For the Day before the Parliament met, there assembled in the Tower, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, the Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Hereford*, the Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls of *Norshumberland* and *Westmoreland*, and divers others of the Nobility, Judges, and others. When they were seated in their Places, the King was brought forth in his kingly Robes and Habiliments, and being placed in a Chair of State, he read the Form of his Resignation to this Effect:

“ In the Name of God, Amen. I *Richard*, by the  
 “ Grace of God, King of *England*, and *France*, and <sup>The Form of King Richard's Resignation.</sup>  
 “ Lord of *Ireland*, do hereby acquit and discharge all  
 “ Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls,  
 “ Barons, Lords, and all other my Subjects, both spi-  
 “ ritual and secular, of what Degree soever, from their  
 “ Oath of Fealty, and Homage, and all other Bonds  
 “ of Allegiance to me due, both from them and their  
 “ Heirs; and do hereby release them from the said  
 “ Oaths and Allegiance, so far as they concern my  
 “ Person for ever. I also resign all my kingly Ma-  
 “ jesty and Dignity, with all the Rights and Privi-  
 “ leges thereunto belonging; and do renounce all the  
 “ Title and Claim which I ever had, or have, to them.  
 “ I also renounce the Government of the said King-  
 “ doms, and the Name of regal Highness thereunto  
 “ belonging, freely and wholly swearing upon the E-  
 “ vangelists, that I will never oppose this my voluntary  
 “ Resignation, nor suffer it to be opposed, as judging  
 “ my self not unworthily deprived of my regal Dig-  
 “ nity, for my Deserts.” This Resignation King *Richard*  
 read with much Calmness and Chearfulness, and  
 then signed and subscribed it in their Presence, and  
 putting his Ring on the Duke of *Lancaster's* Finger, de-  
 sired, that his Cousin, the Duke of *Lancaster*, might  
 be his Successor. He likewise appointed the Archbi-  
 shop of *York*, and Bishop of *Hereford*, to be his Procu-  
 rators, to declare and shew this his voluntary Resigna-  
 tion to all the States of Parliament, and his Desire,  
 that the Duke of *Lancaster*, his Cousin, should suc-  
 ceed him in his Throne. When this was done, they  
 took their Leave of him.



1399.  
King Richard deposed.

The Parliament met the *Monday* following; after the Archbishop of *York*, and Bishop of *Hereford* declared in the King's Name, that he had voluntarily resigned his regal Dignity and Power, the *Lords* and *Commons* agreed to, and accepted it, and proceeded to his Deposition; in order to which they suggested all the Misdemeanours of his Reign, and they could recollect them, into thirty three Articles of Accusation, alledging against him, "That he had misappropriated the publick Treasure, and given away the Revenues of the Crown to Persons of no Merit; That he had impeached certain Lords of Treason, meddling of Matters concerning the Estate of the Nation, who were appointed to it by Parliament; That he had abused the Judges to give their Opinions contrary to Law, for the Destruction of the Lords; That he had punished the Lords, and fined their Ancestors for Crimes pardoned by his Proclamation and Letters; That he had detained Records of a nature of great Concern for the Good of the Nation; That he had unjustly banished the Duke of *Lancaster* and *Hereford*, and forbid all his Friends to sue for his Release; That he had procured Bulls from the Pope, to forbid his Subjects to observe Laws made for his Benefit; That he forbid the Duke of *Hereford* to prosecute or defend his Cause, notwithstanding his Grant to him under Seal; That he put out of Office the High-Sheriff's duty elected, put in his Favouring, and kept them in that Office longer than usual; That he borrowed great Sums of his Subjects and would not pay them; That he taxed his Subjects at his Pleasure, and would not pay them for Provisions had of him; That he said, *All Law was in his own Breast and in the Lives of his Subjects were in his Hands*; That he put out Knights and Burgesses duly elected for Parliament, and put in Men for his own Turn; That he had extorted several Sums of the Clergy, at his Pleasure, into *Ireland*, contrary to Law; That he devised new Oaths, and forced his Subjects to take them; That he banished the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, without just Cause, and gave his Goods to his Successor on Condition, that he should observe the Statute made at *Shrewsbury* and *Coventry*, with other Misdemeanors of less Importance. These Articles being composed in Form, and brought into the House

of Parliament, and being read, it was demanded of <sup>23 Ri. II.</sup> the Lords and Commons, what their Judgment was concerning them? To which they replied, "That they were notorious Crimes; and that King *Richard* being manifestly found guilty of the same, was worthy to be deposed from his royal Authority and Dignity." And thereupon Commissioners were appointed by both Houses, to pronounce a Sentence of Deposition in the Manner and Form following.

"In the Name of God, Amen. We, *John*, Bishop of *St. Asaph*, *John*, Abbot of *Glassenbury*, *Thomas*, Earl of *Glocester*, *Thomas*, Lord *Barkley*, *Sir Thomas Erpingham*, *Sir Thomas Gray*, and *William Thirning*, Justices Commissioners, specially chosen by the three States of this Parliament, representing the whole Body of the Realm, for all Matters by the said States to us committed, considering the manifold Perjuries and Cruelties, notorious Crimes and Offences, by *Richard*, late King of this Realm, committed and done contrary to the Laws and good Government of the Kingdom, during the Time of his Reign, as was made manifest to the whole Body of Parliament, by several Articles exhibited against him, and by his own Confession of his own Insufficiency and Misdemeanors of Government: We, the Premises well considering, do by the Power and Authority to us committed, in the Names of all the said States, pronounce, decree, and declare the said *Richard* unworthy of the Rule and Government of the said Realm; and for the said Causes do deprive him of all kingly Dignity and Worship, expressly forbidding all Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, Barons and Knights, and all other Persons within this Kingdom, of what Quality or Degree soever, from this Day forward, to be obedient or attendant on the aforesaid *Richard*, as King and Lord of these Realms. His Sentence of Deposition being pronounced, the Commissioners, in the Name of the Parliament, resign unto King *Richard* all their Homage and Fealty, which, in Time past, they had made, or did owe him; and so King *Richard* was looked upon as wholly deprived of his regal Power and Kingdoms.

The Report of the Commissioners being given in the Parliament, it was immediately voted, that the throne was vacant, by the voluntary Cession and just deposition of King *Richard*; and therefore they ought

1399. to proceed immediately to the Election of a new Prince into the Throne. Upon this Vote, *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster*, rose up immediately from his Seat, and standing so as he might be seen of the People, and crossing himself on the Forehead and Breast, as the Custom was in the first Ages, he put in his Claim for the Kingdom in these Words:

The Duke of Lancaster claims the Crown.

"In the Name of God, Amen. I *Henry*, Duke of *Lancaster*, do claim as Right, the Crown and Realm of *England*, with all its Dominions and Appurtenances thereunto belonging, being lineally descended from *Edmund*, *uncle* *Crouch-back*, eldest Son of our good Lord, *Richard* the Third; and through the Right which God of his Grace hath sent me, by his Assistance, and Help of my ready Kindred and noble Friends; who have assisted with me to recover the same, being at the Point of Destruction, for want of good Government, and an orderly Distribution of Justice." And then he went to his Place, and sat down again.

The Archbishop put the Question to the Houses of Parliament, Whom they would have for their King? First, *Whether they would have the Duke of York for their King?* and they said, *No*. Then, *Whether they desired his eldest Son Edward, Duke of Aumerle?* and they replied, *No*. Then he proposed the Duke of *Tork*'s youngest Son, and several others, but all were refused.

The Duke of Lancaster elected King.

Then the Archbishop pausing a While, asked them, *Whether they would have the Duke of Lancaster for their King?* They said, *We will have him, and none else*; and made the same Answer three Times. Then the Arch Bishop going to him, kneeled down before him, and declared to him, That the People had unanimously chosen him to be their King, and desired him to take upon him the Care and Government of the Realm. The Duke, who was also upon his Knees, when the Archbishop said this to him, rose up and replied, *That since the Kingdom was devolved upon him by a special Dispensation of divine Providence, he durst not refuse it*. After this the Archbishop read to him the Duties of a King, and having signed the King with the Sign of the Cross, the King kissed the Archbishop; and the Constable taking the Ring with which the Kings were wedded to the Realm, shewed it to the whole Assembly, and then put it on the

the King's Finger, and the King kiss'd the Constable. <sup>23 Ri. II.</sup>  
Then the King was led to the Royal Seat by the Arch-  
bishops, who made his Prayers immediately before it,  
and then turned to the Assembly, and gave Thanks to  
the Lords spiritual and temporal, and all the States of  
the Realm; assuring them he would not, by Way of  
Conquest, disinherit or deprive any Man of his Rights  
or Franchises, which he now enjoyeth, or hath had by  
the Custom and good Law of the Realm, certain evil  
Members only excepted. Then a general Silence being  
kept for a small Time, the whole House gave Thanks  
to God, for his Gift of so good a King to the Nation.  
Then the Archbishop rose up, and in a Sermon-like  
Speech from these Words, *1 Kings ix. 17. A Man shall  
rule over my People*; he set forth the Happiness of the  
Nation, in the Person they had chosen; that he was  
not, as the former King, a Child in Understanding,  
tho' not in Years, under whose Government they  
suffer'd so many Miseries, but a Man of perfect  
Reason, and vast Experience and Judgment; under  
whose auspicious Government, they had Assurance  
of a full and free Profession of Religion, a due Admi-  
nistration of Justice, a lasting Peace and Plenty, con-  
cluding with a short Prayer, 'That he might long prof-  
'perously reign over the Kingdom, to the Glory of  
'God, and the Prosperity of the Nation.' To which  
the whole Assembly with a joyful Acclamation, said,  
*Amen, Amen.*

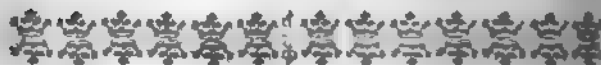
King *Henry*, as soon as the Parliament rose, went to  
*Whitehall*, and made a great Feast for all the Mem-  
bers, at which he demean'd himself with much kind  
and obliging Carriage, without the majestick Reserved-  
ness, or Distance of a King, to the well pleasing of all  
his Subjects then present. In the Afternoon, he was  
proclaimed King of *England*, and *France*, and Lord of  
*Ireland*; and a Proclamation was issued out for the  
Continuance of all Officers, and Justices in their Pla-  
ces.

Thus was King *Richard* depos'd from his royal  
Dignity, and *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster* settled on the  
Throne, when he had reigned twenty two Years, two  
Months, and eight Days. The Manner and Form of  
his Deposition, was signified to him the next Day by  
Justice *Thirning*, who at the same Time, surrendered  
back all Homage and Fealty due unto him. King

<sup>1369</sup> Richard seem'd to be very easy, telling Sir William, That he look'd not after just Things, but after all, he hop'd, that his Cousin would be his good Lord and Friend.

King Richard's Person and Character.

Richard II. was a Prince, who as to his Person, was the most handsom and amiable that ever had reigned since the Conquest, there appear'd in him many good Inclinations, which might have grown to perfect Virtues, if they had not been blasted in his Youth by corrupt Flatterers, who taught him Luxury, Viciousness, and the Desire of Power. He was rather profuse and liberal in his Gifts and Expences, guilty of many Breaches of Faith, and of a revengeful Spirit, which lost him all the Esteem the Nation has for him: He obtain'd a more absolute Power, than any of his Predecessors; but these were but so many Steps to his Ruin, which he arriv'd when he was in the very Strength and Vigour of his Age, being not above thirty three Years old.



### The Reign of King HENRY IV.

King Henry's Parentage and Succession.

**HENRY**, born'd of Bullingbrook, a Town of Lincolnshire, the Place of his Birth, was the eldest Son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, fourth Son of King Edward the III. and was himself Duke of Lancaster after his Father's Death, as he was before Duke of Hereford. He came to the Crown at about thirty three Years of Age; the Crown did not belong to him in a lineal Succession after King Richard II. because some of the Posterity of Lionel Duke of Clarence (the elder Brother of his Father the Duke of Lancaster) by his Daughter Philippa, were yet surviving; for Edmund Mortimer Earl of March, to whom she was married, left a Son, Roger Mortimer, who had been declar'd next Heir to the Crown, by the Parliament in the Time of King Richard II. and dying, left Edmund Mortimer, the Heir to his Honour and Estate, besides several

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

361

several other Children. *Edmund Mortimer* was not insensible of the Right he had to the Crown, but thought it in vain, while the People were so passionately affected to the Duke of *Lancaster*, to oppose the Current of Favour and Power, by putting in his Claim, and therefore betook himself to Retirement at his Manor of *Wigmore* in *Hertfordshire*; but it grated upon his Mind, to hear him call himself Heir of the Crown of *England*, and therefore said to his Friends, that he was *heres malus*, such an Heir as a Pyrate is to a Merchant's Goods. On the other Hand, the Duke of *Lancaster* being sensible of the great Opinion the People had of his Merit, in rescuing the Nation from the Tyranny of Favourites, and the Oppression of bad Governors, and being therefore confident of their Favour, and considering the Obscurity of *Edmund Mortimer*, ventur'd upon the Crown.

King *Henry*, by the Management mentioned before in the Life of King *Richard*, having gotten into Possession of the Crown, the first Step he took was to summon a Parliament. And whereas a Parliament had been call'd by King *Richard*, he immediately call'd one in his own Name, which however consisted of the same Members that King *Richard* had summoned. This Parliament met on the 6<sup>th</sup> of *October*, in which King *Henry* being seated on a Royal Throne in *Westminster Hall*, *Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, made an Oration, declaring the Cause of their coming together; then he proceeded to shew, that the Kingdom of *England*, the most honourable and abounding with Riches, had been long govern'd by Children, and the Counsels of young Persons, so that it was reduc'd to a State of Desolation, highly to be lamented; but the Goodness of God had sent a knowing and discreet Man for its Governor, who would by the Assistance of Heaven be rul'd by the Antients and Sages of his Kingdom. Then he largely insisted upon the Excellencies of the *English* Empire, that no Kingdom in the World could support itself, without the Assistance of others, so compleatly as this. And then shew'd that in the Government of every Kingdom, three Things were in a special Manner requir'd, Justice, Observation of Laws, and Liberty, which Things it was the King's Will, by the Help of God to see perform'd. He farther declar'd, that it was the King's Will

The Archbishop's Speech to the Parliament.

1399. Will that the Church should enjoy all her Liberties; that the Laws should be strictly observ'd, and that both the Nobility and Commonalty should enjoy their Liberties and Franchises, according to the Grants made by his Predecessors: And that he was resolv'd to do equal Justice to all I by the Grace and Help of God. After this the rar nient was prorog'd till the 14<sup>th</sup> of October the Day of his Coronation.

He supplied all Cers of the Court, which were vacant, with such ones as were most faithful and deserving, viz. he made the I of Northumberland, high Constable, the I of Westmorland, Earl Marshal; Sir John Nor Lord Treasurer, Sir John Shury Chancellor, and Sir Richard Clifford Keeper of the Privy Seal, and confirm'd the other Officers of State, who were to assist at his Coronation. On St. Edward's Eve, the King lodg'd in the Tower of London, and there made his three Sons, and other Sons of the Nobility, to the Number of forty six, Knights of the Bath. The next Day in the Morning being the 13<sup>th</sup> of October, he rode through the City to Westminster, attended by the Mayor and Aldermen, and chief Citizens of London, in rich Liveries, and with a costly Equipage, where he was consecrated, anointed, and crown'd by Thomas Arundel Archbishop of Canterbury.

He was anointed with an Oil, which was at that Time thought to have a peculiar Virtue and Sanctity in it, having been given to Henry Duke of Lancaster, his Grand-father by the Mother's side, by a religious Hermit, with this Prediction; *That the Kings who should be anointed with it, should be endued with a Zeal to patronise and defend the Church.* King Richard found this Oil among his Father's Jewels and Treasures, with a Label, signifying the Use of it, and would have been crown'd again, that he might be anointed with it; but the Archbishop, telling him it was unlawful for him to be anointed twice, diverted him from that Purpose. King Henry by the Assistance of the Archbishop, having gotten this Oil from King Richard, when he was in Flint Castle, was the first that was anointed with it.

King Henry's Tide.

King Henry at his Coronation, taking Notice that his Claim by Way of hereditary Right was not justifiable, and that it was mention'd by his Enemies by Way of Ridicule, caus'd himself to be proclaim'd King of

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

363

of *England*, first by Conquest, and then by special Designation by King *Richard*, who at his Resignation of the Crown, gave it to him, then Duke of *Lancaster*, as his adopted Son.

The Parliament being met, according to Appointment, the King ordered them in the first Place, to inspect into the Abuses of the Government, in the Reign of King *Richard*, to regulate all Matters, that had been found to be prejudicial to the Interest of the Publick; to examine into the Case of the condemn'd Lords; and especially to bring the Murtherers of the Duke of *Glocester*, to a condign Punishment. The Parliament readily obey'd the King's Orders, and accordingly recited, and condemn'd the Transactions of the Parliament, in the twenty first of King *Richard II.* in banishing the Duke of *Hereford*, without a reasonable Cause; in condemning the Archbishop without hearing his Defence; in barbarously justifying the Duke of *Glocester's* Murther; in denying the Earl of *Arundel* the Benefit of his Pardons, and putting the whole Power of the Parliament into the Hands of certain Persons, to the Injury of the Nation; and all, and singular the Statutes, and Ordinances of the said Parliament they abrogated, and repeal'd, and utterly made void all the Authority and Power given to any Persons, by any Act or Law of the same; they likewise reviv'd the Statutes of the Parliament held in the eleventh of *Richard II.* by which the Power of the Nation was put into the Hands of the Duke of *Glocester*, Earls of *Arundel* and *Warwick*, and some others, till the King should be of full Age, to take upon him the Government himself. By these Acts, the Attaint of Blood was taken off from the Lords, who either were condemn'd, or had suffered in the said Parliament; and by another Act for that Purpose, the Heirs of the condemn'd Lords were restor'd to their Honours and Estates; and because many Things had by the same Parliament been made Treason, which had not been formerly so esteem'd, and for no other Reason, but that the Crime of the Lords might be made more notorious, and so much to the Prejudice of the King's Subjects in general, that scarce any Man could behave himself cautiously enough to avoid the Penalty of it; it was enacted, That for the future, nothing should be esteem'd



1399. esteem'd or adjudg'd Treason, but what was ordain'd to be Treason by the 25<sup>th</sup> of *Edward III.*

The Duke of  
*Glocester's*  
Murder ex-  
amined into.

The next Thing the Parliament entred upon was the Murder of the Duke of *Glocester*, concerning which Sir *John Baggot*, who was then a Prisoner in the Tower, gave them a particular Information, "That it was by the Advice and Instigation of the Duke of *Anmerle*, that the Lords were apprehended by the King; and that the Duke of *Glocester* was inhumanly murdered at *Calais*; That the Duke of *Norfolk* did keep the Duke of *Glocester* alive three Weeks against the King's Will; but that for Fear of the King's Displeasure, both the said Duke and himself, with several of the King's and Lords Servants, went over to *Calais* and saw him put to Death." The Duke of *Anmerle* denied this Charge and offered to justify his Innocency by Combat. But Sir *John Baggot* not being at Liberty to accept the Challenge, the Lord *Fitz-water*, with twenty other Lords, offered to make it good by their Boon, That he was the very Cause of the Duke of *Glocester's* Death. The Duke of *Surrey* stood up against the Lord *Fitz-water*, and affirming, that what the Duke of *Anmerle* had done against the Duke of *Glocester* was by Constraint and Force, offered to vindicate him by Fight. These Lords upon this flung down their Hoods as Pledges of their Intention, and they were delivered to the Constable and Marshal to be kept.

Those con-  
cerned in the  
Murder of  
the Duke of  
*Glocester* pu-  
nished.

The King having prescribed the Parliament such Measures as were most suitable for his present Condition, they were content to inflict a more moderate Punishment on the Instruments of this barbarous Fact, than it deserved, viz. That the Dukes of *Anmerle*, *Surrey*, and *Exeter*, the Marquiss of *Dorset*, and Earl of *Glocester*, who had been the Accusers of the Duke of *Glocester*, and the other Lords, should be reduced to the same State they were in before the Arrest of the said Duke and Lords, losing not only their present Titles of Honour of Duke, Marquiss and Earl, but also all those Castles, Lordships, Manors, or other Possessions, which had been given them since the last Parliament, and belonged to any of the Persons whom they had impeached, or were held by Gift from the King; and that they should forthwith bring the Char-

ters,

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

365

ters, and Deeds, of the said Lands, Castles, or Manors, into the Chancery to be cancelled; and that it should be utterly unlawful for any of the said Lords, to give Liveries to any Retainers, or keep any Persons about them but necessary Servants; and that it should be high Treason in any of them, to enable, or any Ways assist King *Richard*, to recover his Crown, and disturb King *Henry* in the Possession of it.

Tho' the King and Parliament were satisfied with the Infliction of these Punishments, yet the common People were not so contented, but murmured against the King, Archbishop, and Earl of *Northumberland*, and others, that they were not put to Death as well as the immediate Actors had been, as *John Hall*, who confessed himself to be one, was in the Time of this Session of Parliament hanged, and quartered, and his Head sent to *Calais* to be set upon the Castle: But the King's Authority being pleaded in Justification of this Action, a more moderate Punishment was thought more proper at this Juncture; but that no such Pretextes might be used for the future, a Law was made enacting, That it should be no Excuse hereafter for any Persons doing an unlawful Action, to alledge, that he was forced and constrained by the King; and then a general Pardon was granted to all Persons but the Murderers of the Duke of *Glocester*.

1 Hen. IV.

The People discontented that the Lords were not put to Death.

The Parliament having thus proceeded, as to the Things done in King *Richard*'s Reign, went next to the Consideration of what should be done about his Person; and upon the making of a Motion, how he should be disposed of, so that he might not be a Trouble to the King and Nation for the future, there were hot and long Debates, in the House of Lords, concerning it, and among others, *John Merke*, Bishop of *Carlisle*, having always disliked the former Proceedings in deposing King *Richard*, and setting the Duke of *Lancaster* on the Throne, made a long Speech against both; in many Things vindicating King *Richard*, and charging King *Henry*.

Proceedings against King Richard.

This Speech gave a general Disgust, and the Bishop himself was sent Prisoner to the Abbey of *St. Albans*, and the House enacted, "That King *Richard* having been lawfully deposed from his royal Dignity for his Misgovernment, was by the Clemency of King *Henry* granted his Life; yet for the Security of the King-

The Bishop of Carlisle sent to the Tower.

1399.

King Henry's  
Message to  
the Convoca-  
tion.

" Kingdom should be kept in close Imprisonment as  
" long as he lived, being allowed a princely Attend-  
" dance and Maintenance: But if any Person should  
" attempt his Deliverance, King *Richard* himself should  
" be the first Man that should be put to Death for it.  
King *Henry* having both Lords and Commons so  
zealously on his Side, thought it proper to secure the  
Clergy to his Interest, and to that End, (during this  
Session of Parliament, the Archbishop having convoked  
a Synod in *St. Paul's Church*) he sent the Earls of  
*Northumberland* and *Westmorland*, who declared to the  
Clergy, that they were not sent to them to require  
any Money of them, but to acquaint them with his Ma-  
jesty's Resolution, to confirm all their Privileges and  
Immunities, and to join with them as they should de-  
fire him, in the Punishment of all Hereticks, and Op-  
posers of the established Religion: For all which, he  
only craved their Supplications to God, for the Safety  
of him and his Posterity, and the Prosperity of the  
Kingdom; which all these presently, solemnly, and  
religiously promised.

The Parlia-  
ment pro-  
vide for the  
King's Secu-  
rity.

The Houses having thus secured the King and Na-  
tion against King *Richard*, and the bad Effects of the  
Government, proceeded to provide as effectually as  
they could for the future Safety, Greatness, and Con-  
tinuance of King *Henry*, his Friends and Children;  
and for that End made several Statutes, viz. " That  
" no Person, who had been assisting to King *Henry*,  
" either in subduing King *Richard* and his Adherents,  
" or in raising King *Henry* to the royal Dignity, should  
" be hereafter impeached for Rebellion and Treason.  
And whereas King *Richard* had procured a Bull of the  
Pope for the more certain Observation of some Sta-  
tutes made by him and his Parliament, as tho' they  
were not sufficient Power in them to enforce Obedi-  
ence without the Pope's Concurrence: This was  
look'd upon by the Parliament, as a Derogation to the  
regal Dignity of *England*, and accordingly they enact-  
ed, " That the Crown of the Realm of *England*, and  
" the Jurisdiction belonging to the same, as also the  
" whole Realm is still, and at all Times lately pass'd,  
" hath been at such Liberty, and enjoyed such an in-  
" dependent and absolute Prerogative, that neither the  
" Pope, nor any other Prince, or Potentate, who is  
" out of the Kingdom, ought, or may intrude himself  
" or

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

367

or intermeddle with the Rule and Government of the same;" and so secured the full Power of the Royal Dignity to King *Henry*: And that not only he himself, but his Posterity after him, might enjoy it, an Act of Settlement was made to intail the Crown up-

King *Henry*, and the Heirs of his Body lawfully gotten, viz. "That from and after the Decease of King *Henry*, his eldest Son *Henry*, lately created by his Father, Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *Cornwal*, and Earl of *Chester*, should succeed him in the Crown and Government of the Nation, and his Heirs after him: But for want of such Heirs it should descend and come unto his three younger Brothers, *Thomas*, *John* and *Humphrey*, in Order, in case the Heirs of any, or all of them did not survive them.

King *Henry* attending this Parliament for his Establishment, did not much regard how other Affairs went, that was settled, knowing, that if the Parliament stood by him, all other Oppositions would be easily overcome, tho' he found the *English* Dominions, both home and abroad, in much Disorder; for the *Scots* knowing, that while the Parliament was sitting, those Lords, who were the Guardians of the Northern Parts could not be absent from it, in this Juncture, invaded those Countries; and the Inhabitants of them being so sorely afflicted with the Pestilence, that few Men of Estates or Interest were left in them, therefore they had an Opportunity of doing much Mischief, and having taken the Castle of *Wark* in *Northumberland*, they demolished it.

The People of *Aquitain* were much discontented, and ready to desert the *English*, who had rebelled against King *Richard*; the King of *France* was much incensed at the *English*, for their Severity against his Son *Law*, King *Richard*; and therefore was not a little eased to see the *Aquitani*ans so much disturbed at a Change in *England*; and endeavouring to make their Discontents turn to his Advantage, sent the Duke of *Bourbon* to solicit them to revolt, which they had been induced to do, had they not been over-persuaded by Sir *Robert Knolles*, the *English* Governour there, and some other Men of Note, who told them, that it was madness to yield their Necks to the insupportable Burden of *French* Tyranny, out of mere Fears and Jealousies of a bad Consequence of the Revolution in  
Eng-

1155. *England.* King *Henry*, who was a crafty and watchful Prince, was not insensible of all these Inconveniencies, and with a wonderful Dexterity, applied such suitable Remedies to them all, as soon dispelled the Dangers which threatened him on all Sides. His own Subjects he won by Kindness, taking the Dukes of *Normerle* and *Exeter* into particular Favour, and special Trust about his Person. The *Scots* he contemned, because they appeared to be rather Robbers than Enemies. The neighbouring Princes he endeavoured to satisfy by sending Ambassadors to them, fully instructed with all Arguments that would either justify, or render his assuming the royal Dignity plausible; and had such Success with all the Princes, who were unconcerned, that they seem'd to approve what he had done: But the King of *France*, being instigated to it by many of his Nobles, and principally by the Earl of *St Paul*, who had married King *Richard's* half Sister, resolved to make War upon *England*, to restore his Son in Law, King *Richard*. King *Henry* appeased the People of *Guyenne* and *Aquitain*, by sending over to them the Earl of *Warwick*, a Person faithful to his Interest, with a Body of Men; who behaved himself so prudently towards the wavering People, persuading the better Sort by good Arguments and fair Promises to continue in Subjection, and terrifying the meaner Sort with Threats and Arms, that in a short Time he brought those Provinces to swear Fealty to the King, and yield as willing Obedience to him, as to any of the former Kings of *England*; and to secure their Allegiance, he planted some Garisons among them. King *Richard*, who had been committed Prisoner to the Tower of *London*, during this Session of Parliament, was removed, to his Castle of *Leeds* in *Kent*, and a While after to *Pontefract* Castle in *Yorkshire*.

King *Henry*  
keeps his  
Christmas at  
*Windsor*.

Things being thus settled, the King kept his Christmas at *Windsor*, with Feasting and Sports, after the usual Manner, thinking himself secure from all Dangers within his own Dominions; and having Time enough to prepare against his only open Enemy, the King of *France*. But this sudden Settlement of Affairs, after so great a Change, proved to be weak: For tho' the Nation in general did like and approve of King *Henry*, yet there were Malecontents, who either out of a Principle of Loyalty, or Pity to King *Richard*, or out of Dis-

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

369

Discontent for their own Sufferings and Losses, were industriously bent upon overthrowing King Henry's Government. Hen. IV.

The first Attempt against King Henry was begun while he was giving up himself to the Divertisements of Christmas; and it was contriv'd to be manag'd in a Sport usual at that Time, call'd *Mumming* or *Justing*, in the Manner following. The Abbot of *Westminster*, who being a much better Politician than Divine, had upon that Account been in great Favour with King Richard, was upon his Master's being depos'd much troubled for the Loss of the Grandeur and Honours that he had enjoyed under him; and being also in great Fears of losing what he still enjoyed; because he had often heard King Henry say, when he was a Subject, *that the Revenues of the Church were too great, and the Estates of the Noblemen in England too little*; he thence drew this Conclusion, that he being now King, in Order to ingratiate himself with the Laity, and to strengthen his Interest with the great Men of the Nation, would certainly take away the Revenues of the Abbies, to enrich his Nobles. The Abbot therefore, to prevent this Mischief to the Church and himself, invited several of the Nobility and Gentry, whom he knew to be disaffected to the present Government to a Feast in his Monastery, viz. the Lords who had lately been degraded by Parliament, the Earl of *Rutland*, the late Duke of *Anmerle*, the Earls of *Huntington* and *Kent*, the Dukes of *Exeter* and *Surrey*, the Earl of *Salisbury*, *Hugh Lord Spencer* late Earl of *Glocester*, the Bishop of *Carlisle*, Sir *Thomas Blunt*, Sir *Bennet Celey*, Sir *Ralph Lumley*, Sir *Bennet Brochas* and one *Magdalen* a Priest, one of King Richard's Chaplains; and after Dinner, withdrawing with them into a Chamber, he propounded to them the Restitution of King Richard. The Earl of *Holland*, who was half Brother to King Richard, whose Mind was full of Revenge against King Henry for his late Disgrace, as well as desirous to restore King Richard, readily embraced the Proposal, telling the Company very pressingly, *that they were in Conscience obliged to endeavour to set their lawful King on his Throne again, and depose the Usurper, tho' with the Loss of their Lives; that they had no Reason to think it an unlawful Fact, since the Laws and Examples of all civiliz'd Nations, did not barely permit this Action, but*

1400. rewarded and honoured the Actors, as the greatest Benefactors to a Commonwealth; and he prevailed upon them so far, that they all promised their utmost Assistance to destroy and murder King Henry, and entered into a secret Indenture, to bind themselves each to other to be faithful and diligent, swearing to keep their Design secret, and attend carefully upon the Execution of it.

The Discovery of it.

The Manner of bringing about what they had contriv'd, was this: The Earls of *Huntington* and *Sahbury* appointed to celebrate solemn Jests with twenty Men on a Side at *Oxford*, under a Pretence of diverting the King; and the Earl of *Huntington* went to him, to desire his Presence, and that he would be Judge if any Controversy should arise in their Exercise; the King suspecting no ill Design, promised that he would be there at the Time appointed, and the Earls made such Preparations as if they had been in Earnest; having before resolved that when the King was intent upon the Sport, a Party of Men, who were to be placed conveniently for the Design, should fall upon him and kill him. The Plot was carried on smoothly and unsuspectedly, till the Time drew near, and the Lords having gotten all Things in Readiness, were preparing to set out for *Oxford*. The Earl of *Rusland*, the late Duke of *Armerle*, being on his Way to *Oxford*, left his direct Way to make a Visit to his Father the Duke of *York*. The Earl had brought with him the Counter-Part of the Indenture, in which he was bound to the other Conspirators; and having put it into his Bosom, it was espied by his Father, as they sat at Table, who immediately asked him, what Writing it was, and what was the Purport of it? The Earl being conscious to himself, and knowing how unwelcome such an Enterprize would be to his Father, told him in a very submissive Manner, that it was nothing that concern'd him, and humbly beg'd that he might be excus'd. But the Duke taking Notice of his Son's Surprise and Backwardness to shew him the Writing, was the more eager to know the Contents of it, and swearing by *St. George*, that he would see it, flew upon his Son, and took it from him by Force. The Duke having read it, fell into a great Passion with his Son, charging him not only with Treason against the King, but the most ungrateful Perfidy to himself, who in being bound for his Allegiance in the last Parliament, was involved in the same Destruction.

tion with him, telling him, *that since he had so lit- 1 Hen. IV.*  
*Regard to the Safety of a Father, that had been so*  
*der of his Preservation, as to lay his Life as a Pledge*  
*it, he would take Care to secure his own Life, tho'*  
*by the Hazard of his;* and immediately ordered his  
 rses to be saddled to go to *Windsor*, and discover the  
 ole Matter to the King.

The Earl of *Rutland* being terrified with his present  
 nger, and having his Father for his Accuser, was  
 great Perplexity what to do; and seeing nothing but  
 voidable Ruin would attend the Prosecution of their

*The Conspi-  
 racy betray'd  
 by the Earl  
 of Rutland.*

sign, resolv'd to become the first Betrayer of the  
 t himself, and therefore taking Horse as soon as his  
 ther was gone, rode another Way, and got to *Windsor*  
 before his Father. The Earl being come to the  
 tle, saying he had earnest Business with the King,  
 s admitted in, and having caus'd the Gates to be  
 k'd, he took the Keys with him. Being come into  
 King's Presence, he kneel'd down, and with a de-  
 ted Countenance and trembling Voice beg'd his Ma-  
 y's Mercy and Pardon. The King admiring at his  
 ition, ask'd him, *for what Offence?* Upon which he  
 e him a full Account of the Conspiracy and Con-  
 ators, with the Manner it was design'd to be put in  
 ecution. The King entertain'd the Discovery kind-  
 and told the Earl, *that if his Relation were true, he*  
*ould pardon him, but if he sought to impose upon him,*  
*ould be at his own Peril.* These Things were hard-  
 pass'd between the King and Earl, before the Duke  
*York* came, who gave a sufficient Confirmation of

Truth of the intended Treason and Plot against his  
 e, by delivering the Indenture to the King. The  
 ng having made some Reflections upon the Baseness  
 Ingratitude of his Enemies, whom he had spared,  
 rrary to the Desire of the People; he began to con-  
 : for his own Safety, and for that End wrote Letters  
 the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland* to  
 e what Forces they could with all Speed, and come  
 him to *London*, whither, lest his Enemies should sur-  
 le him at *Windsor*, he posted with all Speed; and  
 ing acquainted the Mayor with his Danger, he pro-  
 ed a Force in the City for his Defence, resolving to  
 le there, till he saw what Course his Enemies would  
 e against him.



1400.  
The Lords  
carried on  
the Rebellion  
on after Discovery.

In the mean Time the Lords and other Conspirators were arriv'd at *Oxford*, where they waited the Coming of the Earl of *Rusland*; but hearing nothing of or the King's Coming, they readily guess'd the King was betray'd; and considering that they having been lately pardoned, could not hope for Mercy at which they had abused so grossly, therefore came to Resolution to attempt to effect that by open Arms which they had design'd to do more privately: And they might make their Party as great as possible, clothed *Magdalen* the Priest, who had been one of *Richard*'s Chaplains, and did much resemble his Master in Person, in royal Robes, and gave it out, that *Richard* had made his Escape from *Pontfract* Castle and was come among them to recover his Right. Knowing that the King of *France* would be glad of an Opportunity of restoring his Son-in-law King *Richard*, they sent to him for his Assistance, which though he could not have presently, yet it might be of Advantage to them in the Spring of the Year. In the mean Time they sent out their Emissaries to get what Assistance they could to restore King *Richard*; and the People generally pitying the hard Fate of the Captive King, were so wrought upon by their Insinuations, that in a few Days they had gotten together an Army of 40000 well arm'd; and in the first Place they march'd towards *Windsor*, to surprise King *Henry*, hoping he could effect that, to bring Matters to a speedy Conclusion; but the King had gone thence to *London* the Night before, and so that Project miscarried. Met with this Disappointment, some advised to march to *London*, and fall upon the King, while the City was resolv'd what to do, and unready to make Resistance; but the most Part, who were more timorous and cautious, thought it was best to set King *Richard* at Liberty first; for if it were discover'd that he was in Prison, all their Plot would be unravell'd. This Advice they follow'd, and marching back to *Colchester* went to *Sunnings* near *Reading*, where Queen *Isabella*'s Palace was, and told her that King *Richard* was rescued from his Imprisonment in *Pontfract* Castle, and was at the Head of an Army of an hundred thousand Men. The Queen was so overjoy'd at this News, she immediately defac'd King *Henry*'s Arms, and took off his Badge from her Servants, who were continu-

to wear it, and then went along with the Lords to <sup>Hen. IV.</sup> meet King *Richard*; exhorting the People as she pass'd along, to take Arms, and vindicate their injur'd King, who was, is, and should be their lawful Sovereign.

When they were come to *Cirencester*, they encamp'd their Army in the Fields; but the Lords took up their Quarters in the Town, the Earl of *Kent*, the late Duke of *Surrey*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* in one Inn; and the Earl of *Huntington* late Duke of *Exeter*, and the Lord *Spencer* late Duke of *Glocester*, in another. The Bailiff of *Cirencester* being a fast Friend to King *Henry*, observing the ill Conduct of that rebellious Rout, and considering that if the Heads of the Faction could be secur'd, the Multitude would soon dissolve of themselves, he therefore getting together about eighty Archers, and such other Arms as the Time would permit, beset the Inns which were weak and without Guards, saving a small Attendance of Servants; and tho' the Duke of *Exeter* and Earl of *Salisbury*, with their Servants, made as good a Defence as the Place and their Company would permit, yet they were all taken and carried Prisoners to the Abbey, except the Duke of *Exeter* and Sir *John Shelley*. The Lords Servants and Retainers us'd all Means possible to further their Masters Escape, setting the Town on Fire in several Places, hoping that they might make their Escape while the Townsmen were busy in saving their Houses and Goods: Others fled to the Army to bring them to rescue their Captains and Leaders; but all prov'd in vain: For the Townsmen were so enrag'd at their setting their Houses on Fire, that they neglected them, and bringing forth the Lords, whom they thought to be the Authors of this mischievous Action, they beheaded the Duke of *Surrey* and Earl of *Salisbury* in the Market-Place. And the Army seeing the Fires in the Town, and thinking that King *Henry*, who was in Pursuit of them, with a good Army, had entred the Town, they fled every Man to save himself.

King *Henry*, who was marching down with his Army, with Intention to stop the Progress of the Rebels; being come to *Oxford*, receiv'd the News of the Service the Men of *Cirencester* had done him, and that the Rebels were dispersed; and that Sir *Bennet Shelley*, Sir *Bernard Brochas*, Sir *Thomas Blunt*, and twenty eight Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen more; who were the chief Leaders of the Rebels, were brought thither under

The Rebels routed at *Cirencester*.

Several of the Rebels executed.

1400.

a strong Guard, to be dispos'd of at his Pleasure: He caused them to be executed immediately at Oxford. Several others of the Lords, and those who were chief in the Revolt, were fled, as the Duke of Exeter, and Sir John Shelley, who making their Escape into Essex, attempted several Times to get over into France, but being driven back by contrary Winds, were at last apprehended at Pristewall, and being carried to Plester, were executed in the very Place where the Duke had before arrested the Duke of Gloucester. The Earl of Gloucester fled towards Wales, but was taken and beheaded at Bridgford. Magdalen the Priest, the counterfeit Richard, with one Fereby, another of King Richard's Chaplains, were seiz'd in their Flight to Scotland, and sent up to London where they were hang'd and quarter'd. The Heads and Quarters of many of the Conspirators were set upon London-Bridge, and were likewise sent into other Parts of the Nation to be set up for a Terror against such Attempts for the future; which, tho' it was a just Punishment, yet it was thought by many to savour too much of Cruelty, and they spared not to say, that in a short Time they should wish they still had King Richard for their Governor; the Faults which proceeded from his Remissness and Mildness being more tolerable than the Cruelty of their new King. The Abbot of Westminster, who had been the Author of this Rebellion, fell from his Monastery, and took the Disappointment so to Heart, that he fell suddenly into an Apoplexy of which he died shortly after. And the Bishop of Carlisle who had been condemn'd for his Rebellion, prevented his Execution by dying of Grief and Trouble in Prison.

King Richard  
was murder-  
ed.

Altho' most of King Richard's best Friends were thus taken off by this first Attempt, yet so long as his Cause remain'd, King Richard being alive, King Henry thought he could never promise himself any Security, but that upon every slight Discontent, the Malecontents would make Use of the plausible Pretence of restoring King Richard, to revenge themselves and disturb the Quiet, (for notwithstanding the Rebellion was now suppress'd, yet the Body of the Rebels still remain'd, waiting only Heads to lead them;) and that as long as King Richard was alive, whose Right was confirm'd by twenty two Years Possession, he should be look'd upon but as an Usurper: These Arguments grounded upon strong Fears and Presumptions made him first think Richard's Death necessary, and afterwards put him upon Resolutions

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

375

ons to destroy him. Historians differ very much in the Manner of King *Richard's* Death; tho' most of them agree, it was by King *Henry's* Means. Some say *Richard* voluntarily starv'd himself to Death; for discontent at the ill Success of the late Rebellion; but this seems very improbable. Others who impute King *Richard's* Death to King *Henry's* Order or Encouragement, do nevertheless differ in the Method of doing it. Some write, that he was by King *Henry's* Order kept fifteen Days together without Food, and so with the Help of Cold was starv'd to Death. Others relate, that he was daily serv'd with Plenty of Dishes fit for a King's Table, as had been ordered by Parliament, but was not permitted to taste of any of them, and so died with Hunger. But the most follow the Relation of an Author of those Times, who seems to have had very good Intelligence of the Manner of his Death, who thus relates it; That King *Henry* one Day sitting at Table very sad and melancholy, burst out into these expressions, *How miserable is my Condition, who live in continual Fears and Dangers from but one Cause, and have no Man so much my Friend as to free me from them!* Sir *Pierce de Exton* being present, and hearing these Words, easily guess'd what the King meant; and taking that it would be acceptable to the King, to undertake to execute his Desire without an express Command from him, immediately went accompanied by eight Ruffians to *Pontfract* Castle to execute his bloody Design. When he was arrived there, he presently ordered the Gentleman who was King *Richard's* Master to neglect his Service, and let him eat what he pleas'd; because he should not eat long. When his Dinner was serv'd in, the Taster omitted his Duty; whereupon King *Richard* demanded the Reason of it; the Taster replied, that Sir *Pierce de Exton*, who was sent by the King, had forbid him. King *Richard* being enrag'd at this Answer, catch'd up the carving Knife, and striking the Taster with it, said, *thou wilt take Harry of Lancaster, and thee together.* As soon as the King had spoken these Words, in came Sir *Pierre* and his eight Attendants armed. The Roughness of their Entrance plainly discover'd their Design; however King *Richard* was so far from being daunted by their Presence, that he wrested a Pole-Ax out of one of their Hands, and stood upon his Defence. Sir *Pierre*

1400.

and his Russians pursued their Design, and assaulted the King; but he defended himself so well, that he kill'd four of them before they could master him: But at last Sir *Pierce* getting behind him, struck him a Blow on the Head, and fell'd him, and so he died. When the News of King *Richard's* Death was brought to King *Henry*, (however it might inwardly please him, yet) he receiv'd it openly with no small Tokens of Sorrow for his untimely Fate, and shew'd a great Disgust against the Instruments of it; so that Sir *Pierce Exton*, who expected a great Reward for this Piece of Service, was forc'd to fly to escape the Punishment due to his Crime, (which King *Henry* for his own Honour seem'd jealous to execute) and died in Discontent and Horror of Conscience.

The Interment of King *Richard*.

King *Henry* order'd King *Richard's* Body to be embalm'd and wrap'd in Sear-Cloths, and cover'd with Lead, all but the Face, and to be set in the Minister at *Pontfract* several Days, to be seen of all Persons, who, either out of Curiosity, or Pity, had a Mind to behold him. From thence it was remov'd to *London*, and was shew'd to all Spectators in view of the principal Towns thro' which it was carried. When the Corps arrived at *London*, it was carried thro' the City bare-tac'd, and placed in *St. Paul's Church*, three Days, open to all Beholders; during which Time, solemn Obsequies were held, both in that Cathedral, and at *Westminster*, King *Henry* himself and all the Magistrates and chief Men of the City being present at them. These Ceremonies being perform'd according to the Religion of those Times, the King commanded his Corps to be carried down to *Langley-Abbey* in *Buckinghamshire*, and to be there interr'd in the Church of the *Friars-Precursors*. This was perform'd by the Bishop of *Chester*, and the Abbots of *Waltham* and *St. Albans*; but none either of the Nobility, or Commonalty, were allowed to attend it, nor any Dinner or other Ceremony us'd at it, as was the Custom of those Times. But King *Henry V.* afterwards ordered his Body to be brought back again, and magnificently entomb'd at *Westminster*, by the Body of his Queen *Anne*, endeavouring by this pious Deed to expiate the Injustice and Cruelty done by his Father to him.

Several great Persons die.

Much about the Time of the Death of King *Richard*, the Duchess of *Gloucester* died of Grief for the Loss of

of her eldest Son *Humphrey*, who died of the Pestilence at *Chester*. And *Thomas Mowbrey* Duke of *Norfolk*, who had been banish'd for his Life for his accusing the King while he was Duke of *Hereford*, died in his Exile at *Venice*; and *John* Duke of *Bretagne* died in *France*, leaving behind him a Widow *Joanna*, who was not long after married to King *Henry*. Also *Edmund* Duke of *York*, died about this Time, leaving behind him two Sons, the Earl of *Rutland*, and *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, who marrying *Anna* the Heiress of *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, and *Philippa*, the only Child surviving of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, became afterwards a Competitor for the Crown of *England*.

While these Matters were transacting in *England*, the King of *France* was very active and busy in gathering such an Army as might be able to revenge the Injury done to his Son-in-law King *Richard*; and by the Assistance of his Nobles, who readily concurr'd with him, had got all Things necessary for the Expedition ready against the Spring, and had drawn down a mighty Army into *Picardy*, intending to sail from thence into *England*; but before the Forces were embarked, News was brought to the Army of King *Richard's* Death; upon this, the King and chief Men engag'd in that Enterprize, thought, that since it was impossible to restore him, it was the best Way to desist from the intended Invasion. It was thereupon resolved, that a solemn Embassage should be sent over to *Henry*, to demand that Queen *Isabel* should be sent over to her Father into *France*, with her Dower; and an Embassage was sent accordingly; but King *Henry* gave them no other Answer but this, that he would shortly send his Commissioners to *Calais*, to treat and conclude with their Master about that and several other Affairs of Importance to both Realms, and then would do what was just and reasonable.

This Summer the *Welsh* being grown weary of Subjection to the *English*, thinking it a fit Opportunity to revolt, when Subjection was come to be a disputable Duty, set up *Owen Glendour* to be their Prince and Captain, and being resolved to recover their ancient Liberties, and free themselves from the *English* Yoke, they join'd in a firm League with him. This *Owen* was a Man of no great Parentage nor Estate; but being a Gentleman of great Courage, and Boldness, and having been

Hen. IV.

The King of France ready to invade England desists from it upon the News of King Richard's Death.

The Welsh rebel under Owen Glendour.

1450. been a Servant to King *Richard* in *Flint-Castle*, was very forward to oppose King *Henry*, partly to vindicate his Master, and partly his own private Injuries. And therefore having had a Dispute about a Common which lay between his Estate and the Estate of *Reginald Lord Gray of Ruthen*, which had been enjoy'd by *Owen* in King *Richard's* Days, but had since been adjudged by Law to the Lord *Gray*, he took Occasion from the rebellious Humour of his Counteymen to invade the Lord *Gray's* Estate, with a Body of Men, burning down his Houses and Woods, trampling down his Corn, and barbarously murdering his Servants and Tenants. The Lord *Gray*, with what Assistance he could get, stood in his own Defence; but being overpower'd by *Owen Glendour's* Party, was taken Prisoner. *Owen* thinking by that Means to raise his Family, treated the Lord *Gray* civilly, and promis'd to set him at Liberty upon Condition he should marry his Daughter: But altho' the Lord *Gray* at first scorn'd the Offer, yet at last considering that he was unable to pay his Ransom, without greater Damage to his Estate, he did marry her to him: But *Owen* dealt deceitfully with him, and kept him Prisoner till his Death. The *Welsh* encourag'd by their Success against the Lord *Gray*, made an Inroad into *Herefordshire*, and having spoil'd and ravag'd the Country, return'd home with much Prey. *Edmund Mortimer Earl of March*, who was at that Time retir'd to his Country-Seat at *Wigmore* in that County, commiserating the Calamities his Country suffer'd, assembled all the Gentry of those Parts, to repress the Insolencies of the *Welsh*, and engaging with them, sustain'd a long and bloody Fight; but at last having lost a thousand Men, was overcome by the *Welsh*, and taken Prisoner. The *Welsh* by this Victory grew very insolent, and not only abus'd the Bodies of the slain, but loaded the Earl of *March* with Chains, and imprisoned him in a nasty Dungeon, and ravag'd all the Countreies on the West of the River *Severn*, destroying and burning the Towns and Villages with the utmost Barbarity. King *Henry* was not ignorant of these Mischiefs, but would not concern himself in them; and tho' he was earnestly solicited by the Friends of the Earl of *March* to interpose in his Behalf, and free him from his Captivity, yet he would give no Ear to their Solicitations, knowing that the Earl's Title to the Crown

The Earl of  
March taken  
Prisoner by  
the Welsh.

Crown and his Liberty might be prejudicial to him'; <sup>2 Hen. IV</sup> but told them, *the Earl had not engaged in his Quarrel, and therefore he was under no Obligation to redeem him.*

While Matters were thus manag'd by the *Welsh*, the *Scots* busily molested *England*, both by Sea and Land, tho' they got no great Advantage by it; for the *English* did the *Scots* as much Damage in the Isles of *Orkney*, as they had done the *English* in *Northumberland*; for they took the greatest Part of the *Scotch* Fleet which was sent out under the Command of Sir *Robert Logan* to surprise the *English* Fishermen. However the Peace was not esteem'd to be actually broken, till *Robert* King of *Scots* took Occasion to proclaim open War against King *Henry* upon the Account following.

*George Dunbar*, Earl of the Marches of *Scotland*, having betroth'd his Daughter to Prince *David* the eldest Son of the King of *Scotland*, had paid a great Sum of Money to the King in Consideration of that Marriage, which was shortly to be celebrated; but was defeated in his Agreement by the Earl of *Douglass*, who envying the Dignity of the Earl of *March's* Family, prevail'd with the King to marry his Son Prince *David* to his Daughter *Maribel*. The Earl of *March* upon this, demanded the Restitution of his Money of the King of *Scotland*, but he either not able, or not willing, put him off with delusory Answers and Delays. Upon this the Earl sends Messengers to King *Henry*, requesting a Permission for himself and Family to come into his Dominions, complaining very grievously of the Injury done him by his own King, intending by the Assistance of the *English*, to revenge his Wrongs, and recover his Losses. King *Henry* thinking, that if there should happen to be War between the two Nations, the Earl might be of Service to him, gave him Liberty to come into his Kingdom. Upon the first Notice of this Permission, the Earl of *March* immediately fled out of *Scotland* with his Family, to the Earl of *Northumberland*, who gave him a very kind Reception, and by his Advice and Assistance, the Earl made many Incursions into *Scotland*, burning and plundering their Towns, and returning with much Booty.

The King of *Scots* hearing, that the Earl of *March* was fled into *England*, and turned his open Enemy, deprived him of his Honour, seized upon all his Possessions,



1400.  
The King of  
Scotts Mes-  
sage to King  
Henry, and  
his Answer.

ons and Goods in Scotland, and openly proclaimed him a Traytor, and sent Messengers to King Henry, to tell him, *That he must either deliver up to him the Earl of March, or banish him his Dominions, or else not expect that the Truce between the two Nations should last long.* King Henry returned this Answer; *That he was desirous of the Continuance of the Peace, but not fearful of the War, which he would rather run the Hazard of, than falsify his Honour and Promise to the Earl of March, and his Company, who had come into his Nation by Permission and Leave.* This Answer so enraged the King of Scots, that he proclaimed War against the King of England; and so both the Kings made Preparations for it against the next Spring.

The Greek  
Emperor  
comes into  
England.

About this Time Immanuel Paleologus, the Grecian Emperor, came into England to beg King Henry's Assistance, because his Dominions were in great Danger of being lost by the Incursions of the Turks, under Bajazet the sixth, their Emperor. The King met him at Black-beath, and with great Honour and Respect, conducted him through the City of London, and entertained him magnificently, during the Time of his stay in England, and dismissed him with rich Gifts and Promises of Assistance, when he should have Peace settled among his own Subjects.

Second Par-  
liament, and  
its Acts.

The Parliament met at Westminster the twenty first of January, and made diverse Acts for the Benefit both of Church and State: But that which was then thought to be the best Act for the Support of the Church, was the Statute against the Lollards. The Occasion of this Act was this: One William Sawter, a Priest, and a Follower of the Doctrines of Wickliff, having formerly recanted his Opinions before the Bishop of Norwich, and afterwards repented of his Recantation, grew more zealous; and that he might atone for his Lapse, by an Act of singular Courage and Charity, came into the Parliament House and put up a Petition, that he might be permitted to speak something for the inestimable Benefit of the Nation, designing to propound a general Reformation, both of Doctrine and Discipline, in the Church. The Bishops, who some of them knew him to be a Man of singular Piety and Virtue, yet because he worshiped God after the Way which they called Heresy, opposed his Request, and desired, that he might be turned over to

The Occasion  
of the Sta-  
tute against  
the Lollards.

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

381

Convocation to be examined; which being granted, <sup>2 Hen. IV.</sup> was there accused of holding heterodox Opinions at the Worship of Saints and Angels, Pilgrimages, Tombs and Shrines, and the real Presence of the Body and Blood of Christ in the Sacrament. Many Days were spent in his Examination and Conviction; he stily maintaining his Opinions, the Clergy were pressing with the King to provide a Remedy against so growing an Evil; and he willing to gratify

Clergy, caused it to be enacted, "That none should preach without License, except Persons privileged; That none should preach any Doctrine contrary to the Catholick Faith, or the Determination of the Holy Church; and that none should favour, or abet such Preachers or their Doctrines, nor keep their Books, but deliver them to the Diocesan of the Place, within forty Days after the Proclamation of this Statute: And if any Persons were defamed, or suspected of doing against this Ordinance, then the Ordinary might arrest them, and keep them in Prison, till they were canonically cleared of the Articles laid to their Charge, or abjured them according to the Laws of the Church; and if they were convicted, he might fine them and keep them in Prison as to him should seem fit; and if any being convicted, did refuse to abjure; or after Abjuration did fall into a Relapse, then they were to be left to the secular Court, and the Mayors, Sheriffs, and Bailiffs being present at the passing of the Sentence, were to receive them after Sentence, and they before the People, in a high Place, to be burnt.

So sooner was this Act passed, but the Clergy put Execution upon *William Sawter*, to be a Terror to others; for he having been convicted of Heresy and Schism, the King issued out his Writ, *February* the twenty sixth, for his Execution, which was done accordingly; and so the Act was sealed with Blood.

As soon as the Parliament was broke up, the King, according to his Promise, sent his Ambassadors to *France*, to treat with the *French* about the Restitution of *Queen Isabel*, and other Matters of Importance. Matters that the *English* chiefly insisted on were, that *Queen Isabel* might be given in Marriage to King *Henry*, since the Marriage between her and King *Richard* had never been consummated by actual Knowledge

The Statute  
against the  
Lollards.

*William Sawter*  
executed

A Treaty  
between the  
*English* and  
*French*; and  
*Queen Isabel*  
sent into  
*France*.

1401. ledge; and that the Truce which was made by King Richard for thirty Years, might be continued. The French Embassadors would not treat about the Marriage, because they had no Instructions about it; but they came to an Agreement concerning the Truce, that so much of it as was unexpired, should go on till the thirty Years were out. Queen Isabel was sent to France, and was afterwards married to Charles the eldest Son of the Duke of Orleans.

King Henry goes into Scotland to make War there. King Henry, having gotten together a great Army to invade Scotland, thought it was most adviseable, not to wait for the coming of the Scots, but to fall upon their Country, because by that Means the Miseries of War would fall entirely on the Scots, and both Sides make a Prey of Scotland: Therefore he sent some of his light Troops before, to terrify them that they might not invade England, before he could draw his whole Army thither; so at last entring Scotland with all his Forces, he burnt many of their Towns and Villages, took many of their Castles, and destroy'd the greatest Part of Edinburgh and Leith, sparing nothing but Monasteries and Churches. The Scots being terrified with the Greatness of the King's Army, made no Resistance, but fled before them, so that wherever he came, the Country was in his Power, and at the Mercy of the Soldiers.

King Henry challeng'd by the Duke of Albany. While King Henry remain'd in Scotland, having the Lords Wardens of the Marches with him, the Scots made Inroads into England, and did much Mischief in Cumberland, about Bamborough Castle, but retired, when the People got together to oppose them. In the mean Time, about the End of September, the King besieged the Castle of Maidens in Edinburgh, which was defended by David Duke of Rothsay, and Archibald Earl of Douglass. During this War, the King of Scotland being sick, and unable to govern, Robert Duke of Albany was appointed Regent, who sent a Message to King Henry, desiring him to forbear making an Assault upon the Castle for six Days, and he would give him Battel, and either raise the Siege, or lose his Life. King Henry being a very magnanimous and valiant Prince, who put more Value upon an heroick Action than taking an inconsiderable Fort, receiv'd the Herald with great Civility, rewarded him nobly, giving him a Silk Gown, and Chain of Gold, and sent the Duke Word, that he would

## Reign of King HENRY IV.

343

the Time desired. But it did appear after-  
the Duke had no other Design, but by De-  
the King from Action, till either Want or  
ld oblige him to break up the Siege, it be-  
e Year: For the Duke never kept his Pro-  
d he dare to 'look King Henry in the Face.  
ccording to the Regent's Project; for the  
nly waiting longer than his Appointment,  
proving bad, and Provision growing scan-  
re'd to quit the Siege, and return home  
farther Action. The King, and his Army  
awn, the Scots again haras'd the Borders,  
ommand of Sir Thomas Haliburton, and  
Hebborn, shewing that tho' they had not  
fight, yet they had Malice enough to re-  
elves of their Enemies. And thus the first  
ar between the English and Scots ended.

Hen. IV.



King and his Army were in Scotland, King Henry  
ur and his Party were very active in burn- goes against  
ing and destroying the Counties adjoining the Welsh.  
ing return'd and hearing of the Miseries of  
in those Parts; tho' he was not much con-  
enge the Quarrel of the Earl of March, nor  
ty of his Captivity, because he had been better  
worst Fate had befallen him; march'd his  
l the Welsh, to punish them for their Cruel-  
en Glendour and his Party withdrew, and  
selves to the Deserts, and inaccessible Pla-  
owden Hills, so that the King could not  
g against them, but plunder and waste the  
hich he did severely carrying away a great  
ttel.

ry's Enemies, tho' discourag'd by the ill Some Acci-  
their Plot the last Year, so that they did dents of this  
appear in any open and form'd Action, yet Year.  
to have convey'd a Galthrap into his Bed,  
g three Iron Spikes, very sharp, stood up-  
at if he had chanced to have lyen down up-  
almost impossible for him to have escaped  
liscoversing it before he went into Bed, he  
langer. Tho' great Enquiry was made after  
rs and Layers, yet they could never be found  
this Year, which a little before was at  
s a Quarter, was advanced to sixteen Shil-  
ad been much dearer, if Rye had not im-  
ported

1401. reported by Merchants out of *Spracia*; yet notwithstanding this Judgment of Famine, the Natives were not humbled by it, but great Pride and Vanity in Cloathing were used, Masters and Servants wearing Gowns with Poke-Sleeves down to the Ground. This Year, the Conduit in *Corubill* was built, in a Place, where a Prison for Night Walkers call'd *the Inn* had stood before.

A very terrible blazing Star appear'd about the beginning of *March*, which was afterwards thought to portend the bloody Wars between the *English* and *Scots*, and the Executions done this Year upon the Malecontents to the Government. The latter rais'd diverse Reports, that King *Richard* was alive, and would shortly come with a powerful Army to recover his Right, and industriously dispers'd them thro' the whole Nation, by Books and Libels, in which they aspers'd King *Henry*, as an Usurper and cruel Tyrant, and encourag'd all Persons by Hopes of great Rewards, to assist King *Richard*. The King to deter these Disturbers, declar'd he would be at any Pains or Charge to discover those that were instrumental in promoting these Reports, and would spare none of them. Several Persons were apprehended on this Account and executed, as Sir *Roger Clarendon*, who was said to be the Bastard Son of *Edward* the black Prince; and eight Fryars were hang'd and beheaded for reporting, that King *Richard* was alive. A Priest was hang'd and quarter'd, who had a List of several Persons, who had avouch'd that King *Richard* was alive, and had promis'd him their Assistance: But several Persons who had been imprison'd on that Account, were discharg'd, there being no Proof against them; the Priest himself confessing, that he had only set down their Names by Hear-say, and had never heard any Thing of that Nature from them. *Walter Baldock* Prior of *Laund*, a Monastery in *Leicestershire*, was hang'd for Misprision of Treason, because he had confess'd in his Examination, that he knew some who had been industrious in spreading such treasonable Reports. *Richard Frisby* a Doctor in Divinity was likewise executed, for saying, upon the Report that King *Richard* was alive; *That if he were indeed alive, he would fight to Death in his Quarrel*. These and many others suffer'd for those Reports and Libels; the King sparing none, according as he had threatned.

Libels and Reports against the King, and Authors published.

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

385

*Owen Glendour*, and his *Welsh*-men, began the Summer with fresh Assaults upon the Inhabitants, plundering, burning, and laying waste all wherever they came. Upon this the King assembled a great Army, to reduce *Wales* to its due Obedience. *Owen Glendour* hearing of the mighty Preparations, could not himself seem to retain so much as Hopes of withstanding so great and well-provided an Army; and the *Welsh* were seiz'd with a panick Fear of their approaching Destruction. The King and Nobles went with full Resolution of subduing *Wales* before their Return; but before they could enter upon any Action of Consequence, such foul and tempestuous Weather happened, that the Army suffered much by it, and the King was oblig'd to return without doing any Thing worthy his Reputation. These Storms falling out at a Season of the Year, when they were most unusual, were said to be rais'd by the magical Skill of *Owen Glendour*, who was deem'd to be a Wisard.

3 Hen. IV.  
King Henry's Second Expedition to Wales.

The *Scots* hearing of King *Henry's* Expedition into *Wales*, suppos'd that the Northern Lords who were the Guardians of the Borders, were gone along with him, and that therefore they could not have a fitter Opportunity to invade *England*. Sir *Patrick Hebborn* was chosen their Captain, and with a considerable Army enter'd *Northumberland*, as far as *Newcastle*, carrying off many Spoils and Prisoners. But the Earl of *Northumberland*, who was left behind to watch the Motion of the *Scots*, hearing of these Things, fell upon them with a sufficient Body of Men, at a Town call'd *Nesby*; and after an obstinate Fight put them to the Rout, having slain Sir *Patrick*, and many of the principal Commanders, and common Soldiers. The News of this Battel made the *Scots* very uneasy; and *Archibald Earl of Douglass* resolv'd to take Revenge on the *English*, and to that End procur'd a Commission to invade *England* at his own Charge, and having rais'd an Army of twenty thousand Men, enter'd *England* like an enrag'd Enemy, destroying all before him. The Earl of *Northumberland*, and his Son *Hotspur*, having Notice of the IncurSION of the *Scots*, augmented their Forces in Proportion to their Enemies, and upon *Holy Rood Day* met the *Scots* at *Halidown*, and engag'd them. The Battel was very furious and continu'd long; but the *Scots* being unable to bear the violent Shot of the *English*

The Scots invade England, and are twice routed.

1402.

Archers, were forc'd to give Ground, and were put to flight with an incredible Loss; for there were twenty seven Knights, and ten thousand common Soldiers; and *Mordach* Earl of *Fife*, Earl *Douglas*, the Earls of *Angus*, *Murray*, *Atbol*, and *Monseith*, a great Number of Men, were taken Prisoners.

The Earl of Northumberland makes Incursions into Scotland.

The Earl of *Northumberland*, resolving to pursue Advantage he had gotten over so restless and troublesome an Enemy, invaded *Scotland*, and entering *Dale*, he burnt and destroy'd the whole Country, then laid Siege to the Castle of *Cocklaw*, of which *Thomas Greenlow* was Governor; who being unable to hold out against so great an Army, promis'd to surrender the Castle to the Earl of *Northumberland*, if it were reliev'd within three Months; but before that was expired, the King call'd off the Earl to serve another Enterprize, and so the Castle was preserved.

Particular Accidents.

This Year the Devil is said to have appear'd in *bury Church* in *Essex*, in the Habit of a grey Friar, and behav'd himself so outrageously, that the Inhabitants were very much affrighted: At the same Time a great Tempest arose thereabout, which blew down the Steeple and carried away half the Chancel. The Lady *Blanche*, *Henry's* eldest Daughter, was married to *William* Duke of *Bavaria*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* Barbarus, the Emperor. *Thomas Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, died the 8<sup>th</sup> of April. Also Sir *Lewis Clifford*, who for a considerable Time had inclin'd to the *Lollards*, detected them, and confessing his Error, discover'd all that he knew of them, their Doctrines, and chief Masters.

Third Parliament: its Acts and Taxes.

At *Michaelmas*, a Parliament met at *Westminster*. In this Parliament, the King declaring, that he had in Remembrance the faithful Hearts, and inward Affections, that the Clergy of *England* had born to him, also the great Charges they had sustain'd for his Honour and Profit, since the Time of his Coronation; therefore being desirous to be unto them a good Lord, he caused several Privileges of the Church, and Clergy to be established and enacted. There were several Acts made to settle the Disorders in *Wales*. That the *Welsh* should not pass any judicial Sentence upon an *English*-man, have any publick Assembly to wear Arms, or buy any out of *England*, raise Forts Castles, to bear nor any Office in Church.

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

887

re; and commanding them to put all their walled towns into the Custody of *Englishmen*. The Parliament gave the King a Tenth and a half of the Clergy, and a Fifteenth of the Laity, and some other Subsidies, and particularly recommended to the King's Favour, the *Scotch* Earl of *March*, because he had behav'd himself with so much Fidelity to the *English* Nation; and they were dismiss'd.

King *Henry* having, the Year before, made some Propositions of Marriage to *Joan de Navarre*, the Widow of the Duke of *Bretagne*, which were agreed to, he sent several Persons of Honour into *Bretagne* about Christmas, to conduct her over into *England*; and accordingly she landed safely at *Falmonth* the 7<sup>th</sup> of February. The King having heard of her Arrival, went to meet her at *Winchester*, and there was married to her in *Switbin's* Church, by the Bishop of that See. Thence pass'd with her to *London*, where they were magnificently receiv'd by the Citizens; and she was crown'd at *Westminster* by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, February 26<sup>th</sup>. She had three Sons, but she left them in France, under the Care and Guardianship of that King. Her Coronation was celebrated with great State and magnificence, and there appear'd nothing but Signs of universal Joy, not only at Court, but throughout the Kingdom, for these Nuptials.

The Earl of *St Paul*, who envied King *Henry's* Power, because it was rais'd upon the Ruins of his Interest, rais'd an Army of sixteen or seventeen thousand Men, and made a Descent upon the Isle of *Wight*, and burnt two small Villages. The Inhabitants of that Island, having before suffer'd the like Injuries from the French, and found by Experience that they lov'd Plunder more than fighting, and would seldom hold out against but a faint Resistance, drew up against them to fight them. The *French* seeing the Courage of the People, tho' their Number was sufficient to have conquer'd the Island, withdrew to their Ships, with little Prey, and little Honour. The Earl, that he might make the Expedition seem the more glorious, knighted four of his captains, as he pretended for their Valour and Bravery. But those in his Army of more Penetration repin'd at the Fruitlessnes of the Expedition, well knowing that the Charge of it was far greater than the Gain. About the same Time, the Earl of *Clermont*, Son to

The French  
invade the  
Isle of *Wight*  
and *Gascogne*



1403. the Duke of *Bourbon*, was sent with an Army of the Subjects of King *Henry* in *Gascogne*, and took Castles of *St. Peter*, *St. Mary*, and *Newcastle*, from the *English*; and at the same Time, the Lord *De la Roche* took the Castle of *Carlasfin*; all which were a considerable Loss to the *English*. King *Henry's* Courage would not have patiently suffer'd those Damages, without sharp Revenge, had his Kingdom been at Peace at Home; but before he could get his Preparations for a foreign Expedition, the Rebellion of his Subjects call'd for all his Endeavours to secure himself at Home. The Occasion of it was this.

The Rebellion of the Earl of Northumberland, its Cause and Success.

The Earl of *Northumberland*, in his late Victory over the *Scots*, had taken many considerable Prisons, and King *Henry* not content with the Peace, that his Victories had brought to his Dominions, was desirous to share in the Profit of them, and to that end requir'd of the Earl all the Lords, whose Ransom would raise great Sums. The Earl alledg'd, "That it was not just, that they who had undergone the Danger of a Battel, should have all the Advantages of Prisoners; so it had been the Custom of the Kings of *England*, to allow the Lords of the North, all the Advantages of the *Scots Wars*, to encourage them in sending their Dominions, and make up the Damage of the continual Depredations of that faithless People." The King was very angry at this Denial, and did not take from him the Prisoners he demanded, but his Resentment so high, as not to suffer the said Earl to come into his Presence. The Earl who had been instrumental to raise King *Henry* to the Throne, resented this Severity, not only as great Injustice, but as great Ingratitude; and therefore resolv'd to revenge the Wrong on the King himself, thinking, that as he had set him up, so he had Power enough to pull him down. The Earl was indeed in very great Power in the Kingdom, and in his Country commanded as a petty King. He was also nearly related to *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *Gloucester*, having married his Aunt *Eleanor*; and *Mortimer* being Heir to the Crown, had no small Interest in the Succession; and upon that Account, he might very well pretend some Obligation to restore him to his Right, at least to his Liberty. These two Interests he thought sufficient to effect his Design, especially the Earl of *March* being upon fair Terms with

Gl

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

389

*Glendour*, it would be no difficult Matter to unite the <sup>4 Hen. IV.</sup> *Welsh* with him, in dethroning King *Henry*. The Train of the Rebellion being thus laid, the Earl by the Advice of his Brother *Thomas Piercy* Earl of *Worcester*, goes to the King, and demands the Redemption of his Kinsman the Earl of *March*, who had long lain in miserable Imprisonment among the King's Enemies. The King answer'd, "*That he had no Reason to redeem, or relieve the Earl of March, nor would he; because he was not taken for his Cause, nor in his Service, but had suffered himself to fall into the Hands of Owen Glendour, and the Welsh, being not willing to resist them.*" The Earl having receiv'd this Answer, pretended to be angry, and blaz'd abroad the Cruelty of the King, who would not redeem a Person so nearly related to him: And his Son *Henry Hotspur*, said openly, *Behold the Heir of this Realm is rob'd of his Right, and the Robber will not redeem him with a Part of his own.* Not long after this, there was an Interview of the Earl of *Northumberland*, and his Son, with the Earl of *March*, and *Owen Glendour*, in the House of the Archdeacon of *Bangor*, where they oblig'd themselves mutually and solemnly, by an Indenture tripartite, to depose King *Henry*; and it was farther agreed on, that after his Deposition, "*Glendour* should have *Wales*, and all the Lands beyond the *Severn*, to rule over them as their King, and Supreme Lord; That the Earl of *Northumberland* should govern all the Countries on the North-side of the River *Trent*; and the Earl of *March* should enjoy all the Residue of *England*, in his Right, as Supreme Lord." This Agreement being made, they all employ'd their utmost Interests, to raise an Army sufficient for their Design. The Earl of *Northumberland*, besides those Forces that he rais'd among his Neighbours in the North, procur'd an Augmentation of them out of *Scotland*, partly by setting at Liberty the Captives that he had in his keeping, and partly by promising the *Scots* several Lordships and Signiories in the Parts bordering on their Country, upon which Account they rais'd a considerable Army. Matters being thus prepar'd, they put out a Declaration, "That King *Henry* giving Encouragement to Flatterers and Calumniators, their Enemies had attain'd such an Aversion to them, that they dared not come into his Presence, but by the Mediation of the Bishops: " That

1405.

“ That tho’ he was rais’d to the Throne for the Good  
 “ of the Nation, yet he had play’d the Tyrant, and  
 “ bus’d his Trust, converting the Money given by Par-  
 “ liament for the publick Defence, to his own private  
 “ Interest: Wherefore that they might secure their  
 “ own Persons, and reform the Government, they had  
 “ rais’d such Force, as might be sufficient to reduce  
 “ Things into a better Course, both for themselves  
 “ and the whole Nation.” They also gave out a Re-  
 port, that King *Richard* was yet alive in the Castle of  
*Chester*, ready to join with *Owen Glendour* to recover  
 his Right. Things being thus prepared, they marched  
 to *Shrewsbury*, intending to make that City the Re-  
 dezvous of their Army. These treasonable Con-  
 vances were carried on so secretly, that the King had no  
 Suspicion of them, yet was industrious in raising a  
 powerful Army to reduce the *Welsh*, so that altho’ the  
 Earl of *Northumberland*’s Forces appeared against him  
 unexpectedly, he was in a good Condition to oppose  
 him.

The King’s  
 Mercy to the  
 Rebels.

King *Henry* considering that a civil War would bring  
 great Calamities upon his Subjects, chose to allay the  
 Discontents of the seditious Party, by answering their  
 Declaration: Alledging that he never had denied the  
 Earl of *Northumberland*, the Lord *Piercy* his Son, or  
 any of the Lords of their Party, any Access to him;  
 but allowed them to come into his Presence at any  
 Time, without all Danger or Damage to their Per-  
 sons; and that the Money which had been given by  
 the Parliament, for the Defence of the Nation, was paid  
 to the Earl of *Northumberland* himself for that End,  
 as he could prove by his Receipts; so that their Com-  
 plaints were ill grounded and slanderous. The King  
 would have waited to see the Effect of this Answer;  
 but the Earl of *March* a *Scot*, telling the King that his  
 Enemies would be strengthened by Delays, put the King  
 upon making haste towards them, which indeed proved  
 advantageous to him: For the Earl of *Northumber-  
 land*, being indisposed, was not arrived at *Shrewsbury*,  
 and the Suddenness of the King’s Arrival there, put the  
 Earl’s Army into so great a Consternation, that they  
 were unfit to engage in Battel. The King, tho’ he was  
 ready to have engag’d them, yet was very loth to  
 spill his own Subjects Blood, and therefore sent to of-  
 fer them Pardon, upon Terms as reasonable as they  
 could

d desire. The Lord *Piercy* was inclin'd to accept <sup>4 Hen. IV.</sup> the King's Mercy, and sent his Uncle the Earl of *Westmer* to the King, to represent their Grievances, having obtain'd a Redress, to submit to the King:

The King also condescended so far, as was thought best for him, to heal the Breach. But the Earl of *Westmer*, being a Man that was rather for widening, than mending the Breach, at his Return, represented Things so to the Lord *Piercy* his Nephew, that he being more incensed than he was before, ordered the Trumpet to be blown for the Battel. The King was ready to give him, and the Signs being given on both Sides, *St. George* by the King, and *Esperance Piercy* by the Lord *Piercy*, the Fight began. The *Scots* fell upon the King's Van-guard, with that Resolution and Fury, they forc'd them to give Ground, and had almost come in upon the King's main Body; and being seconded by the *Welsh*, put the King to his last Refuge, which was to call in his Reserve to reinforce his Army, by which Means he recover'd his Ground, and after a Rencounter, got the better of the Lord *Piercy*'s Army. The Lord *Piercy*, and Earl *Douglass*, General of the *Scots*, despairing of Victory, attempted to have surpris'd the King; and so forcing their Way through the King's Party, they got to the King's Standard, which they threw, killing the Standard Bearer, Sir *Walter Blunt*, the Earl of *Stafford*, besides many others who guard it. The Earl of *Dunbar* the *Scot*, perceiving their Design, gave the King timely Warning of his Danger, caused him to retreat from the Standard, and so disappointed them. The King took this Opportunity of faulting his Enemies, in the Absence of their Generals; and crying *St. George*, made so impetuous an Onset upon the Rebels, that he broke their Order, put them to flight, and obtain'd a complete Victory, killing more than thirty six with his own Hand. The Battel lasted three Hours; the King himself was once dismounted, and the Prince fighting in Defence of his Father, was wounded in the Face, yet would not leave the Army, till the Fight was ended, lest he should discourage his Men. The Rebels had two hundred slain, and five thousand Soldiers slain, besides the Lord *Piercy* himself. The King had ten Knights, and seven hundred Soldiers slain, and four thousand wounded.

This Victory was gain'd on the twenty first of

1404. *July*; in Memory of which, the King founded a College on the Place, and called it *Battlefield*. The valiant *Douglas*, the Earl of *Worcester*, the Baron of *Kinderem*, and *Sir Richard Vernon*, were taken Prisoners, and the three last beheaded two Days after the Battle. The Earl of *Worcester's* Head was sent up to *London*, to be set up on *London Bridge*. The King permitted the Body of the Lord *Piercy* to be buried, but afterwards commanded it to be taken up again, and be beheaded and quartered, and disposed of it into several Parts of the Nation. This was the End of one of the bravest Warriors of the Age, who till this Time had ever been victorious. *Douglas*, who had once unhorsed the King, being no Subject to him, was set at Liberty, without Ransom. The Earl of *Northumberland*, who by Reason of his Indisposition, had been kept from joining with his Brother, the Earl of *Worcester*, and his Son the Lord *Piercy*, soon after the Fight set out towards *Shrewsbury*, with a considerable Recruit, to their Assistance; but was met by the Way, by the Earl of *Westmoreland*, and *Sir Robert Waterton*, with a strong Force; upon which, judging neither of them to be his Friends, he retreated to *Warkworth Castle*, and there fortified himself. The King having settled the Countries about *Shrewsbury*, went to *York*, and there sent a Command to the Earl of *Northumberland*, to dismiss his Forces, and come to him upon Assurance of Mercy, which the Earl, seeing no possibility of standing out against the King's Power, accordingly obeyed, going thither only with a small Train, like an humble Petitioner. The King pardoned him as to his Life, but detained him in Prison, till the Ferment of his Troubles was a little over, and afterwards restored him to his Liberty, but took away his Estate, and deprived him of his Honour; yet afterwards gave him good Part of his Estate again, and soon after granted a Pardon to all such Persons as had been engaged in that Rebellion. The King having thus settled the Disgusts of the North, resolved to return towards *North Wales*, to chastise the *Welsh*, but wanting Money to pay his Soldiers, the Archbishop and Clergy supplied him with a Tenth, and the Prince was sent with an Army into *Wales*.

Old Piercy  
buried.

The Prince  
sent into  
Wales.

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

393

This Summer the *Bretagnes* assaulting the *English* <sup>5 Hen. IV.</sup> Coasts, plundered and burnt *Plymouth*, upon which <sup>William Wil-</sup> *Williams de Wilford*, Esq; by the King's Permission, <sup>ford's Ex-</sup> man'd out a Fleet to cruise in the narrow Seas, where <sup>ploits.</sup> he took forty Sail of Merchants Ships laden with an hundred Tun of *Rochel* Wine, and other Commodities, and landing near *Pennarch*, he plundered and burnt the Country for six Miles in Length as far as *St. Matthew's*, which he left in Flames; and at his Return, set forty Sail of Ships on fire, which lay in the Harbour.

This Year died the famous *Jeoffery Chaucer*, a Man of <sup>Sir Jeoffery</sup> Quality, Wit and Learning, the Father of *Thomas Chan- <sup>Chaucer's</sup> *cer*, Esq; Speaker of the House of Commons, in the <sup>Death.</sup> Reign of King *Henry* the fifth. The Daughter of this *Thomas* was married to the Duke of *Suffolk*; and so the Family of *Chaucer* became allied to the greatest Houses in *England*. He was the Father of the *English* Poetry; for he, and his Friend and Associate *John Gower*, made the first Attempt to refine our *English* Language, and give a Tune and Harmony to the *English* Verse, which was unknown to their Forefathers. The Learned before their Time, always used to write in *Latin* or *French*: But they made the *English* Tongue so musical, which was before of it self very significant, that it became common afterwards; and most Authors wrote in their native Language.*

About *November* a Parliament was called at *Coven-* <sup>The fourth</sup> *try*, but the Place not being convenient, they were <sup>Parliament.</sup> soon prorogued, having done nothing of Moment.

A little before *Christmas*, the *French*, by Way of Re- <sup>The French</sup> *prisal*, landed in the Isle of *Wight*, telling the Inha- <sup>invade the</sup> *bitants*, *That they were come to keep their Christmas* <sup>Isle of Wight.</sup> *with them*. They demanded Money of them for King *Richard* and Queen *Isabel*, and began to drive off their Cattle to their Ships; but the People of the Island gathering together in a Body, compelled them to retire to their Ships, and leave their Prey behind them.

The Parliament met at *Westminster* in the Beginning of *January*. In this Parliament, the King having hum- <sup>The fifth</sup> *bled* the Earl of *Northumberland*, thought it Policy to <sup>Parliament.</sup> *take* him into Favour again. The Earl of *Northum-* <sup>The Earl of</sup> *berland* was restored to his Lands and Honours, except <sup>Northum-</sup> *only* the Isle of *Man*, which the King had formerly <sup>berland</sup> *bestowed* on him to hold of the Crown by the Tenure <sup>restored</sup> of <sup>to his Lands.</sup>

1404. of carrying the *LANCASTER'S* Sword at the Coronation. This Parliament granted the King an unusual Tax, or Subsidy, but desired there might be no particular Record left of it, that it might not be drawn into a Precedent. The Clergy also being met in Convocation, gave the King a Tenth.

The Duke of Orleans, Brother to the French King, sent a Challenge to King Henry, to meet him at *Bordeaux*, with a hundred Englishmen, to fight the same Number of French, and every Victor to have his Prisoners; but the King returned him Answer, that it was against the Custom of Nations for any crowned and anointed King to accept a Challenge from any Person, but such as of equal Dignity; but promised upon the Word of a Prince, that he would soon go into *Gascoigne*, with convenient Number of Men, and there enter the List with him, as he had proposed, or by single Combat. The Duke of Orleans being enraged, raised an Army of six thousand Men, invaded *Gueneve*, and besieged the Town of *Verges*; but it was so well defended by Sir Robert Antyfield, that he was forced to leave it, after he had besieged it three Months.

The Bre- tagues infect England but are repulsed. In the Spring the *Bretagnes*, under the Command of the Lord Castel, came with thirty Ships, and one thousand two hundred Men, to *Dartmouth*, to plunder and burn it; but the Inhabitants, who had armed themselves in Expectation of their coming, engaged them so fiercely, the Women also assisting by throwing of Stones, that they were obliged to depart without accomplishing their Design; and being afterwards met by the English Fleet in *Black-Pool*, there followed a sharp Engagement, the Lord Castel himself, and four hundred of his Men being slain, and two hundred taken Prisoners. The Country People presented the King with their Prisoners, among whom were the Lord *Baqueril*, the Marshal of *Bretagne*, and some other Lords; and he graciously accepted their Presents, and rewarded them with Plenty of Gold.

Owen Glendour's Ravages. All this Summer *Owen Glendour*, and the *Welsh*, with more than usual Cruelty, burnt and ravaged the *Marches*, killed and took many Prisoners, and got a great Booty, and partly by Force, and partly by Fraud, possessed himself of diverse Castles, some of which he fortified, and others he demolished. With these Calamities

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

395.

ties by the *Welsh*, concurred other Damages done by *Bretagnes* and *Flemings*, who cruising upon the *English* Coasts, took several *English* Ships laden with Merchandise, and either slew or hung up the Mariners.

But the King was not so much disturbed at these misfortunes, as at a Rumour which was dispersed up and down the Nation at this Time, That King *Richard* was alive, and in *Scotland*, at the Head of an army of an hundred thousand *Scots* and *French*. This

A Rumour of King *Richard*'s being alive.

rumour owed its Original to the Letters of one *Serle*, who had been Gentleman of the Bedchamber to King *Richard*; who being in *France*, and hearing such a Report, went into *Scotland* to satisfy himself, where indeed found one very like King *Richard*, but knew him well to be an Impostor. However, in Hatred to

King *Henry*, he caused a Privy Seal to be made like to King *Richard*'s, and wrote several Letters to his friends, sealed with it, affirming, that King *Richard* is indeed alive, and would shortly appear, to the Comfort of his Friends, and Confusion of his Enemies, inso- much that he distracted the Minds of many. The old Countess of *Oxford*, Mother to *Robert de Vere*, late Duke of *Ireland*, eagerly laid hold upon this false News, and published it as certain, and caused many Rings of Gold and Silver, which were the Badges of King *Richard*, to be made, and given to her Dependents, that they might wear them on their Cloaths as soon as King *Richard* came into *England*. She also desired her Secretary to send this false News into *Essex*; by which Means it was discovered; for which her

A counterfeit King *Richard*.

secretary was hanged and quartered, and she her self suffered close Imprisonment during Life, and Confiscation of her Goods. *Serle* finding his Plots Abandoned, and wanting Money to return to *France*, went to *William Clifford*, at *Berwick*, hoping to have procured some Money from him: But Sir *William* having incurred the Displeasure of King *Henry*, in holding out *Berwick* Castle against him, apprehended *Serle*, and presented him to the King at *Pontefract*, and by that means obtained his Pardon: But *Serle* was executed soon after, confessing he was one of those who had ordered the Duke of *Glocester* at *Calais*.

The Design defeated.

On *October* the sixth, a Parliament met at *Coventry*, which, because it consisted of such Persons as were

Sixth Parliament, called the *Lack-learn* Parliament.

illiterate



1405.

illiterate, or unskilful in the Laws, tho' it was by the King's particular Orders to the Sheriffs of Counties, that none but such Persons should be chosen, was called *Parliamentum indolentum*, or the *Lack-learning Parliament*. This Parliament, to supply the King's Wants, exhibited a Bill against the Temporalities of the Clergy, but it proved abortive by the Opposition it met with from the Archbishop of Canterbury, who declared, that it was the enriching of themselves, and not of the King, that they aimed at; the King also declaring, he would leave the Church in no worse State than he found it.

William of  
Wickham's  
Death.

About this Time died *William of Wickham*, Bishop of Winchester, one of the greatest Benefactors to the Publick that ever England had. He was the Son of *John Long*, a Parish Clerk of *Wickham*; but having heaped up great Riches by the Preferments he had under *Edward* the third, and *Richard* the second, he employed them wholly in Works of publick Charity and Piety. He founded *New-College* in *Oxford*, and another at *Winchester*, and other Buildings of less Note. *Trussel* relates, that he was entrusted with a very important Secret relating to *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, the Father of this King *Henry*; particularly that his Mother *Philippa* did in her Confession, upon her Deathbed, acknowledge to him, that *John* was a supposititious Child, and that he ought to use all Means possible to prevent him or his Issue from stepping up into the *English* Throne.

A new Con-  
spiracy a-  
gainst the  
King.

Several Lords taking a Disgust at King *Henry*'s Treatment of them, form'd a Conspiracy against him to depose him; among these were *Thomas Mowbray*, Earl Marshal, *Richard Scroop*, Archbishop of *York*, the old Earl of *Northumberland*, the Lords *Baldorf*, *Hopings*, and *Falconbridge*, who made an Appointment to assemble all the Forces they could get together at *York Wolds*, where they composed Articles against the King of such Things as they thought themselves aggrieved in, and caused them to be set upon the Doors of Monasteries in the Streets of *York*. These being approved brought a mighty Concourse of People to the Assistance of the Archbishop. The Earl of *Westmoreland*, at that Time marching with an Army towards the Borders of *Scotland*, and hearing of this Insurrection, being too weak to oppose it by Force, betook himself to Stratagem, and sent Messen-

gers

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

397

gers to the Archbishop; pretending to approve of their <sup>7 Hen. IV.</sup> Design, desiring a Meeting, and by that Means got both him and the Earl Marshal into his Hands, and made a Present of them to the King; and they were both publickly beheaded, notwithstanding the Earl of *Westmoreland* had before promised them their Lives. The Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord *Bardolf*, escaped into *Scotland*; the King being at *Pontefract* with an Army of thirty seven thousand Men, persued them, and took the Lord *Hastings*, *Falconbridge*, and some others, and beheaded them at *Durham*. Then he assaulted *Berwick*, whither the Archbishop's Party were fled for Succour, and having by a Battering Piece thrown down a Tower on the Wall, they surrendered upon hard Terms; for he hanged one Part of the Rebels, and imprisoned the other. After this he took *Alnwick*, and all the Castles belonging to the Earl of *Northumberland*.

This Rebellion being quelled, the King led his Forces to *Wales*, against *Owen Glendour*, who having obtained the Assistance of twelve thousand Men from *France*, in a hundred and forty Ships, under the Command of Marshal *Montmorancy*, they besieged *Carmarthen*, *Worcester*, and several other Places; from whence he took Store of Spoils. King *Henry* halting against them, lost all his Carriages in a violent Tempest, and above fifty Waggon loads laden with Treasure, in his Passage; and being arrived there, could effect nothing against them; for the *Welsh*, after their usual Manner, retreating over the Mountains, the King for Want of Money and Forage was forced to return Home.

On the first of *March* the Parliament met at *Westminster*, and the King being again in Want of Money, the Parliament did with much Importunity, tho' not without Reluctancy, furnish him. Some of this Money was employed in secret Practices with the *Scots*, to deliver the Earl of *Northumberland* and Lord *Bardolf*, into the King's Hand, in Exchange for some Prisoners of that Nation: But the Lord *Fleming*, who had entertained them, being loth to violate the Rules of Hospitality, gave them Notice of it; and so the Earl and Lord fled into *Wales*; for which the *Scots* were so enraged at the Lord *Fleming*, that they slew him; which barbarous Act filled *Scotland* with new civil Discords. The King of *Scots* not thinking it safe to keep Prince *James* his Son

1406. Son and Heir at Home, sent him under the Care of the Earl of *Orkney*, with a Bishop into *France*; but they sailed by the Coasts of *Norfolk*, they were taken by some *English* Ships, and sent to King *Henry Windsor*, who sent him Prisoner to the Tower of *London*; but afterwards gave him a noble Education, that the Misfortune might be thought to turn to Advantage, as to princely Qualifications.

The *French* prosecuting their Affairs in *Wales*, a farther Aid of Forces to them in thirty eight Ships of which Number the *English* took eight; the rest by escaping, got to Shore in much Fear and Danger. Not long after, the *English* took fifteen Sail of Merchant Ships laden with Wax and Wine. And *Pay* Esq; with fifteen Ships, and some others being to the *Cinque Ports*, cruising upon the *British* Coast took an hundred and twenty Prizes laden with Salt, Oil, and *Rochel* Wines. About the same time a Person was executed for setting up Bills in the Parts of *London*, containing an Account of *Kirchard's* being still alive. This Summer the *London* was so much infected with the Plague, is said thirty thousand died of it. The King, retired in *Essex* to avoid it, designing to pass from *London* to *Leigh* in *Essex*, narrowly escaped being taken by some *French* Pirates, who lay at the *Thames* Mouth watching for a Prey, who took four Ships which were next to him; he only escaping by the Swiftness of his Ship.

A dreadful  
Plague in  
London.

In *August* died Sir *Robert Knolles*, that valiant Hero, a Man of mean Parentage, but by his Courage and Valour, raised to be a Commander of Armies and Governor of Provinces, under King *Edward* the third. He built the large Bridge at *Rockester*, over the *Medway*, with a Chapel at the Foot of it; he was also celebrated for many Acts of Charity.

In the mean Time, the Wars of *Wales* were managed by young Prince *Henry*, who won the Castle of *Aberistwith*, in *Wales*; but the Prince was no sooner departed from those Parts, but *Owen Glendour*, by a subtle Stratagem, got Possession of it, and put into it a Garison of his own.

This Year died Mr. *John Gower*, of the Family of the *Gowers* of *Sittenham* in *Yorkshire*, the Friend and Assistant

Sir Robert  
Knolles's  
Death.

The Prince  
of Wales  
takes the  
Castle of  
Aberistwith.

## The Reign of King HENRY IV.

399.

Geoffery Chaucer, in refining and polishing the 9 Hen. IV.  
Tongue, and *English Poesy*.

this Spring the Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord  
; who had for a whole Year been raising Forces  
s, *France* and *Flanders*, to invade *England*, re-  
into *Scotland*, and thence coming into *England*,  
sing new Forces in the North, under a Pretence  
ting their Rights, were encountred by the Sheriffs  
*shire*, and after a sharp Engagement, the Earl  
in, and the Lord *Bardolf* so wounded, that he  
on after. The King hearing of those Troubles  
North, was hastning thither with his Army, but  
t arrive time enough; and altho' by the Way he  
of this Success, yet he continued his March;  
ing arrived at *York*, some he put to Death, and  
d others with Fines and Imprisonments. The  
of *Ailes* being taken in Armour, was hanged;  
hop of *Bangor*, being taken in his own Cloaths,  
rdoned. The Heads of the Earl of *Northumber-*  
id Lord *Bardolf* were set up on *London Bridge*.

The Earl  
of *Northum-*  
*berland* slain.

Ambition of the two Popes having for a long  
disturbed the Peace of Christendom, one of which  
osen at *Rome*, and the other at *Avignon*, by two  
ry Factions of the Cardinals, a general Council  
mmoned to be held at *Pisa* in *Italy*, to decide the  
overly. King *Henry* sent his Ambassadors thi-  
nd the Clergy chose *Robert Alun*, Chancellor of  
, and Bishop of *Salisbury*, to signify, *That unless*  
*popes would decline the Pontificate, neither of them*  
*future should be acknowledged as Pope*. King  
in his Letter to Pope Gregory, charged him  
'erjury, and, *That this Papal Emulation had been*  
*use of the Deaths of more than two hundred thou-*  
*bristians slain in the Wars*. A great Number of  
als, Archbishops, and other mitred Prelates were  
led, who elected *Alexander* the fifth, a Man  
up at *Oxford*, for the new Pope. In the mean  
*Owen Glendour*, who had done innumerable Mis-  
being abandoned to all Miseries and Extremi-  
nished his Life with Hunger and Famine; at the  
of whom, all the *Welsh* Broils were at an End.  
Summer, notwithstanding the Severity against  
llards, it was found, that several learned Men,  
University of *Oxford*, were inclinable to the Doc-  
of *John Wickliff*. The Bishops being much con-  
cerned

The Schism  
between the  
two Popes  
ended.

1410.  
John Wick-  
liffe's Books  
condemn'd  
at Oxford.

cern'd at it, a Convocation of the Heads of the Un-  
iversity were ordered to meet, and examine the Doc-  
trines of *Wickliffe*; who with one Consent condemn'd  
his Books, prohibiting under the Penalty of the great  
Curse, and Deprivation of all Scholastick Degrees, that  
any should teach or preach any of the Opinions or Doc-  
trines contain'd in his Books, *De sermone in monte*,  
*Trilogorum de Simonia*, *de Perfectione Statuum*, *de*  
*medine Christiano*, *de gradibus Cleri Ecclesie*, and his *Treatise*  
*of Logick and Sophistry*.

Black Par-  
liament.

Complaint  
against the  
Monks and  
Clergy.

King Henry, wanting more Money, call'd a Parlia-  
ment; and having made Sir Henry Scroop Lord Treas-  
urer, and Thomas Beaufort, his own half-Brother, Lord  
Chancellor, committed the Charge and Management  
to them. Upon which the Commons presented a Peti-  
tion to the King, purporting, *that whereas the Bishops*  
*Abbots, Priors, &c. had lewdly and wastfully spent, and*  
*was not sufficient to maintain an hundred and fifty Earls, se-*  
*venteen hundred Knights, six thousand two hundred Esquires,*  
*and a hundred Hospitals more than were already founded,*  
*and therefore they desir'd the King to take them into*  
*his own Hands, and order them so, that the Safety of*  
*the Nation might be better provided for, the Poor better*  
*maintain'd, and the Clergy rendered more humble and*  
*obedient.* But it is said, the King was displeas'd at this Peti-  
tion, and order'd them for the future never to meddle  
with any such Matters. This Parliament also petition-  
ed, that the Act pass'd in the second Year of the King  
against the *Lollards*, might either be revok'd or miti-  
gated; but the King told them, *he was so far from*  
*annulling or mitigating the said Act, that he would have*  
*it made more vigorous and sharp for the Punishment of*  
*such erroneous Persons*; which gave Encouragement  
to the Clergy to prosecute them.

The Mar-  
tyrdom of  
John Badly.

Not long after, John Badly, a Tailor, of the Diocese  
of Worcester, was convicted of Heresy before the Arch-  
bishop of Canterbury, and burnt in Smithfield to Ashes  
in a Pipe or Tun. Henry Prince of Wales being pre-  
sent at this Execution, and compassionating his Suffer-  
ings, offer'd him a Pardon, if he would recant before  
the Fire was kindled; but he refusing, was tied to the  
Stake, and the Fire made about him. As soon as he  
felt the Fire, he cried out most hideously; upon which  
the Prince order'd the Fire to be put out, and offer'd  
him his Pardon again, and promis'd him a Maintenance.

If he would renounce his Errors; but he refusing the <sup>12 Hen. IV.</sup> Prince's Offers, was burnt to Ashes with wonderful Constancy.

This Year the Duke of *Burgundy*, intending to take *Galais*, had laid up great Store of Engines and other Warlike Stores in a Monastery at *St. Omers*. The *Catholics* therefore hired a Man to set Fire to the Monastery, which he did, and the Stores and the greatest Part of the Town it self being reduc'd to Ashes, the Duke's Charge, as well as Aim, was lost.

About this Time, Vice-Admiral *Hamfrivil* being sent against the *Scots* with ten Ships of War, entred the *Firth of Edinburgh*; and landing, daily brought great Spoils on Board. At his Departure, he burnt the Gallies of *Scotland*, a Vessel of great Account with them, and many other Vessels, and brought away fourteen Ships laden with diverse Sorts of Merchandise, of Corn and other Commodities, which he selling at a low Price, Corn grew much cheaper than it was before, and for that he gain'd great good Will among the poor People, who gave him the Name of *Robert Mend-Market*. The English Vice Admiral annoys the Scots.

This Year the *Guild-hall* of the City of *London*, which was but a mean Cottage before, was made a stately Building by the Mayor and Aldermen, at the Charge of the City; and the Company of *Grocers* laid the Foundation of their Hall in a Piece of Ground they had purchased in *Cunihope-Lane* for 320 Marks.

This Summer broke out in *France* the furious Factions of the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Burgundy*, which involved the whole Kingdom in the Broils of a Civil War. The Cause of it was a Murther committed upon *Lewis* the Brother of the *French* King, and Father to the Duke of *Orleans*, near the *Barbet-Gate* in *Paris*, as he came late from the Queen's Lodgings, who was then in Childbed. The Duke of *Burgundy* was greatly suspected to have procured this Murder to be committed, and confirm'd the Suspicion, by flying to *Antwerp*, where he kept himself several Months; but having brought about a Reconciliation with the King, and being invited to Court again, he got into as great Favour as ever; and still retaining his Enmity to the Duke of *Orleans's* Family, he discountenanc'd the Duke and all his Friends, put some out of their Places, and others to Death. Upon this, *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of Duke *Lewis*, took Occasion hence to revenge

1411. his Father's Death on the Duke of Burgundy, who justified the Fact, alledging that *Lewis* had us'd Means with the Pope to depose the King of France, upon Pretence he was unfit to govern, by reason of his Frenzy. Each Party endeavoured to strengthen themselves by foreign as well as Domestick Assistance. The Duke of Burgundy had the King and Dauphine on his Side, and the Duke of Orleans had the Kings of Navarre and Aragon, and Dukes of Berry and Bretagne on his Side. The Duke of Burgundy, fearful of the Power of his Adversaries, kept in Paris, and sent into England, offering a Daughter of the King of France in Marriage to Henry Prince of Wales, in Order to engage King Henry to join in his Defence, and send over a competent Number of Forces to his Assistance. King Henry received the Ambassadors honourably, but told them, that the Duke of Orleans did only prosecute a just Revenge for his Father's Blood, and therefore was not to be fought against, but appeas'd; and therefore he thought it reasonable he should be tender'd all suitable Satisfaction, which yet if he refus'd to accept, then he would lend him all convenient Assistance. However, King Henry considering that this Civil Diffention in France might prove of good Advantage to him, and tho' it would not look well in him openly to encourage a Murderer, yet on the other Hand, that it would be impolitick to neglect his own Interest, sends twelve hundred Archers and Spear-men under the Command of the Earl of Arundel, and many Men at Arms, who join'd the Duke of Burgundy, who lay at Arras with fifteen thousand Flemings and Picards. The Duke of Orleans having put a Garrison in St. Clon, the English besieg'd it and took it, and a good Number of Prisoners, which the Duke of Burgundy bought of them, they not suspecting his Design; for, contrary to the Law of Arms, he put them all to Death. This cruel and ungenerous Action much disturbed the English. Soon after the Armies of the two Dukes had a Skirmish, and the English having again the upper Hand, got a great many Prisoners, whom, the Duke of Burgundy, wanting either Money or Will to redeem, would have persuaded the English to put to Death; but the English boldly answer'd, that they would not be guilty of such a Breach of the Law of Arms, as he had been, and would rather die themselves, than any of their Prisoners.

The Duke of Burgundy seeks to King Henry for Assistance.

The Duke of Burgundy's Cruelty.

should, but they would keep them for Ransom. <sup>13 Hen. IV.</sup>  
 er this Engagement, the Duke of *Orleans* finding his  
 ty too weak for that of the Duke of *Burgundy*, they  
 drew themselves into the mountainous Part of the  
 ntry; whereupon the Duke of *Burgundy* sent the  
 list home with Rewards and Thanks.

The Parliament met at *Westminster* about the Begin-<sup>Tenth Parli-</sup>  
 g of *November*, but nothing was enacted of great <sup>liament.</sup>  
 ment; but soon after the rising of it, the King  
 le his Sons, the Lord *Thomas* of *Lancaster*, who was <sup>Some new</sup>  
 d Steward of *England* and Earl of *Aumerle*, Duke <sup>Creations.</sup>  
*Clarence*, *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, and *Humfrey*, Duke  
*Glocester*; and his Brother *Thomas Beaufort*, Earl of  
*set*.

The Party of the Duke of *Orleans* had now no other  
 uge left for their Relief, but the King of *England*,  
 , as he had been engag'd on the Side of the Duke  
*Burgundy*, yet being now free from any Obligations  
 him, might by fair and advantageous Proposals be  
 over to his Side. He therefore sent into *England*  
 e Persons, who in the Name of himself and his  
 ifederates, who were the Dukes of *Berry*, *Bour-* <sup>Offers made</sup>  
 and *Alençon*, and Earl of *Arminiach*, and others, <sup>from the</sup>  
 r'd him the following Articles and Covenants: First, <sup>Duke of Or-</sup>  
 if the King of *England* as Lord of *Guienne* would <sup>leans.</sup>

nd and succour them, until they had executed Justice  
 e the Duke of *Burgundy* for the Murder committed  
 e the late Duke of *Orleans*. Secondly, that if he  
 ld give this Assistance till all the Losses which they  
 their Friends had suffer'd upon this Occasion, were  
 ir'd. Thirdly, that if he should help to settle the  
 e and Quiet of the Realm, &c. then they offer  
 Bodies to be employ'd against all Men for the  
 ice of the King of *England*, saving their Allegiance  
 eir own Sovereign. Secondly, their Sons, Daugh-  
 Nephews, and Neices, and all other their Kindred  
 arriage at the King of *England*'s Pleasure. Third-  
 heir Castles, Towns, Treasure and all their Goods  
 e at his Service. Fourthly, their Friends, the Gen-  
 en of *France*, the Clergy and rich Burghers; who  
 e all on their Side as by Proof should appear. Fi-  
 , they offer to him the Dukedom of *Gascony* intire,  
 in as full a Manner as ever it had been enjoy'd by  
 'redecessors; so that they themselves will hold and  
 owledge to hold their Lands in those Parts direct-



1472.



ly of the King of England, and deliver all they can into his Possession, and do their utmost to conquer the rest for him; only desiring that the Duke of Berry might hold the Country of *Ponthieu* during his Life, and the Duke of Orleans the County of *Angoulesme* for his Life, and the County of *Perigord* for ever, and the Earl of *Arminiach* four Castles upon certain Conditions. These

The Kings  
joins with  
him.

Offers prevail'd and Forces were ordered to assist the Duke of Orleans, which were sent into *Normandy*. But in the mean Time a Peace was concluded between the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*; for which Cause, and the latter not coming to receive them according to Appointment, the *English* fell to plundering the Country to satisfy themselves, till the Duke of Orleans should see them paid. Which being done, the *English* marched into Winter Quarters in *Aquitaine*.

Prince Hen-  
ry's Loose-  
ness.

King Henry having reduced his Kingdom into a calm Condition, and Prince Henry being eas'd from the Employment of the *Welsh* Wars, and being of an active and brisk Spirit, fell as eagerly upon the Sports and Pleasures, which usually debauch the Minds of Youth in Times of Leisure, as he had been bold and adventurous in Feats of War. He had been formerly a Student in *Queens College* in *Oxford*, under his Uncle *Henry Beaufort* Chancellor of that University; and afterwards being removed to Court, was committed to the Government of the Earl of *Worcester*. His Carriage and Behaviour had been all along, such as had rais'd the Hopes of the whole Kingdom concerning him. But being now arrived to the Age of twenty four Years, he ran into many Courses unworthy of a Prince, so that it seem'd very doubtful how he would prove, when he came to the Throne. He kept a Court separate from his Father, maintain'd a princely Port and Magnificence, but ran into vitious Excesses. His Palace was like a Camp, Multitudes of Persons flocking thither, either to please the Prince's Genius, or to gratify their own; he pleas'd himself more in Danings, Musick, Revellings and Maskings, than ever he had done in Man-like Feats of Arms. It is reported, that he lay in wait for the Receivers of his Father's Revenues, and set upon them, and rob'd them in the Person of a Highway-Man. After that, when one of his Associates was arraign'd for Felony, before the Lord chief Justice, he went to the King's Bench Bar,

and attempted to take away the Prisoner by Force ; but <sup>13 Hen. IV.</sup> the Judge not suffering him, he stept up to him, and struck him over the Face. Upon this, the Judge told <sup>He affronts</sup> him, that this Affront was not to himself, but to the <sup>a Judge.</sup> King his Father, in whose Place he sat, wherefore he commanded him to Prison, to make him sensible of his Crime. The Prince, tho' he had been so violent in the Case of his Friend, very calmly submitted, and quietly obeyed the Judge's Sentence, and suffer'd himself to be carried to Prison. The King hearing of this Transaction was well pleas'd, that he had a Judge of such Courage, and a Son of so much Submission; so that he look'd upon this Action, but as a youthful Prank, or a Sally of Passion, and did not esteem it as prejudicial to himself and Realm ; till some who were about him, and who were Enemies to the Prince, not only complain'd of his Lewdness and Excesses, but insinuated to him, that tho' he drew such a Multitude about him, under a Shew of Sports and Pastimes, yet he carried on a secret Design of deposing him. <sup>Prince Henry accused of Disloyalty.</sup> The King was so influenc'd by these Insinuations, that he remov'd him from being President of the Council, and put his Brother into his Place. The Prince perceiving his Father's Displeasure, was very desirous to recover his good Opinion ; but finding it impracticable, so long as his Accusers had his Father's Ear, he attempted it by as strange a Way, as he had lost it. For, having provided himself with a rich Satin Suit of Cloaths, made full of Oylet Holes, the Needle hanging at every Hole, he put it on, and on his Arm wore a Hound's Collar set full of S S and Tyrets of Gold : And being thus apparelled, and attended with a great Train of Nobles; he went to his Father's Palace, and desir'd to be admitted into his Presence. The King demanded of him the Cause of his strange Dress and Appearance. He answer'd to this effect, that being not only his Subject, but his Son, and in all Things obedient to his Commands, yet since by false Suggestions, his Majesty had been induc'd to suspect his Affections towards him, he was come to rectify his Misapprehensions, and to give him convincing Proofs of his Loyalty ; yet since he had imprudently, tho' not designedly, rais'd Suspicions of his Disloyalty in his Mind, he there tendered his Life as forfeited to his Majesty : Adding, that he had that Day by the Christian Preparation of an humble Confession

1413. *and receiving the Sacrament, prepar'd himself to be made a Sacrifice; and therewithal reaching his Dagger to his Father, he added, I humbly beg of your Majesty, that you would make this Dagger an Instrument of easing my Grief and your Fears, by thrusting it into my Heart, for it is as little Comfort for me to enjoy Life, as it can be to you to have such an undutiful Son; and if you shall vouchsafe to do it, I do here in the Presence of your Nobility, freely forgive you, and will in the Presence of God and all his Angels, in the last Judgment acquit you of the Guilt of my Blood.* By this, and more to the same Purpose, the King was so mov'd with Affection toward the Prince, that he blam'd his own Credulity, promising him upon his Honour, never to harbour any Jealousies concerning him for the future.

*He is reconcil'd to his Father.*

King Henry, being reconcil'd to his Son, and having Peace both at Home and Abroad, spent his Time in Acts of Charity and Piety, and in providing for the Safety and Welfare of his People, but liv'd not long to enjoy the Fruits of his Happiness; for having kept his Christmas at Elibam in Kent, and labouring under an Apoplectic Distemper, being a little recovered, he repaired to London about Candlemas, to hold a Parliament. The Design of this Session seems to have been, chiefly to furnish him with Money for a Crusado, designing to take a Voyage to the Holy-land in the Spring; but being worshipping at St. Edward's Shrine, to take his Leave in Order to his Journey to Jerusalem, he was suddenly taken with an Apoplexy; and being remov'd thence into a Chamber belonging to the Abbot of Westminster, and laid on a Pallat before the Fire, he recovered his Senses, and finding himself in a strange Place, he enquired where he was? And being told, he was in the Abbot's House in a Chamber called Jerusalem, he then said, *Lord have Mercy upon me, for this is the Jerusalem, where a Sooth-sayer told me I must die, and accordingly he made suitable Preparations for his Death.* And first calling for the Prince, he had several Discourses with him, as his Sicknes would give Leave. He said, *That he had great Fears that after his Death, his Brother the Duke of Clarence would contend with him for the Crown, because he was a Man of an ambitious Spirit and daring Courage, and would reach at the highest Dignity, by which the Nation would fall into great Miseries; and when he thought of this, he repented that*

*The King's last Speeches.*

he had ever meddled with the Crown. The Prince answer'd, That it was his earnest Prayers to God, that his Majesty might long continue with them to rule them both; but if God had so order'd it, that he should succeed him in the Government of the Realm, he would honour and love his Brethren above all Men, so long as they should continue true and faithful Subjects; but if any of them should conspire or rebel against him, he would execute Justice upon them with as much Severity, as upon any of his other Subjects. The King hearing this Answer, was well pleased at his Son's Resolution and Courage, and proceeded to give him pious Admonitions and Instructions for governing this Realm: Saying, My Son, <sup>The King's Advice to his Son.</sup> when it shall please God to call me to go the Way of all Flesh, to thee, as my Son and Heir, I shall leave my Crown and Realm; and I advise thee not to take it as an Honour, to puff up thy Mind with Pride, but as a Burthen and Charge to provide for the Good and Safety of all Persons in the Realm: For as the Heart in the midst of the Body, administers Heat and Nourishment to the whole, so must a King in this Realm, provide for the Good and Safety of all. Let it then be thy continual Care to administer all Things well for the Encouragement of Virtue and Diligence, and the Punishment of Vice and Sin, and then the People will be obedient to thee, and ready at all Times to assist thee. Go before thy People in true Piety and Devotion, and what thou wouldest have thy Subjects be, be thou first thy self; for thy Example will make thy Subjects count it an Honour to be Good. Fear God, and dread him above all Things, be zealous for his Worship, and discountenance all Atheism and Profaneness. Ascribe all thy fortunate Actions to him, and let him have the Praise of whatever Good befalls thee; as Victory over thy Enemies, the Fidelity of thy Friends, Obedience of thy Subjects, Greatness of thy Power, Riches and Honour, and Number of thy Children; think not thy own Desert, but God's Goodness the Cause of all these Things to thee. But above all Things, administer Justice equally and impartially; for the Health of thy Body and Soul, and of thy Kingdom, depends upon the due Execution of it. Deser not to do Justice till to Morrow, if thou canst do it to Day, lest God for thy unjust Delays, do Justice on thee in the mean Time, and take thine Authority from thee. Punish Bribery severely, relieve the oppressed, zealously vindicate the wronged, protect

1413. *teach the religious, and love the virtuous: So shalt thou obtain the Favour of God, and Love of thy Subjects, and have a flourishing and prosperous Reign here on Earth, and an everlasting Reward in Heaven.* Having made an End of giving his Son this Advice, he dismissed him with his King; and finding himself to grow every Moment weaker, he commanded his Crown to be set upon his Pillow, that when he died the Prince of Wales his Son might have it, as his right Heir. At length his Fits came on very thick, and so violent, that he was often thought to be dead, and in one of them, the Prince took the Crown from the Pillow to secure it: But he coming to himself again, and as he was accusom'd in every Interval to look for it, he asked who had got it, and called for it again. Being told the Prince had taken it, he ordered him to come before him, and with some Warmth said to him, *Sm, why dost thou thus misuse me?* The Prince replied, *Sm, so me, and all Men present, you seemed dead in the World; wherefore I as your next Heir apparent, took it as my own, and not as yours; but since I claim no Right to it, but from and after your Decease, therefore I restore it to you again, and God Almighty give you many Days to enjoy it.* The King replied, *Well fare you with it my Son:* And fetching a deep Sigh, added, *What Right I had to it, God knoweth.* Well, replied the Prince, *if you die King, I will inherit the Crown, and trust I shall keep it, with the Sword, against all my Enemies, as you have done.* Then said the King, *I commit all to God, and advise you to do well.* Then turning to the Wall, he expired the 20<sup>th</sup> Day of March, in the 47<sup>th</sup> Year of his Age, after a politick active and victorious Reign of thirteen Years, five Months, and twenty one Days; and being carried by Water to *Windsor*, his Corps was magnificently interred at *Canterbury*.

His Character.

He was a Person of a middle Stature, well proportioned and compact, but had far greater Endowments of Mind than Body; for as he was of great Strength and Agility, skillful in Arms, and of quick Dispatch; so he was ready at Invention, forward in Attempt, courageous in Execution, and generally fortunate in the Event. His Expences were liberal and honourable, but not beyond the Measure of his Receipts; he was courteous and affable to all; in all Changes of State he was

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

409

much the same Man, never dejected in Adversity, nor <sup>14 Hen. IV.</sup> ever secure in Prosperity; he was not elated by the Continuance of his Reign, but in the latter End of it became so mild and gentle, that it had almost worn out all hatred born him, upon the Account of, the Death of King *Richard*. He had all the Qualifications of a great and mighty Prince, and by his Vigour and Management, surmounted infinite Difficulties. His great Error was, his Ambition of human Glory, which caused him to wade thro' Seas of Blood; but it was Necessity rather than Cruelty, that made him severe. Indeed he was never lov'd, tho' he was really a very good Prince, because the Occasions of State required great Taxes. However Success so attended his Undertakings, that he died a Victor over all his Enemies Abroad and at Home, and laid the Foundation of his Son's Greatness, in whose Reign the *English* Power was got to its greatest Height and Grandeur.

He had four Sons, and two Daughters, but all by his first Wife the Lady *Mary*, Daughter and Co-heir <sup>His off-  
spring</sup> of *Humphry Bohun*, Earl of *Hereford*, who died before he came to the Crown; for he had no Issue by his second Wife, *Joanna de Navarre*, the Widow of *John de Mountfort* Duke of *Bretagne*.

His eldest Son *Henry* Prince of *Wales*, and Earl of *Chester*, succeeded him in the Throne, and prov'd the Glory of our *English* Kings, as in his Life will appear.

His second Son, *Thomas Plantagenet*, he made Duke of *Clarence*. He married *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Thomas Holland* Earl of *Kent*, and Widow of *John Beaufort* Earl of *Pontfract*. He was slain at *Bosny Bridge* in *France*, by the Duke of *Orleans*.

His third Son *John*, he made Duke of *Bedford*, Earl of *Richmond*, and Lord of *Kendal*; he married two Wives, viz. *Anne* the Daughter of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and *Joqueline* the Daughter of *Peter* Earl of *St. Paul*, who out-lived him.

His fourth Son *Humphry* he created Duke of *Glocester*, he was in very great Honour in the Time of his Nephew *Henry VI.* styling himself *Humphry* by the Grace of God, Brother and Uncle to Kings, Duke of *Glocester*, *Kennault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and Earl of *Pembroke*, Lord of *Freezland*, great Chamberlain of *England*, Protector of the Realm, and Defender of the Church

1419. *Church of England.* He had two Wives, but was happy in them both; the one being divorced for a Breach of Contract, and the other infamous for Sorcery and Poisoning; but he had no Issue by them. He was formerly murdered in his Bed, at *St. Edmund's-bury* in *Suffolk*, and was buried at *St. Albans* in *Hertfordshire*.

His two Daughters, *Blanch* and *Philippa*, were married in his Life-time, the former to the Duke of *Bavaria*, and the latter to the King of *Denmark*, but both died without Issue.

*Sir Richard Whittington's Acts.*

In this King's Reign, lived *Sir Richard Whittington*, Mayor of *London*, who built a College in the City, with Lodgings, and weekly Allowances for divers poor People. He built the Gate in *London* called *Newgate*, and above half of *St. Bartholomew's Hospital* in *Smithfield*, and a Livery in the *Gray Friars*, now called *Christ's Hospital*. He also erected a great Part of the East-end of *Guild-hall*, and a Chapel adjoining to it, and a Library for the keeping the Records of the City; and died, much loved and lamented, for his noble and pious Acts.



### The Reign of King HENRY V.

*Henry V. succeeds his Father.*

**HENRY**, surnam'd of *Monmouth*, because he was born there, when his Father *Henry IV.* was Duke of *Hereford*, and resided in those Parts; succeeded him in the 26<sup>th</sup> Year of his Age, by Right of Inheritance. He had given Proofs of his Love for Virtue and Learning while he was at *Oxford*, of his Courage and Conduct in the Battel at *Shrewsbury*, and in the *Welsh Wars*; but the Liberties which he had allow'd himself a little before his Father's Death, and the Extravagancies of himself and Companions, had brought some Blemish upon his former good Inclinations; yet as it all Men had foreseen that the Change of his Condition would have work'd as great a Change in his Manners, they gave him more than usual Testimo-

nies

## *The Reign of King HENRY V.*

411

nies of their intire Confidence; in that both Lords and Commons on the 24<sup>th</sup> of *March*, offered to swear Allegiance to him, which was neither paid nor required before the Coronation, or taking the customary Oath to govern according to Law. The King would by no Means accept of their Tenders till he was crown'd, but gave them hearty Thanks for their good Affections: Saying, *That he earnestly prayed that God would not suffer him to be crown'd, or admit him to the Government of the Nation, but as he should rule well, for his Glory, and the Good and Prosperity of his Subjects; which if God did foresee that he should not do, he desir'd he would rather take him to his Mercy, than permit him to live and reign, to be a publick Calamity to his Country.* The Coronation was performed on the 9<sup>th</sup> of *April*, by *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; which proving a very stormy Day, gave Occasion for diverse superstitious Observations. He immediately began a Reformation both of himself and Court, and summoning his old Companions and Servants, gave them such Rewards as were due for their former Services: Telling them, *That if they would reform their Manners as he had begun, and was resolved to hold on, they might continue in their Places, and should upon that Account be more in his Favour; but if any of them, would still persist in their evil Actions, he forbade them his Court, and charged them upon pain of Death, not to come within ten Miles of the Place where he resided.* In the next place, he chose himself a Council of the gravest and wisest of his Nobility; and removing such Judges, or other Officers of the Crown, which were either known, or suspected to be guilty of corrupt Practices, he filled up their Places with others, as eminent for their Integrity as Knowledge. And that his Subjects might have free and impartial Justice, according to the Example of his Father, it was his Custom every Day for an Hour or more after Dinner, leaning on a Cushion, to receive Petitions, to hear the Complaints of his Subjects, and redress them. He also sent out his Injunctions to the Clergy, commanding them as they tendered his Displeasure, not only to preach the Word of God diligently and sincerely to the People, but to be Examples of Piety and Holiness themselves. As for inferiour Magistrates, he employed only such, as he knew to be Men of loyal Principles, knowing in the

1 Hen. V.

He is crown-  
ed King.



1413.

the Laws and of Probity and Sobriety ; forbidding upon his highest Displeasure, all Adulteries, common Swearing, Drunkenness, and Perjury.

His Piety towards the Body of King Richard, and Charity to his Soul.

The King having thus provided for the Happiness of the Nation, began to shew his Disposition to Piety, as it was esteemed in those Days ; for his Father in his Sickness, being touched in Conscience for deposing King Richard, and consenting to his Death, had sent the Pope for Absolution, in Order to which the Pope had enjoined this Penance : *That since he had deprived King Richard of his bodily Life, and earthly Honour, he should by the continual Prayers of the Church, cause his Soul to live for ever, in heavenly Glory.* But he being by Death prevented from performing it, King Henry mov'd his Body from Langley in Hertfordshire, where it had been too meanly interred, and in great State laid him enshrin'd, by Queen Ann, in Westminster Abbey, and ordered a *Dirige* to be sung weekly for his Soul, and a *Requiem* the next Day, and both a weekly and annual Distribution of Money to the Poor. Four Wax Tapers were to burn upon his Tomb Day and Night ; and that the Guilt of his Father's Sins might not cleave unto him, he is said to have undergone a strict Penance himself, and to have founded three religious Houses ; one of *Cistercian* Monks at *Shene*, one of Nuns of *St. Bridget*, which he called *Sion*, and an House of Observants, which he called *Bethlehem*, both at *Richmond*.

The first-Parliament. Sir John Oldcastle, Lord Cobham, accused of Heresie.

The Parliament met after *Easter* ; and the Convocation of the Clergy being conven'd at the same Time according to Custom, Archbishop *Arundel*, having by twelve Inquisitors sent out the Year before, made a full Collection of the principal Doctrines and Opinions maintain'd by the *Lollards*, and discovered the chief Maintainers and Upholders of them ; the Clergy accused Sir John Oldcastle Lord Cobham, of Hereford, in maintaining several of *Wickliff's* Opinions, and propagating them in the Dioceses of *London*, *Lichester* and *Hereford*. The King being incensed by the Suggestions of the Archbishop against the *Lollards*, that they had set up Bills in diverse Places, threatening, that a hundred thousand Men were ready to take up Arms against all that opposed their Reformation ; and the Lord Cobham being a Nobleman very much endeared to the King by his excellent Qualities, he therefore took upon him to confer with him himself, and admonished him reason-

nonce

## *The Reign of King HENRY V.*

413

ice his Opinions, and submit himself to the Church : Hen. V.  
Obedience of the Bishop. The Lord Cobham  
ted his Majesty for his Kindness and Favour, and  
ned him this Answer, *That by the Law of God*  
*ved Obedience to no Person on Earth but himself,*  
*was his natural Prince, and God's Vicegerent;*  
*to his lawful Commands he would readily sub-*  
*at all Times : But as for the Pope and his Hie-*  
*ry, he owed them neither Suit nor Service ; and*  
*fore would pay them none, because he knew him*  
*the Antichrist, and them to be the Abomination*  
*ling in the holy Place, by the Description given*  
*in Scripture.* The King being somewhat offend-  
with this resolute Reply, dismissed him, and re-  
nted it to the Bishop, with Power to cite, exa-  
e, and punish him, according to the Canons of the  
rch.

he Archbishop did not defer to put it immediately Lord Cobham  
Execution, and accordingly sent his Summoner excommunicated.  
ite him personally to appear at his Court ; but  
not daring to deliver his Summons to him, he  
ed a Citation to be set upon the Doors of the Ca-  
ral Church of *Rocheſter*. The Lord Cobham would  
appear according to the Summons ; but fearing, lest  
Malice and Fury of the Archbishop should engage the  
g against him, drew up the Sum of his Faith in  
ting, according to the Sense of the Apostles Creed,  
presented it to the King ; but the King refused to  
ive it, and suffered him to be cited, even in his  
Presence, and arrested. The Lord Cobham alledged,  
the Archbishop was his avowed Enemy ; and there-  
ought not to be his Judge ; yet if the King saw fit,  
would justify himself by single Combat, either per-  
ully against any Man living, Christian or Heathen,  
o the Truth of his Faith, the King and his Coun-  
only excepted ; or with an hundred Knights or Es-  
es on each Side : But these Offers would not be  
pted ; and so he was obliged to appear before the  
hbishop, and his Suffragans ; where, at diverse Exa-  
ations, he answered with that Courage and Strength  
Reason, that the whole Convocation was at a Loss,  
r to reply. But notwithstanding all he could say,  
was condemned for a Heretick, and sent a Prisoner Condemned  
he Tower ; but he soon made an Escape thence for Heresy.  
*Wales.* In this Synod the Archbishop enacted, that  
the

14.3 the holy Scripture should not be translated into the English Tongue. Not long after, his Tongue, as it is said, while he was pronouncing the Sentence of Excommunication and Condemnation against the Lord Cobham, swelled at such an excessive Rate, that it deprived him wholly of his Speech, and soon after of his Life, not being able to swallow Meat or Drink, so that he was starved to Death.

A pretended Conspiracy against King Henry, by the Lord Cobham and the Lollards. The King kept his Christmas at Eltham in Kent, and on Twelfth-Day Information was brought him, that Sir John Oldcastle Lord Cobham, and his Party, to the Number of twenty thousand, were assembled in St. Giles's Fields, to destroy the Monastery of Westminster, the Cathedral of St. Pauls, and all the Religious Houses in London. Upon this the King went thither with a great Army, about Midnight, and then finding about eighty Men, he fell upon them, slew about twenty, and took the rest Prisoners; the chief of whom were Sir Roger Aston, John Brown Esq. John Beverly, a Preacher, and one Morby a Maltster; so that this meeting seems to have been nothing else but a religious Assembly for the Worship of God, which, because the Lollards could no where safely enjoy, for fear of their Adversaries, they were constrained like the first Christians under Persecution, to celebrate in the Night, in Woods and Thickets, and such was St. Giles's Fields at that Time. However some of them confessing they came there to meet the Lord Cobham, tho' it is certain he was not there, they were condemned as Rebels; thirty of them were hanged, and seven burnt in St. Giles's Fields; and Sir John Aston hanged and buried under the Gallows; and so this imaginary Plot was suppressed.

Henry Chicheley, Archbishop. Upon the Death of Archbishop Arundel, Henry Chicheley, a violent Opposer of the Lollards, was by the King, and the Monks of Canterbury, elected to the Archbishop; but he politickly refused to accept the Office, till he had the Pope's Consent and Confirmation, who, tho' he was at first displeased that they had proceeded so far without his Directions, yet was afterwards pacified by some Gratifications.

The King restores the Earl of Northumberland's Grandson to his Honour and Estate. King Henry hearing of the miserable Condition of Henry Percy, Son to Henry surnamed Hotspur, and Heir to the Earldom of Northumberland; who was carried into Scotland to be educated, but was after kept by

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

415.

he *Scots* as a Prisoner; pitying him, and considering 1 Hen. V.  
as then an Infant, when his Father and Grandfa-  
ther raised the Rebellion, redeemed him, and restored  
to his Honour, Dignity and Estate, which had  
forfeited by his Ancestors; by which generous  
he gained much Respect and Love, both from the  
nobility and Commonalty.

he Parliament met in *April* at *Leicester*, and among Second Par-  
liament.

the Acts one was made very severe against the He-  
resies, as they called them, of the *Lollards*, which rais'd  
a very sharp Persecution against them, in which many  
were burnt, and many, to save their Lives, fled into  
foreign Parts; and others of a timorous Spirit were  
trained to abjure the Truth. This Parliament be-

about to raise the King some Money, he having  
none before, were willing to do it the more largely;  
therefore put up a fresh Petition to the King, (as  
had before done to his Father) to this Effect, *That*

*as much as the temporal Revenues which had been de-*  
*termin'd to be given to religious Persons (amounting to three hun-*  
*and twenty two thousand Marks yearly, and be-*  
*cause the said Sum, diverse religious Houses possessed as*  
*Temporalities, as would maintain fifteen thousand*

The Com-  
mons peti-  
tion the  
King to seize  
the Tempo-  
ralities of  
the Monks.

*Monks and Clerks, allowing to each man seven Marks  
or more) were disorderly consumed and spent, as well to  
the Dishonour of God and Religion, as the Prejudice of  
many Persons themselves, which might be much better  
employ'd for the Safety of the Realm and Relief of the  
poor; they besought the King to take the said Reve-  
nues into his Hands, and to employ them to the Advan-  
ce of himself and the Nation. The King seeming in-  
able to acquiesce with this Petition, it put the Clergy  
in great Ferment, so that Hall says, The fat Abbots be-  
gan to sweat, the proud Priors to frown, the poor Fryars to  
weep, and the silly Nuns to weep, lest their Babel should  
be utterly demolished. Therefore to avert the im-  
pending Storm, it was politickly contrived by Archbi-  
shop Chicheley, and others, to find the King some other  
employment; and accordingly, in a full Parliament,  
the Archbishop with much Eloquence set forth the King's Title to  
the Crown of France, to this Effect, "That King Hen-*

*ry being a Prince so well qualified with Piety, Cou-*  
*rage, and wise Conduct, to govern, not only a small*  
*Kingdom, but the whole World, it would be a great*  
*disgrace if the English should suffer his Power to be*


*diminish'd."* The Arch-  
bishop's  
Speech en-  
couraging  
King Henry  
to a War  
with France.

"con-

" confined within narrower Limits than Nature  
 " Providence had given him ; that tho' indeed  
 " Henry ruled only *England* and *Ireland*, at  
 " yet the Dutchies of *Normandy* and *Aquitaine*  
 " the Countries of *Anjou*, *Gascoigne* and *Maine*  
 " *France*, did by antient Inheritance belong  
 " Crown of *England* ; and the whole Kingdom  
 " *France* was really and truly his, as Heir to King  
 " Edward the third, his Grandfather, who brave  
 " tempted to conquer by Arms, what he could  
 " tain by a just Treary ; That his Majesty had the  
 " Title to demand that Crown, and the same  
 " to denounce War upon a Refusal ; That the  
 " *Philip de Valois* had possessed himself of that Kingdom  
 " upon a pretended fundamental Law, called the  
 " *Salick* Law ; and the *French* would oppose their  
 " *Salick* Law against that Claim, yet that  
 " had been unjustly pleaded, to bar the Kings of  
 " *France*, from their Inheritance ; That the Law  
 " made by *Charles* the Great, when he conquered  
 " Parts of *Germany* between the Rivers *Elbe* and  
 " where having observed the Women to be very  
 " and voluptuous, and consequently unfit to go-  
 " vern, therefore he made a Law wherein was this  
 " *in terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant*, that in  
 " Countries no Woman should rule ; That as the  
 " Pretence of the *French*, that it was made by *Ph-*  
 " *lip*, it was evident there was no Mention made  
 " it in History, till four hundred Years after : But  
 " signified this Law to the *French* Nation, unless  
 " could prove their Country to be situated between  
 " two *German* Rivers ? That the *French* never made  
 " Bar in a Succession of their own ; for it must  
 " appeared, that the Title of the great *Pepin*, the  
 " of *Hugh Capet*, the Possession of *Levi*, the  
 " and of all the *French* Kings to that Day, were  
 " derived from Female Heirs ; so that the Name  
 " *Salick* Law was but a Shift to debar the  
 " Kings from their Claim to the Crown of *France*  
 " But supposing it to be granted, that such a Law  
 " always been observed, yet it was contrary to  
 " Laws of God, and Customs of all Nations :  
 " his Majesty would extend his just Arms into the  
 " els of *France*, there was no true *Englishman*  
 " would be ready to devote his Life and Fortune

## *The Reign of King HENRY V.*

417

service of so great a King ; and in full Persua- <sup>2 Hen. V.</sup>  
of the Justice and Success of the War, the Cler-   
besides their Prayers, would assist him with such  
supply of Money for that End, as no King be-  
him had ever received ; and he did not doubt,  
the Laity, by their Example, would contribute  
Proportion."

Oration had the desired Effect ; for the Parlia- <sup>The Suc-</sup>  
unanimously agreed to give the King their utmost <sup>cess of the</sup>  
ice, for the Recovery of *France* ; and the King <sup>Oration.</sup>  
being inflamed with the Desires of Victory,  
think of nothing but Armies and Laurels. The  
ainst the Temporalities of the Clergy was whol-  
aside, and a Subsidy of thirty thousand Marks  
he King to carry on the War.

War being agreed on, the Method of proceed-  
is next debated. The Earl of *Westmoreland*,  
it most requisite, first to check the *Scots*, the  
Enemies ; but the Duke of *Exeter* judged it  
proper to begin with *France*, the Root and Sup-  
of the other, especially it being at that Time in  
tion by the Factions of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*.  
these Things were transacting in *England*, Em-  
rs came to King *Henry* from the two Factions  
mentioned, and solicited him earnestly, to assist  
each against their Adversaries, making very large  
; to whom the King returned this Answer, *That*  
*ld shortly send over his Embassadors into France,*  
*ify his Resolutions to both of them.* Accordingly

bassy was dispatched to that Kingdom, to King  
the sixth, to require of him, in a peaceable <sup>An Embassy</sup>  
r, to surrender the Kingdom of *France* to him as <sup>sent to</sup>  
wful Heir ; upon which Condition he would <sup>France.</sup>  
s Daughter *Katherine* to Wife, and indow her  
l the Dutchies belonging to the Crown of *France* ;  
ing *Charles* refused, he would enter *France* with  
d Sword, and either recover his Right, or lose  
s. The *French* King having heard the Demands  
Embassadors, answered them in Scorn, *That*  
*usiness required Deliberation.* And the *Dauphin*  
g something of King *Henry*'s effeminate Course  
, when he was Prince of *Wales*, sent him, by Way  
ision, a Tun of *Tennis-Balls*. King *Henry* being  
l at this Treatment, declared, *That as light as*  
*ade of his Demands, he'd make the French know,*  
L. L. E e *that*

1414.

King Henry  
makes Pre-  
parations to  
invade  
France.

that he deserved the Respect of a Prince from them; and that he would send among them such Bulls, as the strongest Walls of France should not be able to withstand.

The King having gotten his Treasury pretty well furnished, sets about preparing for his Expedition with all Haste imaginable, and having raised a very puissant Army, hired a great Number of Ships out of Holland, Zealand, and Freizland, to join with his own Fleet, and provided Engines of Battery of vast Bulk and Force, he ordered the Fleet and Army, to rendezvous at Southampton. The French being terrified at these Preparations, solicited the Scots to annoy England, hoping by that Means to divert the Storm from themselves. Accordingly the Scots raised an Army in order to make Inroads into England; but Sir Robert Hamfray came to an Engagement with them, routed their whole Army, took three hundred and sixty of them Prisoners, and with much Spoil got safe into Roxborough Castle, of which he was Governor.

An Embassy  
from France  
to King  
Henry.

Early in the Spring King Henry took a Journey to Southampton, to see what Readiness his Fleet was in; and in his Journey News was brought him, that a pompous Embassy from the French King was landed at Dover, upon which he retreated to Winchester, to receive them. The Chief of the Ambassadors was the Archbishop of Bourges, who with the rest, were introduced to King Henry, who in great State was sitting in his Chamber, in Robes of Cloth of Gold, leaning on a Cushion: His three Brothers, the Dukes of Clarence, Bedford, and Gloucester, and his Uncle the Duke of York, and many other Noblemen standing on his right Hand, and several Bishops on his left. The Archbishop of Bourges, in an eloquent Speech having set forth the barbarous Cruelties of War, and the Advantages of Peace, made an Offer of several Territories in France, together with the Princess Katherine, the French King's Daughter, and a Dowry of eight hundred thousand Crowns in Gold, if King Henry would immediately disband his Army, and conclude a Peace. The King did not presently give the Ambassadors an Answer to their Proposals, but having seated them royally at his own Table, for several Days, ordered the Archbishop of Canterbury to answer their Proposals as followeth, *That the Dutches of Aquitaine and Anjou, with several Seignories and Dominions, and*

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

419

he belong to his Master, the King of England, as <sup>3 Hen. V.</sup> he had formerly done to his royal Progenitors; and he was fully resolved to recover them by Force, as he not doubt but he should be able to do, by the Divine Assistance; yet for Peace Sake, and to avoid the Loss of any Lives, as would probably perish in the Quarrel, was contented to dismiss his Army, and give over his intended Expedition, if their Master would restore them to him by a Marriage with the Lady Katherine; if not, he would enter France with all his Force; and destroy the People and Towns, with Blood, Fire and Sword, or desist till he had recovered them, which were his just Right and Patrimony. The King himself being content, assented to what the Archbishop had delivered, and promised upon the Word of a Prince, he would persevere it to the uttermost. The Archbishop of Bourges, a lofty Prelate, heard it with Impatience, and in Warmth and Passion replied; That his Majesty, The Embassadors reflect on King Henry., most Christian King, who was the most renowned, mighty and excellent Prince of Europe, without Comparison, both in Blood, Power, and Prebeminence, did offer those Things, which he had propounded, out of respect to King Henry, or his Nation, but merely out of compassion, to avoid the Effusion of Christian Blood; since his Proposals, tho' very advantageous, were denied, God and his Good Subjects would put an End to the Quarrel: And that King Henry was so far from claiming a Right to the Crown of France, that he had no share to that of England, which belonged to the Heirs of King Richard. After this, the Embassadors desired a Passport to depart. The King bore these Insults with great Temper; and with a princely Gravity and Firmness, told the angry Prelate, That he valued not Bravadoes; and as he was satisfied in his Right, so he expected not, but through God's Help he should find Means to recover it; That if his Master had many Subjects to fight him, he doubted not to find their Equals in Number and Courage among his own, by whose Help he would take the highest Crown in France to stoop, and the lowest Mitre to kneel. And giving them his Letters of safe Conduct, bad them go tell their Master, That within three Months he would enter France, as into his just Patrimony; and by God's Assistance take that by force of Sword, which he unjustly detained from him.



1415.

His new  
Demands of  
the French  
King.

King Henry having dismissed the Embassadors, proceeded in his Journey to Southampton, to view the Fleet; and from thence sent his Pursevant at Arms to the French King with Protestations, *That it was not Avarice, but a just Design to recover his Rights, that moved him to war; therefore he once more required him to restore those Provinces, which had been so often demanded by his Embassadors; That it was only the Fear of God, and Love of Peace, that made him so moderate in his Demands; That his Desire was to enjoy a peaceful Life with that excellent Princess, his Daughter; and therefore would relinquish fifty thousand of the Crown offered in Marriage with her, but could not do any Thing to the Prejudice of his Right and Honour.* The French King returned an Answer to this Effect, *That King Henry's Demands were unjust, and that it was very preposterous, to make Love to a Princess covered with the Blood of her Father's Subjects: But since he was resolved upon being his Enemy, and to enter his Dominions in an hostile Manner, he should find him prepared to make such Opposition as should easily repel him.*

The French  
King's Answer.

The War with France being unmoveably resolved upon, King Henry doubled his Diligence to have all Things ready within the three Months appointed, and he went down to Southampton to embark on the last Day of July; but a dangerous Conspiracy, which was formed against him in his Army, being discovered, put Things to a Stop for a small Time.

A great Con-  
spiracy a-  
gainst King  
Henry.

The French King chusing rather to dispatch King Henry by Treachery, than fight him fairly in the Field, had with a Million of Gold bribed three Persons in Favour with the King, viz. Richard, Earl of Cambridge, Brother to the Duke of York, Lord Treasurer, and Sir Thomas Gray, a Privy Councillor, either to kill King Henry in his Voyage to France, or to deliver him up to him. They to make the Design look the more plausible, communicated it to Edmund Mortimer, the Earl of March, pretending, that it was to restore him to his Right, and would have him concur with them, or at least, to take an Oath of Secrecy. The Earl desired them to allow him an Hour's Time to consider of it, which being granted, he went to the King and discovered the whole Conspiracy. The King immediately caused them to be

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

421

prehended, and examined before himself and several <sup>3 Hen. V.</sup> of the Nobility, where confessing the whole Plot, the King told them, *That he could not but with Horrour* sink upon their execrable Fact, which not only tended to the Destruction of his own Person, and the Nobles, his followers, but to the Ruin of the whole Nation, of which they were so unnatural Sons, as to betray it to their Enemies, by this Treason. That as to himself, he desired a Revenge: But as he was supreme Governor of the Nation, he looked upon himself to be obliged to inflict the Punishment upon them, which they had deserved, for the safety of his dear Friends, and the Preservation of the whole Nation: And thereupon wishing them an hearty Repentance for their Offences, and Mercy from God, he commanded them to be executed; And the Execution was performed in the Face of the whole Army. The Lord Scroop was drawn, hanged and quarter'd, the Earl of Cambridge and Lord Grey beheaded.

These Conspirators being punished, the King put forward his Expedition, and having called his Nobles to him, he represented to them the Glory of this Enterprize against France, and how much he depended upon their Fidelity and Courage, and told them, *That the reason, which by God's Mercy he had so lately escaped, would make him value their Loyalty to him the more, if they persisted in their Duty, and he would not be forgetful to reward it; and in Confidence of their Firmness to him, he was resolved to proceed in his Design against France; and that he would not only be a Partner with them in all Hazards, but also foremost in the Danger.* The Nobles being moved with this generous Declaration, fell down on their Knees, and promised him faithfully to serve and obey him, and rather die than suffer him to fall into the Hands of his Enemies. With this Encouragement, on August the seventh, the King, his two Brothers, the Dukes of Clarence and Gloucester, his Uncle the Duke of York, and a great Body of Nobility and Gentry, went on board the Fleet, consisting of one thousand five hundred Vessels, with an army consisting of six thousand Men at Arms, and twenty four thousand Archers, besides Gunners, Engineers, Artificers and Labourers; and on the fifteenth arrived at the Mouth of the River *Seyne*, in France, twelve Miles from *Harfleur*, where he landed his Army, without any Opposition; and falling down on his


King Henry  
proceeds in  
his Expedition.

11415. **W**KNEES, he desired God's Assistance to recover his Right; then put forth a Proclamation, forbidding his Soldiers, upon Pain of Death, to plunder Churches, or Monasteries, to abuse any Priest, Woman, or unarmed Person. The next Day he sent to view *Harfleur*, and marching to it, besieged it on the seventeenth: The Town being strong, and commodiously seated between two Hills, as well as strongly garisoned, made a stout Resistance. The King posted his Party on one Hill, and his Brother *Clarence* upon the other; and having commanded the Ships to cast Anchor as near the Town, as they could with Safety, it was besieged both by Sea and Land. The Duke of *Glocester*, who carried on the Siege, endeavoured to reduce it with all Expedition imaginable, by Mines, battering the Walls with Engines, and continual Assaults; but the Besieged stopping the Course of the River, so swelled it, that it became dangerous to the King's Camp. While the King lay before the Town, he sent a Letter of Defiance to the Dauphine of *France*, challenging him to a single Combat, that the Lives of so many Men might be spared; upon Condition, that if the Dauphine fell in the Encounter, the Crown of *France*, and its Dependencies should be surrendered to King *Henry*, after the Death of the present *French King*; but the Dauphine returned him no Answer. At Length the Town being reduced to very great Streights, solicited the *French King* for Relief; but not obtaining any, they capitulated, and on the twenty second Day of *September*, the Governour with twenty four Captains and Burghers, came out of the Town to King *Henry*, who then sat in his Pavillion, in great State; and prostrating themselves at his Feet delivered the Keys of the Town to him, upon Condition, that if no Relief came in five Days, they would surrender the Town, which they performed accordingly, after a Siege of five Weeks; and King *Henry* made his Entrance into the Town, in a most humble Manner, walking barefoot through the Streets to the Church of *St. Martins*, where he gave solemn Thanks to God, for the Prosperity of his Arms. The Soldiers, and Inhabitants being suffered to depart, but unarmed; the Prey was given to the Soldiers, who enrich'd themselves with the Spoils of a Place grown opulent by Piracy: And having made his Uncle *Thomas Beaufort* Earl

King Henry  
challengeth  
the Dau-  
phine.

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

423.

of *Dorset*, Governor, and supplied it with a good <sup>3 Hen. V.</sup> son, he peopled it with *English*, whom he invited er, giving all such Families as would go over, and Children after them, their Dwellings for nothing, which so many accepted that the Town was well peopled with *English* in a very short Time.

And now the Season being far advanc'd, and the King *Henry*'s Army very much weakned, and grown sickly <sup>marches towards Calais.</sup> lying in the Field, a great many of them dying of bloody Flux, the King resolved to send the Army

Winter-Quarters to *Calais*: But for the Glory of *English* Name, he resolv'd not to go by Sea, but to march directly through the Enemy's Country. But

*French* King sent the *Dauphine* and Duke of *Brittain*, with a considerable Force to obstruct the <sup>The French with a great Army oppose him.</sup> march of the Army, who by continual Skirmishes,

knocking down the Bridges, stopping up the High-ways,

stopping the Rivers where they were fordable, and conveying their Provisions out of the Countries where

*English* were to pass, had involved them in so many Difficulties, that they thought King *Henry* and his whole Army, would be caught as a Deer in a Toil.

King *Henry* kept on his March, designing to pass the River at *Blanchetaque*, but that was too well defended

then he march'd to *Vermes*, but that was secur'd likewise; then intending to pass the River at *Pont St. Pierre*,

that was likewise guarded; so he march'd by the River *Hargess*, the *French* Army marching along on the other Bank, till passing by *Amiens*, *Bowes*, and *Corbie*,

hearing that the River was fordable at *Bethencourt*, he sent the Remains of the Garison of *St. Quintin*, he

cross'd the River *Somme*. In this tedious Journey, they

encountred many Difficulties, partly thro' Want of <sup>He is extremely incommoded.</sup> Provisions, and partly from the Assaults of the Enemies in their Garisons; for tho' the King's great Justice

restraining the Army from pillaging, and in hanging the Thieves who had stolen a Pix out of a Church, procur'd

great Love from the People of the Country, so that they sold them Provisions contrary to their own King's prohibition; yet the Supply that came that Way was

sufficient for their Subsistence. In this Manner King *Henry* marched till towards the End of *October*, when he came in View of the *French* Army near *Agin-court*,

where he commanded the Horsemen to alight, and the

whole

1415. whole Army to kneel down, and implore the divine Assistance to make them victorious.

The French Army under the Command of the Constable, and the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, now lying between King Henry's Army and the Town of Calais, they sent three Heralds to King Henry with a Challenge to give them Battle, leaving it to him to fix the Time.

He is challenged by the French.


The King receiv'd the Heralds very kindly, and sent two of his own with them to signify to the French Generals, that they well knew he had lately kept on a constant March, and they might have fought him when they pleas'd, therefore if they desir'd a general Battle, there was no Need of appointing Time and Place, since they should always find him in the open Field: That his great Care was not to do any Thing unworthy of himself; and as he would not be the first Aggressor, yet when once attack'd, he would not decline fighting: That he was resolv'd to continue his March to Calais, and whoever endeavour'd to stop him, should do it at their Peril; and therefore he advis'd them not to oppose his Passage, that those Fields might not be stain'd with Christian Blood. After this Answer, King Henry kept on his Way, and on the 30<sup>th</sup> of October the French Generals sent again to King Henry to let him know they would give him Battle the next Saturday. The King gave the Herald two hundred Crowns and a rich Robe, and dismissed him: After that Time he rode every Day in Armour, and us'd all Methods to rouse the Courage of his Soldiers. The King having sent out one David Gain with a Party of Welch, to get Intelligence of the Strength of the Enemy, he made this gallant Report to him, *May it please you, my Liege, there are enough to be kill'd, enough to be taken Prisoners, and enough to run away.* And indeed the Difference in Number was very great; for the French Army, according to their own Writers, amounted to an hundred and forty thousand, and they fresh and vigorous, and well supplied with Provisions; whereas King Henry's amounted to no more than nine or ten thousand, and those half starv'd and tir'd with Travel, and many of them sick. These great Advantages made the French so confident and presuming, that they commanded all the neighbouring Cities and Towns to make publick Rejoicings, as for a certain Victory; and in Scorn sent one to King Henry, to demand, *what he would give for his Ransom?* To which he replied, *that*

## *The Reign of King HENRY V.*

425

*be hop'd within a few Hours to reduce the French to such a Condition, that they should have the sole Care of providing Ransoms.* 3 Hen. V.

The French being secure of Victory, pass'd the Night preceding the Day of Battel in Jollity and Mirth, Drink-<sup>King Henry's</sup> ing, Gaming, Triumphs and all the Insults of merciless <sup>Preparation</sup> Conquerors. King Henry on the other Hand, seeing a <sup>for the Battle</sup> Battel unavoidable, and the Enemy rang'd ready to fall on them if they lay still, or block up all Ways if he press'd forward, made all the Preparation so short a Time would admit; and having call'd a Council of his Officers, he declar'd, *that since the implacable Enemy would be satisfied with nothing but their Blood, there were now no Hopes of Safety but in the Protection of Heaven and their own Courage: That if they would rely upon those two, they had no Reason to fear an Army so far exceeding them in Strength and Number: Therefore confessing their Sins, and making their Peace with the Almighty, they should prepare for the glorious Battel, not doubting but he would be their Deliverer.* And accordingly they spent the Night in Prayers and Confessions. The important Morning approaching, the French took the Field, and King Henry knowing that their Strength consisted chiefly in their Horse, ordered his Men to take every one a sharp Stake, six or seven Foot long, shod with Iron at both Ends, which being fixed in the Ground leaning forward, might keep off the Horse from rushing in upon his Foot. He likewise ordered two hundred stout Bowmen to lodge themselves in a low Meadow, cover'd from the Enemy's Sight by Bushes, and secur'd from the Horse by a Ditch. The Flanks of his Army were guarded by Woods, in one of which he plac'd an Ambush of Horse, with Orders to attack the Enemy in the Rear, when the Battel was join'd: He had the Town on his Back, and the Stakes fixed in the Front. The Van-guard was commanded by the Duke of York, who desired that Service; the main Body was led by the King himself, all in compleat shining Armour; his Shield quarter'd with the Arms of *England* and *France*; on his Helmet for a Crest he had a bright Crown of Gold, made after the Imperial Form; the Furniture and Caparisons of his Horse richly embroider'd with the glorious Ensigns of the *English* Monarchy, and the Royal Standard richly adorn'd born before him. On the other hand, the French Army was


1415.  was led by the Flower of their Nobility, and drawn up in three Lines: The first commanded by the Constable of France, and the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon; the second by the Duke of Berry, Alençon and Nevers; the third by the Duke of Brabant, Earls of Marle and Funquenberge.

The Battle at Agincourt.

The two Armies stood thus drawn up till between Nine and Ten in the Morning, when King Henry riding in the Front of his Batalions, by his Behaviour and Words animated the Courage of the Soldiers, telling them, *that they were now entering into the most glorious Field of Honour, which by their Valour might prove more renowned than those of Cressy and Poitiers; That as for his own Part, England should never be charg'd with his Ransom, nor any Frenchman triumph over him; but Death or Victory should be his certain Fate, as he expected it would be theirs. He was sensible, from the noble Fury sparkling in their Eyes, that future Ages would stand amaz'd at what the Lance, the Ax, the Sword and the Bow could perform in the Hands of such valiant Soldiers: Yet tho' these were the brave Instruments to reap Honour, he relied upon Omnipotence for the Victory; and it was a remarkable Effect of Divine Providence, that their Enemies offered them Battle on the very Day appointed in England, for the People to implore a Blessing on their Arms: So that at the Time that they were fighting, the whole Body of the English Nation were lifting up their Eyes and Hands to Heaven for their Success and Safety. If they were victorious now, they would not only enrich themselves with the Wealth of so many Nations gathered together; but a Kingdom to which he had an undoubted Right would be conquer'd, and England from that Time would give Laws to France.* The Soldiers being, by the King's Speech, inspir'd with new Valour, call'd out to be led on immediately to Battle; and the Dukes of York, Clarence, and Gloucester advis'd the King not to suffer their first Ardour to cool. And tho' he was unwilling to quit the Advantages of his Ground, but expected the French to give the first Charge; yet finding the Eagerness of his Men was no longer to be restrain'd, he cried aloud, *Since our Enemies have intercepted our Way to Calais, let us break thro' their Army in the Name of the most glorious Trinity, and in the most propitious Hour of the whole Year.* Then lighting from his Horse, he commanded

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

427

ded his Standards to move forward, and the Arch- <sup>3 Hen. V.</sup>  
upon the right and left to advance upon the Enemy.   
ir *Thomas Erpingham*, an old experienc'd Knight,  
'd the Army with a Truncheon in his Hand, and gave  
Signal of Battle by throwing it up into the Air, at  
ch the whole Army gave a Shout which seem-  
o rend the Skies. They perceiving the *French* not to  
ve towards them, halted a little to take Breath, and  
e a second Shout; upon which, the *French* rushed  
ward upon the *English* with their Horse, but were so  
'd by the *English* Archers, that they madly ran on  
hout Order, the hindermost Ranks pressing those be-  
e; and the Horses being wounded by the Arrows,  
e grown furious and ungovernable, and being  
dlesly spur'd on, ran upon the pointed Stakes, and  
owing their Riders, cruelly impal'd many of them.  
e *English* continued to pour Vollies of Arrows up-  
the disordered Enemies, who not being able to suf-  
the Shower of them, fell back with that Precipita-  
n upon their main Body, that they broke all their  
nks. The Archers seeing their Ranks open, threw  
ay their Bows, and with Sword and Battle-Axe  
h'd into close Fight, and the *French* being in that  
nfusion, they slew great Numbers of them.  
In the mean Time, King *Henry* advanced to charge  
: second Line of the *French*, and fought bravely in <sup>The great  
Valour of  
King Henry.</sup>  
: Front of all his Men, where eighteen *French* Gen-  
men having resolutely combin'd to slay him, charg'd  
so close to him, that one of them struck him on the  
est of his Helmet with a Battle-Axe, but they were  
slain. And the Duke of *Glocester* being likewise  
uck down with Battle-Axes, the King bravely stood  
er him, defended him, and sav'd his Life. The *Eng-*  
*b* being animated by the Bravery of their King, broke  
to the *French* Battalions, and put them out of Order;  
d the *English* Horse which had been placed in an  
mbuscade behind the Wood, rush'd out with a mighty  
out, and with great Fury attack'd the Rear of the  
*French*. Upon this, the Duke of *Alençon*, seeing the  
ittle lost, out of Desperation press'd into the thickest  
the Fight, and crying out he was the Duke of *Alen-*  
*çon*, attack'd King *Henry* in Person, and with a violent  
low of his Sword cleav'd off a great Part of the Crown  
hich was the Crest of the King's Helmet. The King  
ous'd with this Blow, furiously struck *Alençon* to the  
Ground,



*1445*  
Ground, and slew two of his Followers with his own Hand. The King's Attendants being enrag'd at the Sight of their Prince's Danger immediately surrounded the Duke, and with many Wounds dispatched him, tho' the King call'd out for them to save so gallant a Man.

The French  
do.

The Rere-Guard of the *French* were yet in good Order; but seeing the two first Lines of their Army intirely routed, they were dismay'd; and observing the *English* Horse wheeling off to charge them, they fled without making any Resistance. The *English* persued, having nothing to do but kill, and take Prisoners. Some flying Troops of the *French* had rallied and made a Stand at some Distance; which the King perceiving, he sent a Herald to them, threatening them, *that if they did presume to withstand his Army, he would shew them no Mercy.* This so terrified them that they withdrew all but 600, who were all cut to Pieces. When King *Henry* thought he had clear'd the Field of his Enemies, he was suddenly alarm'd with a Report that the *French* had entred his

A Party of  
French plunder  
the *English*  
Camp.

Camp, and plunder'd it: For in the Flight, the Rere-Guard of the *French* which got off almost intire, set upon the King's Camp which was but slenderly guarded, and killing those that defended it, pillag'd it, taking the King's Crown, and a rich Sword set with Diamonds which they carried off, as if the Victory had been theirs. King *Henry* hearing a great Cry in the Camp, suppos'd that the *French* had been gotten together in a Body again; and seeing the King of *Sicily* come in with some fresh Troops, began to fear the Loss of his new gotten Victory; and knowing that the Number of his Prisoners exceeded that of his own Men, and that it was impossible at the same Time, to fight and secure them from killing his Soldiers, he, not without great Regret, immediately gave Orders to slay all the Prisoners, but some of the greatest Quality. But this Fear soon vanish'd; for the King of *Sicily* seeing the *French* Army routed, drew off without fighting; and so King *Henry* caus'd a Retreat to be sound'd about four a Clock in the Afternoon, and the Soldiers having plunder'd the slain and wounded, retreated. The base Surprisal of the King's Camp having been one chief Cause of the Slaughter of the *French* Prisoners, was so resented by the Duke of *Burgundy*; that considering the Party who had plunder'd the *English* Camp had cowardly deserted the Army in Danger, and by pillaging the *English* for their own pri-

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

429

private Gain, had been the Cause that their braver Bre-<sup>3 Hen. V.</sup>thren who had been taken in the Fight had been killed in cool Blood, a he put the chief Actors in Prison, and would have put them to Death, had it not been for the Mediation of his Son, to whom they presented King Henry's Sword, the Guards of which were of Gold beset with Jewels, of great Value.

In this Battle there were kill'd on the *French* Side the Constable and Admiral of *France*, the Dukes of *Barr*, *Brabant* and *Alençon*, the Earls of *Nevers*, *Blamont*, *Vandemont*, *Faukemberge* and *Roussy*, and many other Noblemen. In all there were about ten thousand slain, of whom about seven or eight thousand of them were noble, and above an hundred of them Princes, who had Banners born before them. *Elmhurst* relates, that there were kill'd one Archbishop, three Dukes, six Earls, ninety two Barons, fifteen hundred Knights, and seven thousand Esquires and Gentlemen. Of the Prisoners sixteen hundred were Men of Quality, among whom were the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Bourbon*, the Marshal *Foucault*, and the Earls of *Richemont*, *Vendosme*, and *Eu*. On the Side of the *English*, the Loss was very inconsiderable: For *Walsingham* reckons only the Duke of *Tork* King Henry's Uncle, *Michael de la Pole* Earl of *Suffolk*, four Knights, one Esquire, and twenty eight common Soldiers, tho' the *French* Historians account the Number of the slain to have been about four or five hundred. In the Evening at the Head of his Army King Henry solemnly prais'd God for his Success, ordering the hundred and fiftenth Psalm to be sung, and at that Verse, *Not unto us, O Lord, not unto us, but to thy Name be the Glory*, he commanded all his Army to prostrate themselves to the Ground, as a Sign of their Humility. And afterwards, to his Nobility, and Officers, and five *French* Heralds, who were sent to desire Leave to bury their Dead, he declar'd, *that it was not his own, but an Almighty Hand, which had gain'd so great a Victory; and that the dismal Sight they saw before their Eyes, was ordered by divine Justice to punish the Sins of France*. Then he demanded of the *French* and *English* Heralds, *Whether he or the King of France was to be acknowledg'd Conqueror?* And being answer'd, *that he was*, he enquir'd the Name of the next Castle, and being told it was *Agincourt*, he said, *Then let this day and all Posterity be called the Battle of AGINCOURT*.

Then

1415. Then the Night growing on, he marched with his fatigu'd Troops to *Mascomelles*, where they had lodged the Night before, and refreshed themselves with the Provisions of the *French* Camp.

King Henry  
marches to  
Calais.

The Day after the Battle, King Henry continued his March towards *Calais*; and passing by the Field of Battle, he ordered Search to be made for all the *English*, whom he caus'd to be interr'd according to their Quality, bringing along with him the Bodies of the Duke of *Tork*, and Earl of *Suffolk* to be honourably interr'd in *England*. Upon viewing the Field of Battle and his Army, he made a Speech to them, applauding their Valour, but admonishing them, to ascribe all to the Favour of the Almighty, who had wrought a Miracle, in making a Handful of Men victorious over such a numerous Army, to abate their Vanity and Presumption. And added, that he could not but adore the Divine Providence for its Care of the Lives of his Subjects, that so few had fallen in Battle. Yet he could not behold such Streams of Blood, and Heaps of Carcasses, tho' of Enemies, without Horror; but the Sight of his own Fellow-Soldiers affected him with the tenderest Compassion, therefore he had performed the last Rites due to such magnanimous Souls, in burying their Bodies, that they might not be expos'd to Wolves and Vultures.

King Henry's  
Carriage  
to the French  
Prisoners.

Then marching forward, after two Days he arriv'd at *Calais*, and by the Way treated the Dukes of *Orleans*, *Bourbon*, and other Prisoners, with very obliging Carriage, condoling their Condition, and applauding their Valour, attributing nothing to himself, but all to the Hand of Heaven, in punishing the Sins of *France*; and having nobly entertained them at Dinner, afterwards presented each of them with a Robe of rich *Damask*, testifying the same Inclinations to Peace now, that he had before he began the War. And taking Notice that the Duke of *Orleans* was very melancholy, and declin'd eating, King Henry, in a very obliging Air, said to him, *Courage, good Cousin, I have not conquer'd you, because I am superior in Merit; but because God would punish the French People for their Sins, and if he is justly angry with them, it is not decent for you to be angry with him, or to repine at his Proceedings.*

The Duke of  
Burgundy  
challenges  
Henry.

Not long after the Duke of *Burgundy* being enrag'd at the Loss of the Duke of *Brabant*, and Count de *Nevers*, his two Brothers, sent a Herald with a Gauntlet of Defiance to King Henry, threatening him with the

## Reign of King HENRY V.

432

avenge. The King return'd the Gauntlet with <sup>3 Hen. V.</sup> *miners*, with this Answer, *Go tell your Master, I have no Reason to be my Enemy; that I am sorry for the Death of his Brothers, which is not to be charged on my Soldiers; and if he please to come to Boulogne, I shall be satisfied from the Prisoners I have, that they alone are guilty of their Blood, and of them be avenged it.*

The King remained at *Calais* a while, intending to follow up his Victory closely, had the Season permitted; <sup>lands at Dover.</sup> but the weather being very wet and unfit for Action, he immediately set sail for *England*, the 16<sup>th</sup> of November, and after a long and dangerous Passage, landed at *Dover* there where he was received with the loud Acclamations of the People. Arriving near *Canterbury* he was met by the Bishop, Abbot and Monks in their richest Habits, and approaching near *London*, by the Mayor, Aldermen and four hundred of the principal Citizens in their Habits, who attended his coming on *Black Heath*, and the Clergy in a solemn Procession with the Relics of seventy Saints at *St. Thomas a Waterings*. The Streets of *London* were hung with the richest Tapestries, and Psalms and Hymns were sung, as he went <sup>His Entry into London.</sup> to the Joy of the Victory. However, the King was not taken with these outward Ceremonies, that he would have any Songs or Ballads should be made of the Victory, ascribing all to God: Nor would he permit any Arms, Helmet and bruised Armour to be carried in Triumph, as Trophies of his daring Valour. At *St. Dunstons Cathedral* he alighted from his Horse, and made Prayers with great Devotion, and then proceeded to *Winchester*, where his Palace was prepar'd for the Reception of him and the noblest of his *French* Prisoners. The next Morning the Mayor and Aldermen, accompanied with two hundred of the Citizens, presented him with a thousand Pound in two Balcons of equal Value, which the King received very graciously. Then he appointed a Day of publick Thanksgiving, and summoned a great Number of Bishops and Abbots to celebrate the Obsequies of the Duke of *York* and Earl of *Gloucester*, and interr'd the Body of the Duke of *York* at *Windsor* in *Northamptonshire*, and that of the Earl of *Gloucester* at *Ewelme* in *Oxfordshire*. But the good Success of the Battle was not more joyfully receiv'd by the English, than the ill Success of it was lamented by the *French*;

1446. *French*; and the *Dauphine*, the Heir of the Crown, took it so grievously, that he died soon after of mere Sorrow.

The Bravery  
of the Earl  
of Dorset in  
Normandy.

After this, the Earl of *Dorset* who was Governor of *Harfleur*, made an Inroad into *Normandy*, almost as far as *Rouen*, where the King of *France* and his Countenances were, and got a great Booty of Money, Prisoners, and Cattle; but being attack'd by the Earl of *Armagnac* the Constable of *France*, with a superior Force, was so distressed that he was forced to retire into an Orchard well fenced with Ditches and Banks, with the Loss of three hundred of his Men, and all their Provisions. After this, the *French* withdrew to a neighbouring Village that Night, and in the Morning pursued the *English* again, when being much superior in Number and the Advantage of the Place, the Constable thought himself so secure of Victory, that he sent an Herald to the Earl of *Dorset* to summon him to surrender himself and all his Men Prisoners: To which the Earl heroically replied, that it was not the Custom for the *English* to yield without fighting; nor was he so cowardly as to surrender to an Enemy whom God might deliver into his Power. After which, *Armagnac* attack'd the *English* very furiously; but they made so gallant a Defence, that they defeated the Constable with the Loss of twelve hundred of his Men, altho' their Numbers were so unequal, that *Walsingham* says the *English* were but fifteen hundred, and the *French* fifteen thousand. The Constable of *France*, to repair this Disgrace, hang'd up some of his Men; and then having receiv'd a Reinforcement, besieg'd the Town of *Harfleur* by Land, while the Vice-Admiral of *France* block'd it up by Sea.

Third Parli-  
ament.

On Monday March 16. the King summoned a Parliament, but demanded no Money of them; and after they had enacted several Laws for the Good of the Publick, they were prorogu'd upon Account of the Coming of the Emperor.

Sigismund  
the Emperor  
comes into  
England.

For *Sigismund* the Emperor, Cousin German to King *Henry*, and a very wise and learned Prince, came into *England* the Beginning of *May*, to endeavour to make Peace between the Kings of *England* and *France*. He had before been at the *French* Court, where he earnestly solicited the King, and he seeming inclinable to it, he brought with him the Archbishop of *Rheims* as an Agent for the *French* King, and travel'd in State, be-

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

433

attended with eight hundred Horse to *Calais*, in order to visit King *Henry* in *England*. Being arriv'd at *Calais*, he was entertain'd by the Earl of *Warwick* the Governor, with that Magnificence and Gallantry, that the Emperor was so charm'd with his Reception, that afterwards told King *Henry*, *that no Christian Prince* *Knights equal to him for Wisdom, good Breeding* *Courage; and if all Courtesie were lost, it might be found again in the Earl of Warwick.* The Earl of *Warwick* sent thirty of the King's Ships to carry him to *France*, with his Retinue, which consisted of a thousand men, among whom were many sovereign Princes of the *North* of *Germany*. King *Henry* having had Intelligence of his coming, sent the Duke of *Glocester* with a large Train of Nobility to meet him at *Dover*, commanding them to meet him on the Shore with their drawn Swords, and to demand of him, *whether he came as a Propositor of Peace only, and the King's Friend, or as an Invader, to claim England as Part of his Dominions:* the former, they were ready to give him a kind Welcome; but if as the latter, to resist his Entrance: which they performed exactly, entering into the Water with their drawn Swords in their Hands. The Emperour gave Answer with a Smile, *that he came as the King's Friend, and to make Peace between England and France.* Upon this Answer, he was receiv'd by the Nobility, and honourably conducted, being met at *Windsor* by the Archbishop, at *Rockester* by the Duke of *Bedford*, at *Dartford* by the Duke of *Clarence*, and at *Black-Heath* by the King himself, who conducted him to his Palace at *Westminster*; where he was magnificently entertain'd at the King's Charge, who the more to honour him, install'd him Knight of the Garter at *Windsor* in the most pompous Manner; which Honour the Emperor so esteem'd, that he always wore the Collar when he sat in any Assembly.

The Emperor was very earnest with King *Henry* to make a Peace with *France*, and his Persuasion had almost wrought upon the King to comply: But the *French* giving over their Acts of Hostility, while they knew *France* was in Agitation, but taking all Advantages, King *Henry* would not bear such Usage. The Emperor therefore saw it in vain to use any farther Endeavour; for the King was so incens'd, that he recall'd

5 L. I. F f his

his Ambassadors, resolv'd to prosecute the War with the utmost Vigour. The Emperor therefore entered into a League with King Henry, to this Effect; "That the Emperor and King England would be Friends and Confederates to each other against all Persons whatsoever, the Church and Pope of Rome only excepted. 1. That neither of them should pursue any Designs injurious to the other's Advantage; but contribute all they could to the Advancement of each other's Honour and fit. 3. That the Subjects of both Princes should have free Liberty of trading in all their Dominions without any Acts of Hostility, paying the usual Tolls and Customs. 4. That neither of the two Princes should engage in any War without the Knowledge and Consent of the other. 5. That neither should allow Sanctuary to any Rebel or Exile, nor to any Subjects. 6. That neither of them might prosecute the War against France for the Recovery of their Rights; and that they should mutually assist each other for the obtaining that End. 7. That if a Peace should be concluded with France, and the Territories demanded were restor'd, they should mutually support one another in Possession of them." This League was concluded and sign'd the 10th of August, and ratified by the Parliament the 10th of October following.

The French  
defeated at  
Hesdin.

While the Emperor remain'd in England, the French who had block'd up Harfleur, resolv'd to rig out their greatest naval Power they could, and for that End sent red Ships from Genoa, Spain and Flanders, which with their own Ships, made a Fleet of five hundred Sail, and signing with them to annoy the English. King Henry would have gone in Person against them; but the Emperor dissuaded him from it. And he having fitted out about four hundred Sail, man'd with twenty thousand Men, committed the Charge to his Brother the Duke of Bedford, accompanied with other Noblemen; who after a long Engagement, so prevail'd, that the French Fleet was, most of it, either batter'd, taken, or sunk, so that it is reported they lost twenty thousand Men. After this the Duke supply'd Harfleur, which was in great Want of Provisions; upon which the Countable of Harfleur despairing of Success rais'd the Siege, and march'd to Paris. This extraordinary Service was so admir'd by the Emperor, who heard of the Success of the English,

lect, before he could have imagined them to be got  
 either, that he openly declar'd, that *England was happy*  
*in having such a King, but the King more happy in ha-*  
*ving such Subjects.* 4 Hen. V.

The Emperor having finish'd his Affairs in *England*,  
 returns to *Germany*, King *Henry* bearing him Company  
 to *Calais*, where the Duke of *Burgundy* repaired to pay  
 his Homage to the *Emperor*. King *Henry*, in Hopes of  
 farther Amity with him, sent his Brother the Duke of  
*Gloucester*, and the Earl of *March*, to lie at *St. Omers*, as  
 hostages for the Duke of *Burgundy's* safe Conduct, send-  
 ing also the Earl of *Warwick* to conduct him to *Calais*,  
 where he was very honourably receiv'd both by the  
 Emperor and King *Henry*. And it appears from the  
 archives of *France*, that secret Articles were sign'd at  
*Calais*, by the Duke of *Burgundy*, in Vindication of King  
*Henry's* Title to *France*, acknowledging him to be the  
 rightful King, and that in due Time he would declare  
 for him; but in a few Months Time he had so for-  
 gotten all, that he consented and swore to a League  
 with the King and *Dauphine* of *France*, against the  
 Power of *England*, and acted accordingly.

The King  
 accompanies  
 the Emperor  
 to *Calais*.

The Duke  
 of *Burgun-*  
*dy's* false  
 dealing.

The Emperor being about to return into *Germany*,  
 shew'd a very great Satisfaction at the plain and ingenu-  
 ity of the *English*, and his Detestation of the  
 insincerity and mean Shifts of the *French*. The Corre-  
 spondence had been so free and open between him and  
 King *Henry*, that one conceal'd not any Thing from  
 the other, so that the like Confidence and mutual Af-  
 fection was scarce known between two such great Prin-  
 ces. After reciprocal Friendships, the Emperor em-  
 bark'd for *Dort*, being accompanied by the Duke of *Glo-*  
*cester* and many Knights and Gentlemen. The Empe-  
 ror went first to *Dort*, and from thence to the Council  
 at *Constance*, which continued for three Years to decide  
 the Controversy between three contending Popes: For  
 the *Spaniards* had elected *Benedict XIII.* the *French* *Greg-*  
*ory XII.* and the *Italians* *John XXIV.* at which Coun-  
 cil there were several Princes, four Patriarchs, twenty  
 seven Cardinals, forty seven Archbishops, one hundred  
 and sixty Bishops, Barons and Gentlemen of all Nati-  
 ons, with their Attendants, to the Number of thirty thou-  
 sand. By this Council the three Popes were depriv'd  
 of the Papal Dignity, and *Osbo Colonna* made Pope by

The Empe-  
 ror returns  
 to *Germany*.



1416.

the Name of *Martin V.* In this Choice the *English* Prelates had the greatest Interest.

Fourth Par-  
liament.

King *Henry* being returned from *Calais*, called a Parliament, and by his Chancellor acquainted them, that tho' for the Ease and Quiet of his Subjects, he had waved the Pursuit of his Conquests, which God had so successfully begun, and had condescended to disadvantageous Terms of Peace; yet the *French* had rejected all, and against the Law of Arms, denied upon Reason to deliver the Prisoners taken at *Agincourt*; and therefore since he could not give over the War with Honour, he hoped that they would give him such Supplies of Money, as were necessary for so great an Undertaking. The Parliament readily assented and granted him a Fifteenth of the Laity, and two Tenths of the Clergy; but the King not thinking this sufficient pawn'd his Crown to the Bishop of *Winchester*, for twenty thousand Pounds, and his Jewels to the City of *London*, for ten thousand Marks.

King *Henry's*  
second Ex-  
pedition in-  
to *France*.

After *Christmas*, the King set himself with all Diligence, to make Preparations for his second Expedition to *France*; and in the Spring having gotten an Army of twenty five thousand stout Soldiers, and fifteen hundred Ships designed to set sail, as soon as the Weather and Seas should favour him. But having Intelligence that the *French* Army had hired foreign Ships, in order to hinder his Passage, he sent his Fleet before to scour the narrow Seas, which did his Business so effectually, by taking some, and sinking others, that he set sail from *Southampton*, in a Ship with Sails of purple Silk, most richly embroidered with Gold. *July* the 28<sup>th</sup>, and landed in *Normandy* *August* the 1<sup>st</sup>, where to encourage them in future Attempts, he sent forty eight Knights of the most valiant of his Captains. The Arrival of the *English* was no sooner known in *Normandy*, but the Inhabitants were so terrified, that they fled either into walled Towns and Castles, or into *Bretagne*, leaving the Country open to the Will of the Invaders.


1417.  
Several Ca-  
stles and  
Towns ta-  
ken by the  
*English*.

After King *Henry* had viewed *Harfleur*, his first Attempt was upon *Conquest* one of the strongest Castles in *Normandy*, and having taken it in a small Time, he gave it and the Demesnes belonging to it, to his Brother the Duke of *Clarence*; and having won the Castle of *Douvillers* much about the same Time, he gave that to the

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

437

of *Salisbury*, and also that of *Lovers* to the Earl Mar- s Hen. V.

Next he marched against *Caen*, one of the strongest  best Towns in *Normandy*; which Town, tho' well  
ided with Men, Ammunition, and Provision, and  
utely defended, yet he took it by Storm *Caen taken*  
he Castle still held out, but despairing of Relief, by Storm.  
ndred the 20<sup>th</sup> of *September*. King *Henry* peopled  
Town with *English*. The taking of this Town  
o terrify the neighbouring Towns, that fourteen  
ns and Castles voluntarily surrendered to King  
y; who having taken an Oath of Fidelity of  
l, permitted them to enjoy their former Privileges.  
ikewise published a Proclamation, that they who  
ntarily submitted themselves, should enjoy all Safe-  
d Privileges under his Government; but those who  
fled from their Habitations, if they did not return  
certain Day, he would give their Lands to the  
iers. After this, on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *December*, he sat  
n before the strong Town and Castle of *Falaise*,  
h surrendered upon Articles.

While King *Henry* had in four Months recovered The Scots  
greatest Part of those Dominions in *France*, that invade Eng-  
niently belong to the Kings of *England*, the *Scots* land.  
ing he had left his own Nation unprovided, invaded  
land with a great Army, wasting the Country with  
and Sword, and besieged the Castles of *Berwick*  
*Roxburgh*: And that they might have the Assistance  
o *English*, they brought with them a Person,  
m they pretended to be King *Richard*. But the  
try of the Northern Parts raising Forces, and the  
e of *Exeter* marching his Forces thither, they were  
to muster an hundred thousand Men; the News of  
h so terrified the *Scots*, that they rais'd the Sieges,  
departed in a Fright.

Parliament was call'd in the King's Absence, by Fifth Parlia-  
Duke of *Bedford*, the Regent of the Nation, and ment.  
ng given the King a Supply for carrying on the  
; the most remarkable Transaction during the Ses-  
was the Trial and Condemnation of the Lord  
am, who having for four Years shifted about from  
e to Place, to secure himself from his Enemies,  
after a noble Resistance, and many Wounds, The Lord  
n in *Powisland* in *Wales* by the Lord *Powis*, and Cobham ra-  
up Prisoner to the Tower, in order to his Trial. ken, senten-  
h him were taken some Mass Books, with the Fa- ced, and ex-  
ecuted.

1479. ces of the Sa  
 Names blotter or *l'Arbre de Vie* were deliver'd  
 to the Archbi and his Means expos'd to the  
 Sight of the auditors or the Sermons of St Paul  
 Cross, by the Preachers, who aggravated the Fact, telling  
 the People that it was an Injury done to the Saints  
 in Heaven. He having before been outlaw'd, and com-  
 muniticated for Heretic, being brought before the  
 Parliament, received Sentence to be drawn thro' the  
 City to the new Gallows at St. Giles's, and there  
 to be hang'd about the Middle, and burnt, hanging  
 a Chain, which Sentence was executed on *Charles*  
*Du*. King Henry prosecuted the War in France, with  
 that Vigour, that neither the Depth of Winter, nor  
 Rigour of the Season, could stop the Progress of his  
 Conquests. And for the greater Expedition, he divid'd  
 his Army into several Bodies. The Duke of *Clarence*  
 with his Party, besieged *Chambroise*, and the Castle of  
*Beche-lez*, which surrendred to him. The Duke of  
*Glocester*, with his Detachment, took the County of  
*Constantine*, the Town and Castle of *Vire*, and St. *La*  
*Carenton*, *Pontdown*, and St. *Sauvour le Vicomte*; the  
 Town of *Chierburg* made a longer Defence, but at  
 last surrendred.


The Strength  
 and Greatness  
 of Roan.

While these and several other Places were taken by  
 the English, King Henry having received his Recruits  
 out of England, he resolv'd to besiege *Roan*, the capi-  
 tal City of *Normandy*; a City strongly fortified with  
 extraordinary Walls, Towers and a vast Ditch; and ac-  
 cordingly sat down before it July the 30<sup>th</sup>. The Citizens,  
 who had been long expecting a Siege, had made as great  
 Provision as possible; for the Inhabitants being in Num-  
 ber near three hundred thousand, had train'd fifteen  
 thousand of their Body in Arms, and had been re-  
 forced by a thousand disciplin'd Men from the Duke  
 of *Burgundy*; they had laid in Provision for ten Months,  
 and burnt the Suburbs, that it might not be a Harbours  
 to the English, and having made the Fortifications as  
 strong as possible, and the People of *Normandy* hav-  
 ing brought all their Treasure thither, accounting it their  
 last Refuge and Retreat, they had sworn never to sur-  
 render the Town to the English, so long as they could  
 hold their Swords in Hand.

King Henry in his March to Roan, having taken se-  
 veral small Fortresses, and Pont *Arche*, etc.

## *The Reign of King HENRY IV.*

439

les distant from it, which was accounted the Key of <sup>6 Hen. V.</sup> River *Sein*, he laid close Siege to *Roan*, surrounding  with his Army by Land, and blocking up the Mouth the River *Sein* with a Fleet. He sent an Herald to <sup>King Henry besieges Ro-</sup> <sub>an.</sub> summon the Inhabitants to surrender the Keys to him,

they returned him this resolute Answer, *That they received none of him, and therefore would deliver up none to him*; and thereupon made a brisk Sally out of the Town, upon the King's Forces, but were driven back again with the Loss of thirty Men. The King after this having made many Assaults upon the Town, to little purpose, thought it was the most prudent course to save the Lives of his Men, to turn the Siege into a Blockade, and so to starve them, which their great Numbers made them liable to the sooner. So King Henry stopped all the Avenues, he cast up a Trench round about his Camp, and defended it with Stakes and with Iron Spikes, that the *French* might not surprise them. While the King lay idle, and without Account about the Town, he sent the Earl of *Warwick*, to summon *Caudebec*, and fourteen other Fortresses, to surrender to him, who return'd him Answer, *That they would follow the Fate of Roan, and would resign themselves, if that City were taken without Relief*; which the King was contented to yield to, because the Duke of *Burgundy* having promised the Inhabitants to raise the Siege, he was not willing to weaken his Army.

*Robert* having been block'd up from *July* till *December* began to be in great Distress for Want of Provisions, <sup>The besieged suffer all the Miseries of Famine.</sup> to unburthen themselves, put out twenty thousand Men, Women and Children, who were unserviceable to the Defence of the Place. King *Henry*, seeing this terrible Multitude shut out of the Gates, tho' he was willing to attack a miserable Company of helpless people, but resolving to force them back into the City to increase the Famine, gave Orders to pour upon them a Shower of Arrows from Bows lightly drawn, which should rather scare than wound them. This made the poor starv'd Wretches shelter themselves in the Ditches of the Town, where they remaining three days, and many of the Women falling in Labour, their Cries and Groans so prevailed upon King *Henry*, that he sent them some Subsistence, till the Pity of the Prison was moved to receive many of them again within the Walls. The Famine and Mortality grew to

1418.

that Height, that five thousand perished by them, and they of better Quality eat their own Horses, but the poorer Sort fed on Dogs, Cats, Rats, and Mice; little Infants hung on the Breasts of their Mothers as they lay dead in the Streets, and they wounded and killed one another, to take away the vilest Nourishment of Life; young Virgins abandon'd their Modesty, and prostituted themselves for a piece of Bread. At last being grown desperate, they resolv'd to make a brave Sally upon the King's Quarters; to perform which ten thousand chosen Men issued out of the Town, and the Vant-guard, which consisted of two thousand, having advanced and engaged King *Henry's* Forces, a Draw-bridge broke down with their Weight, and drowned and killed many of them; and the rest not being able to come timely to their Assistance, they were most of them killed or taken Prisoners. Upon this the Soldiers within the City mutinied against their General, charging him with having contrived the breaking of the Bridge; and a Message coming to the besieged from the King of *France*, that they must take care of themselves, they came to a Parley upon *New-year-day*, and after several Meetings for eight Days together, and nothing being concluded on, the Town's People threatned to kill the Governor and Burgesses, if they did not yield to the King of *England's* Demands; whereupon they desiring another Meeting, the Surrender of the City was fully agreed on, in twenty three Articles.

This Agreement being concluded on the 19<sup>th</sup> of *January*, the half famished Citizens repaired in great Multitudes, to buy Viſuals in the *English* Camp, where Provisions were so plenty, that a fat Sheep was sold for six Sols.

King *Henry*  
enters *Reims*.

On the 20<sup>th</sup>, the King entered the City in a most triumphant Manner, accompanied with four Dukes, ten Earls, eight Bishops, sixteen Barons, and a great Number of Knights, Esquires, and Men at Arms. At his entering the Gates of the City, all the Bells were set ringing, and the Abbots and Priests met him in a solemn Procession, bearing forty two Crosses before him, with the Reliques of Saints, and the Burghers met him to welcome him, by whom being conducted to the Cathedral of *Notredame*, he offered up his Thanks for the Conquest of the City. Then he went to the Castle

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

441

receive the Homage of the Citizens. The next morning he ordered *Alain Blanchard* an Incendiary to be beheaded, and pardoned the rest who were left at Mercy. Then he established his Exchequer, Coin- and Chamber of Accounts of the Revenues of *Normandy*, to be in that City; and to keep the Townsmen their Obedience, he re-edified the Castle and Walls, and raised another strong Tower. He kept his Court at *Roan* some Time, wearing the Ducal Robes as Duke of *Normandy*; he likewise caused Proclamation to be made, that all who would swear Allegiance to him, should be received into his Favour and Protection. Thus was *Henry* again in the Power of the *English*, after the *French* had been Masters of it two hundred and fifteen years.

After the Surrender of *Roan*, *Caudeteck*, and the other Towns and Castles that had promised to follow the Duke of *Roan*, surrendered to King *Henry*; so that he had not only the Dukedom of *Normandy* subjected to him, but *Picardy* and the Isle of *France* lay open to his Arms. For notwithstanding the *French* had fortified and garison'd the Frontiers, to stop the Incursions of the *English* Troops; yet they penetrated as far as *Comboise*, *Cleremont*, *Beauvais*, *Montdidier*, *Bretevel*, *Compiègne*, *Abbeville*, and *St. Valerie*, laying the Country waste, and enriching themselves with great Booty. Upon these Successes the Duke of *Bretagne* likewise came to an Alliance with King *Henry*. In the mean Time, the *Dauphin* invited King *Henry* to a Treaty, but it proved of no Effect. However the Duke of *Burgundy*, fearing the growing Interest of the *Dauphin*, desired another Treaty with the King. It was therefore resolved in the *French* King's Council, That it was expedient for the Safety of the Nation, to settle an Alliance between the King of England, by giving him the Princess *Katharine*, with some Provinces of the Kingdom. Upon an Embassy, and a short Truce, it was concluded that the two Kings should have an Interview at Me-

Other Places taken, and Offers of Peace made.

A spacious Plain being intrench'd and ramparted, with strong Gates, two stately Pavilions were erected for the two Kings. The *French* King *Charles*, Queen *Katharine*, the Princess *Katharine*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and others arrived there with a Train and Guard of a thousand Horse. On the other Side, King *Henry*, with the Dukes

The Treaty of Melan.

Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, his Brothers, attended with a thousand Horse, arrived there likewise. King *Henry* saluted the Queen and Princess, and embraced the Duke of *Burgundy*; and the two Nations, the Enemies, demeaned themselves with the greatest Respect and Civility towards each other. Many Points were debated, and many Days spent, without coming to any Conclusion; and there had been several Conferences, where the Princess was not present. The Queen had brought her to the first Interview, hoping that the Charms of her Beauty, which were very extraordinary, might have more Prevalence on a young Conqueror, than all the subtle Arts of Statesmen in a Treaty. Nor was she wholly mistaken, for it was very discernible, that King *Henry* was sensibly enamour'd with her. The Queen taking Notice, that her Daughter's Eyes were more powerful than the Arms of *France*, designing to make all the Advantage possible of his Affection, by gaining the better Terms of Peace, thought to practise upon King *Henry* the usual Arts of her Sex, and to enslave his Passion by the Absence of his Mistress; but King *Henry* being sensible of the Artifice, became more inflexible to any Condescension, and insisted more strenuously upon what he had at first proposed. And imagining the Duke of *Burgundy* to have obstructed the Peace and Marriage, he so highly resented it, that in a great Passion he told the Duke, *I'll not only have your Princess, but your King himself in my Power, and I will have what I demand in Marriage with her, or force him from his Throne, and you out of his Kingdom.* To whom the Duke replied, but more calmly, *Before you can dethrone my King, and expel me out of the Kingdom, you may find cause to repent the Enterprise; and I doubt not but we shall make you weary of the War.*

King *Henry* perceiving that in reality the French never design'd to conclude a Peace, but only aimed to amuse him with vain Offers and Promises, resolved to break off the Treaty; and according to the first Agreement, gave publick Notice of its Dissolution; complaining of the unfair Dealings of the French, who had continually deceived him, and only designed, under pretence of a Treaty, to work Delays, and hinder his Conquests. This Meeting enflamed King *Henry's* Courage, and with fresh Vigor he prosecuted the War.

King *Henry* breaks off the Treaty and makes new Conquests.

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

he immediately surprised and took *Pontenise* with-  
 out Resistance; for the *English* having scaled the Walls,  
 and let in stone to wound upon them, before they could  
 be provided to oppose them, *Monsieur de Lisle Adam*,  
 a Marshal of *France*, Governor of the Place, died out  
 of the Gun next *Paris*, and was followed by ten  
 thousand of the Inhabitants. This Town was so consi-  
 derable for Riches, and such an advantageous Post, that  
 the King, in a Letter said, he accounted it the most im-  
 portant Place he had taken since the War. This Place  
 being taken, King Henry sent to the French King  
 his Message, that this he had taken so considerable a  
 Place, which opened a Way to the Conquest of his Capital  
 City, yet he now offered him Peace upon the same Terms  
 he had proposed at the Treaty of Melun. The News of  
 this Conquest being carried to *Paris*, terrified the  
 King, Queen, and Duke of Burgundy, that they fled  
 from *Paris* to *St. Denis* in *Champagne*, leaving that City  
 under the Command of the Count De *St. Paul*,  
 and the Constable *Amiral de Lamoignon*. The Duke of  
 Clarence marched to the Walls of *Paris*, and lay be-  
 fore it two Days, his Troops ravaging all the Country  
 thereabout. After this the Castle of *Genay* was taken,  
*Beauregard* sacked, *Brissart*, *Chambray*, and the Castle of  
*Andenay* burnt. The Castles of *Gisors* and *Reims*  
 surrendered to King Henry. Then the King divided  
 his Army into three Bodies, and sent one under the  
 Duke of *Burgundy*, to storm the Castle of *St. Germain*  
*en Lay*, and another Body he sent to attack the Castle  
 of *Montreuil*, which both yielded, and he himself mar-  
 ched with the third, to besiege *Menton*, in the Isle of  
*France*, not far from *Paris*, where it was strong by Na-  
 ture, situated on the Seine, and fortified by that great  
 River, which surrendered upon Capitulation. In the  
 mean Time, the Lords *Marshall* and *Huntingford*,  
 with some other Commanders, were ordered to march  
 with Forces into the Country of *Normandy*, where they ga-  
 lantly encountered a strong Body, sent by the *Dauphine*,  
 and defeated them, killing five thousand upon the spot,  
 and taking six hundred Prisoners, many Standards, the  
*Marshal de Rais*, and other Noblemen.

The Affairs of the Kingdom of *France* did not on-  
 ly proceed from the Success of the *English* Arms, but  
 by domestic Factions, between the Dauphin of *France*,  
 and the Duke of *Burgundy*, and there being no Pro-  
 spect

The Fr  
 here the  
 town of

Further  
 and more  
 gained by  
 the Eng

The De  
 the Mar



1419.

*W* Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, his Brothers, attended with a thousand Horse, arrived there likewise. King *Henry* saluted the Queen and Princess, and embraced the Duke of *Burgundy*; and the two Nations, the Enemies, demeaned themselves with the greatest Respect and Civility towards each other. Many Points were debated, and many Days spent, without coming to any Conclusion; and there had been several Conferences, where the Princess was not present. The Queen brought her to the first Interview, hoping that the Charms of her Beauty, which were very extraordinary, might have more Prevalence on a young Conqueror than all the subtle Arts of Statesmen in a Treaty. She was she wholly mistaken, for it was very discernible that King *Henry* was sensibly enamour'd with her. The Queen taking Notice, that her Daughter's Eyes were more powerful than the Arms of *France*, designing to make all the Advantage possible of his Affection, in gaining the better Terms of Peace, thought to practise upon King *Henry* the usual Arts of her Sex, and to enflame his Passion by the Absence of his Mistress; but King *Henry* being sensible of the Artifice, became more inflexible to any Condescension, and insisted more strenuously upon what he had at first proposed. And imagining the Duke of *Burgundy* to have obstructed the Peace and Marriage, he so highly resented it, that in great Passion he told the Duke, *I'll not only have your Princess, but your King himself in my Power, and I will have what I demand in Marriage with her, & force him from his Throne, and you out of his Kingdom.* To whom the Duke replied, but more calmly, *Before you can dethrone my King, and expel me out of the Kingdom, you may find cause to repent the Enterprize, and I doubt not but we shall make you weary of the War.*

King *Henry* breaksoff the Treaty and makes new Conquests.

King *Henry* perceiving that in reality the *French* never design'd to conclude a Peace, but only aimed to amuse him with vain Offers and Promises, resolved to break off the Treaty; and according to the first Agreement, gave publick Notice of its Dissolution; complaining of the unfair Dealings of the *French*, who continually deceived him, and only designed, under pretence of a Treaty, to work Delays, and hinder his Conquests. This Meeting enflamed King *Henry's* Courage, and with fresh Vigor he prosecuted the War.

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

443

he immediately surprised and took *Pontboise* without Resistance; for the *English* having scaled the Walls, let in three thousand upon them, before they could be provided to oppose them, Monsieur de *Lisle Adam*, Marshal of *France*, Governor of the Place, fled out the Gate next *Paris*, and was followed by ten thousand of the Inhabitants. This Town was so considerable for Riches, and such an advantageous Post, that King in a Letter said, *he accounted it the most important Place he had taken since the War*. This Place being taken, King *Henry* sent to the French King a Message, *That tho' he had taken so considerable a Place, which opened a Way to the Conquest of his capital City, yet he now offered him Peace upon the same Terms as he had proposed at the Treaty of Melun*. The News of

7 Hen. V.



Conquest being carried to *Paris*, so terrified the King, Queen, and Duke of *Burgundy*, that they fled from *Paris* to *Troyes* in *Champaign*, leaving that City under the Command of the Count De *St. Paul*, the Chancellor *Eustace de Laitre*. The Duke of *Burgundy* marched to the Walls of *Paris*, and lay before it two Days, his Troops ravaging all the Country abouts. After this the Castle of *Gisors* was taken, *aux* sacked, *Bretueil*, *Clermont*, and the Castle of *Beaumont* burnt. The Castles of *Galliard* and *Rochigni* surrendered to King *Henry*. Then the King divided his Army into three Bodies, and sent one under the Duke of *Glocester*, to storm the Castle of *St. Germain*, *Lay*, and another Body he sent to attack the Castle of *Montjoy*, which both yielded; and he himself marched with the third, to besiege *Meulan*, in the Isle of *France*, not far from *Paris*, which was strong by Nature, situated on the *Seine*, and surrounded by that greater River, which surrendered upon Capitulation. In the mean Time, the Earls *Marshal* and *Huntington*, with some other Commanders, were ordered to march with Forces into the Country of *Main*, where they gallantly encountered a strong Body, sent by the *Dauphine*, defeated them, killing five thousand upon the Spot, taking six hundred Prisoners, many Standards, the Marshal de *Rois*, and other Noblemen.

The French King flies from Paris.

Farther Advantages gained by the English.

The Miseries of the Kingdom of *France* did not proceed from the Success of the *English* Arms, but from domestic Factions, between the *Dauphin* of *France*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*; and there being no Pros-

The Duke of Burgundy murdered.

pect

1419. *spell of Relief, without a* conciliation between those two, great Endeavours were used to bring them to an Amity, that by the united Force they might stop the Current of King Henry's Conquest. Upon this, the *Dauphin* sent for the Duke of *Burgundy* under pretence of concerting Measures with him, about a further Alliance, and employing their united Powers against the common Enemy the *English*. The Duke, tho' he had some Suspicions, at last ventured to go to him, accompanied with five hundred Horse, and two hundred Archers at *Montereau*, the Place of Meeting. The *Dauphin* had fixed three several Barricadoes, and stood armed beyond the third, to receive the Duke, with only ten Attendants; the Duke approaching his Presence, kneeled down upon one Knee, and saluted him very respectfully. But the *Dauphin* charged him with the Breach of Fidelity, and not performing his Promises in not withdrawing his Garisons, agreed to be removed by their League of Amity, and gave him other reproachful Language. The Duke happening to put his Hand behind him, to adjust his Sword, which had been entangled by kneeling, one of the *Dauphin's* Attendants cried out, *What do you draw the Sword against the Dauphin?* Whereupon an old Servant of the murdered Duke of *Orleans*, with a Battle-Ax struck him on the Face, and cut off his Chin, and others, with many Wounds, put an End to his Life. Thus fell the great Duke of *Burgundy*, who had twelve Years before caused the Duke of *Orleans* to be assassinated in the Streets of *Paris*. By this Murther, the *Dauphin* got himself a more zealous and furious Party of Enemies than ever; for the Queen his Mother was not only enraged for the Loss of her Favourite, and encouraged the young Duke of *Burgundy* to revenge his Father's Death, but was very urgent with the King, to give his Daughter *Katharine* in Marriage to King *Henry*, and disinherit the *Dauphin*.

A Treaty proposed to the King Henry. The Queen, and young Duke of *Burgundy*, having prevailed upon King *Charles* to make a Peace with the King of *England*, sent the Bishop of *Arras*, and other Embassadors to him at *Roan*, to assure him of their real Intentions, and Willingness to come to a Peace, as advantageous and honourable to him, as they desired it should be safe to them. King *Henry*, to avoid the Effusion of Christian Blood, hearkned to their Propo-

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

445

, and sent the Earl of *Warwick*, and Bishop of *Rochester*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*, to be better ascertained in Matters; and after two or three Times past backward and forward, they at length came to an agreement upon certain Articles, upon Condition, the *French* King and his Parliament would consent them. The Agreement was, that King *Henry* should come to *Troyes*, and marry the Lady *Katharine*, and at the Celebration of the Marriage, a firm Peace, already concluded and finished upon certain Articles, should be then sealed and fully ratified by both Kings, and all the Nobles and other Estates of the Realm of *France*. Upon this, King *Henry*, accompanied with the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, the Earls of *Warwick*, *Salisbury*, and other Noblemen, attended with fifteen hundred Men, set out for *Troyes*, where King of *France*, Queen and Princess *Katharine* then resided. Being arrived near *Troyes*, he was met by the young Duke of *Burgundy*, and many of the *French* Nobility, and with great Magnificence conducted into *Town*.

King *Henry* immediately after his Arrival paid a Visit to the King and Queen of *France*, and made his Addresses to the Princess *Katharine*, presenting her with a Ring of inestimable Value. After there had been several Assemblies of the King of *France*'s Council, the Peace and Alliance was concluded, and being drawn up in Writing, King *Henry* struck out what he mislik'd; at length, it was completed on the first Day of *May* next, both Kings swearing upon the Evangelists indubitably to observe it.

The Articles of the Treaty were large and numerous, and very much to the Advantage and Honour of King *Henry*: The Principal were, that King *Henry* should marry the Princess *Katharine*, and allow her forty thousand Crowns a Year Dowry. That after the Death of King *Charles*, King of *France*, all the Dominions and Rights of that Kingdom should devolve upon King *Henry* and his Heirs for ever. That in as much as King *Charles* was indisposed, and incapable to reign, King *Henry* should be Regent of *France*, during the said King *Charles*'s Life; that after the Death of King *Charles*, *France* and *England* should be united under one King, viz. under King *Henry* and his Heirs in a continued Succession. That because the *Dauphine* opposed the

7 Hen. V.

The Treaty concluded with a Peace.

Some of the Articles of the Treaty.

1420. Sovereign; but they resolutely answered, *They would joyfully open their Gates to their Monarch, who would never obey an English King, the ancient and Enemy of France.* And there being a strong Party in the Garison, the young King of Scotland, in the Army with King Henry, sent to require their Allegiance, that they should not make use of Arms against Troops, where he was in Person come and fight under their King's Standard. They answered, they would not own or obey him as they who was in the Power of another: For which twenty of them were executed upon the taking Place. At Length, they being extremely distressed by Famine, and other Calamities incident to long after a Siege of eighteen Weeks, surrendered.

*Malen surrendered.*

King Henry having put an *English* Garison in *lun*, the two Kings and Queens of *France* and *England* who, during the Siege, had lain at *Corbeil*, in *Paris*, which they entered in great State; the Kings riding under a rich Canopy, followed by the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Bedford*; and on the other side of the Way the Duke of *Burgundy* in deep Mourning, and the Nobility of each Nation in their proper Order; the Clergy in Procession carrying the venerable Reliques, walked before them to the Cathedral of *Notredame*; the Citizens received them with Marks of Honour and Respect, with rich Processions of Flags and Streamers, causing the Conduits to run with Wine, and shewing the utmost Demonstrations of Joy and Satisfaction; where the first Thing they did at their Arrival, was to put to Death the Murthurers of the Duke of *Burgundy*, of which several of the Captives were found guilty, and were punished accordingly; among them *Bertrand de Chaumont*, a *Gascoign*, who had been much in Favour with King Henry, was executed for being conveyed away one *Amcriston de Lau*, who was found guilty of the same Crime; and altho' the Duke of *Burgundy* himself, and the Duke of *Clarence*, interceded for him to King Henry, yet he was inexorable, saying, *he would have no Traytors in his Army.* The valiant *bascon* was likewise accused by the Duke of *Burgundy* as an Accomplice in his Father's Death; and as the Evidence was not clear, yet there being Ground for Suspicion, he was kept in Prison nine Years, till he was delivered by the *Dauphine*, at the end

*The Murthurers of the Duke of Burgundy punished.*

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

449

*the Galliard*. Some Historians relate, that he saved his life by pleading, *It would be a Dishonour to King Henry, to put to Death a Person, who was his Brother in Arms, who had signalized himself in a single Combat with him;* which was allowed by the Heralds to be the same thing as if he had fought with him in appointed Lists.

King Henry being returned to *Paris*, kept his Court King Henry's Grandeur. *Christmas* in the *Louvre*, which was most rich

magnificent, all the Grandeur in *France* being to be seen there, and many military Shews and Pastimes, &c.; and King *Charles* kept his in the *Hotel St. Pol*, much inferior in all Respects. King *Henry* commanded all, had the Disposal of all Places of Trust and Honour, and therefore was courted by all the Nobility and Gentry, and was looked upon by all foreign Embassadors, as well as the native *French*, as their King. He placed and displaced Officers at Pleasure, and as Regent of *France*, reformed Abuses, redressed Grievances, and corrected all Miscarriages in Government; while *Charles* the King of *France*, indeed the Name, but lived very privately, as one whose Power was out of Date. King *Henry* caused a new coin to be stamp'd, call'd a *Salute*, to express the Union of the two Kingdoms; on the Reverse of which, the Arms of *England* and *France* were quartered together.

While King *Henry* remained at *Paris*, a Parliament King Henry's was call'd, in which the Agreement between the two recognized by the Parliament at Paris. Kingdoms was acknowledged by King *Charles*, as made by his Assent, and by the Advice of the whole Council of *France*;

which being ratified by the general Estates of the Kingdom, and solemnly sworn to by all Nobility and Magistrates, the Instruments were sent into *England*, to be laid up in King *Henry's* Exchequer at *Westminster*. This Parliament particularly intervened into the Murther of the Duke of *Burgundy*, and solemnly sentenced all the Actors and Accessories in it; who were laid under Obligations to build Churches, and to perform several publick Acts of Charity, by Way of Penance, to expiate that execrable Crime. They likewise summon'd the *Dauphin* himself before the *Grand Marble Table*, with all the usual Formalities;

and for Non-appearance publicly attainted and convicted him of the Murther, and declared him unworthy of the Succession to the Crown of *France*, and sentenced him to be banished the Kingdom for ever.

1420.

ever. On the other Hand, the *Dauphin* appealed to God and his Sword, against this Sentence, as given by incompetent Judges, and removed the Parliament and University to the City of *Poitiers*. Thus was every Thing double in *France*; there were two Kings, two Regents, two Parliaments, two Constables, two Chancellors, two Admirals, and so of most of the great Officers.

King Henry  
returns to  
England.

*Christmas* being over, and the grand Affairs of *France* being as well settled as those unsettled Times would permit, King *Henry* resolved to leave *France* a While, and go into *England*, to have his Queen crowned; and having appointed his Brother, the Duke of *Clarence*, his Lieutenant, and left the Duke of *Exeter*, with five hundred Men at *Paris*, he went to *Roan* in great State, where having remained some Time to receive the Homage of the Nobility of *Normandy*, he repaired to *Amiens*, and from thence to *Calais*; and taking Ship with a glorious Train he crossed the Seas to *Devon*, where arriving about *Candlemas*, he made a triumphant Entry into *London*, where he was received by the People with as great Joy, as if he had been an Angel from Heaven.

King Henry  
appoints a  
Day of  
Thanksgiving,  
and  
the Queen's  
Coronation.

King *Henry* being safely arrived in *England*, would not enter upon any Business, till he had given his Subjects an Example of his Devotion, in returning public Thanks to God, for the Success he had given him in *France*; and accordingly appointed a Day by Proclamation, to be kept on that Account, throughout *England*; and appointed the Queen's Coronation to be on the twenty fourth of *February*, which was performed with great Magnificence, by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*. There was also more than ordinary Cost and Magnificence bestowed on the Coronation Dinner; for it was *Lent*, and so consisted of Fish, and Sweet Meats chiefly, there were such rare Devices in each Course, as were never before seen, upon the like Occasion.

The King  
and Queen  
go to York.

The Solemnity of the Coronation being over, the King, Queen, and many of the Nobility, took a Journey to *York*, where they were received with great Joy, and richly presented by the Citizens. The Queen continued there, while the King went in Pilgrimage to *Bridlington*, where having paid his Devotions, he took a Progress through great Part of his Kingdom, hearing the Complaints of the Injured and Oppressed, redress-

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

451


their Wrongs, punishing the Corrupters of Ju- <sup>9 Hen. V.</sup>  
, and reforming Abuses in the Government, not  
ng the greatest of the Ministers, if he found them  
y of Misdemeanors in their Places; telling them,  
*since they had no Respect to his Honour, which*  
*wounded by their Injustice and Partiality, he had*  
*reason to shew them any Favour, but punish them*  
*severely, because for the Sake of a little Gain, or*  
*idship, they had rob'd him of what he most valued,*  
*people's Love and Affections.*

While these Things passed in England, the Duke <sup>The Duke</sup>  
Clarence having ordered the Forces which were in <sup>of Clarence</sup>  
handy, to attend him, began an Invasion in An- <sup>invades An-</sup>  
but having received Intelligence, that the Duke <sup>jon, and is</sup>  
Alençon was come into those Parts with a confide- <sup>slain.</sup>

Body of the Dauphin's Forces, and that seven  
red Scots were coming to join him, under the  
mand of the Earls of Douglas and Buchan, he  
ded to give the Duke of Alençon Battle before the  
had joined him; and being informed by some strag-  
Scots, that the French were but a small Party, and  
easily be vanquished by his Forces, (tho' indeed they  
much greater, and had been join'd by the Scots) the  
of Clarence being hasty and credulous, set upon  
and after a sharp Battle, wherein the English  
one thousand five hundred Men, was slain, be-  
wounded in the Face by a Spear, and afterwards  
down to the Ground with a Truncheon, by the Earl  
Buchan; and several Noblemen, and diverse Persons  
ote, as well as common Soldiers, were taken Pri-  
s: But tho' the Victory fell to the French, it cost  
one thousand two hundred Men. The Earl of Sa-  
y having notice of this Action, made all the Haste  
ald to recover the Loss received; but came too late  
any Service; only the French flying at his Approach,  
e Dead at his Disposal; and so he sent the Duke's  
to Roan, to be conveyed to England, and buried. The  
was still in his Progress, and had left Leicester to go  
k; and having visited the Shrine of John of Bever-  
the Way, heard the News of his Brother's Death,  
he received with Abundance of Sorrow, and re-  
l to revenge it very severely upon the French.

At the Beginning of May, a Parliament met at <sup>Sixth Par-</sup>  
minster, and granted the King a fifteenth of the <sup>liament.</sup>  
and the Clergy being met in Convocation, gave <sup>King Henry's</sup>  
him <sup>third Expe-</sup>  
<sup>dition to</sup>  
<sup>France.</sup>



1421.  him two Tenths; but this being too little to support so great a Charge, he pawned his Crown again to the Bishop of Winchester for twenty thousand Pounds; and with this Money prepared his third Expedition into France. And having made his Brother, the Duke of Bedford, Regent of the Kingdom, and left with him an Army of thirty thousand, to defend the Nation against the Scots, who had engaged in the Interest of the Dauphin; he with four thousand Horse, and twenty four thousand Foot, began his Journey to France; and embarking at Dover, landed at Calais the tenth of June, with all his Forces, having the King of Scots with him, to draw off the Scots from taking Part with the Dauphin. This King of the Scots had been taken by Henry the fourth, ten Years before, and was set at Liberty by King Henry the fifth, to return to his own Country; but he went not till the next Reign.

King Henry sends the Duke of Burgundy to raise the Siege of Chartres. King Henry being landed in France, in his third and last Expedition, went to pay a Visit to his Father and Mother, the King and Queen of France, before he would enter upon any Action: And being met on the Road by the Duke of Burgundy, who gave him a Petition from the Governor of Chartres, who had valiantly defended the Town for three Weeks, against all the Dauphin's Forces, and now began to be streightned so much, that he could hold out no longer; he made the Duke Commander of his Armies, and sent him to relieve the Town with all Speed. Upon his Approach the Dauphin raised the Siege, and retreated to Tours. King Henry, in the mean Time, went on to Paris, to pay his designed Visit, and was honourably received and entertained by the King and Queen of France. In his Passage he took a small Fort called *La Ferse*, which surrendred upon Summons; but it was soon after betray'd to the Dauphin by the Commander.

King Henry pursues the Dauphin. King Henry being arrived at Paris, had great Invitations to pass his Time in Pleasures, every one being desirous to please him with the most grateful Delights; but his Mind was wholly engaged in the Glory of Conquest, which seemed a little eclipsed by the small Advantages the Dauphin had gained; wherefore having added some French Forces to his Army, he marched towards the Loire, to fight the Dauphin, who had given it out, that he would try the Fortune of a Field Battle with King Henry; but his Courage failed upon

He takes several Towns from the Dauphin.

upon King *Henry's* Approach, and he withdrew to-<sup>9 Hen. V.</sup> wards *Bourges*, where he lay still, not giving King *Henry* any Molestation or Hindrance in his Victories; for which he was by Way of Jeer, called the King of *Bourges*. King *Henry* meeting with no Opposition, proceeded with all Expedition, to reduce all Places to his Obedience, and marching to *Dreux*, sat down before that Place. The Inhabitants and Garison being apprehensive of Danger, beat a Parley, promising to surrender the Town on the twentieth of *August*, if no Relief came in the mean Time, which was accordingly done; and eight hundred of the *Dauphin's* Men were permitted to depart in Safety, having sworn to King *Henry*, not to bear Arms against him for a Year ensuing. *Mezeray* relates, that while the King lay before this Place, an unknown Hermit came to him, and represented the great Evils he brought upon *Christendom*, by his unjust Ambition and Usurpation of the Crown of *France*, against known Right, and the Will of Heaven; wherefore in the Name of God, he threatened him with a severe and sudden Punishment, if he did not desist. The King looking upon this to be either a visionary Fancy, or a Suggestion of the *Dauphin's*, prosecuted his Designs with the greater Vigour, and hearing the *Dauphin* was retired to *Baugency*, he marched thither; but not finding him there, took that Place, and several other Towns, and designed to have attacked him at *Bourges*, where he lay strongly fortified; but the latter having carried away, and destroyed all the Forage and Provisions of the Country, the King's Army was forced to retreat back to *Orleans*.

King *Henry* having refreshed and recruited his Army, which had been fatigued and diminished in pursuing the flying *Dauphin*, and provided Engines and all other Necessaries, marched out with his whole Army to besiege the City of *Meaux* in *Brie*. This City was of great Strength, and well man'd, and furnished with Provisions. The Suburbs of it were large and populous, and King *Henry* being sensible, that if his coming were certainly known, the *Dauphinists* would burn them, sent the Duke of *Exeter* before him, with four thousand Men to prevent it, following himself within a few Days; and on the sixth of *October* invested the Place, enclosed his Camp with an Intrenchment, and rais'd his Batteries against the Walls, and Gates. The Bastard *De Varus* was

1422.

Henry the  
sixth born.

was Governor of the City, who had with him many Officers, and a thousand select Soldiers, besides the Inhabitants, who were also resolute to defend the Place to the last Extremity; and indeed they gallantly held out for the Space of seven Months, during which Time great Numbers, both of the Belieged and Beliegers, died by Sickness, Sallies, or Shot from the Walls.

While this Siege was carrying on, King Henry had the Satisfaction of hearing that Queen Katherine was delivered of a young Prince at Windsor, on St. Nicholas's Day, to whom he gave the Name of *Henry Sixth*. It is generally reported, that when he heard his Son was born at Windsor Castle, he raised a bad Omen from the Place of his Birth, as foreboding some unhappy Fate, and spoke these prophetic Words to his Chamberlain, the Lord Fitz-Hugh, *I Henry, born at Monmouth, shall a small Time reign and gain much; and Henry, born at Windsor, shall reign long and lose all; but God's Will be done.*

King Henry  
takes Meaux  
by Assault.

Christmas was now come; and tho' King Henry always kept it with some Solemnity, yet he chose rather to abridge himself of that Custom, than break up the Siege of Meaux, tho' the Extremity of the Weather, both for Cold and Wet, the Sickness of the Army, and the great Losses which he sustained by the Belieged, they having killed many of his Men, and among the rest, the Earl of Worcester, and Lord Clifford, might have discouraged him; but these Difficulties rather increased his Resolution: Whereupon he battered the Walls more fiercely; and having laid Bridges over the River Marne, begirt it so close, that it was much distressed. However they held out as resolutely, as Men in so much Danger could, having had Intelligence, that the Arms of the Dauphin had been successful in Normandy, and had taken Arranches, so that King Henry would be obliged to send away Part of his Forces to secure his Conquests there; which he did under the Command of the Earl of Salisbury, who soon regained that Town. The Town resolutely bent upon holding out, earnestly desired to have a valiant Commander, the Seigneur d'Offement, for their Governor; and he found an Opportunity to approach the Walls with forty select Soldiers, in order to enter the Town; but being ready to be receiv'd by Ladders, over the Walls in the Night,

## *The Reign of King HENRY V.*

455

Followers were discovered by the Centinels; and he self not being able to recover the Ladders, fell into Ditch; and being encumbred with his heavy Armour, wounded, was taken Prisoner, with most of his panions. At this Disappointment they were discouraged, and despairing to hold out long, began to carry their Goods into the Castle: But the Besiegers discovering what they were about, and unwilling to lose Booty, made a sudden and furious Attack, and took the Town Sword in Hand; and King *Henry* firing his Canon, began to batter the Castle, which withstanding they were reduced to Extremity, did resist from provoking the *English* by opprobrious words, as if they had been invincible; which was the cause, that when they were obliged at Length to yield, were reduced to such hard Conditions, as no Town ever had imposed upon them; for the whole Town and Garrison were to be Prisoners, at the King's Pleasure, only to have their Lives saved: But the Governor *was*, and some other Persons of Quality and Note, were to be delivered up, to be immediately executed. The Governor was beheaded, and his Body hung on a Tree, before the Town called by his own Name, where he had before hang'd on it many *English* and *Indians*; his Head being fixed upon the Top of the same Tree, his Standard also being set up by him. Diverse others were executed, and all the Wealth of the Place was distributed by King *Henry* to his Officers and most deserving Soldiers. Upon the taking of *Meaux*, diverse other Places surrendered, and submitted to King *Henry*; while others were set on fire, to render him of the Fruits of conquering them. And the Governors of the Places, in the Marches of *Beauvais*, seeing, that King *Henry* had taken Towns and Forts, which were thought to be impregnable, were under such apprehensions of the Irresistibleness of his Power, they sent Deputies to him to treat about surrendering at the Time appointed, if the *Dauphin* did not give them due Assistance: So that all the Isle of *France*, *Lainnois*, and *Champain*, became intirely subject to King *Henry*, who put most of his faithful Captains to the most important Places of them, and then retired to *Bois de St. Vincennes*, to his Father and Mother the King and Queen of *France*, who gave him a most Welcome.

1432.  
Queen Katherine arrives in France.

Queen Katherine being perfectly recovered of all the Weaknesses of Childbearing, and daily hearing of the King's Successes whose Glory sounded all over the World, greatly desired the Sight of his Person; and for that End prepared for a Voyage to France. John, Duke of Bedford, having deputed his Brother Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, in his Absence, set sail with the Queen from Southampton, and landed at Harfleur, the twenty fifth of May, and with encreasing Trains of Nobility, by easy Journeys arrived at Roan, and from thence proceeded to Bois de St. Vincennes, to which Place King Henry, her Father and Mother, in great State came to meet her, with the utmost Demonstrations of Joy. They all staid a small Time at Bois de St. Vincennes, and on Whitsun Eve, removed to Paris, where King Henry, in the Castle of the Louvre, and the French King in the Hostel St. Pol, kept their *hospitable* festivity in the greatest State and Magnificence; King Henry and his Queen sitting in their Robes with their Crowns on their Heads, and keeping their Court with a wonderful Confluence of People, while the King of France appeared but like some petty Prince or Nobleman to him. King Henry governed and disposed all Things, and the King of France contentedly suffered him to act like a Sovereign; at which, tho' many of the French were uneasy, yet the English King was too great to be opposed: But their Resentments were something abated by King Henry's just and moderate Government, and exact Administration of Justice. By this just Conduct he gained the Love of the common People, who looked upon him, not as their Conqueror, but as their Father and Protector.

The Dauphin, while King Henry lay at Paris, invades his Conquests.

The Dauphin, who had constant Intelligence of King Henry's Actions, was not remiss to lay hold of an Opportunity of regaining what had been conquered by him; for tho' the King had conquered all Picardy, Normandy, Brie, the Isle of France and Champagne, yet still the greatest Part of the Nation held out for the Dauphin, he therefore having an Army of twenty thousand Men, and thinking the King was taken up with Pleasures and Ease, besieged La Charitie upon the Loire, and took it; and afterwards laid Siege to Cognac, on the same River, which not willing to undergo the Straits and Difficulties of a Siege, agreed to surrender to him, if they were not relieved by the Duke of Burgundy in

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

457

ixteenth of *August*. The *Dauphin* and the Duke, <sup>10 Hen. V.</sup> consent, agreed to put the Cause to the Decision

Battle on that Day ; and this was mutually declared by their Heralds. The Duke of *Burgundy's* Forces being inferior to the *Dauphin's* sent Word of the Appointment to King *Henry*, desiring he would send him his Forces. The King sent him Word, that he would be himself with his whole Army to join him in the Battle ; and accordingly began his March ; but having, by long Fatigues he had undergone in the Wars, contracted a Fever and a Flux, was not able to proceed ; therefore remained at *Senlis*, sending his Army unto the Duke of *Bedford*, to assist the Duke of *Burgundy*. The King, tho' he was very ill of his Distemper,

was very desirous to be at the Battle ; and therefore was carried after them in a Horse-litter, that if he should not engage with them in the Fight, he might at least animate them with his Presence. Thus was he carried as far as *Melun* ; but his Distemper increasing, Body being too feeble to answer to the Greatness of Mind, he was obliged to give over his Design, and return to *Bois de St. Vincennes*. The Duke of *Burgundy* being joined by the Duke of *Bedford* and Earl *Warwick*, advanced to *Compeigne*, which was besieged by the *Dauphin*, and encamped near the Town. The *Dauphin*, tho' he had faithfully promised by his Herald, to abide the Field, and try his Fortune by a Battle, yet soon as he saw the *English* Colours displayed, notwithstanding his Vaunts, raised the Siege and retreated to *Bourges*. Upon this the Duke of *Bedford* being desirous to do something for his Master's Honour, and gratify the eager Courage of the Soldiers, who were willing to return back without Action, led the Army to *Troyes* in *Champain*, and began the Siege of that important Place : But before any Thing considerable could be attempted, the Duke of *Bedford* received the mournful News, that his Brother, King *Henry's* Life was in Danger ; Upon which he left the Army, and attended with some Friends, rode full Speed to *Bois de Vincennes*. This News put such a Damp upon the spirits of the whole Army, that they could not proceed to the Siege, and so the Earl of *Warwick* and *Salisbury*, and the rest of the Nobility, returned to the King.

The King designs to fight the *Dauphin*.

The King's last Sickness.

The Duke of *Bedford* and other Noblemen being arrived at *Vincennes*, and seeing the low and dangerous

Con-

1422.

W

King Henry's  
farewell  
Speech.

Condition of King Henry, much lamented his approaching and untimely End; but the King, as unconcerned at his own Death, looked cheerfully upon them, and comforting them, for his Departure from them, gave them Directions for the Management of his Kingdoms for his young Son after his Decease, to this Effect: *That he knew his Death would be born by them with great Sorrow; but they had as little Reason to be troubled as it as he himself had: For tho' indeed his Life and Reign had been but short, yet that was so far from disturbing him, that he placed it among one of his Felicities, that he should not outlive his Glories, but carry flourishing Laurels out of the World with him; That tho' indeed much Blood had been shed in his Quarrel, yet his Conscience accused him of no Guilt upon that Account; for it was only for the Recovery of his undoubted Right; That he was sensible his untimely Death would create great Troubles to them, and all his People, because he should leave them in such a Multitude of Business depending; but the Consideration of the Frailty and Uncertainty of all worldly Things should mitigate their Concern. Having thus comforted them concerning his own Death, he gave them Directions about his Son, earnestly entreating them, To love Prince Henry, his Infant Son, and their King; to take Care of his Education, and to give him pious Examples, that he might be made fit to rule so great Kingdoms; That they would comfort his Wife, now the most disconsolate Princess living, That they would never make Peace with the Dauphin upon any other Condition than that of having all the Dukedom of Normandy intirely secured to the Crown of England; That they would preserve a strict Union among themselves, and not discharge the Duke of Orleans, and other noble French Prisoners, till his Son became of Age to govern, lest being at Liberty, they might be troublesome in France. He recommended his Brother, the Duke of Gloucester, to govern England, and the Duke of Bedford, with the Assistance of the Duke of Burgundy, to govern France. The Noblemen, full of Grief, stood silent about him, and promised him to perform what he had desired.*

King Henry  
prepares  
himself for  
Death.

The King having thus settled his temporal Affairs, turned his Thoughts wholly upon a Preparation for this State, which he was sensible by the Violence of his Distemper, he was just ready to enter upon. And ordering his Physicians to be called in, he demanded of them,

## The Reign of King HENRY V.

459

n; how long it was possible he could live, and they giving a direct Answer, he charged them upon their Conscience to tell him their Opinion plainly. And after a little Consultation among themselves, one of them taking the Name of the rest, kneeling down, said, *Sir, think on your Soul; for as we judge, without a Miracle, you cannot live longer than two Hours.* Whereupon he ordered his Chaplains to be call'd, bidding them to do their Office, and fit his Soul for its Dissolution. And having made his Confession, and received the Sacrament, he commanded them to sing the seven Penitential Psalms, when in the 51st Psalm, they came to those Words, *Build up the Walls of Jerusalem,* he bad them stop, and burst out into this Ejaculation, *Lord, thou knowest that it was in my real Purposes to conquer Jerusalem, and resist it out of the Hands of the Infidels, if it had pleased thy Providence to lengthen out my Life, but thy Providence hath denied my Design; thy Will be done.* And then, before he could proceed many Verses farther he expired, on the 31st Day of August, 1422. in the 34<sup>th</sup>, or as others say, the 36<sup>th</sup> Year of his Age; after a short, but most glorious and triumphant Reign of nine Years, four Months, and eleven Days; leaving a Son of eight Months old, Heir of all his Dominions, whose Education was at the Desire of his Father committed to the Duke of Exeter.

Hen. V.

He dies.

By the Gratitude of his Friends, his Funeral Obsequies were proportioned to his Merit and Grandeur. His Jewels being taken out, were interr'd in the Church of St. Maur de Toffes, and his Body being embalmed and enclosed in a Coffin of Lead, and being attended by all the Lords and great Men, as well of France as England, and the whole Army, was brought with much honour and Lamentation to Paris, and there being solemn Obsequies were celebrated for him several Days, and a great deal of Money given to the Poor. From thence he was carried to Calais, where he remain'd till all Things could be got ready for his Conveyance into England, and Burial there; then being remov'd to Calais, he was carried to Dover, and thence to London, where the Corps being laid in St. Paul's Church, his Exequies were again celebrated. The Entrance into, and Passage thro' London was very magnificent. His Corps was laid on a bier of State, richly adorn'd with Cloth of Gold, and

The Manner  
of his Burial.



King Henry's  
Age and In-  
firmities.

**HENRY** the Sixth, the Son of that most heroic Prince *Henry* Fifth, but Heir rather of his Piety than Valour at 100 Days, was left his Successor to the Crowns of *England* and *France*, when he was not above nine Months old. He accordingly was proclaimed King August 31, 1422. and soon after at *Paris*. The Education and Tuition of him was committed to the two Brothers, *Thomas Duke of Exeter*, and *Henry Beaufort Bishop of Winchester*, the Chancellor of *England*; and the Regency, accordingly committed to his two Uncles, *John Duke of Bedford*, and *Humphrey Duke of Gloucester*, the latter had the Government of *France*, and the former joining with the Duke of *Burgundy* the Government of *France*.

The State of  
the English  
Affairs.


At his Accession to the Throne, the State of the *English* Affairs was in a flourishing Condition, being entirely at Peace at home; and as to *France*, the nobler Parts of it, and the Capital City of *Paris* itself, was at the Devotion of *England*. But it seem'd more to Providence in a small Time to change the whole Course of the *English* Affairs; and the first Disadvantage that happened to the *English* Cause was the Death of *Charles King of France*, whose Life was many ways an Advantage to the *English*; as the Infancy of young *Henry* was to the *Dauphin*, who by those of his own Party was proclaim'd King of *France* at *Porchiers*. And tho' his Fortunes were at so low an Ebb at his Father's Death, that little of *France* was in his Power, but the City of *Bourges* in *Berry*, and the Territories thereunto adjoining; yet the Justice of his Title, his undaunted Courage, and his Resolution to recover his Right, and restore the Liberties of *France*, were such Endearments to him to his Countrymen, that it soon appear'd, that *Henry* had the largest Territories, *Charles* had most Hearts.

The Duke  
of Bedford's  
Care in  
*France*.

The Duke of *Bedford* easily apprehending the approaching Dangers of the *English*, by the Death of the *French* King, and the Advantages the *Dauphin* would make of it, and that the Allegiance of the *French*, tho' never so often sworn and promised, would bind them no longer to King *Henry*, than either Fear or Lack of Opportunity, could prevent their Revolt, he therefore re-inforced the Army, and fortified the Garrisons on the *English* Pale. Then summoning the Nobles

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

463

to *Paris*, he required them to do their Homage to <sup>1 Hen. VI.</sup> on the King's Behalf, and to take a solemn Oath  Allegiance to King *Henry*, which they readily did.

The Duke of *Glocester*, the Regent of *England*, summoned a Parliament to meet *November* the 9<sup>th</sup>, the bet- <sup>The first Parliament.</sup> to establish the Crown upon the young King, and provide for the publick Necessities of the State. And when *Katherine*, the more to influence that Assembly hearty in the young King's Cause, removed from *Bedford* to *London*; and with her Royal Babe in her arms, was carried in a pompons and splendid Manner through the City to *Westminster*, to the Parliament-house; where being seated upon the Royal Throne in the presence of his Mother, he by the Mouth of the Chancellor saluted that august Body, and proposed Matters of highest Consequence to their Consideration.

The *Dauphin* having been proclaimed King of *France*, <sup>The Dauphin endeavours against him.</sup> the Name of *Charles* the VII. being then about 27 years of Age, wanting neither Courage nor Hopes,

together what Forces he could; and having the Duke of *Alençon*, with several Princes of the Blood, and Peers of *France* of his Party; several of which he purchased at a dear Rate, by engaging his Castles, and a Part of his Demesnes in Pawn to them; and also several thousands of *Scots*, which were constant Enemies to the *English* in his Army, marched to relieve *Montreuil*, which had been besieged by the *English*, but was not able to effect it, being put to Flight, with the loss of two thousand Men in the Attempt. However this did not dishearten him, and soon after he repaired his late Loss by the Overthrow which he gave to a Party of *English*, from whom with the Slaughter of fifteen hundred, they recovered a great Booty of Cattel, and afterwards took *Meulan*, upon the River *Seine*, and the *English* Garrison to the Sword, but did not long enjoy it, for the Earl of *Salisbury* soon recovered the place, and killed all the *French* that were found in it.

The Duke of *Bedford* thinking it necessary to strengthen himself by Alliance with those neighbouring Princes, who if they should join with his Adversaries, might prove prejudicial to the *English*, invited the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bretagne*, with the Earl of *Beaumont*, to an Interview at *Amiens*, where they renewed the former League, adding, "That each should be the other's Friend, and that all of them should unite their Forces in the Defence of King *Henry's* Right." <sup>The Duke of Bedford makes Alliances, and punishes the Parisians.</sup>

1432 "Right." And the Alliances <sup>ed</sup> returned by the Duke of Bedford's marrying one <sup>the</sup> Duke of Burgundy's Sisters, and the Earl of Richemont another while the Duke of Bedford was absent from Paris. Upon this Occasion, the Parisians, notwithstanding they had lately sent Embassadors into England, to acknowledge King Henry, now had entred into a Plot, to deliver up the City to Charles the new King; but the Duke having timely Notice of it, posted thither, and executing several of the chief Actors, reduced them to their Duty. Soon after this, a Reinforcement of ten thousand Men came out of England, with which Addition to his Army, he took several strong Towns and Forts from Charles.

<sup>William Taylor</sup> About March the 2<sup>d</sup>, one William Taylor a secular Priest and Minister of Bristol was burnt in Smithfield for Heresie. He had been accused several Years before, of holding some Opinions contrary to the Doctrines of the Church, and infecting the People with them by preaching, viz. 1. That whosoever shall hang any Part of holy Scripture about his Neck, to defend him from Danger or Infection, or to free him from any bodily Diseases, or other Maladies (as was frequently done) taketh away the Honour due unto God only, and giveth it to the Devil. 2. That no human Creature, neither in Heaven nor Earth is to be worshipped. 3. That the Saints in Heaven are not to be worshipped or invocated. For these Doctrines, he was imprisoned and summoned before the Archbishop of Canterbury, who condemned them as Heretical; but upon his Promise not to hold such Opinions for the future he was set at Liberty; but soon after a fresh Accusation being brought against him, that he had written to Thomas Smith a Priest of Bristol, That any Prayer, wherein we petition any supernatural Gift, ought to be made only to God, and that to pray to any Creature on that Account is Idolatry; for these Opinions, he was by the Archbishop condemned, as a lapsed and incorrigible Heretic, and being degraded of his priestly Office, was burnt in Smithfield, which he suffered with great Constancy, and Christian Resolution.

<sup>The Duke of Bedford overcomes the Duke of Alençon.</sup> The Duke of Bedford, desirous to draw Charles to a general Battel, laid Siege to Jory, whereupon the Duke of Alençon was sent with twelve thousand Men, with Orders to fight if there were occasion. The two Armies drew up in Battel-Array near Vermandois, and after a sharp Engagement, the Regent

himself with a Battel Ax doing Wonders, the Duke of *Alençon's* Army was put to flight, with the Loss of many Noblemen, and above seven thousand Soldiers, the Duke of *Alençon* himself being taken amongst the prisoners. This Victory cost the *English* two thousand one hundred common Soldiers, and the Lords *Dudley*, and *Charleton*. After this, the Regent returned to *Paris*, and the Earl of *Salisbury* took *Mans* and several other Towns, from whence he marched into *Anjou*, and there performed such heroick Acts, that his very name grew terrible to all *France*.

While these Things were transacting in *France*, James the first, King of *Scotland*, whose Ransom had been settled in the late Reign was now fully set at Liberty; but before he departed to *Scotland*, he did Homage to young King *Henry*, in the Presence of many of the Nobility, in these Words. *I James Stewart, King of Scotland, shall be true and faithful unto thee Henry King of England and France, the noble and superior Lord of Scotland, and to thee I make my Fidelity for the same Kingdom of Scotland, which I hold and claim of thee; and I will bear you my Fidelity of Life and Limb, and world-Honour against all Men, and faithfully I shall acknowledge, and do you Service for the Kingdom of Scotland aforesaid. So God me help, and these holy Evangelists.* At lest these Obligations should not be strong enough, he was married to the Lady *Jane*, the Duke of *Somerset's* Daughter, and Cousin-German to the King, with whom he had a large Dowry, and many rich Presents of Plate and Jewels from the Nobility that were her kindred. But all this did not avail; for soon after his return Home, he entred into a strict League with the *French* King, and promised his Daughter *Margaret* in Marriage to *Lewis* the *Dauphin*.

After *Easter*, in the Name of the young King, a Parliament was called, and he was carried to the House in great Pomp and State, and sat on his Mother's Knee in a Chair of State among his Lords; where the Speaker in an eloquent Speech first extolled his Person, and then recommended to their Care the Government of the Nation in his Infancy. Upon which several good Acts were made for that Purpose. During this Session, *Edward Mortimer*, the last Earl of *March* of that Name, and nearest Heir to the Crown of *England*, deceas'd without Issue, and his great Patrimony descended to *Richard Plantagenet* Earl of *Cambridge*, Son and Heir

2 Hen. VI.

James King of Scots set at Liberty.

Second Parliament.

1427.

to the Earl of Cambridge, who l<sup>ate</sup> beheaded  
the last Reign. Also Sir John D<sup>uke</sup> l<sup>ate</sup> to the  
ceas'd Earl was impeach'd for high Treason, and executed  
which caused no small Murmurings among the People.

The Duke  
of Gloucester  
marries the  
Countess of  
Holland, &c.

In the mean Time, the Friendship and Alliance be-  
tween the English and the Duke of Burgundy, which  
had been very advantageous in their Conquests in France,  
having receiv'd some Sights before, was now in Dan-  
ger of being quite broken. For the Duke of Gloucester  
had contracted a Marriage, and cohabited with the  
Lady Jaqueline of Bavaria, Inheretrix of Holland, Ze-  
land, Hainault, and other Dominions in the Neer-  
lands, notwithstanding the Duke of Brabant her Hus-  
band was then living; and Pope Martin V. had declar'd  
the Marriage of the said Jaqueline with the Duke of Glouc-  
ster to be utterly unlawful and sinful. He having pre-  
pared an Army of twelve thousand Men, pass'd over  
to Calais, and march'd from thence to Mons in Fla-  
mands to recover his Wife's Inheritance. The Duke of  
Brabant, who was in Possession of those Countries,  
had, by the Assistance of his Brother the Duke of Bur-  
gundy, rais'd an Army of fifty thousand Men to oppos-  
him. Upon this the Duke of Gloucester sent to challenge the  
Duke of Burgundy to a single Combat, and call'd him  
Traitor. The Duke of Burgundy sent him Word he  
accepted the Challenge, but the Duke of Gloucester drew  
off his Forces, and departed with them immediately to  
England; leaving the Dutchess at Mons, but afterwards  
sent over some Forces to assist her against her Husband,  
which being defeated, he laid aside all Hopes of those  
Countries, and married the Daughter of the Lord Cal-  
bam. After which Jaqueline was reconciled to her  
Husband; so these Wars were ended, but the Combat  
agreed on between the two Dukes remained to be per-  
formed; but the Regent of France, considering that it  
might be of very ill Consequence to the English, be-  
came a Mediator between them, and made a friendly  
Conclusion of all.

A Dis-  
pute be-  
tween the  
Duke of  
Gloucester and  
Bishop of  
Winchester.

Now England began to be sensible of the ill Effect  
of an Infant's sitting upon the Throne, by the danger-  
ous Emulation of the two principal Men in the Nation,  
the Duke of Gloucester, and his Uncle the Bishop of  
Winchester, the one Protector of the Kingdom, and  
the other Tutor to the King. For both Court and  
Kingdom were disturbed by their unhappy Contention,  
which

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

467

which proceeded from a boundless Ambition in the <sup>4 Hen. VI.</sup>shop, and as lofty a Temper in the Protector. The news of these Disturbances obliged the Regent of France to leave that Kingdom, to make a Reconciliation between them, tho' the State of that Realm sufficiently required his Presence. In his Absence the Duke of *Bretagne*, and Earl of *Richemont*, went over to *Charles's* Party; and the latter being made Constable of France by him, gathered an Army of twenty thousand men, and invested *St. Jean* in *Normandy*; but meeting with a Repulse there, he turned his Fury upon the Country of *Anjou*, burning and plundering many Places.

The Presence of the Duke of *Bedford* was very useful in *England*. The Differences between the Duke of *Glocester* and Bishop of *Winchester*, occasioned long debates, first at *St. Albans*, then at *Northampton*, and lastly in a Parliament at *Leicester*, where the Duke of *Bedford*, to avoid any Tokens of Partiality to his Brother of *Glocester*, would not intermeddle, otherwise than in general Words to encourage Amity, but had the Matter referred to the most considerable Men in the Nation, for Nobility and Wisdom; by whose prudent Management, the Parties contending were persuaded to leave the Matter to their Arbitration, which they did, and swore, the one by his Prince-hood, and the other by his Priesthood, to stand to their Award: Which was, that they should each of them, without any Compensation, bury all their Differences in oblivion for ever; and so they were fully reconciled. This Reconciliation was succeeded by several Acts of civility and Honour; for the young King, not then five Years old, solemnly knighted his Uncle the Regent of *France*, and also honoured the Earl of *Cambridge*, Heir to the late Earl of *March*, with the same Order of Knighthood; and altho' his Blood had been tainted by his Father, by a fatal Error he was created Duke of *York*, and was the Person who afterwards effected the Extirpation of the Male Lines, both of his own House, and that of *Lancaster*.

Now the Duke of *Exeter*, Guardian to the young King dies, a Man of great Wisdom and Abilities, and <sup>The Duke of Exeter dies.</sup> *Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, was constituted in his place; but he being Lieutenant to the Regent in France, did not presently come over to *England*, but

1416. staid to perform many noble Exploits, taking many Cities and Towns, and garisoned them with English. During this Time, the Duke of Burgundy solicited for the setting the Duke of Alençon, who had been taken at the Battle of Verneville, at Liberty, which was done for the Sum of two hundred thousand Crowns; but he would by no Means be induced to acknowledge King Henry's Title to France.

The Regent returns to France.

About Candlemas, the Duke of Bedford, the Regent of France, left England, and returned to France, attended by the Bishop of Winchester, who being arrived at Calais, received the Habit, Cap, and Dignity of a Cardinal to his own great Profit, and the Impoverishment of the Spiritualities of England. With the Regent there went over likewise a good Number of fresh Soldiers, under the Command of the renowned Lord Talbot, whose Victories were so numerous, that his Name was not only formidable to the French, but famous throughout the World. Upon one Side of his Sword was inscrib'd *San Talboti*, and on the other, *Pro vincere inimicos meos*. Not long after his Arrival, the Inhabitants of Mans in Maine had let in the French by Night, and massacred most of the English in the Place; the Earl of Suffolk, Governor of the Town, retiring with some Men into the Castle, sent to the Lord Talbot for Succour: He came immediately, and his Men on a sudden crying out *St. George a Talbot*; the French Soldiers being surpris'd, were most of them put to the Sword. Thirty Citizens and thirty five Priests were beheaded as Traitors, and then the City remained in its former Condition.

The Lord Talbot's Valor.

The Earl of Salisbury goes into France, and besieges Orleans.

The Earl of Warwick having continued above a Year in France, after he had been declared Governor to the King, return'd into England, and was succeeded by the Earl of Salisbury who went over with five thousand Soldiers; and being desirous to do some Action, he might answer the Greatness of his Name, resolves to besiege Orleans. The Inhabitants having Notice of the Design, provided for their Defence, and the Suburbs as large as some Cities, were levell'd to the Ground, that the City might not be annoy'd from them: They also were well provided with Men, Ammunition and Provision. The Earl of Salisbury finding that Attack would be fruitless, surrounded the City, and casting up Intrenchments for the Security of his Camp, invests it.

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

469

so closely, that *Charles* of *France* could send no Relief <sup>7 Feb. VI.</sup> to them. The City was reduc'd to the last Distress, the Siege having lasted two Months, and that with much Bloodshed on both Sides. The Besiegers had taken a Fortress upon the Bridge, from which was a free Prospect into all Parts of the City: The Earl of *Salisbury* used to go into this Tower, to view the Posture of the besieged; which being taken Notice of by them, a Cannon was level'd against that Window, which being discharg'd while the Earl and Sir *Thomas Gargrave* were viewing the Town thro' the Grate, the Bullet so shatter'd the Bars, that Splinters wounded them both in the Face so desperately that they died within a few Days. This was accounted to the *English* the Beginning of Misfortunes; for after this, by Degrees, they lost all their Possessions in that Kingdom; for, tho' they sometimes gain'd, yet they lost three times more.

However the Siege did not end with his Life, for the Regent appointed the Earl of *Suffolk* in his Place, <sup>The City of Orleans agree to surrender.</sup> who with the Lord *Talbot* and others held on the Siege till the End of *Lent*. The *French* King knowing how much his Affairs depended upon that Siege, began to despair, and the besieged being reduced to great Distress, at last beat a Parley, and agreed to a Surrender, but would not resign to the Duke of *Bedford* for King *Henry*, but to the Duke of *Burgundy*, to be kept for the Duke of *Orleans*. But the Regent would by no means agree to that, returning Answer, *that the War was made in King Henry's Name, therefore Orleans ought to be his*. This Answer the Duke of *Burgundy* took very ill, conceiving the *English* envied his Honour and Interest, and kept it laid up in his Mind.

While *Charles* of *France* was under Apprehensions <sup>The Story of Joan de Arc.</sup> of his Ruin being near compleated, a young Maid of Eighteen Years came to him, named *Joan* of *Lorain*, Daughter to *James de Arc*, dwelling in *Damremy* upon the *Meuse*, an ordinary Shepherdess, who bad him not to faint, constantly affirming, *that God had sent her to deliver the Realm of France from the English Yoke, and restore him to all his Dominions*. She was not credited at first, but she constantly affirming it, *Charles* and his Council began to hearken to her. Upon which *Joan* cloath'd and arm'd her self like a Man, and demanded to have that Sword that hung in *St. Katherine's Church* at *Firebois* in *Touaine*; and upon Search there was found



1429.

found an old Sword among the *Reliques* of the Church, which gain'd her more Credit and Admiration. Thus warlikely accountred she rode immediately to Blois, where Forces and Provisions lay for the Relief of Orleans, with which she and the Marshal and Admiral of France entred. This mightily encourag'd the besieged, and they began to call her the *Maid of God*; she then wrote this Letter to the Earl of Suffolk, at that Time lying before the Town.

Her Letter  
to the Earl  
of Suffolk  
giving to under-  
stand them  
Peace.

*King of England, give an Account to the King of Heaven for his Royal Blood. Surrender up to the Virgin the Keys of all the good Towns which you have taken by Force. She is come from Heaven to vindicate the Royal Blood of France, and is ready to make Peace, if you wilt submit to reasonable Terms, and (as Equity and Justice requires) restore what thou hast taken from him. King of England, if thou wilt not do thus, I am the Captain of the Wars, and in whatsoever Part of France, I shall find any of the English Nation, I will drive them out, whether they will or no; but if they will submit, I will take them to Mercy. I am come from the King of Heaven to expel you out of France, and if you will not do this, I will make such a Slaughter and Stir among you as hath not been this thousand Years in France. Believe me, the King of Heaven will give me and my Forces such irresistible Courage and Strength, as you shall not be able to oppose. Go in God's Name into your own Country, and be not contrary to your own Opinions; for ye shall not hold France, but the King of Heaven, the Son of the Virgin Mary; but Charles the true Heir of it, shall again possess it, and be King of it; for God hath given it him, and he shall enter Paris with a goodly Train. You William Pawlet, Earl of Suffolk, John Lord Talbot, Thomas Lord Scales, Lieutenants of the Duke of Bedford, who callest thyself Regent of the Kingdom of France, be sparing of innocent Blood, and give Orleans its Liberty. If you will not do Justice to those whom you have wrong'd, the French will do the noblest Exploit that ever was done in Christendom. This wholesome Advice given you by God and his Virgin.*

Her Letter  
decided by  
the English.

The Earl of Suffolk received this Letter with great Laughter: King Charles and his Council were divided, and Joan reputed no better than an Enthusiast. The Trumpeter who brought it was imprisoned, which tho' the French complained of, as again it the Law of Arms, the English justified it by the Madness of the

Maid.

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

471

Message. *Du Serres* gives this Character of the Vir-8 Hen. VI. gin, that she was of a modest Aspect, sweet, civil and resolute, her Discourse moderate, rational and reserv'd, her Actions demonstrating great Chastity, without Vanity, Affectation, or Levity. Whatever her Qualifications were, by her Encouragement and Conduct the *English* soon lost their Hopes of *Orleans*; for after they had suffer'd the Duke of *Alençon* to enter the Town with fresh Forces, they were obliged to break up the Siege with great Loss. *Joan* made one and the foremost in all Actions, and made several fierce Sallies upon the *English*, in one of which, being shot thro' the Arm with an Arrow, she cried out, *This is a Favour from Heaven, let us go on; they cannot escape the Hand of God.* At last the Lord *Talbot* raised the Siege, and march'd off in good Order with nine thousand Men, whom *Joan* would not suffer the *French* to pursue. In Memory of this extraordinary Deliverance the City of *Orleans* erected a Monument, where *Charles VII.* King of *France*, and *Joan* the martial Virgin, were represented kneeling in Armour, with Eyes and Hands lift up to Heaven, in Token of their Thanks and Acknowledgment.

After this, there was interchangeable taking of Towns and Places of Importance on both Sides. And the Duke of *Alençon*, being considerably reinforced, suddenly attack'd the valiant Lord *Talbot*, who had not above a fifth Part of their Number, whom they charg'd so unexpectedly, that his Archers had no Time to fortifie their Stations, after their usual Manner, by Palisadoes or Impalement of Stakes; so that after three Hours brave Resistance, the *English* were put to the worst, and the Lord *Talbot* having receiv'd a Wound in his Back, was taken Prisoner, as were also some other Commanders. The Foot under Shelter of the Horse retreated in good Order, and got to a Place of Safety, after they had lost about twelve hundred Men, and the *French* about half that Number. This Blow shook the Foundations of the *English* Greatness in *France*, and many Places revolted from the *English*, and swore Fealty to King *Charles*, who having taken the City of *Rheims* in *Champaign*, was there, according to *Joan's* Direction, crowned King of *France*.

This Year *John Wickliff* and his Memory were condemned at the Council of *Constance*, after this Manner: Proclamation being made, that if any Person could or would

*Wickliff* condemned by the Council of *Constance* and his Bones!

1439.

would defend *Wickliff* or his Memory, they should immediately appear and be heard; none daring to be his Advocate, they proceeded to examine several Warden whom they had brought to prove that *John Wickliff* in his Life-Time held and taught many heretical and heterodox Doctrines, contrary to the receiv'd Tenets and Practices of the *Christian Church* in all Ages, and that he died in an obstinate and wilful Impenitence of those Opinions. Therefore they proceeded to give Sentence as followeth, *That the said John Wickliff being a notorious obstinate Heretick, and dying in his Heresy, his Body and Bones, if they gbt be discern'd from the Bodies of other faithful People, should be taken up out of the Ground, and lay far from the Burial of any Church, according to the Law and Decree.* Accordingly the Bishop of *Lincoln* sent his Officers to *Waverburgh*, who to his, dug out of his Grave (some one Years after his Burial, burnt them and cast them into a Brook adjoining, call'd *Swiss*, which carry'd them into the Sea, as a Prefage of the spreading of his Doctrine into all Parts of the World.

The Regent  
sends a Chal-  
lenge to King  
Charles.

The Duke of *Bedford* being concerned at the Progress of *Charles's* Arms, resolved to try another Field Battle, and leaving *Paris*, marched with ten thousand *English*, and some *Norman* Troops, into the Country of *Brie*, from whence he sent a Challenge Writing to King *Charles* by a Herald, to this Purpose, That whereas contrary to the Agreement between *Henry V.* and his own Father *Charles VI.* and the Kingdom of *France*, he had taken upon him, contrary to the Laws and Right, the Title and Dignity of King of *France*, and had violently taken and wrongfully held many Cities and Towns belonging to the King of *England*; he came from *Paris* with his Army to prove by Deed of Sword and Stroke of Battle his Challenge and Cause true, requiring him to appoint the Place of meeting. *Charles* resolutely answer'd the Herald, That his Master should not need to come to him, nor invite him to a Battle, for he was determin'd with all Speed to seek out his Master, and by Battle put an End to all Differences between them. Upon this, the two Armies met near *Sens*, where they were drawn up in Order of Battle, two Days, without Action: But on the third Day, King *Charles*, tho' he was much superior in Numbers to the *English*, in

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

473

l of the Night broke up his Camp, and withdrew. <sup>8 Hen. VI.</sup>  
n which the Duke of *Bedford* return'd to *Paris*.

ie Regent having been informed, that various En-  
ours had been used to win the *Burgundians* from <sup>The Regent goes into Normandy.</sup>

*Henry's* Side, took a Journey into *Normandy*, to  
de a safe Retreat there, if the *English* should be  
rain'd to quit their other Holds and Dominions.  
le he was in *Normandy*, *Charles* gain'd the Town  
e. *Denis* near *Paris*, from whence he sent the Duke  
*Alençon* and *Joan* of *France* to try their Fortunes and  
ids at *Paris*. But the *English* gave them so rough  
ntertainment that *Joan* her self was wounded, and  
wn into the Town-Ditch, full of the Filth and  
ements of the City, and had certainly been taken,  
ot a Servant of the Duke of *Alençon* pulled her  
and the rest were repuls'd with great Slaughter.  
the News of which, the Regent having committed  
Trust of the Coast-Towns of *Normandy* to the  
e of *York*, and of *Roan* to the Duke of *Somerset*,  
ed to *Paris*.

ie next Enterprize was to reduce *Compeign* to Obe-<sup>*Joan* taken and burnt.</sup>  
e, which was invested by *John* of *Luxemburgh*,  
the *Burgundians* and some *English*. Hither *Joan*  
once had entred, and with a Party of six hundred  
, made a vigorous Sally; but they were repuls'd  
considerable Loss, and *Joan* was taken Prisoner  
e *Burgundians*, and *John* of *Luxemburgh* sold her  
e *English* for ten thousand Pound *Tournois*, and  
hundred Crowns annual Rent. After which, she  
sent to *Roan* in *Normandy*. She afterwards was  
ined and tried before the Bishop of *Beauvois*, and  
condemned to die for the unnatural Use of mas-  
e Habits, Bloodshed and Sorcery; but upon her  
na abjuring all her ill Practices, was pardon'd her  
till again being convicted of a perjurious Relapse,  
owledging her self a Strumpet, and feigning her  
to be with Child, she was burnt in the Market-  
e at *Roan*, and her Ashes cast into the Air.

any of the *French* Writers shew the highest Value  
er Memory; and *Mezeray* says, that being on the  
for Execution, she foretold the *English*, that the  
l of God was ready to strike them, and that his Jus-  
would not only drive them out of France, but persue  
into England, and make them suffer the same Mi-  
and Calamities, they had inflicted on the French.  
How-

1431. However this is certain, that the *French* *Amazon*, the Restorer of the *French* Monarchy, who if she did not drive out the *English* as she vaunted herself, yet was the chief Cause that the *English* lost *France*. The *English* Affairs being in a declining Condition in *France*, it was thought necessary for the young King to come over, and be crown'd in *Paris*. Accordingly the Duke of *Tork* being made High Constable of *England* during his Life, King *Henry*, with a noble Retinue, took Ship at *Dover*, and landed at *Calais*, from whence he went to *Roan*, in Order to make a publick Entry into *Paris*, all which was perform'd with the utmost Magnificence; where being arriv'd, he was receiv'd with the utmost Pomp and Demonstrations of Joy imaginable, and was publickly crown'd King of *France*, on the 7<sup>th</sup> Day of *December*, in the Cathedral Church of *Paris*, by the Cardinal of *Winchester*, and having staid five Days in *Paris*; which were spent in Tournaments, and the most splendid Entertainments, he returned to *Roan*, and there kept his Christmas. But yet *Charles* of *France* esteemed himself no less a King for the Coronation of King *Henry*, but perused his Interests with the utmost Application; and having taken the City of *Chartres* by Stratagem, put the Bishop and others to the Sword. Nor were the *English* idle, but made up that Loss with much Advantage, and set the valiant Lord *Talbot* free by Exchange.

In *England* there were great Rejoicings upon Account of King *Henry's* being crown'd at *Paris*; as if the poor *Wickliffites* were to be their Peace-Offering, the Bishops persecuted them with the utmost Severity; and several were put to Death in various Places. These Cruelties much incensed the common People against the Clergy, and begat a Rebellion. For *William Maudesville*, Bailiff of *Abington* in *Berkshire*, stirred up the People to Revenge, and getting together a Multitude of People, took upon himself to be their Captain, and the Name of *Jack Sharp* of *Wigmore's* Lands in *Wiltshire* (the antient Inheritance of Earl *Admontmer*, and now in Possession of the Duke of *Tork*, who from thence challenged the Crown of *England*), giving out that he would make the Heads of Priests as cheap as Sheep's Heads, which were then three, or as others say, ten a Penny. But the Duke of *Glocester* having Notice of this Insurrection,

The *Wickliffites* persecuted.

*Jack Sharp's* Rebellion.

rechecked

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

rebellion, immediately sent down a sufficient Force to disperse the Rebels, which was soon effected, the Captain himself, and others being taken Prisoners, who was hanged and quartered, and some of the rest, upon their Submission, were pardoned and dismissed.

King Henry having staid in *France* till the latter End of *February*, took his Leave of it ; and landing at Dover, came to *London*, where he was received in a triumphant Manner. Still the Accidents of War, between the *English* and *French*, were various and numerous, sometimes the one, and sometimes the other getting the Advantage. It would be both tedious and endless to recount the Surprises, Sieges, Skirmishes, and the like. In the mean Time a Controversy happened between *Reyner*, Duke of *Anjou* and *Barre*, and the Earl of *Vallemont*, which proceeded so far as to be decided by War. *Charles*, King of *France*, supported the Duke's Claim, and the Duke of *Burgundy* the Earl's : The Arms of the latter prevailed, so that *Reyner's* Troops were beaten, and himself taken Prisoner : but yet this made for the Interest of King *Charles* ; for while *Reyner* was in his Captivity, he by his Persuasions prepared the Duke of *Burgundy* for a Reconciliation, which tended much to the Damage of the *English*.

While the Earl of *Arundel* and Lord *Talbot* rang'd about with victorious Forces, terrifying *Anjou*, *Maine*, and other Parts, the *French* King was busy, clandestinely exciting Tumults in *Normandy*, so that the common people had gathered together to the Number of sixty thousand in *Vex*, and twenty thousand in *Caux* : Their designs and Pretensions were to drive out all the *English* Officers, and to favour the Interest of King *Charles*. To stop their Progress, the Earl of *Arundel* march'd against them with one thousand three hundred Light Horse, and six thousand Archers, two Parts of which laid in Ambuscade, while the Lord *Willoughby* drew them into it by the third. The Rebels upon the Surprise threw down their Arms, and begged for Mercy : before the Soldiers Hands could be stop'd, a thousand of them were slain. Some of the Ring-leaders were executed, and the Multitude permitted to return to their Habitations. Not long after this, the Earl of *Arundel*, after having performed several noble Actions, during the Wars in *France*, received his Death's Wound

in a Skirmish, where *La Hire*, a  
 commander, won the Day.

The Regency still continued in *France*, and the Amity between the Dukes of *Bedford* and *Burgundy* was not intirely dissolved, tho' it had been for some Time slackned: But fresh Distastes and Grudges being taken one at another; and these being heightened by Court Parasites, they thought it a Diminution of their Honour to hold any League or Amity one with another. However several Lords endeavoured to heal the Breach betwixt them, and an Interview was appointed for that End; but for want of Condescension on both Sides it was prevented; and they lived ever after, as if there never had been any Affinity betwixt them. The Duke of *Burgundy's* Affection to the *English* declining, there wanted nothing but a fair Opportunity of being reconciled to *Charles* the French King. To prepare the Way to this, several of the Nobility, that were in the Interest of *Charles*, insinuated to him, That the King had upon all Occasions spoken him wondrously of him, and inwardly wished well to him; and that he never heard the Mouth of his Father named, but it caused him with Signs and Protestations to declare his Innocence. In the mean Time, to put an End to the Calamities of War, the Deputies of the Grand Council of *Basil* urged the French, *English* and *Burgundians*, to come to a Treaty, and the City of *Arras* was appointed for that Purpose.

The Treaty  
 at Arras.

There was a very great Assembly met there, so that *Morzeray* says, it was the greatest and noblest, that had been known: But the *English* proposing no Conditions of Peace; but that *Henry* their King should have all, and that *Charles* should hold under him; and the French offering him only the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Gascony*, the Assembly broke up without coming to any Agreement. Upon this, King *Charles* being desirous to agree to any Terms, to weaken the *English* Interest, sent the Duke of *Burgundy* a blank Paper, desiring him to prescribe his own Demands and Conditions, which he did; and the Duke transported with Pride, declared himself an Enemy to all that should oppose King *Charles*, after he had caused the Deaths of three hundred thousand Men in his Quarrel, besides the Destruction of innumerable Cities and Towns.

By this Conjunction, King *Henry* was not only a power

erful Ally, but had the same to deal with as an E- 14 Hen. VI.  
To give a Colour to this Fact, the Duke of Bar-  
sent Embassadors into *England*, to give King  
the Reasons of his having made a Peace with  
*Charles*; and to persuade him to be satisfied with  
he had done: But the Message was so displeasing  
to *English*, that the Embassadors were not permitted  
to King *Henry*, but were sent away with this An-

The Duke  
of Burgundy  
sends an Em-  
bassy into  
England.

That their Master was a *perjured Traitor*. And  
popular Fury rose so high against the *Burgundians*  
resided in *London*, for the Sake of Traffick, that ma-  
ny of them were assaulted and slain, before a Proclama-  
tion could come out to prevent it. After the Return

of the Embassadors, he sent back all Contracts to the  
Duke of *Bedford*, at *Paris*, and renounced his Allegi-  
ance to the King of *England*.

Seven Days after the Conclusion of this Peace died

The Duke of  
*Bedford* Regent of  
*France* dies,

the Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*, uncertain  
whether out of Grief for the Evil he foresaw, or some  
Distemper; a wise and warlike Prince, who by  
courage and prudent Conduct, had kept up the *Eng-  
lish* power in *France* for fourteen Years. He was bur-  
ied at *Roan* in *Normandy*, in the Cathedral Church,  
under a sumptuous and costly Monument; which re-  
mains whole and intire many Years after, in the  
time of *Lewis* the eleventh, the Son of King *Charles*,  
one of his Courtiers advised him, being then at *Roan*,  
to demolish it, because his Memorial was a Shame to  
him: But King *Lewis* generously replied, *God save  
me, and let his Body now lye at rest, who, when he  
was alive, would have made the proudest of us to tremble:  
his Tomb it is not so decent, nor convenient, as  
his noble Atchievements deserved; and I am sorry it  
does not lie more stately, that its Richness might answer his  
labours.*

As the Duke of *Bedford* being dead, the Treaty be-  
tween King *Charles* and the Duke of *Burgundy* began  
to produce Effects very destructive to the *English* Cause;  
they began almost in all Places of the *English* Do-  
minions, to think of revolting from under their Juris-  
diction; and *Normandy* began first to shew its Inclina-  
tion to King *Charles*. To supply the Vacancy, the  
Duke of *York* was created Regent of *France*; and the  
Duke of *Somerset*, his perpetual Rival, still continued  
Governor

The Duke  
of York made  
Regent of  
France.



1436.  
Paris left  
from the  
English.

Governor of *Normandy*. Before the Duke of *Burgundy* could arrive, *Paris*, the Capital City, was lost; for the Lord *Willoughby*, who was then Governor for the *English*, had not above two thousand Soldiers, relying upon the Fidelity of the Citizens; but they, after the Death of the Regent, perceiving the Declension of the *English*, conspired against them. And the Earl of *Richmont*, Constable of *France*, hovering about *Paris*, was, by Treachery, let into the City: And now the Citizens, who were lately Subjects, on a sudden turned Enemies; and the *English* were attacked from the Windows by Women and Children, with Stones, and other Things; and many were massacred in the Streets. The Lord *Willoughby*, the Governor, and many others, fled to St. *Anthony's Gate*, and the *Bastile Places*, which they had reserved for Defence, in Case of Extremity. Many had been saved in those Places, but that the perfidious Citizens drew Chains over the Streets, and stop'd their Passage. They in the *Bastile* standing upon their Defence, demanded a Parley, and agreed to depart with their Lives and Baggage. Thus *Paris* returned to its former Government, about sixteen Years after the Duke of *Clarence* had plac'd an *English* Garrison there, in Behalf of his Brother, *Henry* the fifth.

The Insurrection in  
*Normandy*  
quelled.

The *English* Affairs were not yet come to the last Extremity, and the seizing of *Paris* might have been of no Service to the *French* had it not been at a Time that was as bad as could be to march an Army, which hindered the Duke of *York* from attempting it in Time, tho' he arrived there afterwards with a Body of eight thousand Men; but too late to do any Service. The *English* still held *Normandy* intire, tho' not without a great deal of Trouble; for the People in *Caux* rebelled again, but were quelled, and suffered more severely for it than the former Rebellion; for five thousand of them were cut in Pieces, and trampled upon, by the Feet of the *English*, who made Booty of their Goods, burnt their Habitations, and drove the whole Body of them out of the Country.

The Duke  
of *Burgundy*  
besieges *Calais*.

The *English*, upon the Duke of *Burgundy's* forsaking their Alliance, had endeavoured to stir up *Gascon* and other *Flemish* Towns, subject to the Duke, to rise in Rebellion, which, tho' they did not succeed, the News of it incited him to a Revolt; in Prosecution

## Reign of King HENRY VI.

479

which, he brought an Army of forty thousand <sup>15 Hen. VI.</sup> to *Calais*. The Duke's Design was to have the Harbour by sinking of Ships loaden with it the *Calisians* easily removed those Impediments at the Ebb-tide. At that Time the chief Commanders, for King *Henry*, were the Lord *Dudnor* of the Castle, and Sir *John Ratcliff* of the Duke of *Glocester* was sent from *England* with a powerful Fleet and Army to relieve it; at his Arrival, challenged the Duke of *Burgh* to meet him in the open Field; but the Duke easily raised the Siege without any Battle, leaving the *English* Masters of his Camp; who entering his Camp, burnt *Poppering* and *Bell*, and committed great Ravages about *Graveling*, *Boloign*, and other places, then settling the Affairs of *Calais*, returned to *England* with great Honour. After this, the Duke of *Burgh* his third Wife *Isabel*, an ingenious Woman, contrived a Medium, whereby he might hold a League with *France*, and yet make no Breach with *France*.

The Deaths  
of three  
great Princesses.

The following Year was memorable for the Death of three great Princesses, *Katherine*, Mother to the present *Henry*, the old Dowager of King *Henry* the third, and the old Countess of *Armagnack*, who all died within eight Hours of each other.

At this Time happen'd a Match, which threatened to King *Henry*, and that was the Marriage of *James*, the Daughter of *James*, King of *Scots*, with *Isabel*, the *Dauphin* of *France*; upon the Consummation of which, he sent new Supplies of Men to fight against the *English*. He designed also to have something himself in Person; but before he could put his Designs in Execution, he was barbarously murdered in the Sanctuary at *Perth*, by certain bloody Priests, who had been employed by the Duke of *Athol*, his kinsman, in Hopes to obtain the Crown; for his impiety, one Part of his Punishment was, to have a hot Crown of Iron put upon his Head.

*James* King  
of *Scots* murdered.

At this Time, the Duke of *York*, the new Regent, was created, but performed nothing memorable, tho' he had neither Opportunities nor Advantages to have done anything worthy his noble Office; tho' some Opposition he met from the Duke of *Somerset*, who in the mean Time, with the Lord *Talbot*, and

*Harflaw* surrendered to  
the Duke of  
*Somerset*.

1439. and others, managed  
very strenuously, layi  
been seized by French; and the King Charles sent  
a Body of six thousand men to relieve the Place, &  
they were defeated. & it, Harfleur was surren-  
dered to the Duke of Burgundy.

The Earl of Warwick made Regent.  
Soon after the Duke of York was recalled, and  
the Earl of Warwick who carried over with him  
and vigorously applied himself to the Business of  
the Duke of Burgundy were driven from before Calais,  
the brave Lord Talbot: and several other considerable  
Advantages were gained the English Forces; and the  
English Interest was still maintained in France, not  
only by Means of King Charles's Ministers and Forces  
but also by the Remissness of King Charles, who gave  
his Son Occasion to raise a Rebellion against him.  
But before any great change could be made of the  
Breach between the Duke and Dauphin, the Earl of  
Warwick, after many bloody Actions, died at Rouen,  
and the Duke of York was sent over a second Time  
in the Quality of Regent of France.

One John Gardiner burnt for Heresy.  
On Easter Day, one John Gardiner, a Person that  
favoured the Doctrines of Wickliff, but yet conform-  
ed outwardly to the Romish Ceremonies, was discov-  
ered to convey the Sacramental Bread from his  
Mouth, after he had received it from the Priest's  
Hands, in a foul Cloth, in St. Mary Ax's Church  
London. This Fact was observed with Abhorrence by  
his Fellow Communicants; upon which he being ex-  
amined, was condemn'd as an obstinate Heretick, and  
burnt in Smithfield, May the fourteenth.

The Duke of York twice offers King Charles Battle.  
King Charles having besieged Pontboise, near Paris  
with twelve thousand Men, the Duke of York landed  
in Normandy, gathered a Body of seven or eight thou-  
sand Men, and offered the King Battle; but he kept  
himself within his Trenches. The Duke upon this  
passed, with his Army, the River Ouse, which ran be-  
tween the two Camps. This caused King Charles to  
remove in such Haste, that the French could hardly do  
it any Thing but flying. The Duke took his Camp  
reinforced Pontboise, and pursued the King to Paris,  
where the Duke again provoked him to Fight; but he  
declined the Offer, upon which the Duke returned.

## Reign of King HENRY VI.

481

Charge in *Normandy*. This seeming Coward- 19 Hen. VI.  
ht King *Charles* under that Obloquy and  
with the People, especially the *Parisians*,  
not a second Time attempted, and prevail-  
*Pontboise*, it might have endangered his whole  
He therefore returned to the Siege in great  
took it by a general Assault, with much  
on his own Side, and the Loss of five hun-  
English. By this Exploit he re-established  
tion with his People.

In the seventeenth, a Priest named *Richard* *Richard*  
Minister of *Hermetsworth* in *Essex*, who had *Wicke*, burnt  
n convicted of Heresy, and abjured, was *on Tower-*  
y of a Relapse; and being degraded of his *hill, for He-*  
gnity, was burnt as an incorrigible Heretick *resy.*  
*Wicke*. Before his Death he had foretold, *That*  
*gate of the Tower should sink into the Ground;*  
ordingly coming to pass upon the eighteenth  
ollowing, when the said Gate sunk in the  
re than seven Foot into the Earth; this  
uch to the Opinion that many had of him,  
Death, that he was a good Man, and burnt  
lice; that many Persons went by Night to  
where he was executed, and offered Images  
nd other Things, according to the Super-  
hose Times, kissing the Ground where he  
nd carrying away his Ashes as a sacred Re-  
e Vicar of *Barking*, to increase their Ado-  
gled Spices with the Ashes, that they might  
ut the Fragrancy proceeded from the Holi-  
e Sufferer; which so deceived the People,  
aised a great Heap of Stones in the Place,  
d a Crois; and many went on Pilgrimage to  
reat enriching the Vicar of *Barking*, who  
e Offerings of the People. Upon this the  
ng offended, procured a Proclamation, for-  
se Superstitions; and the Mayor of *London*  
d upon the Place, and apprehended some of  
s; and among the rest, the Vicar of *Bark-*  
confessed the Delusion, that, for his own  
ad put upon the People.

es now growing weary of the War, a Treaty *The Duke of*  
as appointed at *Calais*, but not concluded: *Orleans re-*  
ansom of *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, who *leased.*  
Prisoner in *England* for twenty six Years,

1440 ever since the Battle at Agincourt, was agreed on four hundred thousand Crowns, which the Duke of Burgundy paid to pacify him for the Murther of his brother. The Duke of Gloucester foreseeing the ill Consequences that were like to ensue upon the Duke of Burgundy's Liberty, strenuously opposed it, and ordered Reasons to be entred upon Record, in Testimony of the Discharge of his Duty. The Cardinals of Winchester and Winchester, assuming to themselves a Power of acting many Things without the Consent of the Duke of Gloucester, who was Protector of the King, the Duke declared to the King, how much the Cardinal of Winchester had offended both his Majesty and the Laws of the Nation, by his ambitious Desire of mounting all others in Honour and Dignity, enriching himself, to the defrauding of his Treasures, and had practised Things highly prejudicial to his Majesty's Service. These Complaints were drawn up in four Articles, which being heard in Council, the Cardinal found so many Friends, as not only defended him, but afterwards found Means to work the undoing of the Duke of Gloucester.

1442.  
A Match  
proposed be-  
tween King  
Henry and  
the Earl of  
Armagnac's  
Daughter.

The Countess of Cominges dying, the King of France and Earl of Armagnac became violent Contenders for the Inheritance. The Earl took Possession; but fearing the Greatness of the King of France, offered his Daughter in Marriage to the King of England, with a large Fortune in Money, and the Possession of Towns and Castles in Gascony. This Offer King Henry accepted; but the King of France disliking it, sent the Dauphin with a powerful Army, who took the Earl and his Daughter Prisoners; and so the Match was never effected.

Accidents in  
England.


On Candlemas Day, the Steeple of St. Paul's Church was set on fire by Lightning, in the midst of the Wood of the Shaft, but was quenched by the great Pain and Diligence of the Citizens: And at the same Time, the Steeple of Waltham-Cross, in Essex, was in the same Tempest consumed; but the Church was saved.

1444.  
A Peace  
treated on,  
but not con-  
cluded.

The Kings of Spain, Denmark, and Hungary became Mediators for a Peace between England and France, but after many Proposals made, nothing but a Truce for eighteen Months was agreed on. While this Negotiation was carried on, the Earl of Suffolk, and

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

483

Commissioners for this Peace, took upon him a <sup>24 Hen. VI.</sup>  thing, beyond his Commission, and treated of a Marriage between King Henry and Margaret the daughter of the Duke of Anjou, and Niece to the Queen. When the Earl came to England, he set out the Beauty and Qualifications of the proposed Match, and the Advantages that would redound to the Kingdom by the Match. The Duke of Gloucester strongly opposed it, for weighty Reasons, but to no Pur-

King Charles of France understanding that King Henry had consented to it, sent over the Duke of Vendôme and Archbishop of Rheims, to conclude the Match, which being done, the Earl of Suffolk was made a Marquis, and appointed to celebrate the Formality of the Marriage, and to bring the Bride into England. Accord-

1445.  
A Marriage  
between  
King Henry  
and the  
Duke of  
Anjou's  
Daughter.

ingly, after great Preparations, and all Things being in Readiness, the new Marquis, with his Wife, and great Numbers of Ladies and Gentlemen, gloriously adorned, set out over to France, to fetch her; for her Father, though in Titles, was so poor in Purse, that he was not able to send her honourably to her Husband; so that the whole Charge, which was very great, fell to King Henry's Share. The noble Company being arrived at Tours, the Marquis married the Lady, as Proxy to King Henry, in the Presence of the King and Queen of France, and many Princes and Noblemen; and the Ceremonials having been solemnized with Feasts and Tournaments, she was convey'd into England with great Pomp, and married to King Henry at Southwike in Wiltshire; from thence being conducted to London, where she was received by the Citizens in great Splendor; and on the thirtieth of May following crowned Queen at Westminster.

Here some English Writers tell us, that it did appear, by Reason of the Breach of Promise made to the Earl of Armagnack's Daughter, that God was not pleased with the late Marriage: For from that Day forward, King Henry's Fortunes began to decline; so that he lost all his Friends in England, and all his Dominions in France. For in a little Time, the Queen directed her Council governing all Things, to the Detriment of the King and his Realm, it highly disgusted the greatest Part of the Nobility, and the whole Nation. But still some Care was taken about the Affairs of France; the Parliament granted Supplies, to carry

1446.  
The Beginning  
of  
England's  
Miseries.

1446. on the War against the Expiration of the Truce; the Duke of York was recalled from his Regency, and the Duke of Somerset sent in his Place.

The Duke of Gloucester murdered.

The Protector, the Duke of Gloucester, felt the full Blow of that evil Design which was sent to punish England. The Duke was a bold Opposer of the late Marriage, and was hated by the Queen, Daughter of Suffolk, and her Son; because, by the Honour of his Birth, and Authority of his Place, he seem'd to hinder that Son, who they pretended to serve in the King's Person, and designed in Reality to invade themselves with. At the first Place she caused the Duke to be removed, only from any Command about the King's Person, and the Council too; and the Duke of Suffolk, and the Cardinal of Winchester, and the Duke's Enemies, were employ'd to set on every Accusations they could either in Malice invent, or in Policy contrive, against him. And a Parliament upon that Account being call'd at Bury, on the second Day of their Sitting they caused the Duke of Gloucester to be arrested for High Treason, by the Lord Beaumont, Constable of England, and all his Followers to be taken from him, whereof thirty two were committed to several Prisons; and the next Day after his Imprisonment he was found murdered in his Bed. Some say he was strangled; some, that a hot Spit was run up his Fundament, and some, that he was stifled between two Feather-Beds. Thus died the good Duke of Gloucester, lamented by all the Nation, being a Lover of his Country, a Friend to the Learned, and so great an Encourager of them that he built the Divinity School at Oxford; a Defender of the Innocent, and a Terror to the Guilty. Although the Queen and her Party triumphed in his overthrow, yet by his Death they wrought the Ruin of the King himself, having opened a Gap for Richard, Duke of York, to put in his Claim to the Crown; which in few Years made King Henry's Throne very uneasy, and ended in his Deposition; which he would not in Probability have attempted, had not the brave Duke of Gloucester been dead.

The Cardinal of Winchester dies.

Soon after the Decease of the Duke of Gloucester God seem'd to revenge his Murder upon one of his principal Enemies, the rich Cardinal of Winchester, whose Heart was so much set upon the World, and the

Glories

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

485


cries of it, that there could not be a greater Punish-<sup>26 Hen. VI.</sup>  
ment of his Sins than to call him out of it. He lived  
above a Month after the Duke of *Glocester*, and  
his Death-Bed, is said to have shewn very great  
patience, and being told that no Medicines could  
save his Life, he cryed out in a Passion, *What! will  
nothing save my Life? Will Money do nothing? Cannot  
I be bribed a few Years? I'd give the whole King-  
dom for my Life.* He was succeeded by *William Patin*,  
who was afterwards surnamed *Wainfleet*, from the Place  
of his Nativity, and lived as eminent for his Piety, as  
his Predecessor was for his Riches, and founded *Mag-  
dalen* College in *Oxford*.

With this six and twentieth Year of the King, be-<sup>1448.</sup>  
gan the Rule of the Queen, who having removed the  
Duke of *Glocester* out of the World, by the Assistance  
of the Duke of *Suffolk*, her chief Favourite, managed  
all Things without Controul; wherein, tho' she made  
use of her Husband's Name, yet she could not hide her  
usurpation. Her Ambition and Tyranny grew so in-  
creasable, that it begat a general Discontent among  
the Nobility, as well as common People. The Duke  
of *York* having been made great, and grown strong,  
sought this Management a proper Handle for him to  
hold of, to farther his Designs to raise himself to  
the Throne; for having represented to his Friends, the  
misery of the Nation, which under the Name of a  
young, weak and unable to govern, was ruled by an am-  
bitious Queen and her Minions; he first whispered  
into their Heads, that it was necessary to pitch up-  
on some other Person to be King, since the present  
King had deposed himself in Effect, by suffering the  
Queen and *Suffolk* to over-rule all; that tho' King  
*Mary* was really a good Man, yet he was fitter for a  
cloister, than a Palace; and therefore the King-  
dom ought to be put into better Hands, than those of  
Women, and Favourites. This he said to prepare  
their Minds for what he had in Time to propose to  
them.

In the Time of the Truce between *England* and  
*France*, a Knight of *Arragon*, who served under the  
Duke of *Somerset*, the Regent, surprised the Town of  
*Caen*, belonging to the Duke of *Bretagne*, and car-  
ried off a Booty of one Million six hundred thousand  
crowns; upon which the Duke of *Bretagne* demanded

<sup>1449.</sup>  
All Norman-  
dy lost from  
the English




1449.  Reparation and Restitution of the Regent ; but he, contrary to good Discipline, neglected to give him Satisfaction, rather encouraging his Soldiers in their Riots and Disorders. Upon this the Duke of *Bretagne* began to make Reprisals, and surprised *Pont de Larche*, and Town after Town, so many, and so fast, that King *Charles* of *France*, uniting his Forces with his, soon became Master of *Roan*, and of *Caen*, *Bayeux*, and indeed of all the other Places belonging to the *English* in those Parts. In this Dukedom were an hundred strong Towns and Forts. And thus was *Normandy* lost in the Space of one Year, after it had been in the Possession of the *English* above thirty Years.

1450. The People discontented with the King's Ministers. The People seeing all Things running to Confusion both Abroad and at Home, grew very uneasy, and began to exclaim against those who had the Management of the publick Affairs, and especially against the Duke of *Suffolk* ; charging him with being the Cause of the delivering up *Anjou* and *Maine*, the chief Procurer of the Death of the Duke of *Glocester*, the Occasion of the Loss of *Normandy*, the Devourer of the King's Treasure, and the Remover of good and virtuous Counsellors from about the King, and the Advancer of vicious Persons, and such as were Enemies to the Publick. The Parliament being met, drew up several Articles of Impeachment against him, upon which he was committed to the Tower ; where after he had remained about a Month, he was set at Liberty, and taken into the King's Favour again ; at which the People were highly displeased, and began to assemble in numerous Bodies in many Places, and had chosen themselves a Captain, whom they called *Blue-Beard* ; but the Leaders being apprehended before they had entered upon any Enterprize, Matters were pacified.

The Duke of *Suffolk* banished.

After these Disturbances were quieted, the Parliament was adjourned to *Leicester*, where the King and Queen were present in great State, and the Duke of *Suffolk* with them as their chief Counsellor. The House of Commons resenting it highly, that their impeachment was set so light by, petitioned the King, that all such Persons as consented to the Delivery of *Anjou*, and *Maine* might be punished according to their Demerit. The King being sensible that nothing else would appease the People's Fury, removed the Lord *Sey* from being high Treasurer, and some other of the Duke of *Suffolk*'s Adherents from their Offices, and banished him.

five Years. The Duke thereupon designing to go <sup>29 Hen. VI.</sup> *France*, embarked in *Suffolk*, but was set upon by a  of War belonging to the Earl of *Exeter*, and be-  
taken by the Captain, and brought into *Dover Road*, <sup>And mur-  
dered.</sup> *Head* was stricken off in a Cock-boat.

he Death of the Duke of *Suffolk*, did much ani-  
mate those of the Duke of *York's* Faction, who now  
took no Pains to render the King despicable, and the <sup>The Duke  
of York's  
farther De-  
signs.</sup> King odious. They extol'd the Duke's Wisdom and  
Courage in his Government of *Ireland*, where he had in-  
veterately tam'd a savage People, and reduced them to  
Obedience and Discipline, that he thereby shewed  
much *England* wanted such a King. The Way

thus prepared, the Duke began his Work with a  
lar Sedition. And for that End, the *Kentish*  
Peasants were excited to take up Arms, under the Com-  
mand of *Jack Cade* an *Irishman*, who had formerly  
been a Servant to Sir *Thomas Dagre*, and having killed  
a woman with Child, fled to *France*; and returning,  
upon him the Name of *Mortimer*, pretending to  
be of that Family, and Cousin to the Duke of *York*.

*Jack Cade* was a Youth of a princely Stature and  
Age, of a very pregnant Wit, and undaunted Boldness,  
having drawn together great Numbers, encamped <sup>*Jack Cade's  
Rebellion in  
Kent.*</sup> *Black-beath*, styling himself the Captain of *Kent*, and  
his Pretences were the publick Good,  
Redress of Grievances; to effect which, he sent a

Roll of Complaints and Demands to the King.  
One of which was, that the Duke of *York* should be  
driven out of *Ireland*, and be one of the Principal of  
the King's Council. Another was, that whereas the Duke  
of *Gloucester* had been proclaim'd a Traitor, the Authors  
of his Death might be punished. The Complaints were,  
Grievances and Extortions of the Courts of the  
King's Bench and Exchequer, and many other Par-  
ticulars. Upon this, the King raised an Army of fif-  
ty thousand Men, and marched in Person against the  
Rebels, but *Jack Cade* politickly withdrawing his For-  
ces to *Sevenoke Wood*, the King returned again to  
London, without doing any Thing; but the Queen sent  
Forces under the Command of two fiery Youths,  
*John Humphry* and Sir *William Stafford*, to pursue the  
Rebels, but they were both slain, and their Men put to  
flight. And now the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and  
Bishop of *Buckingham* were sent to expostulate with  
them

1470. them, who to whom Jack Cade gave  
 civilly denied a Cessation of  
 Arms, saying, that the King would hear the Grievances of London, and give his royal Word that they should be redressed. The King not being able to trust to his Solar's Fidelity, retired with the Queen to *Kensworth Castle* in *Wiltshire*.

Jack Cade  
 enters London.


The King's Retinue, London being heard of by Cade, the Rebels in the City broke up their Camp, and marched towards the City, himself lodging the first Night at the *White Hart* in *Southwark*; where hearing what a great Party of the People of *Essex* were come to his Assistance, and were encamped at *Mile-end*, he did not doubt but to carry all before him. He gave strict Charge to his Men to offer no Injury to any, which was duly observed. On the second of July he marched into the City, and coming to *London-bridge*, struck his Sword upon it, saying, *Now is Mortimer Lord of London*. The Lord Mayor standing by his Door as he passed by, bad him beware of attempting any Thing against the Peace of the City. To whom he replied, *Let the World judge of our honest Intentions by our Actions*. Then he took upon him to send out Letters to diverse Citizens of Note, to bring him certain Numbers of Arms and Horse, at the Charge of the *Gen. of the Tower*, and *Florentine* Merchants, threatening to take off the Heads of those that refused Payment. The next Morning he ordered the Lord Say to be brought to *Guildhall*, where he had summoned the Lord Mayor and Aldermen to meet, before whom he caused him to be arraigned; who demanding to be tried by his Peers, was hurried away to the Standard in *Cheapside*, and beheaded, and his Head being put upon the End of a Pike, was carried before him to *Mile-end*, where he went to confer with the *Essex* Rebels; and in the Way, meeting Sir *James Cromer*, who had married the Lord Say's Daughter, he also caused his Head to be taken off, and born before him; the Bearers making it seem to him in every Street to move Laughter. The next Day he entered the City again, and put to Death some of his Men who had acted contrary to his Orders; and for some Displeasure taken against Alderman *Malpas*, he seized upon his Goods, and fined Alderman *Horn* five hundred Marks, and then returned to his Quarters in *Southwark*.

The Citizens  
 oppose the  
 King.

The chief Citizens finding the intolerable Insolence

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

489.

*Cade*, resolved for the future to keep him out of <sup>29 Hen. VI.</sup> City, and for that End sent to the Lord *Scales* to  them, who appointed Sir *Matthew Gough* for that pose; who having raised the trained Bands of the; planted themselves to keep the Bridge against n. The Rebels in *Southwark* hearing that their Ence would be disputed, ran furiously to Arms, and le endeavoured to open his Passage by Force, but Citizens opposed him so stoutly, that he could not the Bridge; the Conflict continued all Night, and nine in the Morning, and several brave Citizens e slain in the Dispute. Upon this, the Archbishop *Canterbury*, who was Chancellor, caused a Proclamation of Pardon to be published for all Offenders; in which the Rebels left their Captain, and departed me, glad to secure themselves as fast as they could. k *Cade* not daring to stay for the Succours that had n promised him, by the Favourers of the Duke of k, fled in Disguise into *Sussex*, into the Wood Coun- adjoining to *Lewes*, thinking so to escape, and by ing another Rebellion, to compass his Designs; ich being known, the King's Council offered a Reward of a thousand Marks, to any Person that should ng him alive or dead. *Alexander Eden*, a Gentle- n of *Kent*, seeing *Cade* in a Garden at *Hothfield* in *Tex*, valiantly attempted to take him, and in Fight th him slew him, and brought him up to *London* in Cart; his Body was quarter'd, his Head set on *Lon-* Bridge, and his Quarters were sent into several rts of *Kent*; into which Country the King came erwards in Person; where tho' five hundred were and guilty, so merciful was he that only eight re executed. There were also Insurrections in ne other Parts of the Nation, and in *Wiltshire*, the Re- ls drew *William Askot* Bishop of *Salisbury* from the gh Altar, when he was saying Mass in *Edington* urch, to the Top of the Hill, and there in his Episc- pal Robes inhumanly murdered him.

The Duke of *York* having received Intelligence in <sup>1451.</sup> land of the bad Success of his Affairs in *England*, <sup>The Duke of York pro-</sup> at *Jack Cade* was defeated, and his Army wholly <sup>ceeds in his</sup> nted, resolved to go himself into *England*, to con- <sup>former De-</sup> it with his Friends, and lay a better Foundation for <sup>signs.</sup> Proceedings. Being arrived in *England*, he apprehended the Lord *Dudley*, the Abbot of *Glastenbury*, and other, and imprisoned them in his Castle of *Ludlow*.

The

1451.

He takes up  
Arms.

The Duke of *Somerſet* was the Man, that ſince the Death of the Duke of *Suffolk*, moſt ſupported the Interests of King *Henry*; therefore was to be removed and incapacitated for oppoſing his Deſigns. The Duke of *York* hereupon entred into a Conſultation with his chief Friends, the Earls of *Salisbury*, and *Devonſhire*, the Lord *Cobham*, and others, how he might moſt eaſily get into the Throne of *England*, and how to ruin the Duke of *Somerſet*, from whom they were to expect the greateſt Oppoſition. At length it was concluded, to have recourſe to Arms, but firſt to publiſh to the World, *That they deſigned all Honour and Obedience to King Henry, but only would remove certain ill Men from about his Perſon, who oppreſſed the People, and made a Prey of the Publick.* And to gain the more Credit, and to blind the King, the Duke in his Proclamation uſed theſe hypocritical Words: *God knows, from whom nothing is hid, I am, have been, and ever will be, his true liege Man, &c.* For Proof of which, I offer my ſelf to be ſworn on the bleſſed Sacrament, and receive it as a Pledge of my Salvation at the Day of Doom. And whereas *Normandy* was loſt during the Regency of the Duke of *Somerſet*, his Enemies had the more Opportunity to aſperſe him with the People, who at his Return offered him ſeveral Indignities and Injuries, till a Proclamation was iſſued out, upon pain of Death to reſtrain them, for the Breach of which one was beheaded in *West-cheap, London*.

King *Henry*  
marches  
againſt the  
Duke of  
*York*.

King *Henry*, notwithstanding all the Duke of *York*'s Artifices, ſaw ſo much of his Deſigns, as not to rely upon his Pretenſions; but by the Advice of the Duke of *Somerſet*, and the reſt of his Friends, gathered an Army, and marched againſt him into *Wales*. The Duke having Notice of the King's Approach, turned aſide, and marched with all poſſible Speed to *London*; but not meeting with Encouragement there, retired into *Kent*, and encamped at *Brent-beath*, near *Dertford*. The King with as much Expedition marched back to *London*, and encamped at *Black-beath*, reſolving to fight the Duke. The Duke was inferior to the King in Numbers; ſome therefore about the King, who favoured the Duke, and were afraid of his Overthrow, adviſed the King to an Accommodation; and Meſſengers were daily ſent between the two Armies. The Duke in a Letter to the King, according to his uſual Manner, pretended

pretended Loyalty, and particular Injuries : *That he* 30 Hen. VI.  
*had taken up Arms, not to do any Damage to the King,*  
*either in his Honour or Person, nor any of the King's* The Duke  
*good Subjects, but to remove from him several ill disposed* Parties with  
*Persons of his Council, Enemies of their Country and* the King.  
*King, who abused the Nobility, oppressed the Clergy,*  
*and impoverished the Commons, of whom the Duke of*  
*Somerset was Chief, and if the King would put him in-*  
*to safe Custody, till he should clear himself in Parliament,*  
*he would dismiss his Troops, and present himself before*  
*the King, and serve him as all good Subjects ought to*  
*do.*

The King condescended to answer this Letter, telling him, *That the Suspicion universally conceived of his Behaviour, produced those Effects : Nevertheless in Regard to the humble Obedience he had lately protested, he, for the easing the Duke's Heart, does declare, repute, and admit him as a true and faithful Subject, and as his well-beloved Cousin.* Upon this the Duke proceeded farther, and wrote to the King, *That Justice might be done upon all Persons whatsoever, which were guilty, or reported to be guilty of Treason ; aiming at the Duke of Somerset in particular, whom he doubted not to overwhelm with Calumnies, as he and his Party had done to the Duke of Suffolk.* The Lords who were sent from the King promised him that the Duke of Somerset should be confined, and upon this he dismissed his Army.

Some Days after, the Duke of York went to the King's Tent at *Black-beath*, but contrary to his Expectation, finding the Duke of Somerset at Liberty, fell into a great Passion, and complained of the King's Breach of Promise, in not imprisoning him. The Duke of Somerset recriminated as warmly, telling him, *That he was the greatest Traitor, affirming that he had contrived with his Friends and Accomplices, to depose the King, and assume the Crown to himself and Posterity : vehemently urging, that the Duke might be committed and arraigned, that by his deserved Death, and the Incapacity of his Posterity, all civil War might be extinguished : Finally praying, That Heaven would not suffer the Enemy of the Kingdom to escape the Hand of Justice.* But the King having engaged his Word for the Duke's Indemnity, and the Report of his Son's being ready to come with an Army to rescue his Father, were the Causes

1452.



Causes he was no longer kept under Restraint, as he had been by the Duke of *Somerset's* weighty Accusations ; and to assure the King of his Fidelity, he made a formal Submission, and took a solemn Oath, to be true, obedient, and faithful Subject, in *St. Paul's Church*, in the Presence of many of the Nobility, Archbishops, and Bishops. These were afterwards reiterated by him at *Westminster*, and then at *Coventry*, which manifestly shew the highest Degree of Perjury, Treachery, and Treason.

1453.

Talbot Earl  
of Shrews-  
bury sent into  
Gascoign.

The People of *Gascoign*, having been oppressed with the King of *France's* Army, and Taxes, grew weary of the *French* Yoke, and longed for the old Liberty they had enjoyed under the *English* ; and secretly sent over two *French* Noblemen, desiring that an Army might be sent over, declaring that *Bordeaux* and *Gascoign* would readily return to the *English* Subjection, if they were duly supported against the *French* King ; upon which an Army was sent under the Command of the renowned Lord *Talbot*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, whose Fame caused several Places to yield. The City of *Bordeaux* it self secretly open'd a Gate to him, which the *French* Garrison perceiving, fled out at a Postern, but being persued were many of them slain. After which, the Earl having received Intelligence that the *French* had besieged *Chastillon*, he marched thither, but too adventrously charging the Enemy upon unequal Terms, both he and his Son were unfortunately slain. After this *Bordeaux*, and other Places fell again into the *French* Hands. From that Time forward the *English* never obtained any Hold, or Footing in those Parts. This Dukedom of *Gascoign* or *Aquitain*, was a large Province containing four Archbishopricks, twenty four Bishopricks, fifteen Earldoms, two hundred Baronies, and above a thousand Captainships and Bailiwicks ; that the Loss of so noble an Inheritance, which continued *English* for about three hundred Years, was very great.

Constantino-  
ple taken by  
the Turks.

This Year, on the 13<sup>th</sup> Day of *October*, the Queen was delivered of a first Son, who was named *Edward* ; and as this was an unfortunate Year to *England*, so it was to all *Europe*, by the great Progress of the *Turks*, who made themselves Masters of the famous City of *Constantinople*, and put a final Period to the *Greek* Empire.

## *Reign of King* HENRY VI.

493

er it had lasted from *Constantine* the Great <sup>32 Hen. VI.</sup>  
eleven hundred Years.

ars of *France* being now at an End, civil  
began at Home. The Duke of *York* consider-  
ng *Henry* VI. held the Crown not by any  
of his own, but by two successive Descents

The Duke  
of *York* still  
pursues his  
old Design

and Grandfather, two most excellent Princes,  
ng himself a Prince of known Goodness and  
ad so deep an Hold in the People's Affec-  
any barefaced Pretensions to the Crown  
ably have turned to his Prejudice; therefore  
; Business to insinuate Jealousies into the  
he People, and by common Bruits and Re-  
sent their Discontents: Representing King  
e mean spirited; and that the Condition of  
Times required a King that would not be  
y his Wife, or any third Person, but by his  
nent, a Man wise and vigorous; that not-  
g the King had promised, that the Duke  
should be kept in safe Custody, till he had  
Answer in Parliament, against all Accusati-  
e enjoyed not only Liberty, but was in  
our and Power than ever, and no Parlia-  
to meet; and the Men who were the Ruin  
ion, were honoured and encouraged. Hav-  
e Means prepared the People, he secured  
ordinary Men to his Interest, the Earl of  
whose Daughter he had married, and the Earl  
k; the former eminent for Policy and Coun-  
ther for Valour and Magnificence: By  
nce of these two, he caused the Duke of  
be arretted in the Queen's own Lodgings,  
the Tower; to which he was the more embol-  
use the King was at that Time very sick, and  
ble, and, as some say, the Regency of the King-  
committed by the Council to him, during the  
akness; and by Virtue of that Authority he  
liament, and accused the Duke of *Somer-*  
Treason. But the Queen, who was as In-  
e Deliverance of the Duke of *Somerset*, as  
is were on his Destruction, had so contrived  
at nothing should be done against him; for  
eing something amended, and come well to  
she caused him, tho' very weak, to be car-  
Parliament-house, and there to dissolve the  
Parlia-

1454

1455.



1455. Parliament. Upon which *Somerſet* was immediately ſet at Liberty, and that he might be out of the Reach of his Enemies Malice, he was made Captain of *Calais* and *Guifnes*, the only Places in *France* that remained in the Hands of the *Engliſh*. The Duke of *York* finding that he had twice fail'd in his Attempts to ruin him, withdrew into *Wales*; where having gathered an Army, he took his Way towards *London*. The King not depending upon the Fidelity of the City, march'd his Forces to *St. Albans*, where he encamped, and there the two Armies met: The King ſent Meſſengers to the Duke, to know why he came in that hoſtile Manner. The Duke, after Expreſſions of his Loyalty, demanded of the King, that he would deliver up ſuch Perſons as he ſhould name, to deſerved Puniſhment. The King returned Answer, *That he and his Adherents were Traitors, and rather than he would deliver up any Lord to them, he himſelf would live and die in the Quarrel.* Upon this the Earl of *Warwick* unawares attacked the King's Vant-guard, and put it into Diſorder before the Duke of *Somerſet* could come to their Aſſiſtance; ſo that the Forces on both Sides falling in, a bloody Battle enſued, in which of the King's Party, the Duke of *Somerſet*, the Earls of *Northumberland*, and *Stafford*, the Lord *Clifford*, and about five thouſand more, were ſlain. The King himſelf was wounded in the Neck with an Arrow, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and Lord *Scales* in their Faces, and the Lord *Dorſet* ſo deſperately, that he was forced to be carried away in a Cart. And on the Duke's Side about ſix hundred were ſlain. The King's Army being at length all either ſlain or diſperſed, the King fled to a poor thatch'd Houſe not far off, thinking there to have conceal'd himſelf; but the Duke of *York* having notice of it, went with the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, and on their Knees humbly implored the King's Pardon, declaring, *That ſince the common Enemy was dead, they had no more to require.* Upon which the King required of them, to take care that there were no more Hurt done, and to keep their Soldiers from killing and plundering his Subjects. The Duke thereupon, in the King's Name, commanded a Ceſſation from farther Hoſtilities, and with great Shew of Reverence conveyed the King to *London*, where they kept the Feaſt of *Pentecoſt* together. This

The Duke of York raiſes an Army.

The Battle at St. Albans.

This

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*


495

Battle at St. *Albans* was fought on the 23<sup>d</sup> Day of *May*, 35 Hen. VI. in the 35<sup>th</sup> Year of the King's Reign.

After *Whitsuntide*, a Parliament was called, in which all Things were decreed, according to the Minds of the Duke of *York* and his Adherents; to testify that the late Government had been unjust, and the King abused by his Counsellors; *Humphry* Duke of *Glocester*, was declared to have been loyal to the King, and faithful to his Country; that all Alienations and Gifts of the Crown, whether made by the King or Parliament, from the first Year of his Reign, should be revoked; that no Person should judge or report, that the Duke of *York*, Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, were guilty of Rebellion or Treason, for their Action at St. *Albans*, but all Blame was to be laid upon the Duke of *Somerfet*, Baron *Thorpe*, and Esquire *Joseph*, who had kept a Letter sent by the Lords from the King's Knowledge, which if it had been delivered, would have taken away the Occasion of all Disorders. By these Votes and Acts they made Way for the main Thing they aimed at, which was a Triumvirate, for the Ground-Work of their designed Monarchy; and accordingly the Duke of *York* caused himself to be made Protector of the Realm, the Earl of *Salisbury* Lord Chancellor, and the Earl of *Warwick* Governor of *Calais*; so that all Authority, both civil and military, was in a Manner put into the Hands of these Lords, and *Henry* had only left him the Name of a King; for all that had a Dependence upon the King, were gradually removed from his Council, and all Places of Honour and Trust: And *John Holland*, Duke of *Exeter*, was by Force taken out of the Sanctuary at *Westminster*, and sent Prisoner to *Pontfract* Castle, a Sacrilege not ventured on before by any King.

The Queen beheld all these Transactions with great Regret, and sought all Means to reinstate the King in his Authority and Power; and being a Person of a masculine Spirit, was not afraid to undertake any Thing to effect it; and being sure of the Assistance of several Lords in her Design, as the Duke of *Somerfet*, who was eager to revenge the Death of his Father; as the Duke of *Buckingham*, that of his Son and Heir. And all the Lords of the *Lancastrian* Faction, seeing the Tendency of the Duke of *York*'s Actions to be towards the Crown, thought it for their own Safety to join with the

1456.  
The King  
reassumes  
his Power.

1456.  the Queen, in pulling him down from his Usurp and to that End, they all met in a great Court at *Greenwich*, and came to this Resolution; That there was no Child, and therefore needed no Tutor, being a Reproach to his Majesty to be governed the Discretion of others, the Duke of York was put out of the Protectorship, and the Earl of *Salisbury* deprived of his Chancellorship. Which the King very easily persuaded to do, an express Order under the King's Seal, was sent to them to resign Offices. The Duke of York was amazed at the sudden Turn of Affairs; but did not dare to oppose, lest he should be plainly guilty of Rebellion; he was forced to endure it, tho' with the great Displeasure of his Adherents, who were not wanting to stir up new Discontents among the People.

Two Prodigies appear in England.

In November, in the Isle of *Portland*, not far from *Weymouth* in *Dorsetshire*, was seen a Cock having red Gills, and Legs half a Yard long, which stood on the Sea, and crowed three Times, turning every Time a several Way, and nodding his Head towards the North, South, and West; he was persecuted like a Pheasant, and when he had so done, perished. A little after, there were taken at *Erith*, in twelve Miles of *London*, four wonderful Fish, two Whales, one Sword-Fish, and a Fish called *Morina*. These Prodigies were amazing to many Persons, some ventured to prognosticate, that they were forerunners of Wars and Troubles in *England*, which afterwards happened.

The Duke of York, confirmed in his former Opinion by this new Affront, retires from Court. In the same Time, the French infest *England* by Sea, they sailed from *Sandwich*, pillaged some Houses, took some Ships, and returned to *Normandy*: Nor were the Scots idle, they made Inroads into the North Parts, carrying much Booty. *England* was in that Distraction, by the Factions of the Nobility, that it was not in a Capacity to defend it self against foreign Enemies. The Queen being sensible the King could not be secured by the Ruin of the Duke of York, and Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, had contrived by Stratagem to bring them into her Power; but they having Notice retired, the Duke to his Castle of *Wigmore* in the Marches of *Wales*, the Earl of *Salisbury* to his Castle of *Windsor*.

1457. The Queen's Designs against the Duke of York

Middleham in the North, and the Earl of *Warwick* to 37 Hen. VI.  
*Calais*, where they kept a continual Correspondence one with another.

King *Henry* being displeased at the Queen's Proceedings, as being contrary to his pious Inclinations, returned from *Coventry* where he then resided, to *London*, and call'd a Council; where having stated the Condition of the Kingdom, he argued, *that the late Divisions at home had encourag'd both French and Scots to assault him, and therefore it was necessary that there should be a Reconciliation, which, if the Failings of those of his own Family, were likely to obstruct, he for his Part would forget the Injuries done to himself, and would use his Endeavours that his Relations should come to an Agreement with them, who in the late Contests had shed their Blood; promising that the Duke of York and his Friends, should in this Affair have nothing to do but barely to ask and desire.* Upon this, Persons were sent to the chief Men of both Parties to come to a Treaty. The Duke of *York* came to *London* attended with four hundred Men and Arms, and lodg'd at his House called *Baynard's Castle*; the Earl of *Salisbury* with five hundred lodg'd at his House called the *Harbour*; the Duke of *Exeter* and Duke of *Somerset* with eight hundred more, lodged with-  
in *Temple-Bar*; the Earl of *Warwick* with six hundred was lodged at *Gray-Friars*; and the Earl of *Northumberland* with the Lords *Egremont* and *Clifford* with fifteen hundred Men, were lodg'd in *Holbourn*; such was the Custom of that military Age. The King and Queen were lodged in the Bishop of *London's* Palace, and *Josfrey Boleign* the Mayor of *London*, who was Ancestor to *Anne*, Queen to *Henry VIII.* having five hundred Men in Readiness, rode daily round the City for the Preservation of the King's Peace.

After several Meetings, the contending Parties came to this Agreement; That the Duke of *York*, and Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, were to make particular Satisfaction upon Account of the Death of the Duke of *Somerset* and others slain in the Battle of *St. Albans*; and the Duke of *Somerset*, Earl of *Northumberland*, and Lord *Clifford* slain at *St. Albans*, were declared true Liege Men to the King at the Day of their Deaths, as well as the Duke of *York*, Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*. Great Rejoycings were made for this Accommodation, and a solemn Procession made to the

1458.

Cathedral of *St. Paul's*, whither the King, adorn'd his Crown and royal Robes, went in Person. With him the Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Salisbury* in one Rank, the Duke of *Exeter* and Earl of *W.* in another; and so one of each Party, till they were marshalled; and behind the King himself came the Count led by the Duke of *York*, with the utmost Signs of Satisfaction on both Sides.

The Earl of  
*Warwick* in  
Danger.

All Things being thus concluded, the Lords went from the King and Queen, with all outward Signs of Friendship; and the Duke of *York* and Earl of *Salisbury* went to *York*; but the Earl of *Warwick* staid at Court about the Business of *Calais*, and about *Whit-tide* went over thither, and returned to *England* about *Michaelmas*; and in the *November* following the Earl sat in Council at *Westminster*, one of the King's Servants affronting one of the Earl's, they fell to blows and the Earl's Servant having sorely wounded the other fled to secure himself. The King's Guards and some of his menial Servants, in Revenge for the Injury to their Fellow-Servant, watching the Earl when he came from the Council to his Barge, suddenly set upon him and his Retinue, the Yeomen with Swords and the Cooks and black Guards with Spits and Fire-Brands and many of them were wounded on both Sides; the Earl himself with great Difficulty escap'd in his Barge. The Queen immediately commanded that he should be committed to the Tower; but he being acquitted thereof, posted into *Yorkshire*, and acquainted the Duke of *York* and his Father the Earl of *Salisbury* with it. The *Yorkists* charg'd the Queen with all this Plot laid for the Earl's Life; and *Warwick*, being Lord Admiral, hastned to *Calais*, taking with him the King's Ships, that were in Readiness, and forcing the narrow Seas, met with five great *Spanish* and *Portuguese* Carricks, of which he took three, and carried them into *Calais*, where he found the Freight to be worth ten thousand Pounds. Not long after this, the Duke of *Somerset* was sent to be Governor of *Calais*, but *Warwick* refused to resign, and commanded some of the Attendants of the Duke of *Somerset* to be killed, and he himself was in Danger.

The civil  
War begins  
again.

Upon this, the Earl of *Salisbury* having conferred with the Duke of *York*, resolved with Swords in hand to expostulate the Injury offered to his Son the Duke of *York*.

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

499

vick at *Westminster*, and therefore set forward from *38 Hen. VI.*  
castle at *Middleham* with four or five thousand

In the mean Time, the Queen being sensible that  
either King *Henry* or the Duke of *York* must perish,  
ly bestirred her self to maintain the Possession of  
Crown, and advance her own Son Prince *Edward*;  
fore she endeavoured to strengthen her Interest on  
des, and caused her Son to distribute Silver Swans

Badge and Device, to many Gentlemen through-  
*England*, and especially those of *Cheshire*. And  
of the Earl of *Salisbury*'s Design, sent the Lord  
y with Forces to encounter him, which he did at  
*Heath* near *Mucklestone*; where, after a long and  
y Fight, the Earl of *Salisbury* got the Victory; the  
*Audley* himself being slain, and with him two thou-  
four hundred Men, and the chief Loss fell upon  
*Cheshire* Men, who wore the Prince's Badge. This  
he second Battle fought between the Houses of  
*York* and *York*.

The Duke of *York* having receiv'd the News of this  
ry, resolves no longer to conceal his Intentions,  
her to get the Crown, or perish in the Attempt,  
my.

therefore marches to join his Forces with those of  
arl of *Salisbury*, sending to raise Forces in *Wales*,  
*Cheshire*, and other Counties, and to the Earl of *War-*  
*at Calais*, to bring what Troops he could to their  
ance, who immediately leaving his Charge of *Ca-*  
ith the valiant Captain *Trollop*, and a Troop of  
Men, came to the general Rendezvous of the  
s at *Ludlow-Castle*. The King, in the mean Time, The King  
ut Commissions into all Parts of the Kingdom, raises an Ar-  
my.

a small Time rais'd a considerable Army, and  
ed in Person, attended with many of the Nobility  
*York*; where, upon Consultation it was agreed  
er the Rebels a general Pardon, but they refused  
ept it, calling it a *Staff of Reed*, or a *Glass Buck-*  
Upon this, the King commanded his Standards to  
e towards them; and in his March a Letter was  
'd to him fill'd with the usual hypocritical Ex-  
ns, stiling him, *most Christian King, right high*  
*gby Prince, and our most dread Sovereign Lord*,  
at the Letter made no Overture of any Condi-  
on which they would lay down their Arms; al-  
; they were constrained to stand together in their  
efence, against such great Courtiers as design'd their

1459.

The King offers them Pardon.

They fly.

The Earl of Warwick keeps Calais.

Destruction, and that they only desired to make their Way to the King to redress Grievances. The King not being satisfied with this Letter, gave a second Order for his Army to march. And the Armies now being come in Sight of each other, the King caus'd Proclamations to be made, that whoever would abandon the Duke of York, should be received into Mercy, and have Pardon. Upon this, the brave Commander Trollop finding he had been impos'd upon, by the Duke and his Party, who while they pretended to act for the King's Interest, designed nothing less, abandoned the Duke's Camp at Midnight, and went over to the King with all his Men, and discover'd all the Duke's Counsels. Upon this the Duke was so discourag'd, that taking with him the younger Son the Earl of Rutland, he fled into Ireland, and the Earls of Salisbury and Warwick with much Difficulty escaped to Calais. The News of their Flight being carried to the King's Camp, he sent out some Troops of Horse to pursue them, but they were gone out of Reach. The private Soldiers were pardon'd, and sent home, but some of the most forward in the Rebellion were executed. The Town of Ludlow was plunder'd to the bare Walls, and the Dutches of Bed and her two youngest Sons were taken in the Castle and confin'd. And then the King returned to Coventry, where a Parliament being assembled, they accus'd the Duke of York, Earls of Salisbury, Warwick and Rutland, and many others, of High Treason, and their Estates were confiscated.

After the rising of the Parliament, the Duke of Somerset was sent over to take Possession of Calais with some Forces under the Lords Ross and Audley; but he did not succeed; whereupon the Duke repair'd to Gascon, a neighbouring Castle, where he daily disturb'd the Garrison of Calais, but rather to his Loss than Advantage for the Lord Audley was taken by Warwick's Men, and carried into Calais, and the Lord Ross hardly escaped. Upon this, Letters were sent to foreign Courts, requiring that no Relief might be given to the Traitors of Calais, who held it against the King's Will, and at the same time all Persons were forbid to transport any Provision to that Place. The Duke of York now being in Possession of Ireland, the Earl of Warwick wanted to confer with him about the Measures to be taken; and hearing that some of the King's Ships lay at Sandwich, in Order to

## The Reign of King HENRY VI.

301

port Succors and Supplies to the Duke of Somerset at *38 Hen. VI.*  
*Willes*, he sent Sir *John Denham* with some Ships and  
forces, who having surprised the Town in the Night,  
took the Lord *Rivers* and his Son in their Beds,  
loaded on the King's Ships, furnished with all warlike  
provisions, and carried them to *Calais*. With these the  
Earl of *Warwick* sailed to the Duke of *York* in *Ireland*.  
The Duke of *Exeter* was made Admiral, with Orders  
to intercept him in his Passage, but many of his Men  
deserting him, he durst not attack him.

The King having been thus disappointed in gaining  
possession of the Town of *Calais* and the Earl, the Yorkists sent  
him certain Articles into *Kent*, in which, with much  
craft and Subtilty they endeavoured to prepossess the  
Minds of the People in their Favour. When they men-  
tioned the Person of the King, they freed him from all  
impressions, as being of as noble, virtuous, righteous, and  
just a Disposition as any earthly Prince whatever.  
When they mention their Enemies, they name the Earl  
of *Sbrewsbury*, the Earl of *Wiltshire*, and the Lord  
of *Beaufort*, as the principal Persons concern'd in the At-  
tentions of the Partizans of the Duke of *York* at *Coven-*  
*t*. Their Complaints were, of general Enormities,  
injuries done to the Church, and the ill Administration of  
Justice, Abuse of Purveyors, the King's Poverty by the  
corruption of his Officers, &c. Where they spoke of them-  
selves and their Pretensions, they professed all Sincerity  
and Loyalty to King Henry. In the Conclusion of these  
their specious Pretences, they us'd these Words; Re-  
quering you on God's Behalf, therein to assist us, doing  
always the Duty of Liege Men in our Persons to our said  
sovereign Lord, to his Estate, Prerogative and Prehemi-  
nence, and to the Security of his most noble Person, to  
which we have ever been, and will be as true as any of  
Subjects alive; whereof we call God, our Lady Ma-  
ry and all the Saints in Heaven to witness.

By these treacherous Proceedings they prevailed not  
only on the unthinking People, but the Archbishop of  
*Canterbury* himself to believe, they designed as they  
saw; and the Earl of *Warwick* took an Oath upon  
the Cross at *Canterbury*, that they had ever born true  
faith and Allegiance to King Henry. After this, the  
Lord *Fauconbridge* was sent over to sound the Inclina-  
tions of the People, and the Earls of *March*, *Warwick*,  
and *Salisbury* landed soon after in *Kent*.



1460.  
The Third  
Battle at  
Northampton

The King, before their Arrival, not trusting to the Fidelity of the Citizens, had quitted *London*, and retired to *Northampton*, where he had got together a considerable Army, to which the Dukes of *Somerset* and *Buckingham* came from *Guisnes*, who were no sooner arriv'd, but they heard of the Approach of the Lords Army; therefore passing the river, they went and encamp'd in the neighbourly Fds. The Bishop of *Salisbury* was sent to the Earl of *Warwick* into conference, in Order to accommodate Matters; but this being denied, the Earl of *March* resolv'd to set upon the King's Army without Delay, and in the Night mov'd his Camp nigh *Northampton*, marching in Order of Battle. About two of the Clock in the Afternoon, the next Day, the two Armies met; and the Earls of *March* and *Warwick* having given a strict Charge to the Soldiers, that they should none of them lay Hands on the King, nor the common People, but the Nobles and Gentlemen only, the Battle began and lasted for five Hours, with great Fierceness on both Sides; but at Length by the Treachery of the Lord *Grey*, who went over to the Enemy with a good Party, the King's Side was vanquished with the Loss of ten thousand, partly drowned and partly slain, among which were the Duke of *Buckingham*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, Lord *Egremont*, Viscount *Beaumont* and others. The Duke of *Somerset* narrowly escaped, and with the Queen, and Prince *Edward*, fled into the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and so got into *Scotland*. Many were taken Prisoners; the King himself who remained in his Tent during the Battle, being left alone, fell into his Enemies Hands: But the Earls of *March* and *Warwick* assuring him, that they sought the Welfare of his Person and Happiness of the Realm, in destroying their malicious Enemies, he was much comforted, and being carried to *Northampton*, and from thence to *London*, was lodged in the Bishop's Palace. The Victors being arrived at *London*, inflicted such Punishments on those of the King's Party as they thought convenient, fining and imprisoning some, and beheading others.

The King  
defeated and  
taken Prisoner

In the mean Time *James II.* King of *Scotland*, partly in Favour of King *Henry*, laid Siege to *Roxburgh* Castle then in Possession of King *Henry's* Enemies; where going into the Trenches to see the Lion, a famous Piece of Ordnance and other Artillery discharged,

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

503

one of them burst, and with a Shiver of it slew 39 Hen. VI. King. And *James* the III<sup>d</sup>. a Child of seven *James King of Scotland,* *Charles King of France,* who being sick, some of his *and Charles King of France die.* ability put an Imagination into his Head, that some

persons designed to poison him, upon which he would take no Sustainance for several Days; and when his Physicians told him, that his Weakness proceeded not from a Sicknes, but Want of Meat, he endeavoured to eat but could not; for the Channells thro' which the Food passed were closed up, so that he died with Hunger, leaving his Kingdom to his Son *Lewis XI.*

The Lords having the King now in their Power, and doing all Things almost at their Pleasure, proceeded vigorously in the Execution of their Designs; and first they called a Parliament to meet at *Westminster*, *October* the 8<sup>th</sup> following, but in the King's Name, and then send into *Ireland* to the Duke of *York* to acquaint him with

Success, and invite him to come forthwith to *England*. Which accordingly he did, and made his Entry *The Duke of York's Entry into London.* *London* with numerous Troops of Men and Trumpets sounding before him, causing the Sword to be carried before him, as it was customary to be done before Kings, only with this Difference, that as it was carried before Kings sheath'd, it was carried before him naked.

The Parliament was met two Days before the Duke of *York*, who having passed thro' the City, went directly to the upper House, or Chamber of the Peers, and entered himself in the King's Seat, laying his Hands on the Cloth of State, as if he had taken Possession of the Crown and Kingdom. When he had stood so long, he turned himself to the Lords, and look'd earnestly upon them, as tho' he would read in their countenances their Thoughts and Resentments of that action. After he had stood a while in that Posture, *Henry*, who was then in the Queen's Lodgings, having sent the Archbishop of *Canterbury* to him, he came to him with much Reverence, and asked him, if he would not go see the King. The Duke at this Question was observed to change his Colour, and then in answer answered him, *that he knew none in this Kingdom to whom he owed that Duty or Honour; but on the contrary, all Men owed it to him, and therefore King Henry ought to come to him.*

1460.  
He claims  
the Crown  
of England.

The Archbi<sup>p</sup> had<sup>re</sup> Reply, went  
back to the Ki<sup>ng</sup> to let him kn<sup>ow</sup> ; th the Duke  
of York perceiv<sup>ing</sup>, he rose up hastily, and following  
him into the Palace, got Possession of the King's Lodg-  
ings, breaking open several Locks and Doors to en-  
ter them. And having staid there a little while, he returned  
to the House of Lords in, leaving his Servants and  
Attendants to keep Pe<sup>ace</sup> in for him, and being ap-  
pointed in the royal Cham<sup>ber</sup>; he boldly made his De-  
mand of the Crown: legal Authority of England  
notwithstanding his Oaths and Engagements  
the contrary. Most of the House stood amazed, and the  
Duke observing their Astonishment and Silence, de-  
clared the deposing King Henry and his own Coronation  
till he had sent them his Pedigree and Claim in Wri-  
ting, that they might better consider of it, pretending  
the same Time to submit to their Determination.

The Sub-  
stance of the  
Duke of  
York's Claim.


The Duke of York's Claim was in Words to this  
Effect, " That he as-<sup>sumed</sup> that Throne, as the Place  
" to him in Justice ing, not as requiring the  
" Favour, but s<sup>uffering</sup> indifference, and true Admini-  
" stration of Justice; for the high and mighty Prince  
" Richard II. Son of Edward the black Prince, eldest  
" Son of King Edward III. was the true and undoubted  
" Heir of these Realms, and was in Possession of the  
" regal Dignity, till Henry Earl of Derby and Duke of  
" Lancaster and Hereford, Son of John of Gaunt Duke  
" of Lancaster, by Force and Violence, contrary to  
" the Duty of his Allegiance, raised War against the  
" said King Richard, imprisoned him, and intruded up-  
" on and usurped the royal Power, and after compassing  
" his Death and Destruction; upon whose Decease,  
" having no Heirs, the Right and Title of the Crown  
" and Superiority of this Realm lawfully reverted and  
" returned to Roger Mortimer Earl of March, Son and  
" Heir to the Lady Philippa, only Child of Lancast<sup>er</sup>  
" Duke of Clarence, and Roger's eldest Daughter Ann,  
" being Mother to him the said Duke of York, he was  
" the true and lawful Heir, and had an undoubted  
" Right to the Crown," saying, If my Title be good,  
" why am I kept from it? If my Claim be good, why  
" have I not Justice? For Men of Knowledge must see  
" that usurped Possession, tho' strengthened with a Lineal  
" Descent, can nothing prevail, if Claim be justly made,  
" and openly published by the right Heirs as it had been by

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

505

*mund Earl of March my Uncle, and Richard Duke of 39 Hen. VI.  
rk my Father, and my self: But thro' sinister Counsel  
l unjust Detention, I neither could obtain nor recover  
so that I am forced to make Use of Force to regain my  
ght, and settle the Peace of the Realm, which thro'  
in succession of Usurpers hath been miserably ruined and  
lone, especially in this last Reign; and therefore I have  
I do now take Possession of the royal Throne. This  
id of Speech struck all the Auditors with Consterna-  
n, and the Lords themselves sat mute; for King  
rry's Piety and a Succession in the third Degree and  
ty eight Years Possession of the Crown had so far  
nfirmed most of them in the Opinion of his Right,  
t they were loth to be instrumental in deposing him.  
ie Duke of York, whose Eagerness to be a King had  
: him under Expectation of a ready Compliance  
th his Desires, was much disappointed when he saw  
rce any Man seconding him in his Pretensions; but be-  
not willing to seem much displeas'd, he desired them  
consider throughly of what he had said to them, and  
what in Justice and Wisdom seem'd right, and so  
arted to his Lodgings at *Whitehall*. While the Duke  
s thus declaring and shewing his Title in the House  
Lords, it happened that in the House of Commons  
rown which hung up in the middle of the Roof to  
orn a Branch set up for Lights, fell down suddenly  
hout any imaginable Cause, and also another Crown  
on the Top of *Dover-Castle*; which were both look'd  
on at this Juncture, as ominous Accidents, which  
betokened that the Crown should some Way or other  
e a Fall, and that there would be sudden Alterati-  
s in the Government.*

After this, frequent Consultations were held about The Duke's  
Duke's Pretensions, who taking upon him a Kind Pretensions  
Majesty, kept in the King's Lodgings, and tho' near debated, and  
ng *Henry*, would not, by all the Persuasions that the Settle-  
uld be us'd, condescend to visit the King till some ment of the  
onclusion was come to in the Matter, saying, *that he* Crown a-  
*is subject to no Man, but God only, under whom none* greed on.  
*is supreme in this Realm, but he.* After many hot  
sputes had passed between the Lords and Commons  
out this Affair, at Length they came to this Conclu-  
n; that forasimuch as *Henry* had been acknowledged  
ng for the Space of thirty eight Years and more, he  
should

1460.  should enjoy that Name and Title and Possession of Kingdom during his natural Life; and if he either or resigned, or forfeited the same, by breaking or violating any Point of this Contract, then the said Crown and Dignity should be immediately devolved upon the Duke of York and the Heirs of his Body lawfully begotten including all those of King Henry.

A Procession to thank God for this Agreement.

This Agreement being drawn up in Form, was read and sworn to by King Henry and the Duke of York as likewise all enacted in this Parliament. For which, the King accompanied with the Duke, and with the Earls of Salisbury, Warwick, and others, on All Saints Day, rode in solemn Procession to the Cathedral of St. Paul's, with the Crown on his Head to give Thanks for that Accommodation. The next Day the Duke of York was by Sound of Trumpet solemnly declared Heir apparent to the Crown of England, and Protector of the Nation during King's Life.

The Duke of York causes the King to send for the Queen.

And now the Duke of York's Power began; knowing the Queen to be a Woman of a most valiant Spirit, who would make all the Opposition to this Settlement, therefore he instigated King to send for her, and Prince Edward his Son. At that Time the Messengers were arrived, the Queen got at the Head of an Army of eighteen thousand disciplin'd Men, under the Command of the Duke of Exeter and Somerset, and Earls of Devonshire, Cumberland, and other Lords, and therefore refused to go along with them. The Duke of York missing his expected Prey, left the King at London with the Duke of Norfolk and Earl of Warwick, and taking with him his young Son the Earl of Rutland, the Earl of Salisbury and five thousand Men, he marched towards Wakefield in Yorkshire, to pursue the Queen and her Son, and gave Orders to the Earl of March to follow him with his Forces. On Christmas Eve the Duke took his Quarters in Sandal-Castle in View of Wakefield, waiting for the Encrease of his Army. The Queen's Lords of her Party having Notice of this, thought it best to fight before his Army was reinforced to that End advanced with their Army. When they drew near, and the Duke found that the Queen's Forces were much superior to his, the Earl of Salisbury

The fourth Battle at Wakefield.

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

307

to keep within the Walls till the Earl of *March*<sup>39 Hen. VI.</sup> would join him. The Queen and her Army came before the Castle, and having laid two Ambushes, Part of Army presented themselves before *Sandal*, in Order to provoke the Duke to Fight, who fir'd with this rado, and counting it a Shame to be shut up in a Castle by a Woman, resolv'd to venture out and give Battle; so marching down the Hill in good Order, he came into the open Field, to his Enemies, who immediately joined Battle. Soon after the Battle began, the bushes rose, and encompassed the Duke and his Men every Side; so that within half an Hour he himself <sup>The Duke</sup> slain, and his whole Army utterly defeated, two of <sup>York slain.</sup> thousand eight hundred of them being kill'd, the Earl *Salisbury* being wounded and taken Prisoner, and many other Persons of Note. The Duke's Chaplain

Tutor to the Earl of *Rutland*, who stood at some distance to see the Event of the Battle, perceiving the Success of it, fled with the young Earl to secure himself, but was overtaken by the Lord *Clifford*, who with a dagger in his Hand, demanded who he was. The poor youth, a Gentleman of about twelve Years of Age, with Tears beg'd Mercy of him upon his Knees. The Chaplain thinking by that Means to save him, told him he was, promising *that if he would save his Life, he would spend it in his Service.* But *Clifford* swore violently, that as his Father had slain his, so would he slay him and all his Progeny, and then struck his Dagger into his Heart; after which he went away to find the dead Body of his Father, whose Head he cut off, and having made a Crown of Paper, and set it on his head in Derision, he presented it to the Queen, and sent it to be set upon a Pole over the Gate of the City of *York*. The Earl of *Salisbury* who was sent a Prisoner to *Pontfract*-Castle, being hated by the common People, was pulled out of it and beheaded, and his Head sent to *York* to be set up upon a Gate there.

The Earl of *March* having raised an Army of twenty-three thousand Men in *Wales* was then at *Glocester* when he heard the News of his Father's Death, and resolved to march against the Queen, who was then marching towards *London*; but hearing that the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Ormond*, with a great Army of *Welsh* and *Irish* were persuing him, he marched back to fight them, and met a large Plain by *Mortimer's-Cross* near *Ludlow*,

The fifth  
Battle at  
Mortimer's  
Cross.

met them, and on *C*ast-Day engaged them. It is reported, that on the morning, the Sun at his rising appeared to the Earl like three Suns, and suddenly running into one, gave him (as he guess'd) an Omen of Victory. The two Armies join'd Battle, and after a sharp Conflict the Queen's Forces were put to Flight, with the Slaughter of three thousand eight hundred Men, the Earls of *Pembrok* and *Wiltshire* saving themselves by Flight; and many Gentlemen of Note were taken, and as a Sacrifice to the Duke of *Torb* Ghost were beheaded at *Hereford*, among the rest *Queen Tudor*, Husband to King *Henry* the Vth's Queen.

The Earl  
Bards at St.  
*Albans*.

The Queen who was marching towards *London* with her Northern Rabble, who after they had passed the *River Trent*, plunder'd the Villages and Towns, as if that River was the utmost Bounds of their good Behaviour, heard of the Discomfiture of her Friends; yet elevated with her former Victory, held on her March, and being come near *St. Albans*, heard the News that the Earl of *Warwick* and Lords were coming against her with a numerous Army, raised by the King's Authority, with the King at the Head of them. The Lords who were with the Queen advis'd her to march thro' *St. Albans*, and meet their Enemies on the other Side of the Town; but the Earl of *Warwick* having ranged his Archers in the middle of it, they were forced to take another Way, and so the two Armies met upon *Barnard-Heath*, on the North-Side of *St. Albans*. The Battle was fierce, and the Victory dubious for some Time; but at length by the Treachery of *Lovelace*, who kept back the main Body of the King's Army from coming in to their Assistance, they being overpowered, were forced to fly; and the Queen's Side gaining the Victory with the Slaughter of two thousand three hundred Men obtain'd the King into their Power, with the Lord *Bonville* and Sir *Thomas Kiriell*; who upon the King's Promise of Safety to them, staid with his Majesty, but to their Cost; for when the Queen heard that the Commons had beheaded Judge *Thorp* at *Highgate*, she cut off both their Heads.

The King  
and Queen  
return  
Thanks for  
the Victory.

After this Battle, the King and Queen, and Prince *Edward*, now about eight Years old, and the Northern Lords, went to the Abby Church, and gave Thanks to God for this Victory, and then the King at the Queen's Request, knighted the Prince with thirty others, who

## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

109

signalized their Courage in fighting for her; which <sup>39 Hen. VI.</sup> being done, the King and Queen went to their Lodging in the Abby. But the Town of *St. Albans* was in confusion; for the Northern Men plundered and ransacked the Houses without Mercy: Whereupon the Nobles, and Inhabitants petitioned the King to restrain their Licentiousness, and a Proclamation was put out; they replied, *That it was their Bargain to have all Spoil of every Place beyond the Trent, and so continued their pillaging.*

While the Queen lay at *St. Albans*, the Army being in Want of Provisions, she sent Orders to the Lord Mayor of *London* to send her some; accordingly he was sending it to her, but <sup>The Queen sends to the Mayor of London for Provisions.</sup> some common People stopped the Carts at the City Gates, saying, *They would not feed them, that would cut their Throats, and rob them of all they had.* This Disaffection grew more obstinate, by Reason of an insolent Troop of Horse, who came from *St. Albans*, to plunder the Suburbs, who coming to *Cripplegate*, where the Carts were, attempted to enter, but were beaten off, and three of them slain. The Mayor and Aldermen thinking, that the Queen would rigorously punish it, sent the Recorder of the City, with some Nobles, and others, to excuse it, persuading her that some of the Lords might be sent with four hundred men armed, who riding about the Streets, might appease the Tumult; and promising that Part of the Aldermen should come to meet her at *Barnet*, and conduct the King and her peaceably into the City; which the Queen did, and was pacified for the Disappointment.

But while these Things were thus carrying on, the Queen received News, that the Earl of *March* who had conquered the Earls of *Ormond* and *Pembroke*, being joined with the Earl of *Warwick*, was coming towards *London* with a mighty Army. This so terrified the Queen, that she withdrew from *St. Albans*, into the Northern Parts where she had most Friends. The Earl of *March* hearing of the Queen's Retreat, marched directly towards *London*, and was there received with the universal Joy of the People, upon *February 28<sup>th</sup>*. His coming to *London* being known, the Gentlemen of the South and East Parts flocked to him, bringing great Numbers to his Assistance. On *Sunday* the 1<sup>st</sup> of *March*, the Earl of *Warwick* mustered all his Army



1461.



Army in St. John's Fields, in the midst of Throng People, whom having drawn into a Ring round he read aloud to them the Agreement of the last Parliament, and then demanded, *Whether they would have King Henry, who had violated that Agreement, to reign over them?* They all cried, *no, no.* Then he asked them, *Whether they would have the Earl of March, according to the same Agreement ought to be King reign over them?* They unanimously cried out, *yea.* Upon which some Commanders, and others of the City repaired to the Earl of March at Bayn Castle; where a Council being held, they at length concluded, that King Henry should be deposed, and the Earl of March made King. The Earl at first seemed to excuse himself, as being young and insufficient for great a Charge; but being persuaded by the Archbishop of Canterbury, Bishops of London and Exeter, Earl of Warwick he consented, and took upon his Name and Title of King of England. The next Day he went in Procession to St. Paul's, and after *Te Deum* had been sung, was in great State conducted to Westminster, and there seated in the great Hall with Edward's Scepter in his Hand. Where being thronged with Multitudes of Spectators, it was again asked *Whether they would have the Earl of March for a King, and serve, love, honour, and obey him, as a sovereign Lord?* They all joyfully answered, *yea.* Then he took the Homage of the Nobility there sent, and afterwards was conducted by them to Westminster Abby; where having sat in the Quire till *Te Deum* sung, he went unto St. Edward's Shrine, and made his Offerings according to Custom, and then returned by Water to the Bishop of London's Palace, and the next Day was proclaimed King of England, by the Name of Edward IV.

He is proclaimed King.

The End of King Henry's Reign, and his Character.

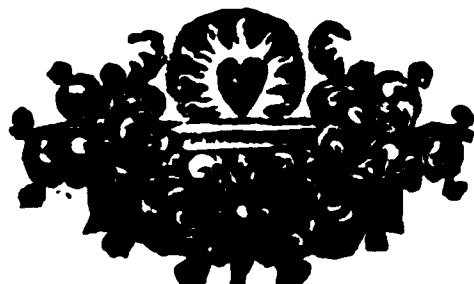
Thus ended the Reign of King Henry VI. of which it is observed, that none ever came to be King so soon after his Birth, nor ceased to be King so long before his Death; for he was but eight Months old when he was made King, reigned thirty eight Years, six Months and three Days, and lived twelve Years after he was deposed. His Person was comely, and well-proportioned, and his Mind adorned with Virtues sufficient to make a Saint. No King ever shewed more Religion than himself; On great holy Days, he used to walk

See

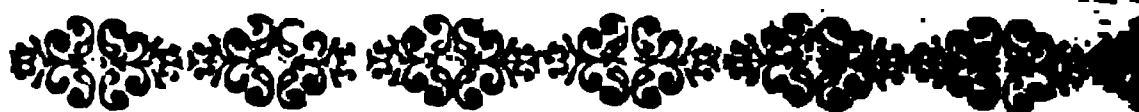
## *The Reign of King HENRY VI.*

511

ckcloth next his Skin ; so free from Swearing, that <sup>39 Hen. VI.</sup> never used any Asseveration, but *forsooth* and *verily*.  
modest, that when in a Mask, some Ladies appear-  
with their Breasts bare, he immediately exclaimed  
ainst it. So merciful, that when he saw the Quar-  
s of a Traitor over *Cripple-gate*, he caused them to  
taken down, declaring, *He would have no Christian*  
*cruelly treated for his Sake*. So innocent, that his Con-  
for declared, *That for ten Years space, he never found*  
*any Thing he had said or done, for which he might justly en-*  
*der him Penance*. He had one Immunity peculiar to him-  
f, that no Man could ever be revenged on him, because  
never offered any Man an Injury ; and was so pa-  
nt, that to one who struck him, when he was taken Pri-  
er, he only said, *You wrong your self more than me,*  
*Strike the Lord's Anointed*. But tho he was a Prince  
such Piety and Virtue, yet he was always unfortu-  
te ; for whatsoever Side he was of, the Victory al-  
ys went against him. He had no Genius for Govern-  
ment, but was a great Lover of Charity and good Works ;  
founded two famous Colleges, the one at *Cambridge*,  
led *King's College*, the glorious Chapel of which  
was of what wonderful Magnificence the whole  
ould have been, had the Founder reigned to finish it ;  
other at *Eaton* near *Windsor*, to the Maintenance  
which he gave three thousand four hundred Pounds  
*Annun* ; and had he been guided by a good Council,  
might have been as good a King as ever *England* had,  
being governed by the Queen, and her Favourites,  
so were envied by a proud Nobility, this brought great  
series upon the Nation. His Fall was much pitied,  
cause as to his Person undeserv'd ; but it was judged  
better for the common Good, that one should suffer,  
her than the whole Nation perish.



*The*



## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

1461. **N**OW begins the History of the second great Boy of the *Plantagenets*, that sat upon the English Throne. The Reign of which began the 4<sup>th</sup> of May 1461, in King *Edward IV*, who was then about twenty Years of Age, in the Prime of his Youth and Beauty, which with the Charms of his Behaviour, rendered him the Object of the People's Affections. Yet the Numbers were still in the Interest of King *Henry*, who was now with his Queen, raising a powerful Army in the North: And King *Edward's* House gave him Cause to suspect, that there were not a few in King *Henry's* Interest in London itself; of which one *Walker* a Grocer was an unhappy Proof, who was beheaded in *Smithfield*, for saying *That he would make his Son Heir to the Crown, wearing the Sign of the Crown in Cheapside.* This first Beginning caused many to think, they had injured themselves in wronging King *Henry*; which Opinion was the more confirmed, by King *Edward's* retaining a large Sum of Money borrowed of the *Staplers* Merchants, the Restitution of which he utterly denied with an angry Command, that they should no more demand it of him.

King *Edward's* severe Beginning.

The Queen in the North had gotten together an Army of sixty thousand Men, which King *Edward* learning, he with a complete Army set out from London the 12<sup>th</sup> of *March*, attended with his two Brothers, and many other Noblemen. And marching towards *Hexham* in *Yorkshire*, he appointed the Lord *Fitzwater* to guard the Passage of *Ferribridge*. King *Henry's* Army was commanded by the Duke of *Somerset*, the Earl of *Northumberland*, and the Lord *Clifford*, whose Father had been slain at the first Battle of *St. Albans*; and whom it was resolved, that *Ferribridge* was by Reason of the Consequence of the Place to be recovered at all Hazard. Accordingly the Lord *Clifford*, suddenly attacked the Party, and defeated them, killing the Lord *Fitzwater*.

Queen *Margaret* raises an Army.

*Fitzwater*, Bastard of *Salisbury*, and many others. The Noise of this Defeat coming to the Ears of the Earl of *Warwick*, he posted in all Haste to King *Edward*, and killing his Horse in his Presence, cried out, *Sir, God have mercy upon their Souls, who for Love of you in the Beginning of your Enterprize, have lost their Lives; yet let him fly who will fly, by this Cross, (kissing the Hilt of his Sword) I will stand by him, who will stand by me, fall Back, fall Edge.* The Lord *Falconbridge* soon got over the River at *Castleford*, three Miles from *Ferrisbridge*, designing to surround the Lord *Clifford's* Party; but he perceiving the Design, sought to avoid it; and putting off his Gorget, but whether for Haste or Heat is uncertain, an Arrow without a Head pierced through his Throat, and stuck in his Neck, of which he died.

The next Day being *Palm-Sunday*, early in the Morning the two Armies came in sight of each other. The Field of Battle was betwixt *Gaxton* and *Towton*: Before the Fight began, Proclamation was made in King *Edward's* Camp, *That whoever feared to fight might immediately depart, but if any Soldier that remained should endeavour to fly, he should be slain by his next Fellow, who should receive double Pay; and whoever should fight manfully, should be well rewarded.* About nine in the Morning both Armies drew near, sixty thousand for King *Henry*, and for King *Edward* scarce forty thousand, only the Presence and Courage of King *Edward* made an Equality. The Lord *Falconbridge*, to whom was committed the Van of King *Edward's* Army, charged his Archers, as soon as they had shot their first Flight, to fall three Steps back, and make a Stand, by which they might avoid the Enemies Arrows; which Stratagem succeeded according to Expectation; for the Northern Men with a sudden Fury answered the Onset, and having emptied their Quivers, halted to hand Blows; but the Arrows they had discharged, by Reason of the Fog, having not reached their Adversaries, turned to their Annoyance; for the Splinters of them sticking in the Ground, pierced and galled their Feet, and put them to a confused Stop. In this Trouble the Southern Men shot another Flight, and the Wind at the same Time blowing a Shower of Snow and Hail in their Faces, the Vanguard of King *Henry*, led by the Earl of *Northumberland* and *Andrew Trollop*, gave back.

1 Ed. IV.

The seventh Battle between the Houses of Lancaster and York.

1461. back. Yet did not the main Battle stir with this Motion; but as if the Enemy had gained no Advantage, continued with the first Constancy.

King Edward's Forces prevail.

Victory hung in Suspence for ten Hours together, but at length, after a piteous Slaughter of a great many eminent Men, as the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmoreland*, the Lords *Beaumont*, *D'Acre*, *Gray*, *Scales*, *Wells*, and many other great Commanders, the Northern Men began to fly. The Dukes of *Somerset* and *Exeter*, seeing all Things desperate, the greatest Part of the Army slain, the rest broken and flying, posted to *York*, to carry the fatal News of this Overthrow to King *Henry*, whose Virtue yet had a Patience greater than his Ruin. In no Battle since the *Norman* Conquest was ever poured forth so much *English* Blood; so that the Fields were not only drench'd with Blood, but the Rivers ran red for a great Distance: For in this and the two preceding Days, were slain thirty six thousand seven hundred seventy six Persons, all of one Nation, many near in Alliance, some in Blood fatally divided by Faction, yet all animated by the same Zeal, to maintain their Prince's Right; which being so difficult to resolve, doubtless made the Quarrel on either Side, how ruinous soever to their Families, not unsafe to their Consciences.

King Henry flies into Scotland.

King *Henry*, seeing his Affairs desperate in *England*, fled with his Queen, young Son, and the Remains of his Army to *Berwick*, and leaving the Duke of *Somerset* in that Place, went into *Scotland*, where he was kindly received, and a Pension allowed him by the King of *Scots*; who affianced the Princess *Margaret* his Sister to Prince *Edward* King *Henry's* Son. and he in Requital delivered up the Town of *Berwick* to *James* King of *Scotland*. King *Edward* after the Victory rode to *York*, from whence King *Henry* was fled, where he was received with great Marks of Esteem; and first he caused the Heads of his Father, the Earl of *Surrey*, and other of his Friends to be taken down, and then the Earl of *Devonshire* and others to be beheaded, and their Heads set in the same Places. Queen *Margaret* with her Son went to *France*, to her Father, the Duke of *Burgundy*.

King Edward returns to London, and is crowned.

In the Interim, King *Edward* with as glorious Triumph, and large Joy as a Victory could beget, which brought no less to him than absolute Sovereignty, march-

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

515

wards *London*, by the Inhabitants whereof he received with great Splendor and Magnificence, on the 29<sup>th</sup> Day of *June* was with great Solemnity crowned at *Westminster*: And that no Circumstance of Sovereignty might be wanting, a Parliament was immediately called to meet in *November*; by which his Title to the Crown might be confirmed, King *Henry* his Son disinherited, his Friends rewarded, and his Enemies punished. Which being effected, he conferred Favours on those Persons that Blood or Service rendered dear to him; created his Brother *George* Duke of *Clarence*, and *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*, the *Nevill* Viscount *Montague*, *Henry* Bouchier of *Essex*, and the Lord *Falconbridge* Earl of *Kent*; and others Barons and Knights. And several Punishments concluded the Session, the Earl of *Oxford* his Son, Sir *John Tiddenham*, *William Tyrrel*, *Walter Montgomery*, Esquires, being, without any Delay, condemn'd of Treason, and beheaded.

Affairs thus happily settled at Home, to check the Attempts of Foreign Neighbours, the new created Earls of *Essex* and *Kent*, and Lord *Audley*, were sent with a thousand Soldiers to scour the narrow Seas; who landing in *Bretagne*, took the Town of *Conquet*, and after invaded the Isle of *Rée*, and having pillaged it, returned Home. By this Enterprize, tho' of no great Consequence in it self, King *Edward* made the *French* understand, how dangerous it was to provoke the *English*, governed by an active Prince, who might perhaps hereafter appear in Person, for the Recovery of the Provinces in *France*, which nothing but our Discomfiture could have lost; and likewise terrify'd all Foreign States from adhering to King *Henry*. Soon after the Duke of *Somerset* and Sir *Ralph Percy* forsook King *Henry*, and submitted to King *Edward*; whose Submission being to him as welcome as a Victory, they were presently restored to the full Possession of their Honours and Estates, and the same Grace proposed to any that should return to their Allegiance.

The indefatigable Queen did not lose any Thing of her Spirit and Endeavour, by her late Discomfiture and the Desertion of her chief Adherents, but tried all Means to gain Succours towards the Restitution of her Husband; at length having obtained five hundred Scotsmen, she passed over with them into *Scotland*, and

1 Ed. IV.

1462.

King Edward's Achievements by Sea.

1463.

Queen Margaret's Attempts for King Henry's Restoration.

1463.

W

and from thence was sailing into *England*; but meeting with a violent Storm, was obliged in a small Vessel to put into *Berwick*; her French Forces were driven into *Holy Island*, where many were slain by King *Edward's* Forces, and four hundred put to their Ransoms. Yet this did not daunt the Queen's Courage, whose chief Hopes were founded on the *Scots*; so leaving her Son *Edward* in *Berwick*, she with the King her Husband, and a Scotch Army entered *Northumberland*, and having won *Bambury Castle*, marched into the Bishoprick of *Durham*, their Forces daily encreasing. Upon this the Duke of *Somerset*, Sir *Ralph Percy*, and others, revolted from King *Edward* to King *Henry*.

The eighth  
Baronet  
Hampden.

These new Commotions coming to King *Edward's* Ears, he made Preparations both by Land and Sea, and sent the new Viscount *Montague*, who having gathered some Forces in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, and received others from King *Edward*, then at *Tork*, marched directly against King *Henry*. By the Way the Lords *Ross* and *Hungerford*, and Sir *Ralph Percy*, met him to hinder his March; but perceiving the good Order and Courage of *Montague's* Army, they all fled but the valiant *Percy*, who disdainig to secure his Life with the Loss of his Honour, fought it out with his Regiment, till he and his were all cut to Pieces, he himself crying out when dying, *I have saved the Bird in my Bosom*, meaning his Oath to King *Henry*. *Montague* encouraged with this Success, marched to attack King *Henry's* Army near *Hexham*, and falling upon it suddenly in the Night totally defeated it, taking the Duke of *Somerset*, Lords *Hungerford*, *Ross*, *Moulins*, and others Prisoners. *Somerset* lost his Head in the Place; the rest were sent to *Newcastle* to be executed; but King *Henry*, in Disguise, and the Queen escaped into *Lancashire*, where he was taken as he sat at Dinner in *Waddington Hall*, by Sir *Edward Tabe* Son, who forgetting all due Respect to so great a Prince, carried him up to *London* like a common Malefactor, with his Legs tied under the Horse's Belly. He was met by the Way by the Earl of *Warwick*, who arrested him, and taking off his gilt Spurs, carried him Prisoner to the Tower, together with Doctor *Manning*, Dean of *Windsor*, Doctor *Bedle*, and Mr. *Alecron*, a young Gentleman, all of so divine a Calling, as shew'd no Misfortune could separate him from

## the Reign of. King EDWARD IV.

517

or them from their Duty. Queen *Margaret* 4 Ed. IV.  
into *France* to her Father.

forementioned Advantages over his Enemies  
giving *Edward* an Opportunity of settling the Af-  
fairs of the Publick, which had been put into Confu-  
sion by the late Disorders. He corrected several Irre-

gulations in the Courts of Judicature, and the Manage-  
ment of the Publick Revenues. He endeavoured to  
regulate King *Ed-  
ward's* Regu-  
lations in the  
Publick.

regulate himself with the Nobility and Commonalty  
by Politeness and Courtesy; to unite those who had  
been more firmly to him by Liberality; and to bring  
those who were still his Enemies by promising  
Pardon. The Laws of the Land he in Part re-  
pealed and in Part augmented. He ordained Penal  
Laws against Excess in Apparel, particularly against  
long Shoes, then commonly worn, which grew  
extreme, that the Pikes in the Toes were turn-  
ed upwards, and tied to the Knees with Silver Chains,  
and Laces: But among his good Acts, he did one  
very injurious; for having concluded a League  
with the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, in *Spain*, he  
gave them Liberty to transport certain Numbers of  
Woolen Sheep, which increased there so numerous-  
ly that it afterwards prov'd a great Prejudice to the  
Merchants in the Sale of their Woolen Cloths  
in the Levant Seas.

Affairs of the Realm being thus settled, King  
Edward began to think of providing himself with a

Three Marriages were proposed to him, *Margaret*  
Daughter of the King of *Scots*; *Isabel*, Sister  
of the King of *Castile*; and *Bona*, Sister to the Queen  
of *France*, and Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. The  
first of these Ladies was approved of in Council, and  
the Earl of *Warwick* was deputed to go to the *French*  
to treat about it, where he was very kindly re-  
ceived and met with a ready Acceptance of what he  
proposed; and being dismissed with no small Comple-  
ment, the Earl of *Damp-martin* was to come into  
England for the final Conclusion of it.

While Policy acted several Parts abroad, Love  
suddenly changed the whole Scene at Home. For  
King *Ed-  
ward* falls in  
Love with  
the Lady  
*Gray*.

*Edward*, after he had been hunting in *Wyche-wood*,  
coming to visit the Duchess of *Bedford*, was  
addressed by a fair Petitioner, *Elizabeth*, the Duchess's  
Maid, Widow of Sir *John Gray*, slain on King



1664.


*Henry's Part at the Battle of St. Albans.* The King enamoured with her Beauty, presently grew earnest in soliciting her in a more unlawful Suit: But she, tho' assaulted on every Side with the Batteries of Temptation, repulsed her Enemy 'so nobly, by telling him, *That tho' she knew her self unworthy to be a Queen, yet she valued her Honour and Person more than to be the greatest Prince's Concubine,* that he offered to treat upon honourable Terms. The King finding her adorned with a Chastity strong enough to resist him, who had scarce failed to be a Victor in those Attempts, grew more enamoured with the Beauty of her Mind, and accounted her Virtue Dower enough for the greatest King. His Mother, and others, pressed him very hard, arguing very sharply against so unequal a Match to his Majesty, by alledging the Danger of angring so potent a Neighbour as King *Lewis*, and so dangerous a Subject as *Warwick*; the Inconvenience of raising a Widow to his Bed, who could bring nothing with her but her improvided Issue, putting him in mind also of a Precontract with the Lady *Lucy*; yet he broke through all these Difficulties, and married her privately; and not long after, she was crowned Queen with the usual Solemnities. Her Mother was *Jaqueline*, Daughter of *Peter* of *Luxemburgh*, Earl of *St. Paul's*, and Duchess to *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*, after whose Death, she was married to Sir *Richard Woodvil*, and among others, bore him this celebrated Lady.

The Earl of  
*Warwick* en-  
raged at it.

This Match was pleasing to none, but less to the Nobility than the Commonalty; because their own Grandeur seemed to be obscured by the sudden Splendor of the Queen's Relations; for her Father was created Earl of *Rivers*, and soon after made Constable of *England*; her Brother *Anthony* was married to the Daughter and Heiress of the Lord *Scales*, and honoured with the Title; and her Son *Thomas Gray*, whom she had by her former Husband, created Marquis of *Dorset*. The Earl of *Warwick* being in *France*, and having been informed of this Match, and sensible how great an affront by it was given to his Employment, left *France* with such angry Resentments, that were plainly perceivable by the King of *France*. But being recalled into *England*, he dissimbled them to the King, who seemed to approve of the Match: But the present

## The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

519

front revived the Remembrance of many he had formerly received ; upon which, he conceived such a Hatred against King *Edward*, that he resolved to depose him, and reinthroned King *Henry*. And under the Presence of Indisposition of Body, he desired Leave of King *Edward* to retire to *Warwick*. s Ed. IV. 

The succeeding Year the Queen was delivered of a Daughter, who was named *Elizabeth*, who afterwards put an End to the Civil Wars, by marrying King *Henry* the Seventh. The same Year King *Edward* concluded a Treaty of Alliance with the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, and a Truce for fifteen Years with *Scotland* ; and married his Sister *Margaret* to the Duke of *Burgundy*. 1466.  
King Edward's Alliances.

The Earl of *Warwick's* Resentments against King *Edward* daily increasing, he resolved to put his Designs immediately in Execution ; and got his two Brothers, the Archbishop of *York* and Marquis of *Montague*, to join with him, by magnifying the Gratitude and Goodness of King *Henry*, and aggravating the Ingratitude and Wickedness of King *Edward*. In the next Place he attempted the King's second Brother, the Duke of *Lancaster*, whom he found to be a Malecontent ; because being profuse in his Expences, his Brother having not taken care to supply him, he was become indigent, of which he complained to the Earl ; and that whereas he had married his Queen's Relations, three most noble Lords, to some of the richest Heiresses of the Nation, he had taken no Care of his own Brothers ; therefore the Earl, to engage him to his Interest, proposed a Marriage of his own Daughter to the Duke, with a Portion equal to the richest of them. Upon this they both went to *Calais*, where the Lady resided, her Father being Governor, and there the Duke married the Earl's Daughter. 1468.  
The Earl of Warwick's Resentments.

Before the Departure of the Duke and Earl, the Management of the setting the Rebellion on Foot was committed to the Archbishop of *York* and the Marquis of *Montague*, who were privately to procure the Insurrection in the North of *England*, and give Occasion of the War, while they being beyond Sea, might not be thought the Authors of it ; and accordingly they going down to *York*, soon effected it. The first Occasion of taking up Arms was raised from the cause of a Charity in *St. Leonard's Hospital* in *York*, A Rebellion raised.

which of the factious  
Persons proven to be c  
to their own Use; the Poor were defrauded,  
and the charitable Intent of the Donors perverted,  
The Marquis of was President for King Ed-  
ward, who having a body of Men, quieted the  
Commotion, and be- Robert Hildern their Leader;  
der; yet were the Pe- ly to assemble again upon  
the least Encourager t gu n them. The Marquis  
by this Appearance x lity to King Edward, passed  
unsuspected at Court, a was in a better Capacity to  
augment his Forces, a so be ready to join in any En-  
terprise that should be red upon.

Against their Return the Archbishop of York had  
brought so diligently to so rent Discontents, that the  
Multitude, that were b e dispersed, were again in  
the Field; but co ant by Leaders of far more e-  
minent Name; i t the Lord Fitz-bugh, and  
the Son of the Lo i , both Cousins to the Earl  
of Warwick, and i we men great in Blood and  
Spirit; but in f of Youth and want of Expe-  
rience, they submit- thes selves to the Direction of  
Sir John Conyers, an experienced and valiant Com-  
mander. They directed their March towards London,  
proclaiming by the Way, *That Edward was neither a p-  
Prince to God, nor a profitable King to the Nation.*

King Ed-  
ward's Pre-  
parations.

King Edward hearing of these Proceedings in the  
North, sent for the Earl of Pembroke, giving him Com-  
mission to raise what *Welsh* Forces he could. The Earl  
taking with him Sir Richard Herbert his Brother, and  
seven thousand *Welshmen*, advanced forwards, and was  
joined by the Lord Stafford with eight hundred Archers.  
And understanding that the Northern Army was near  
*Northampton*, he marched against them with the Body  
of his Army, giving Orders to Sir Richard Herbert  
with two thousand *Welsh* Horse, to charge the En-  
emy in the Rear: But Sir John Conyers had so careful-  
ly secured the Rear, that the *Welsh* were put to  
Flight. Upon this Sir John Conyers, lest Pembroke in  
the Way might gain some Advantage, diverted from the  
direct Course to London, and marched to Warwick  
where the Earl of Warwick and Duke of Clarence had  
gotten together a good Army. The Earl of Pembroke  
marches after Sir John Conyers, watch an Oppor-  
nity, either to cut off some Part of his Force, or  
give Battle to the whole; but at e between

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE

IN RESPONSE TO A RESOLUTION OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES, PASSED MAY 1, 1890, RELATIVE TO THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE UNITED STATES.

THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE UNITED STATES ARE OF GREAT IMPORTANCE TO THE NATION, AND IT IS THE DUTY OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE TO REPORT TO THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES THE RESULTS OF HIS ADMINISTRATION DURING THE YEAR 1890. THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE UNITED STATES ARE OF GREAT IMPORTANCE TO THE NATION, AND IT IS THE DUTY OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE TO REPORT TO THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES THE RESULTS OF HIS ADMINISTRATION DURING THE YEAR 1890.

THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE UNITED STATES ARE OF GREAT IMPORTANCE TO THE NATION, AND IT IS THE DUTY OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE TO REPORT TO THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES THE RESULTS OF HIS ADMINISTRATION DURING THE YEAR 1890. THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE UNITED STATES ARE OF GREAT IMPORTANCE TO THE NATION, AND IT IS THE DUTY OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE TO REPORT TO THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES THE RESULTS OF HIS ADMINISTRATION DURING THE YEAR 1890.

Armies being come so near to one another, that they could hardly part without coming to Blows, some Persons proposed an Accommodation, by way of Treaty; both the King and Earl seemed inclined to it; and the Negotiation of it made King *Edward* so remiss, that he betook himself in his Camp to the Pleasures of Court; which the Earl being informed of, and a foolish Negligence of the King's Guards, set upon them at Night, and took the King Prisoner without any Resistance, and immediately sent him away to *Middleham Castle* in *Yorkshire*, there to be kept by his Brother the Archbishop of *York*: But the Bishop giving him no Liberty of the Castle, but Freedom to hunt with a very small Guard, he was rescued by his faithful Friends *Sir William Stanley* and *Sir Thomas Burg*. The Earl of *Warwick* hearing of his Escape, was in great Perplexity, but at last gave it out, That he himself had so ordered it; having Power to make and unmake Kings at his Pleasure.

An Interview between King Edward and the Earl of Warwick.


The King being at Liberty went to *York*, and from thence to *Lancaster*, where the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* had gathered some Forces; with these he marched directly to *London*, where all his Studies were to be revenged of those disloyal Lords, his Brother the Duke of *Clarence* and the Earl of *Warwick*, and they on the other Side were busily employed in increasing the Party and Interest against the King. In the mean Time the Solicitations of those Persons that had before laboured for Peace, continued, and at last brought both Parties to agree to an Interview in *Westminster Hall*. Oaths were exchanged on both Sides: But no sooner was the Earl of *Warwick*, accompanied with the Duke of *Clarence*, entered the Hall, and bid to express his Desires, but he fell into a bold Expostulation of Injuries, charging the King with Ingratitude, as the King did them with Disloyalty; so that instead of their Resentments being appeased, they were much more exasperated; upon which the King, full of Indignation, departed the Hall, and took his Journey to *Canterbury*, and the Duke and Earl to *Warwick*.

The tenth Battle at Barnet, called the Fight of the Field.

The Earl of *Warwick* raising new Commotions in *Lincolnshire*, had got together an Army of thirty thousand Men, commanded by *Sir Robert Wells*, who very much disturbed the Country, and proclaimed King *Henry* wherever he came; and at last encamping near

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

523

*ford*, resolved to wait for his Opposers. In the <sup>10 Ed. IV.</sup> Time King *Edward* sent for *Richard Lord Wells*  father, that having Possession of him, he might draw his Son from the Earl of *Warwick*. The Lord *Wells*, his Brother in Law, Sir *Thomas Dimmock*, were going to Court to King *Edward*; but having by the secret Notice how unsafe his Approach would be, secured himself in a Sanctuary. But the King refusing to get him upon any Terms, granted a general pardon, and received him upon Promise of all fair play, and commanded him to write to his Son to come; and then marching towards *Stamford*, he took Lord *Wells* along with him: But his Letters notwithstanding what he desired, but Sir *Robert* still proceeding, King *Edward* was so enraged, that he beheaded the Lord *Wells* and Sir *Thomas Dimmock*, tho' he had promised them their Lives and Safety.

The Report of this Execution clouded the Reputation of King *Edward*, it being an Action both barbarous and unfaithful; but in Sir *Robert Wells* it begot nothing but Fury and Revenge: And indeed Rage so affected his Judgment, that contrary to all Persuasion, staying for the coming of the Earl of *Warwick*, who was every Day expected, he drew out his Forces to meet and charged the King's Army, who received him with great Courage; and having enclosed him, took him and sixty seven more Prisoners. There were ten slain of the Earl of *Warwick's* Party, but thirteen hundred of the King's; and they escaped, to make their Flight the swifter, cast away their Coats; upon which Account it was afterwards called the Battle of *Loose-Coat Field*. The Prisoners were immediately executed, except Sir *Robert*, who in his short Delay of Death, had the longer opportunity to express his Hatred against the King and his atrocious Cruelty.

This Overthrow drove *Clarence* and *Warwick* to the utmost Extremity: However, the great Spirit of the latter disdaining any Thing that resembled Flight, he returned very leisurely to *Exeter*, from thence to *Dartmouth*: There, with many Ladies and a large Retinue, took Ship, and sailed directly to *Calais*, where he met the Governor; where casting Anchor before the Town, giving notice that they were ready to land, the Governor, *Vauclere*, a *Gascoign*, whom *Warwick* had made his

The Earl of  
*Warwick* flies  
to *Calais*.

1470. his Deputy, to their great Surprise, discharged them non against them, and denied them Entrance which Service King *Edward* made *Vauclere* Go of *Calais*, and the Duke of *Burgundy* promised Pension of a thousand Crowns per Annum. *Vauclere* seemed so hearty to King *Edward's* yet he sent the Earl of *Warwick* Word how his entring there would be, advising him to go French King, promising him to give him a good count of *Calais* when Time should serve.

The Earl goes to the French King.

By this Counsel the Earl of *Warwick* took Course to *Dieppe* in *Normandy*, taking in his several Ships, and a considerable Treasure, before the Duke of *Burgundy*. From thence he passed to *Boise*, where King *Lewis* was, who received him great Respect, furnish'd him with Necessaries, and him Assistance, and fitted him out a Fleet with men and Soldiers. Queen *Margaret* also, with Earls of *Pembroke* and *Oxford*, (the last having got out of Prison in *England*,) came to meet him King *Lewis*, to strengthen the Amity between procur'd a Match between Prince *Edward*, King's Son, and the Earl of *Warwick's* Daughter *Anne*. On this Marriage the Earl of *Warwick* and Duke *Burgundy* took a solemn Oath never to give over till King *Henry* or Prince *Edward* should recover Kingdom; and Queen *Margaret* engaged her self, and them two Regents till her Son came of Age.

The Earl of Warwick lands at Dartmouth.

King *Edward* hearing of this Confederacy sent over an ingenious Gentlewoman to France under the Pretence of visiting the Duchess of *Burgundy* persuaded her to be urgent upon her Husband for the Earl of *Warwick's* Interest: She managed her well, that the Duke promised to do it immediately his Return to *England*. King *Edward* having perceived this Division between the Earl and Duke of *Burgundy* his Brother, and relying upon *Burgundy's* abroad Friends who flatter'd him at home, gave him Hunting and Hawking by Day, and to Dance and morous Addresses to fair Ladies at Night. In Time, all Things being in Readiness for departure as Ships, Men and Money, furnish'd by the King, under the Command of the Admiral, they set Sail and landed at *Dartmouth*, where the Earl of *Warwick* proclaim'd King *Henry*, cousin

persons, from sixteen to sixty, under severe Penalties, to <sup>10 Ed. IV.</sup> take Arms against *Edward Duke of York*, as an Usurper; upon which he took his March towards *London*, his Numbers continually encreasing. King *Edward* seemed but little to regard it; but thinking he had *Warwick* in a Snare, wrote to the Duke of *Burgundy* to secure the Seas against his Retreat; he also summoned the Lords of *England* to attend him in his Wars. But very few of them repairing to him, he soon became sensible of his Danger; upon which he with a few Lords of his party retir'd from *London* to *Nottingham*.

In the mean Time the Earl of *Pembroke* in *Wales*, <sup>A Revolt from King Edward.</sup> and the Bastard of *Falconbridge* in the *West*, proclaimed King *Henry*; and at the same Time Dr. *Gooddiard*, Chaplain to the Earl, at *St. Paul's Cross* in his Sermon declared King *Edward* an Usurper, commended the good intentions of the Earl in restoring their imprisoned Sovereign King *Henry* to the Scepter, and the Kingdom to Liberty; and the like did most of the Clergy in *England*; likewise the late reconciled Archbishop of *York*, and Marquis of *Montague*, who had so often sworn never to forsake the Title of King *Edward*, took the first Opportunity of declaring against him, and crying out, *Long live King Henry*. The Marquis of *Montague* having raised in King *Edward's* Name six thousand Men, and drawn them down near to *Nottingham*, suddenly marched back his Forces, alledging, *that Edward was ungrateful and regardless of his Friends, of whom himself was an Example, who having served him in many bloody Battles, was only rewarded with the bare Title of a MARQUISS, without any Estate to support it; and therefore had just Cause never more to draw his Sword in his Quarrel, and those who did would receive no better Reward than himself.* These and the like Complaints being divulged among the common People, it caused a mighty Alteration in their Inclinations and Affections: In every Street were Bonfires, ringing of Bells, and crying out King *Henry*. King *Edward* finding no Place of Safety, went immediately to *Lynne*, where finding two *Holland* and one *English* Ships, he embarked with about seven hundred Men, without either Baggage or Money. In his Passage he was encountred with eight *Easterling* Ships, and with great Difficulty got to *Alchemar* in *Holland*, belonging to the Duke of *Burgundy*; but not having Money to pay his Passage, he gave the Captain a rich



rich Vestment farr'd with Martins, promising to him better afterwards.

Warwick comes to London.

In these Times of Trouble *Elizabeth*, King *Edward* Queen, took Sanctuary in a Monastery, where she deliver'd of a Son named *Edward*, who was after *Edward V.* likewise many of King *Edward's* Followers betook themselves to several Sanctuaries. Thinking in this Posture, the *Kentish* Men finding the King was fled, and the other in Prison, came to London, and pillaged the Suburbs, and intended to enter'd the City; but the Earl of *Warwick* met them, punishing the Ringleaders of the Insurrection, which gain'd him much Reputation with the People. This Tumult being quell'd, the Earl, attended with other of the Nobility, went to the Tower of London and brought out King *Henry*, who had been prisoner there for seven Years; and he being come thro' the City in a blue Velvet Gown, to the Palace, went in Procession crown'd to St. Pauls Church. The Earl of *Warwick* bearing his Train, and the Earl of *Northampton* his Sword, the People crying out, *God save Henry.*

King *Henry* recognis'd, and *Edward* declar'd a Traitor in Parliament.

In November a Parliament was call'd in the Name of King *Henry*, in which *Edward* was declared a Traitor and Usurper, his Estate confiscated, all made in his Name and by his Authority annul'd. The Crowns of *England* and *France* confirmed upon *Henry* and his Male Heirs, and for Want of Heirs to the Duke of *Clarence* and his Heirs Male. Those that sided with King *Henry* were restor'd to their Privileges, and those who sided with King *Edward* deprived of their Honours and Estates, and several Noblemen were executed. And the Regency of the Kingdom was committed to the Earl of *Warwick* and the Duke of *Clarence*.

*Henry's* prophetic Speech concerning King *Henry VII.*

It hapned not long after, that the Earl of *Northampton* going to view his Lands in *Pembrokeshire*, found there the Lord *Henry*, Son to *Margaret*, the only Daughter and Heir to *John Beaufort* the first Duke of *Somerset*, then full ten Years of Age, who had been kept in Measure like a Prisoner, but honourably educated by Lady *Herbert*. The Earl brought this young Lord to London, and presented him before King *Henry*. After he had seriously fixed his Eyes upon him, in a very solemn Manner to the Lord, he said, I have

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

527

*is the Person to whom, after all our violent Struggles, both we and our Adversaries must at last submit.* Which afterwards hapning as he had predicted, confirmed the Opinion that People had of his uncommon Sanctity; since by the Spirit of Prophecy he could foresee the Succession of King Henry VII. when at that Time many of the Houses both of Lancaster and York were alive to precede him.

While Things went on thus in England on King Henry's Side, King Edward was using all possible Means to recover his Kingdom, and his chief Dependance was upon the Duke of Burgundy. But he, tho' he had been very hearty for King Edward's Interests before, seeing all Things make against him, was very backward and cautious to assist him publickly. Upon this, King Edward impatient of Delays, hired fourteen Ships of the *Easterlings*, to which four more were added, fitted out by the Duke of Burgundy, who also privately furnished him with fifty thousand Florins, but at the same Time, under Colour, by a Proclamation forbad all Men to assist King Edward, that he might free himself from Suspicion to England; and whatever the Success should be, he would seem a Friend to both Sides.

King Edward having gotten about two thousand Men, besides Sailors, embarked for England, intending to land in Norfolk; but finding the Coasts strongly guarded, he sailed more Northerly, entred Humber, and landed at Ravenspur in Yorkshire; where laying aside all Claim to the Crown, he declared upon Oath he came only to recover his Inheritance the Dutchy of York; and wearing an Estrich Feather, his Son Prince Edward's Liverry, proclaimed King Henry in every Place where he came; shewing the People that flock'd to his Army the Letters and Seal of the Earl of Northumberland, which he affirmed and made them believe, were sent for his safe Conduct. In this Manner he proceeded to the City of York, which refused to receive him before he had sworn that he would treat the Citizens according to such Articles as were agreed on, and to be faithful to all King Henry's Cominands: To both which he took a solemn Oath, but immediately broke them both; first by seizing the City into his own Hands, and then by re-assuming his former Title to the Crown.

King Edward leaving a Garison in York, marched towards London, altho' the Marquis of Montague lay then

1471. then at *Pontefract*, with a far superior Power, to hinder his Journey. Nigh which, when King *Edward* came expecting Battle, *Montague* let him pass quietly, not permitting any Act of Hostility to be shewed, or Advantage taken. When he arrived at *Nottingham*, many of the Nobility came to him with Forces, where he was proclaimed King: From thence he went to *Leicester* to meet the Earl of *Warwick*, who lay near the City of that Name, in Order to give him Battle. The Earl hearing this, sent for the Duke of *Clarence* to join him, and marched away to *Coventry*. *Edward* coming to *Warwick*, and finding the Earl gone to *Coventry*, followed him. The Earl intrenched himself to wait for the Arrival of the Duke of *Clarence*, who he understood was not far off. The King perceiving nothing would provoke *Warwick* to fight upon unequal Terms, marched against *Clarence*, and as soon as he drew near, both Armies made a Shew of preparing for the Encounter. But being come in Sight of each other, the Duke of *Glocester*, without so much as demanding the usual Conditions, ran into *Clarence's* Camp, and seemed to treat of what they had long before concluded on. *Clarence* carried over to the King the Army raised by the Earl of *Warwick*, and the two Brothers joyfully embraced each other; and *Edward* was proclaimed King.

The Duke of *Clarence* comes over to King *Edward*.

The Duke of *Clarence* sends Messengers to the Earl of *Warwick*.

The Duke of *Clarence* having thus disappointed the Earl of *Warwick*, that he might not appear to forfeit the Office of a Son in Law, and a Friend, he, joined with the King, sent to intreat the Earl to come to an Accommodation, upon such Conditions as he himself should require; depending upon it, that he would be so rational in his Demands, as not to require what was usual for a Subject to ask, and a King to grant. But *Warwick* had a Spirit too stubborn to stoop to any Conditions that were not of his own proposing, much less from one who had betrayed him; and therefore returned this Answer. *Go tell your Master, I had rather be an Earl and like my self, than a false and perjured Duke, and before I will falsify my Oath like him, I will lay down my Life at my Enemies Feet; which I doubt not but will be dearly purchased.* This resolute Answer caused *Edward* to be very wary, and therefore he resolved in the first Place, to gain the City of *London*, and secure King *Henry*; upon which he marched

## The Reign of King EDWARD VI.

529

his Army up to *London*, where he was readily received by the Citizens. Upon *Edward's* Approach the Duke of *Somerset*, and those that attended on King *Henry*, left him, and fled to secure themselves; so being left in a manner alone, he was sent to the Tower, from whence, six Months before, he had been set at liberty by the Earl of *Warwick*. 11 Ed. IV.

King *Edward* having settled his Affairs in *London*, marched his Army to meet the Earl of *Warwick*, who was come to *St. Albans*, in Hopes that his Reputation would draw over many of the *Londoners* to his party. But *Edward*, to prevent this, encamped between that Town and the City, that he might have no communication with it; and that the Presence of King *Henry* might occasion no Disturbance, he took him with him, and kept him in his Camp. King *Edward* encamped upon a Plain near *Barnet*. The Van was commanded by the Duke of *Glocester*, the main body by himself, and the Rear by the Lord *Hastings*. On the other Side, the Earl of *Warwick* set his Forces

King *Edward* marches against the Earl of *Warwick*.

in Order with great Resolution, committing the right Wing to the Earl of *Oxford* and Marquis of *Montague*, the Left to the Duke of *Exeter*, and the Main to the Duke of *Somerset*: And having surveyed the whole Army, and lik'd their Order, he gave Directions in every Quarter. He sent away the Horses, resolving to fight on Foot, thinking of nothing but Death and Victory. Then having affectionately embraced all his great Commanders, every Man betook him to his respective Charge.

It was *Easter Sunday* in the Morning when the two Armies approached each other for Battle. Six Hours the Victory was doubtful, tho' it often inclined to the Earl of *Warwick's* Side; till at last Error alone brought disorder to *Warwick's* Army, and that a final Overthrow. For the Earl of *Oxford* giving his Men a Star with Streams for his Badge, begot in the Army a Mistake, that they were Part of the Enemy, whose Badge was the Sun, which Error was caused by the Mistiness of the Morning; wherefore being in the right Wing, and pressing forward, they were thought to be King *Edward's* Men flying, which caused their own main body to attack them fiercely in the Back; whereupon *Oxford* suspecting Treason in *Warwick*, fled away with eight hundred Men; and King *Edward* with fresh

The eleventh Battle at *Barnet*.

VOL. I. M m Troops

1471. Troops in Reserve, perceiving some Disorder in the Enemy, violently assaulted them, and soon forced them to give back. *Warwick* used all Methods both of Language and Example, to encourage them to fight, but when he saw nothing did prevail, he rushed furiously into the thickest of his Enemies, hoping that one his Men would bravely follow, or otherwise by Death to prevent the Misery of seeing himself defeated. *Margaret* seeing to what Danger his Brother was reduced, ran violently in to his Rescue, and both presently opposed with Numbers fell, and with them the Spoil of the Army, which thereupon immediately fled; and King *Edward* obtained a complete Victory having slain ten thousand of his Adversaries, with the Loss of fifteen hundred of his own Men. The Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Oxford* fled towards *Scotland*, but turned aside to *Wales*. The Duke of *Berk*, who was left half slain among the dead Bodies, escaped, and took Sanctuary at *Westminster*. The Bodies of the Earl of *Warwick* and Marquis of *Montague* were brought to *London*, and exposed barefaced three Days in *St. Paul's Church*, that no Pretence of their being alive might stir up any Rebellion afterwards. This was the End of the mighty Earl of *Warwick*, the greatest and busiest Subject, in those Days, in *England*, whose Ambition was to make and unmake Kings.

Queen Margaret lands at Weymouth.

Queen *Margaret*, who had been some Time preparing for *England*, and had been detained by contrary Winds, landed at *Weymouth*, having in her Retinue some few *French Forces*, where she was soon entertained with the melancholy News of the Defeat of the Earl of *Warwick*; at the hearing of which she fell into a Swoon, and despairing of any future Success, she registered her self, Prince *Edward* her Son, and Followers, in the Abby of *Caen*, betaking her self to the common Refuge of Sanctuary. Here the Chief of her Party resorted to her, as the Duke of *Somerset*, and several other Persons of Note, who encouraged the Queen still to pursue her former Designs, offering their Assistance to establish her Son *Edward* in the Throne, tho' it were with the Loss of their Lives; desiring not only to undertake the Authority of the War, and to sustain the Charge and Burden of it; telling her they did not doubt but to abate the Pride of the Usurper, who thinking himself secure, began to relax.

his former Negligence. The Queen being persuaded by these Assurances, consented, but thought it best to send Prince *Edward* back to *France*, as well for his safety, as that from thence he might supply them with Forces. But the Lords alledged, that Prince *Edward* being the sole Hopes of the *Lancastrians*, his Presence was absolutely necessary in the Field, both for Encouragement of his own Soldiers, and the bringing over many to his Side. The Queen yielding to this Resolution, leaves the Sanctuary, and puts her self to arms; and the very Name of Prince *Edward* drew many to the War. She straightway led her Forces to *Bath*, where the Duke of *Somerset* and Earl of *Devonshire* were in great Reputation, and by whose Authority new Forces came daily into the Prince's Service. King *Edward* hearing that Queen *Margaret* was landed, and that great Numbers daily came to her Assistance out of *Cornwall*, *Devonshire*, and the Western Counties, committed King *Henry* and the Archbishop of *York* to the Tower, gathered his Army together, and made Preparations with that Expedition, that he marched his Army down to *Marlborough*, within fifteen Miles of *Bath*, before the Earl of *Pembroke*, who had a considerable Force in *Wales*, could join the Queen's Army; and so getting between the Queen's Army and *Wales*, hindered all Succours that could come from thence. This sudden and near Approach of King *Edward* very much perplexed the Queen, wherefore she retired to *Bristol*, and sent to the Governor of *Gloster* Castle to desire Passage over the *Severn* there; but being denied, she was obliged to march up to *Tewkesbury*, and endeavour to pass the River there, but before she could reach *Tewkesbury*, the King and his Horse were in Sight.

11 Ed. IV.

King *Edward* marches against the Queen's Forces.

The two Armies being come so near to each other, the Queen's Army was much inferior in Number to King *Edward*'s, it was resolved to fight it out. The Duke of *Somerset* therefore pitched his Field in a Park adjoining to the Town, and intrenched his Camp so high, and so strong, that the Enemy could not Side force it; and when he saw an inevitable necessity to fight, marshaled his Army for Action. He himself commanded the first Battle, the Prince, under Direction of the Lords *Prior* and *Wenlock*, the Duke of *Somerset*, and the Earl of *Devonshire* the Rear. Before the

The Queen's Preparation for the Battle.

1471.

Battle began, the Queen rode about the Army, and the Prince with her to encourage them to fight; and tho' she was under great Apprehensions of the Consequences, yet she concealed her Despair so much, that in her Looks appeared nothing but Life and Resolution, in her Language almost Assurance of Victory: She told them, "That it rested in their Courage that Day to restore their imprisoned King to his Liberty and Crown, and themselves not so Safety only, but to Honour and Treasure; for the Wealth of the rebellious Cities should be their Spoil, the Kingdom their Interruption; and all those Titles the Enemy so proudly wore, should be conferred upon their Deserts. Then if the Inequality of their Numbers frightened them, they might be confident their great Hearts, animated by the Justice of the Cause, would easily take away the Disparity. Then she bid them look upon the Prince her Son, and fight for him their Fellow Soldier, with whom they were to share in Fortune, and who once in Possession of the Throne, would never forget them, by whose Courage he was seated there.

The twelfth  
Battle at  
Bosworth.

King Edward likewise drew up his Army in three Lines of Battle; the first was commanded by the Duke of Gloucester, the second by the King himself, and the Rear by the Lord Hastings. The Armies being thus drawn up, and the Signal given, an obstinate Fight ensued. The Duke of Gloucester planted the Ordnance against the Duke of Somerset's Men; and they being lodged between Ditches, Bushes, and Hedges, with their Showers of Arrows, so galled Gloucester's Line, that he commanded them back, as tho' they had fled. Somerset perceiving this, rashly left his Places of Strength to pursue them, and advanced as far as King Edward's Quarter, expecting to be followed and supported by the Lord Wenlock. Upon this the Duke of Gloucester made good his Retreat, and charged Somerset's Battalion so briskly, that his Men were put to Flight. He himself recovering the middle Line, found the Lord Wenlock, who should have supported him, looking on as if he had been only a Spectator. Somerset being enraged call'd him Coward and Traytor, and with a Battle-Ax clove his Head asunder. This Courage begat nothing but Disorder in the Queen's Camp, and the King taking the Advantage of it, gained a com-

pleat Victory ; for entring the Queen's Trenches, he made a most cruel Slaughter on all who resisted. Three thousand of the common Soldiers were slain, as were the Earl of *Devonshire*, Lord *Beaufort*, and other Persons of Note. The Duke of *Somerset*, Prior of *St. John's*, and many Knights and Esquires, took Sanctuary in the *Abbey*, and other Places in the Town ; but this only preserved them for a While ; for King *Edward*, who was never an over scrupulous Observer of religious Rites, would have entred the *Abbey*, and forced them from thence : But a Priest coming with the Eucharist in his Hand, would not let him enter the Place, till he had granted a Pardon for all there : But this Pardon betrayed them ; for on the *Monday* following they were taken out from thence, and were arraigned before the Duke of *Glocester*, who sat as High Constable of *England*, where they were without Mercy condemn'd to Death, and beheaded on a Scaffold in the Market-place in *Tewksbury* ; by which Violation of the Sanctuary King *Edward* confirm'd the Opinion which the World before had conceiv'd of him, that Religion would never prevail upon his Conscience, so as to be any Bar either to his Pleasures or Revenge.

Queen *Margaret* was taken in the Battle half dead in her Chariot, and not long after the Prince, by Sir *Richard Crofts*, who intended to have conceal'd him ; but King *Edward* having promised the Prince his Life, if he were not already dead, and a Pension of two hundred Pounds a Year to any one who should bring him alive or dead, he presented him to King *Edward*, who looking stedfastly upon him, and admiring the Comeliness of his Person, and Sweetness of his Disposition, asked him, *How he durst come with flying Colours into his Kingdom, and raise his People against him ?* To which he courageously replied, *That to recover his Father miserably oppressed, and the Crown violently usurped, he had taken Arms ; neither could he be reputed to make any unjust Claim, who desired no more than what had been possessed by Henry the Sixth, Fifth, and Fourth, his Father, Grandfather, and Great Grandfather, Kings of England.* King *Edward* being provoked by this Answer, thrust him disdainfully away with his Gauntlet, and some say, struck him on the Face ; which encouraged the Dukes of *Clarence* and *Glocester*, the Marquiss of *Dorset*, and the Lord *Hastings*, to seise on

11 Ed. IV.

Prince Edward taken and murdered.



1471. the Prince suddenly, and barbarously to murder him with their Poyards. His Body was buried without any Solemnity, in the Church of the Monastery of *Black-Friers in Tewkesbury*; But all his Murders cost no violent Deaths; for *Gloster* was the Cause of the Death of the rest; and the Earl of *Rivers*, the only surviving Kinsman of the murder'd Prince, of the Duke of *Gloster* himself.

The Earl of  
Pembroke  
escaping into  
Breague.

This was the twelfth Battle that was fought between the Houses of *LANCASTER* and *YORK*, and the last that was fought in the Reign of King *Edward*, and was the only complete Victory he ever got, from which no Man of Eminency escaped, nor any Man, who could pretend to a Competing Issue, but King *Henry*, and he without Issue. After the Battle was over, and Matters settled in the County, the King returns for *London*, carrying with him the captive Queen, whom he kept in Prison till her Father *Royce*, Duke of *Burgundy*, ransom'd her for fifty thousand Crowns. The Earl of *Pembroke* kept himself some Time in *Wales*, and King *Edward*, desirous of getting him into his Power, had employed one *Langham* to catch him, but the Earl having notice of it, betook him, and afterwards, for his greater Security, sailed into *Breague*, carrying with him his Nephew *Henry*, Earl of *Richmond*, Heir of the *Tudors* Family by the Father's Side, and of the House of *Somerset* by the Mother's Side; where they were kindly received by the Duke, not only with Promise of Safety, but also an honourable Pension.

The Richard  
of Faversham  
being taken at  
London.

Soon after the Battle at *Tewkesbury*, the Bastard of *Fulnbridge*, a base Son of the Earl of *Kent*, having been before employ'd by the Earl of *Warwick*, during the late Troubles of the Kingdom as Vice Admiral, to secure the narrow Seas, and hinder all Succours that might come from the Low Countries to King *Edward*, Assistance, as soon as he heard of the Death of the Earl of *Warwick*, fell to open Piracy, and became a Terror to our Merchants. His common Station was between *Dover* and *Calais*, where having gotten a Navy of some considerable Strength, and the chief Men of *Calais*, (who were of the Earl's Party,) of his Confederacy, he had a secret Place of Retreat upon any Occasion, in that Harbour; he having gathered together many of those who had escaped the two last Battles, and preserving upon the Affection of

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

535

*Kentish* Men, put in at *Dover*, and giving it out, <sup>11 Ed. IV.</sup> it his taking Arms was for the Sake of the common liberty, and for delivering King *Henry* and Queen *Margaret*, imprisoned by an Usurper, he had gotten an my of seventeen thousand Men, and leaving his Ships the *Downs*, he marched his Forces to *London*, and in ostile Manner demanded Entrance into the City; but being denied, he marched with his Army to *Kingston* Bridge, to pass the River of *Thames* there; by the way promising his Soldiers, that they should have the *Palace of Westminster* for their Dinner, that of the *suburbs* of *London* for their Supper, and of *London* it self for their Breakfast the next Morning: But being prevented of passing over at *Kingston*, and hearing of King *Edward's* March towards *London*, he returned to *Stamwark*, and caused the Bridge to be fired, and three thousand of his Men to be transported by Boat at *St. Katherine's*, to make an Assault at *Aldgate* and *Bishopsgate*, both which they set on fire; but by the Care and Valour of the Citizens, he was at last driven to his Ships with the Loss of seven hundred Men: Then he went and entrenched his Army for a while at *Blackheath*, and at length he got to *Sandwich*, and fortified that Place, and defended it till after they heard of the death of King *Henry*; for then the Pretence for which began the Rebellion being taken away, and hearing King *Edward* was coming with a powerful Army to reduce them, they offered to lay down their Arms and surrender the Place upon Condition of Pardon, which was granted them; but notwithstanding that, *Falbridge*, and several others, were afterwards beheaded, and great Numbers suffered either corporal or pecuniary Punishment.

King *Edward*, after the Battle at *Tewksbury*, came <sup>King Edward returns to London.</sup> *London* with an Army of thirty thousand Men, bringing Queen *Margaret* with him to grace his Triumph. He was received by the Citizens with great Tokens of affection on whom he bestowed several Marks of his Favour, knighting the Mayor, and others who had resisted the Rebels, commending both their Valour and Fidelity, and promising to requite them when Time should serve, with more ample Satisfaction.

All Commotions of the State being now quieted, King *Edward* considering that the People, upon every slight occasion, were apt to run to Rebellion, when the Pre-

1472. **King Henry** murdered in the Tower. **King Henry** was but mentioned; it was therefore resolved, that to take away all Pretence from future Insurrections, **King Henry** should be sacrificed. Upon this the Duke of *Glocester* took an occasion to visit **King Henry** in the Tower, and there either stabbed him with his own Hands, or commanded it to be done in his Presence. And that the World might not suspect **King Henry** was still alive, he was no sooner dead, but with some Shew of funeral Rites, his Body attended with some Guards, was brought into *St. Paul's Church*, where he lay with his Face uncovered, and exposed to the Curiosity of every Spectator. Here it bled afresh, and was a melancholy Spectacle to most of the Beholders. From thence it was carried to *Black-fryars Church*, and being laid barefaced as before, bled afresh again, to the great Amazement of the Spectators, who looked upon it as a miraculous Way of demanding Justice from Heaven, since it could not be had on Earth. At last it was put into a Boat, without Priest, Clerk, Torch, or Taper, or any other of the usual funeral Ceremonies of those Times, and carried into the Abby of *Chertsey* in *Surrey*, and there interred without any Pomp.

**King Edward's** Care for his future Safety. **King Edward** having thus destroyed the very Root of the *Lancastrian* Party, proceeded to lop off all such Branches as might any Ways disturb his Security; and first, under pretence of Treason, he apprehended the Archbishop of *York*, Brother to the Earl of *Warwick*, and sent him Prisoner to the Castle of *Guisnes* in *France*, from whence he never obtain'd his Liberty, till Death enlarged him; he seized all the Bishop's Goods, Lands, and Lordships, and got Possession of his rich Plate and Jewels; of which one in his Mitre was of such Value, that he caused it to be set in his own Crown. The Treason laid to his Charge was secretly aiding the Earl of *Oxford*, who at that Time had fortified and held *St. Michael's Mount* in *Cornwall*, ever since the Battle at *Barnet*. The said Earl afterwards yielding himself to **King Edward**, obtained his Life, but lost his Estate, and was sent beyond Sea to the Castle of *Hammes*, where he was kept a close Prisoner for twelve Years, till the Death of **King Richard III.** And so desirous was **King Edward** to get *Jasper Earl of Penbrok*, and *Henry Earl of Richmond* into his Power, that

he offered large Sums of Money to the Duke of Bre- <sup>12 Ed IV.</sup>  
*tagne* to deliver them up ; but he refused to do it, say-  
 ing, *That he could not in Honour deliver up those distres-*  
*sed Princes, who had fled to him for Protection ;* but he  
 would, for his Sake, take such Care of them, that he  
 should have no Cause of Apprehension from them. And  
 upon that Account he removed their own Servants from  
 them, appointing *Bretaigns* to attend upon them. But  
 deplorable was the Condition of *Henry Holland*, Duke  
 of *Exeter* and Earl of *Huntington*, a Person who for  
 many Years made such a mighty Figure in the World,  
 who was reduced to such extream Wants, that *Comines*  
 relates, that he himself saw the Duke running bare-leg'd  
 after the Duke of *Burgundy's* Train, begging his Bread  
 for God's sake, but did not make his Name known,  
 he being the nearest of the House of *Lancaster*, and  
 Brother-in-law to King *Edward* himself. But after-  
 wards his Quality being known, the Duke of *Burgun-*  
*dy* gave him a small Pension to maintain him. Not long  
 after he was found dead, and strip'd quite naked upon  
 the Shore at *Dover*, but no Discovery could be made  
 how he came by his Death.

All Things being now brought to a reasonable Com-  
 posure, and *Edward* having no Competitor, or danger-  
 ous Disturber, called a Parliament, in which those  
 Acts were re-established that King *Henry* had abroga-  
 ted, and those annulled which were made against  
 his Adherents ; and at the same Time there was a gene-  
 ral Pardon. During this Session the Duke of *Burgundy*  
 sent Embassadors to King *Edward*, to desire his Assistance  
 against the *French* King ; but Money was wanting, the  
 Aid which the Parliament had liberally given, being not  
 sufficient to satisfy his numerous Creditors, who were  
 very importunate. He therefore made use of a new  
 Invention, which was called a *Benevolence*. He pro-  
 cured a List to be made of the wealthiest Persons in the  
 Kingdom, who being summoned before him, he by his  
 Arts of Insinuation and Persuasion prevailed upon  
 them to suffer themselves to be assessed, which they  
 did, some for Fear, some for Love, and some for Ex-  
 ample. Among the rest, one rich old Widow being  
 courteously asked by the King what she would contri-  
 bute, she replied, *For your Majesty's royal and amiable*  
*Countenance, I will contribute twenty Pounds.* This  
 pleased the King so, that he gave her a hearty Kiss ;  
 with

1473.  
 The Duke  
 of *Burgundy*  
 desires Aid  
 of King *Ed-*  
*ward.*

1474. with w<sup>h</sup> the old G<sup>o</sup> transported  
 that the m<sup>o</sup> by a l<sup>l</sup>  
 By this art m<sup>o</sup> w<sup>h</sup> n<sup>o</sup> fed, and now nothing was  
 ng the Ex<sup>o</sup> ion. 's be universal Language of  
 as k<sup>o</sup> or Wars, and very few Persons of  
 bod<sup>o</sup> C<sup>o</sup> ry, b<sup>o</sup> m<sup>o</sup> ed for the Journey. And  
 m<sup>o</sup> at e<sup>o</sup> a<sup>o</sup> sh other in the Glory of  
 Armour, the rich<sup>o</sup> of their Pavilions, the  
 m<sup>o</sup> ry of their Ho<sup>o</sup> rurniture, and Servants Ap-  
 m<sup>o</sup>. The Army c<sup>o</sup> nsted of fifteen hundred Men at  
 Arms, fifteen thousand Arch<sup>o</sup> s on Horseback, eight thou-  
 sand common Soldiers, and three thousand Pioneers,  
 an Army more formi<sup>o</sup> : han any that hitherto had  
 invaded France. Th<sup>o</sup> army was three Weeks in pas-  
 sing from Dover to Calais, but before their landing,  
 King Edward sent Garter K<sup>o</sup> g at Arms with a Letter of  
 Defiance to the French K<sup>o</sup>, demanding no less than  
 the whole Realm of Fr<sup>o</sup>; threatening, if refused, to  
 invade his Dominions Fire and Sword. King  
 Lewis having read the Letter, withdrew into a Ward-  
 robe, and commanded the Herald to be brought into  
 his Presence; where, in a private Conference, he made  
 use of many Arguments, against King Edward's rely-  
 ing upon the Fidelity and boasted Assistances of the  
 Duke of Burgundy and Earl of St. Paul, and se-  
 veral Motives to induce him to enter into a Treaty of  
 Peace: Then he dismissed the Herald with a Reward of  
 three hundred Crowns, and thirty Ells of crimson Vel-  
 vet, promising him a thousand Crowns more if the  
 Peace were concluded; as also with a Present of a  
 very fine Horse, a wild Boar, and a Wolf to King  
 Edward.

King Edward being arrived at Calais, expected to  
 have been met by the Duke of Burgundy, with two  
 thousand Lances, and four thousand light Horse, as  
 he had promised; but they not coming, the King sent  
 the Lord Scaler, to put the Duke in Mind of the Agree-  
 ment. Upon this the Duke came attended with a small  
 Troop to the King, to excuse his Backwardness, and  
 promise that he would very speedily bring the Troop  
 expected. At the same Time a Letter was sent to  
 King Edward from the Earl of St. Paul, persuading  
 him to proceed in the Enterprize, and not to be doubt-  
 ful of any Assistance, or Accommodation, either from  
 the Duke or himself. Upon these All<sup>o</sup>ances King  
 Edward

*Edward* advanced forward, but found no Performance 14 Ed. IV.

Promises, neither from the one nor the other. For the Duke did not accommodate his Soldiers at *Peronne* with Lodging or Victuals, as was expected, nor did the Earl receive them at *St. Quintin's* according to agreement; but on the contrary, sallied out upon them as King *Edward* sent to take Possession, and plaid on them with the Canon, killing three of them. This caused King *Edward* to suspect their Sincerity, and from henceforward he stood upon his own Guard, giving no other Credit to their Protestations. The Duke of *Burgundy* endeavoured to palliate Matters as well as he could, but finding the Resentments of the *English* ran very high, he pretending extraordinary Occasions deferred, promising a speedy Return; but this also did not little encrease the Suspicion of King *Edward*, that there was Treachery in the Management.

The *French* King having Intelligence of the Disgusts between King *Edward* and the Duke, and his Departure, resolved to mediate a Peace in the Duke's Absence. Whereupon he privately dispatched a Messenger, cloathed with a pompous Banner-roll, in Appearance an Herald, but a person in no Office or Reputation. This counterfeit Herald having received full Instructions from his Master the *French* King, addressed himself to the Lords *Stanley* and *Howard*, and the *English* Herald, who introduced him to the King, to whom he handsomely delivered his Message. The Effect of which was to shew the great Desire the King his Master had for Peace, excusing his Master's succouring the Faction of *Lancaster*, adding he supported the Earl of *Warwick* only to oblige *Burgundy*. The Conclusion was, to desire his Majesty to grant a safe Conduet to Embassadors from his Master, who should come with larger Instructions, and such Proposals as should be for the Honour and Profit of both Kingdoms. This Message being delivered in a submissive Tone, and ever ascribing to the King's Greatness of Spirit, and the Nation's Glory, became a favourable Audience. And many of the Lords who had plentiful Revenues at Home, were as forward as the King to listen to Peace, and avoid unnecessary Dangers Abroad. Neither did the greatest Statesmen dislike a Treaty, considering that all our Wars in France had rather purchased Fame, than Treasure, to the Kingdom, and that when our Soldiers returned Home

The *French* King sends a Message to King *Ed.*

1474. Home, their Scars were greater than their Spoils. Upon these Considerations, King *Edward* granted a full Conduct, and sent an *English* Herald along with the Messenger to receive Assignments from the *French* King.

The Duke  
of Burgundy  
discontented  
at the Peace.

The Duke of *Burgundy* hearing that Peace was mediating between the two Kings, posted to the *English* Camp, attended by sixteen Horsemen; his Looks and Gestures discovered the Height of his Resentments: At his first Approach to King *Edward*, he broke forth in the most passionate and fierce Language, upbraiding King *Edward* with the Courage of the former Kings of *England*, and his own inglorious Sloth. He made a scornful Repetition of the Mirth his Enemies would make at his Return; as if he had come over with a great Army, Merchant-like, to traffick for a little Money; and the Contempt he must needs become to his own People, when they should see the great Conquests their Contributions had brought Home. And when it was intimated to him, that he and the Duke of *Bretagne* were included in the Peace; he disdainfully rejected it, protesting that he had persuaded King *Edward* to this Enterprize, not so much for the Care of his own Safety, as for the Love he bore the *English* Name. And to shew how little Dependency his Fortune held on any other, and how without Mediation of an Ally he was able to make his own Peace; he vowed to conclude none with *France*, until the *English* Army had been gone three Months out of that Kingdom; and having said these Things departed in great Discontent.

A Peace concluded between the Kings of France and England.

The Peace being resolved on between the two Kings of *England* and *France*, the Place appointed for Conference was near *Amiens*, where a Peace was soon concluded; the Substance of the Articles of it were as follows: That the *French* King should immediately pay to King *Edward* fifty thousand Crowns and fifty thousand Crowns a Year, during his Life: That *Charles* the Dauphin should marry the Lady *Elizabeth*, King *Edward*'s eldest Daughter, and they two to have for their Maintenance the whole Dukedom of *Gascony*, or else fifty thousand Crowns to be paid annually for nine Years; and at the End of that Time, the Dauphin and his Lady were to enjoy *Gascony*: That a general Peace should be concluded in

## The Reign of King EDWARD VI.

541

Years, in which the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bre-* 14 Ed. IV.  
were to be included, if they thought fit. And to  
pleat all, it was agreed that the two Kings should  
a personal Interview at *Perpigny*, a Town three  
s from *Amiens*, seated on the River *Somme*, on  
h a strong Bridge was built for that Purpose, and  
ie midst of it a Grate made of cross Bars, the  
res jult wide enough for a Man to thrust in his  
, and the Bridge so broad, that twelve Men might  
in a Rank.

the Day appointed, the two Kings repaired to the  
e in great Splendor. The King of *France* came  
to the Grate, accompanied with twelve Persons of  
hief Nobility, and King *Edward* enter'd the other  
of the Bridge, with twelve of the chief of his  
lemen; and both gracefully approaching the Grate,  
a reverend Bow, and bending of the Knee, the  
Monarchs embraced through the Grate with  
ial Courtelie. King *Lewis* said, *That he never co-*  
*l any Sight so much as this, and that he blessed God,*  
*had brought them together to so glorious an End.*  
r this an elegant Oration was made, and the Ar-  
s of the Peace were read by the Bishop of *Ely*,  
was Chancellor of *England*; and then it was de-  
ded of the two Kings, if they were made by their  
Consents. Which being acknowledged, each of  
laying one Hand on the Missal, and the other on  
Cross, took their solemn Oaths to observe the  
. After this falling into a more familiar Conver-  
n, *Lewis* with a pleasant Air invited King *Edward*  
ke a Journey to *Paris*, telling him, *That if any of the*  
*Ladies there should make him trespass upon his Chasti-*  
*ty the Cardinal of Bourbon would easily afford him*  
*protection.* After some private Discourse, and the Ex-  
ge of some Compliments, both Kings parted with  
Satisfaction. Upon the Day of this Interview,  
e the two Kings met, a white Pigeon happened  
ght upon King *Edward's* Pavilion, and there prun'd  
after a Shower of Rain, the Sun shining com-  
bly; the Soldiers cried out it was the Holy Ghost,  
h descended in that Form, to shew how grateful  
resent Accord was to Heaven. Which Interpre-  
a exceedingly pleased King *Edward*, since the super-  
us Notion tended to advance the Reputation of  
conduct as to that Peace.

At



1474.  
The King of  
France's Li-  
berality to  
the English  
Nobility.

At what Rate King Lewis valued his Amity with England, is easily to be judg'd by his profuse Liberality: For he endeavoured to purchase the Affections of the English Nobility, by Presents and Pensions, buying them up according to the ordinary Course in Markets; as they were worth in King Edward's Estimation, he was their Price raised; even the Duke of Gloucester himself, who disapproved the Peace, returned not Home without a large Present both of Plate and Harfen. One of King Edward's Servants, named Lewis Brantler, being with Comines, and demanded by him in how many Battles King Edward had been present; he answered, *In Nine, and was victorious in all; but in this you have made him lose, for his Return into England without Fighting or Danger, will redound more to his Dishonour, than all his Victories have done to his Honour.* Lewis being informed of this Answer, swore, *That this Man's Mouth must of Necessity be bridled, and immediately sent for him to dine with him, making great offers to engage him in his Service; which he refusing, he gave him a thousand Crowns, with particular Promises, if he would cultivate the Amity between England and France.* King Edward having received the Money agreed by Articles, marched to Calais in Order to pass into England, and being arrived at London, was received with the Acclamations and Triumphs of a Conqueror.

1475.  
King Edward endeavours to get the Earl of Richmond from the Duke of Bretagne.

Things being thus settled as to France, and a Truce being made with the Scots, and all dangerous Opposers at Home having been removed either by the Sword or the Ax; King Edward was pretty secure. The Life of young Henry, Earl of Richmond, now in Bretagne, was the only Thing could give him Trouble, that Earl being the only Person remaining of the House of Lancaster. Therefore he sent Embassadors to the Duke of Bretagne with large Sums and fair Promises, pretending that he would marry his eldest Daughter Elizabeth to the Earl, by which all unhappy Causes of Dissention might be intirely extinguished. This Pretence induced the Duke of Bretagne to deliver up the Earl to the Embassadors, who conducted him to St. Malo's, where while they staid for a fair Wind, he made his Escape, and fled to a Sanctuary; and so the Embassadors were forced to return to King Edward without him.

## The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

343

King Edward now being in a great Measure free 16 Ed. IV.  
in all Apprehensions of Danger, and all Things  
proceeding without Interruption, he addicted himself to  
Pleasures, not only to a profuse Hospitality in Liv-  
ing, but shewed a particular Grandeur to the Eye, by  
satisfying the People with Jufts and Tournaments, and  
like, as well as the softer Entertainments of Wit  
and Ingenuity. His Way of  
Living in  
Time of  
Peace.

And frequently laying aside the State  
of a Prince, he would be very familiar with the  
inferior Part of the People. At *Windsor* he sent  
the Mayor and Aldermen to hunt, and to eat and  
drink, and be merry with him. And the like he did at  
other Time at *Waltham*, where besides a noble and  
familiar Entertainment to themselves, he sent two  
oxen, six Bucks, and a Tun of Wine to their Wives,  
which gained him great good Will among them. He  
took his full Scope of Liberty in conversing with the  
lowlies: For besides the Lady *Lucy*, and some others,  
he kept three Concubines, of whom he used to say,  
the first was the merriest, another the wittiest, and the third  
the boldest Harlot in the Kingdom, she being one whom  
no Man could get out of Church, unless it were to his  
honour. The merriest was *Jane Shore*, Wife to a Citizen  
of *London*, in whom he greatly delighted.

In these Times of Ease and Pleasure, the Duke of  
*Gloucester* began to shew his Ambition and Malice, and  
chiefly against his own Brother the Duke of *Clare- 1477.  
nce*. For *Gloucester*, who studied nothing but his own  
purposes, and cared not by what Violence all Obsta-  
cles of Nature and Friendship were removed, so the  
way were planed to his Ambition, privately per-  
suaded the Duke of *Clarence* boldly to express his Re-  
sentments against King *Edward's* Mismanagement; and  
on the other Hand, he whispered in the King's Ear the  
rage of *Clarence's* Spirit, apt to receive any Discon-  
fidence, and wanting only Power to make use of unlaw-  
ful Remedies. The main Thing that wrought his  
uneasiness, was the Queen's Apprehension, that as there had  
been an Agreement in Parliament, that he should suc-  
ceed to the Crown upon the Failure of King *Edward's*  
Issue, her Children would never succeed their Father.

He was confirmed in this Opinion by the Rumour of  
Prophecy, that G. should be the first Letter of his  
Name, that should succeed King *Edward*; and this  
Name's Name being *George*, it was thought that he

1478. would be the Murtherer of *Edward's* Son, which the Duke of *Glocester* afterwards was. In order to compass his Death, many Things were alledged against him; the most material of which were, that he had caused a Report to be raised, that King *Edward* was illegitimate, and had procured many to swear to him and his Heirs, without reserving due Obedience to his Brother; and that he had pretended to the Crown by Virtue of the Contract he had made with King *Henry VI*. Upon these Accusations he was found guilty by the Parliament, and committed Prisoner to the Tower of *London*, where he was not long after put to Death; the Manner, as it is generally received, was by thrusting his Head into a Butt of *Malmsey* Wine, by which he was suffocated. The Death of this Prince being sudden and extraordinary, begot every where an extraordinary Censure. It was generally condemned, both in Regard of the Manner, it being prodigious to be drowned without Water upon dry Ground; and the Quality of the Person, he being the first Brother to a King in this Country, that ever was attainted. It is related, that King *Edward*, who had consented to it, was afterwards severely afflicted with the Remembrance of it; so that when any sued to him for the Life of a condemned Man, he would cry out: *Oh unfortunate Brother, who had no Man to interceed for him!* This Year the Nation was punished with such a raging Pestilence, that the Wars for fifteen Years before destroyed not so many, as this did in four Months.

He is drown  
ed in a Butt  
of *Malmsey*.

King *Ed-  
ward's* Seve-  
rities.

After the Death of the Duke of *Clarence*, King *Edward* began to shew a quite different Temper and Disposition to what he had done before; for whereas before he had been affable and liberal, he now became austere and covetous. For whereas the Laws of *England* had granted many Things in Favour of the Kings, which the Kings themselves seldom put in Execution, as being too full of Rigor; he by Virtue of those Laws, took such Penalties as they that were rich had incurred, for want of a punctual Observance of them. So that a general Fear possessed the People that his after Government would be both sharp and heavy, considering the first Part of it had not been without Blemish in that Kind.

1481.  
A Treaty  
with *Scot-*

This Year, the King of *Scotland* sent his Embassadors to King *Edward*, to move and treat of a Marriage between

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

345

een the Lady *Cecily*, King *Edward's* second <sup>22 Ed. IV.</sup> daughter, and his eldest Son. The King and Council approving of the Proposal, furnished the King of *Scotland* with certain Sums of Money, upon Condition, that if the intended Marriage should by any Accident be broken off, the Merchants of *Burgh* should be bound for the Repayment of the Money. But the King of *Scotland* afterwards, by the Solicitation of the *French* King, neglected his Promise of Affinity made with King *Edward*, and caused an Army to be raised in Order to invade *England*; and sent a peremptory Message to King *Edward*; that he would not dare to assist his Sister the Dutchess of *Burgh* against King *Lewis*, who was his Ally; and also Menaces of War commanded him to deliver to his Embassadors the Duke of *Albany*, then residing at the *English* Court; and lastly, to make full Satisfaction of all the Damages that had been done upon the Borders of *Scotland*.

King *Edward* being greatly enraged at these perfidious Dealings of the King of *Scots*, raised an Army, <sup>A War commences with the Scots.</sup> armed his Artillery, and fitted out a Navy to be ready early in the Spring, and appointed his Brother *Richard* Duke of *Glocester* his Lieutenant; who with several Lords, and the Duke of *Albany* himself, marched into the North with the Army, consisting of upwards of twenty thousand Men. The first Enterprize that was undertaken was the Siege of *Berwick*, after which he marched to *Burgh*, laying all waste with Fire and Sword. Being arrived there, the Duke sent to King *James*, demanding of him the Performance of his Covenants, concerning the Marriage between his Son Prince *James* and the Lady *Cicely*, threatening Ruin and Devastation, if the Marriage was not consummated. The *Scots* Nobles seeing their imminent Danger, put to Death such wicked Counsellors as had put King *James* on those infamous Measures, ordained the Duke of *Albany* Governor of *Scotland*, and promised to repay the Money received according to Covenants; which being effected, and the Town of *Berwick* surrendered to the *English*, the Duke of *Glocester* returns to *London* in a great deal of Pomp: And by the Way he caused the History of this Action to be divulged with the greatest Circumstance, thereby to insinuate his Reputation into the common People, and to shew how much more nobly

OL. I. Nn he,

1481. he, in this Expedition against Scotland, managed the Peace for the Honour of his Brother King Edward I. in his undertaking against France: His Flatterers giving it out, that it the General had but had Commission ample enough, he would not have returned before he had reduced the whole Kingdom of Scotland to the Obedience of England. And in this Expedition did the Duke of Gloucester lay the Foundation of all his after Achievements in obtaining the Crown; for by the Plunder of Scotland he gained the Affections of Soldiery, and by his Courage and Conduct got Emulation among the Nobility.

1482. As King Edward had been disappointed in the Marriage of his second Daughter to Scotland, so was he so in that of his eldest Daughter to France. For being of too easie Belief, he let himself to be deluded by King Lewis, nor would be persuaded to believe his Infidelity, till the Lord Howard returning from France, told him, that he was pretent, and saw the Lady Margaret of Anjou receiv'd into France in great Pomp and Splendor, and contracted: and espoused to the Dauphin at Ambois. But then the King was so provok'd at the Indignity offer'd to him, and the Falseness of Lewis, that he resolv'd upon a Revenge. The Lords also resent'd the Affront with Indignation, and desir'd that instant Preparations might be made for War; and the Duke of Gloucester was so zealous for it, that he express'd his Desire aloud, *that all his Estate might be spent, and all his Veins emptied in Revenge of this Injury.* All the Court was presently for the Design, and the whole Kingdom with a fierce Appetite desir'd to arm. The King eagerly persued his Determination, and that very Spring resolv'd to begin the War. But he was diverted on the sudden from calling Lewis to an Account for his Crimes, and summon'd by Death to give a true Account of all his own.

The King's Preparation for Death. Concerning the Occasion of his Death, there are various Opinions. Those who favour not the Duke of Gloucester ascribe it to Poison, administred to make Way for his ambitious Designs of mounting the Throne. The French impute it to Grief or Anxiety of Mind at the Indignities offer'd him by the King of France; but the most probable Opinion is, that it was a Surfeit which brought him to his End. Whatsoever the Cause, he finding little Hopes of Recovery, b

## The Reign of King EDWARD IV.

547

Vanity of all his Victories, which he had purchased <sup>23 Ed. IV.</sup> with the Expence of so much Blood. He look'd back on the Beauty of his sensual Pleasures, and now discerned it was only fair on the Outside, inwardly deformed and rotten. Perceiving his Doom inevitable, he began to order his Affairs as well as the Shortness of the time he would permit. The great Affair of the Soul he committed to the Mercy of his Redeemer, and he endeavoured to expiate the Crimes of his past Life by mortification and the Use of the Sacraments then in Practice. Then calling his Lords, which were numerous, who were in Court, to be sent for, he pathetically recommended to them the Care of the young Princes his Sons. The Protection of the King and Kingdom he committed to the Lords nearest in Kindred to his Children, charging them to *Amity and Concord, by which the Nation would flourish in Greatness abroad, and Safety at home; the young King be secur'd from Flattery, and instructed in the best Discipline for Government; and they themselves live in much Honour and Felicity, if united to advance the Commonwealth, and oppose all foreign Danger: whereas Discord would beget civil War, and that endanger the Realm.* Among his Words of Farewel at his Death, he solemnly protested his Repentance for obtaining the Crown with so much Blood, as the Necessity of the Quarrels. Having also desired Forgiveness of all the Injuries he had done to any Persons, he expir'd amidst Tears of those about him in the 42<sup>d</sup> Year of his Age, upon the 9<sup>th</sup> of April, after a Reign of twenty Years, one Month and five Days.

The Manner of his Burial was thus: First the Corps was covered from the Navel to the Knees, and so laid on a Table naked above for twelve Hours, to be view'd by the Nobility and Gentry, and then he was seared. The next Day it was brought to St. Stephen's Chapel, where three Masses were sung over it in the Morning, *Dirige & Commendam* in the Afternoon; and by Night he was watch'd by his Nobles and Servants for three Days; on the ninth he was conveyed to Westminster-Abbey, borne by several Knights and Esquires, covered over by a large black Cloth of Gold, with a Cross Cloth of Silver, and over that a rich Canopy of Cloth of Gold fringed with Gold and black Silk, borne by four Knights, having at the Corners four Banners, borne also by four Knights; the first of the *Trinity*, the second

of our Lady, the third of St. George, and the fourth of St. Edward. The Lord Howard carried the King's Banner, and the Officers of Arms surrounded him. On the Hearse in *Westminster-Abbey*, above the Body of Cloth of Gold, was the Effigies of the King in royal Robes, having a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in one Hand, and a Globe of Silver in the other, with a Cross *Patee*. Then after many Solemnities had been performed, the Corps was laid on a Chariot drawn by six Horses, and so was carried in great Pomp to *Charing-Cross*, where the Chariot was cens'd, and thence to *Eaton*, where it was met by the Procession of *Windsor*. When it came to the Castle-Gate, the Archbishop of York and Bishop of *Winchester* cens'd the Corps, and from thence it was carried to the same Church, and was there buried with all Solemnities befitting so great and victorious a King.

His Person  
and Character.

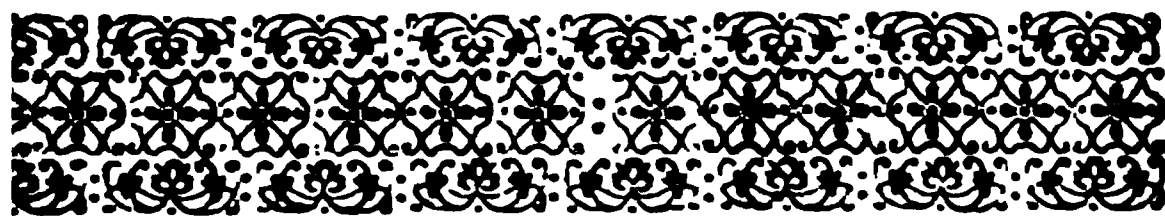
*Comines* relates, that he was the goodliest Gentleman that ever his Eyes beheld, tall of Stature, fair of Complexion, and of a most noble Presence. He had a courageous Heart, a magnanimous Disposition, politic Council, witty in Conversation, and in Adversity undaunted. He was not proud, yet very ambitious, and to gain his Ends, no Man was Master of more insinuating Methods than himself. But among all his shining Qualifications, he could set no Bounds to his Lustre of Ambition, in both of which he was remarkably puffed up. For his two Sons were both deprived of all Things by their unnatural Uncle. As to his Ambition, tho' according to the exact Rules of Lineal Succession, he had the nearest Right to the Crown, yet considering his innumerable Perjuries, Treasons, Bloodsheds, and other Calamities, his and his Father's Actions were less justifiable than those of many real Usurpers. As for his Descent, he proceeded from a very unfortunate Family, he being the only Male of all his House except a Child of *Richard III.* that died a natural Death after it had claimed the Crown. His Grandfather was beheaded at *Southampton*, his Father slain before *Seddall*; of his three Brothers, the Earl of *Rutland* was slain in cold Blood, the Duke of *Clarence* drowned in Butt of *Malinsay*, his two Sons strangled by their Uncle the Duke of *Glocester*, who afterwards lost his Life and Kingdom in Battle. Besides two Sons, the *Howard* left seven Daughters, of which *Elizabeth* the

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

349

met with good Fortune, and was married to *Hen-*  
*VII.*

In this Reign flourished several Persons eminent for  
s and Learning ; as *John Fortescue*, a Judge and  
incellor of *England*, famous for his Knowledge in  
Laws and Constitutions of the Realm ; *Thomas*  
*Stretton*, a Judge of the Common-Pleas, who re-  
d great Part of the Law into Method, which before  
confusedly dispersed ; *Scogan*, a learned Gentleman  
Student at *Oxford*, who for his pleasant Wit and  
ular Conceits, was called to Court ; and *William*  
*Ston*, a Mercer of *London*, who brought Printing into  
*England*, which was first found out in *Germany* by  
*Johann Gutterbergen*, about the Year 1440.



## *The Reign of King EDWARD V.*

**KING** *Edward IV.* left behind him two Sons, *Ed-* Ed. V.  
*ward* Prince of *Wales*, twelve Years and five Months Young Ed-  
*l*, and *Richard* Duke of *York*, about nine Years of Age. ward pro-  
nce *Edward*, when his Father died, was proclaimed claimed  
ing, and was at *Ludlow* in *Shropshire*, where he had resid- King.  
a considerable Time, in Order to awe the *Welsh*. While  
was there, he had many of his Mother's Relations at  
him, and the Lord *Rivers* was appointed his chief  
uncsellor and Director. This placing so many of the  
Queen's Friends about the young Prince was thought  
to be good Policy in her ; but the Duke of *Glocester*  
used it to their Destruction, and upon that Foundati-  
on built all his ambitious Aims of aspiring at the Throne.  
For whomsoever he found either Friends to himself, or  
pleas'd with them, he by various Methods imparted  
Thoughts to them, either by Word, Writing, or  
secret Messages, that it was not to be suffered, that the  
young King should be in the Hands of his Mother's Re-  
lations, sequestered in a Manner from their Company and  
attendance, who were far superior to them both in Birth

The Duke  
of *Glocester*  
aspires at the  
Crown.



and Merits. By

brought over 17 to 1

of Buck 1 d

both of gr roy a

with the Duke of C

King all his Mother's

mies to the Publick.

gained this Point, and

were about the King

to be crown'd, and

Friends, that it would

ambitious Designs,

raise the Appearance

his Emissaries persuad

King came to London

it would give Cause of

veral of the Nobility

Upon this, the C

dismiss their G

the more readily o

himself, and other

the King so reverently,

the King, without any

inconsiderable Train.

He goes to  
meet King  
Edward at  
Northampton.

The Duke of Gloucester having succeeded in this, he went with the Duke of Buckingham and other Lords, resolved to meet the King in his Passage to London; and being come to Northampton, where the King was arriv'd, under Pretence that it was incommodious for so many to lodge in the same Place, they persuaded the King to go twelve Miles farther to Stony Stratford. But the two Dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham still behind, and under Pretence of Honour, kept the Earl of Rivers with them, entertaining him with the usual Tokens of Civility and Respect. Upon his going to his Lodgings, they caused the Keys of the Gates to be brought to them, to secure any from going out, and sent Orders to all their Attendants, who were quartered in the neighbouring Villages, to be ready on Horseback early in the Morning, and secure the Way to Stony Stratford from all Passengers going thither. The Earl of Rivers being under some Apprehensions, resolved to go himself and discover the Bottom of this Design; but the two Dukes knowing what he intended, began in very much

situation, in

ally the Duke

Lord Chamberlain Having

Authority. These two agreed

to remove from about the

Kings, under the Name of For

Duke of Gloucester having

standing that the Lords who

were about the King, would

to be crown'd, attended with

such Numbers of

Friends, that it would be

difficult for him to execute

such a Power as would

raise the Appearance of a

Rebellion; he therefore

Queen, that if the King

came to London with such

a numerous Retinue,

it would give Cause of

Suspicion and Jealousie to

several of the Nobility who

were but lately reconciled

to her Son and Brother.

In Order of the Queen was

cause the Duke of Gloucester

of his Party, had wrote to

with so much Respect, that

the King, without any

suspicion, set forwards with an

inconsiderable Train.

## *The Reign of King EDWARD IV.*

551

der to charge him with endeavouring to keep them Ed. V.

the King and ruin them, and seizing him, committed him into the Custody of some of their Servants. being done, they immediately potted to *Stony Strat-* where they found the King just ready to mount horse, and with the utmost Reverence address'd selves to him. Then coming up to the Lord *Gray*, King's half Brother, they immediately accused him joining with his Brother the Marquiss of *Dorset*, is Uncle the Earl of *Rivers*, to get the Government of the King and Kingdom into their own Hands, sowing Divisions among the Nobility, charging Marquiss with having taken out of the Tower of all the royal Treasure, and with having sent to Sea for dangerous Designs. To which King reply'd, That as to what concerned the Mar-

he was ignorant, because of his Absence; but as Uncle *Rivers*, and his Brother *Richard*, he was they could not be guilty, because they had always in his Company. To this *Buckingham* made An-

*That his Majesty was deceiv'd; that their Designs conceal'd from him; and that they did not deserve excused by so good a Prince.* And then immedi-

arrested the Lord *Richard* and several others in King's Presence, and then the King, instead of going forwards to *London*, was carried back to *Northamp-*

Then the Duke of *Glocester* removing from about King such of his Attendance as he pleas'd, put others of his own Creatures in their Places, at which the poor

King could not refrain from Tears. The next according to his usual Dissimulation, the Duke of

*ter* sent a Dish of Meat from his own Table, to the Earl of *Rivers*, desiring him *to be at Ease, for all*

*be well.* The Earl return'd him Thanks, desir'd a messenger to carry it to his Nephew *Richard*, for

being young, and unaccustomed to Adversity, stood in Need of this Favour. But after all this feign-

courtesy, and being sent from Prison, they were all led to *Pontfract*, and afterwards lost their Heads.

The News of these Transactions being brought to the Queen in the Night, she immediately guess'd at the

The Queen  
Mother  
takes San-  
ctuary.

of *Glocester's* Designs, and then heartily repented advising her Brother to disband his Forces, and apply saw the Danger that she and her Sons were in, and immediately fled with her Children from her

1487 Palace, and took Sanctuary  
*Hastings* having receiv'd the Queen and her Childrens being retir'd into the Sanctuary, sent after Midnight to the Archbishop of York, acquainting him with it, assuring him, *that all would be well.* To which the Archbishop hastily answered, *Be it as it will, it will never be so well as we have seen it;* and immediately rose from his Bed, and calling all his Family to arm themselves, he took the great Seal, and went to the Sanctuary to the Queen. When he came there, he found nothing but Hurry and Confusion, People jostling each other, some carrying in Goods, others going out to fetch, and Sighs and Lamentations every where. The Queen her self was lying on the Ground with her Children in a most disconsolate Manner, whom the Archbishop comforted with such Reasons as Hope could suggest, also acquainting her with the Letter it to him by the Lord Hastings: But the Queen reply'd, *He was the Man that endeavour'd the utter Extirpation of her Blood.* Upon this the Archbishop answered, *That if any other King should be crowned but her eldest Son, they would crown the Duke of York, who was now in her Possession, and deliver'd her the Great Seal of England for her Son's Use, and so departed about Day-light.* But being returned home, and from his Window seeing the Thames cover'd with Boats fill'd with the Duke of Gloucester's Servants, watching if any went by Water to the Sanctuary, and hearing that there were Cabals and Tumults in the City, he considering the Seal could be no Advantage to the Queen, sent for it again.

The Cause of  
 the Commotions in London.

The Tumults and Commotions in the City were occasioned by the Apprehension the People were under that the Proceedings at Northampton were designed to hinder the Coronation of the young King, and more Troubles had likely ensued, had not the Lord Hastings at a publick Assembly assured them, "That the Lords Rivers, Gray, and the rest were imprisoned for certain Conspiracies against the Dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham, as would appear by due Process of Law: That the Fidelity of the Duke of Gloucester was not to be doubted, since he had always been faithful to the King; and that it might prove of dangerous Consequence to suspect it, and not to lay down their Arms readily." These Assurances, the hearing that

King was coming to *London*, attended by his 1 Ed. V. with all due Respect, quieted the greatest Part of the People.

At this Time the Lords, who seem'd as zealous for the young King's Coronation as his Uncle had been, and behaved themselves with so much Reverence and Respect to the King, that he suspected no ill Designs in them, upon their March to *London*. By the Way as was said, the Duke of *Glocester* demeaned himself as a humble Subject; and that he might give a Demonstration to the People of the treacherous Designs of the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Duke's Servants hid in their Carriage the Barrels of Powder which they had privily put in their Carriage to murder them; which although great many did not believe, yet others were so deceived upon by the Duke's Emissaries, that they cried out that it would be a great Service to the Nation to do so. When the King and Dukes drew nigh to *London*, the Mayor and Sheriffs, with all the Aldermen met, and five hundred Commoners on Horse-Purple-Gowns, met them at *Harnsey-Park*, and with great Honour and Reverence conducted him through the City to the Bishop of *London's* Palace near St. Dunstons Church the 4<sup>th</sup> of *May*. In this Cavalcade the Behaviour of the Duke of *Glocester* to the King was very remarkable, for he rode bare-headed before him, and then with a loud Voice said to the People, Behold your Prince and Sovereign; by which Actions he put upon all the Spectators, that they look'd on the Representations of him as the Effect of his Enfeebled Age. At the Bishop's Palace he did the King homage, and invited all the Nobility to do the same; which he put his Loyalty out of Dispute with the People, and by this and such like Methods he got himself to be made Protector to the young King during his Minority.

The Duke of *Glocester* having gained this main Point, resolved to proceed in his Design of stepping into the Throne; but there was another Difficulty behind him he had to get over; for tho' he had got the King's Custody, yet if he were destroy'd, his Brother the Duke of *York* would still succeed; and this requir'd the Exercise of his utmost Policy: For the Queen being suspicious of him, and the young Duke in a Place not

The young King enters *London*.

The Duke of *Glocester* endeavours to get the King's Brother into his Possession.

1483.

not to be violated, he could not come at him, but by Deceit or Sacrilege. Therefore at the next Meeting of the Council, he began to represent the Queen as highly to blame in detaining the Duke of York in Sanctuary, *when the Honour, the Health and Convenience of the King requir'd his Presence and Company with him in his Palace*; declaring, "That the Coronation could not be performed without Scandal, while the Duke of York, who was to be the second in the Solemnity, continued in a Sanctuary, a Shelter for Criminals and Delinquents. Therefore, that in his Opinion some Person should be sent to the Queen, whom she did not mistrust, to persuade her to deliver him up; and that if this did not prevail, the Duke of York by regal Power should be taken out of his Prison, and brought to the King his Brother." After several Debates about the Matter, it was resolved, that the Cardinal Archbishop of York should go to the Queen to persuade her to deliver him up; but if he could not prevail with her so to do, the Duke should be taken out by Force, and brought to them.

The Archbishop of York goes to the Queen.

The Council having come to this Conclusion, they remov'd to the Star-Chamber, there to expect what would be the Issue. The Cardinal went to the Queen, attended with several Lords, telling her, *He was sent by the Protector and Privy Council to let her know how much her detaining the Duke of York in that Place had given Offence to them and others; as if one Brother lived in Danger, and could not be preserved but by the Life of the other. Therefore they desired and expected to have the Duke set at Liberty, and to be with his Brother where they might not only be a Comfort to each other, but be live answerable to his own Condition and Quality.* And after much Discourse and Persuasion, finding the Queen averse to any Compliance, he proceeded to inform her, that she neither ought nor could keep him in Sanctuary, and that to take him thence by Force would be no Violation of it. To all the Cardinal alledged, the Queen gave distinct and rational Answers, and at last very plainly declar'd the Apprehensions she was under from the Protector. Upon this the Cardinal, who had a better Opinion of him than the Queen had, grew warm, and told her, *He was not sent to argue with her, but to demand the Duke; and if she would deliver him to them, he would pawn his Body and Soul for his Safety.*

The

## The Reign of King EDWARD V.

555

The poor Queen was now reduc'd to the greatest Perplexities, considering the Hazards she ran, whether she deliver'd him up to them or not. But supposing the Mischief would be greater in having him taken from her by Force, than parting with him by Choice, she was willing to hope that her Suspicions might be groundless: Therefore taking the young Duke by the Hand, she spoke thus; *My Lord Cardinal, and you my Lords, I am not so opinionated of my self, or so ill advis'd concerning you, as to mistrust either your Wisdom or Fidelity, as I shall prove to you by reposing such a Trust in you, as if either of them be wanting in you, will redound to my inexpressible Grief, the Damage of the whole Realm, and your eternal Shame and Disgrace: For lo! here is my Son, and tho' I doubt not but I could keep him safe in this Sanctuary from all Violence, yet here I resign him into your Hands. I am sensible that I run great Hazards in so doing; for I have some so great Enemies to my Blood, that if they knew where any of it lay in their own Veins, they would presently let it out, and much more in others, and the nearer to me the more zealously. Experience also convinces us all, that the Desires of a Kingdom know no Kindred. The Brother in that Case hath been the Destruction of the Brother, and the Son of his Father; and have we any Reason to think the Uncle would be more tender of his Nephews? I do here deliver him, and his Brother in him, to your keeping, of whom I shall require him again at all Times before God and the World.* Then assuring them of her Confidence in their Abilities and Fidelity, she added, *One thing I conjure you, by the Trust which his Father ever repos'd in you, and for the Confidence I now put in you, that as you think I fear too much, you will be cautious that you fear not too little, because your Credulity here may make an irrecoverable Mistake.* Having thus spoken, she turn'd to the Child, and said to him, *Farewel mine own sweet Son, the Almighty be thy Protector: Let me kiss thee once more before we part, for God knows when we shall kiss again; and then having kiss'd him, she bless'd him, and turned from him and wept, and so went away, leaving the Child with the Lords, weeping also for her Departure.*

The Cardinal having gotten the Duke of York from his Mother, immediately led him to the *Star-Chamber*, where the Protector and Lords of the Council staid in Expectation of him. The Protector receiv'd him with

1 Ed. V.

The Queen the unwillingly delivers the Duke of York

The Duke of York carried to his Brother.

all

1483. all the seeming Kindness imaginable, and taking him in his Arms, kiss'd him, saying, *Now welcome, my Lord, with all my Heart*, and the same Day carried him to the King his Brother at the Bishop of *London's* Palace, near *St. Paul's* Church; from whence with much Pomp and State, they were a few Days after conducted to the Tower, from whence they never departed.

*Buckingham* Tho' the Protector had gained this Point, yet he was engaged with the Protector at a Stand how to proceed; but that the People at present might be amus'd with a Belief of the Reality of his Design to take the Crown. Design to proceed with all convenient Speed to the Coronation of the young King, he appointed the Archbishops, Bishop of *Ely*, Lords *Stanley*, *Hastings*, and others, to sit in Council at *Baynard's* Castle, to order Matters for it. For tho' he intended rather his own Coronation than the young King's, he still wanted the Assistance of some particular Men, and especially the Duke of *Buckingham*. In Order therefore to bring him over to his Designs, he suborn'd certain Persons about the Duke, to represent to him how highly the King was offended with him for imprisoning his Mother's Relations; so that if they should be releas'd, they would bear him a mortal Grudge; and if they were put to Death, he was sure to incur the King's Anger so much, that he could hope for nothing but Misfortunes on all Hands. Having by these Insinuations made him apprehensive of Danger, and predisposed him to lay hold of an Opportunity of securing himself, the Protector invited him to a Conference, at which he desir'd his Assistance, in taking upon him the Crown of *England*, shewing him the Judgment of the Civil Lawyers concerning the Illegitimacy of his Brother's Children; promising that his Son should marry the Duke's Daughter, and that he would give him the Earldom of *Hereford*, with all the Appurtenances; which, tho' his Inheritance, yet had been unjustly kept from him by his Brother; that he would allow him a large Share of the King's Treasure, and so much of the Wardrobe as should furnish his House; and lastly, that he would settle upon him and his Posterity the Office of the High Constable of *England*, which his Ancestors by Descent for many Generations had enjoy'd.

The Duke of *Buckingham* being by these Measures brought over to promote the Protector's Designs, he became so zealous an Actor for him, that he soon brought

many of his Friends into the same Designs with him, <sup>1 Ed. V.</sup> and with the Protector constituted a Council which sat <sup>Two distinct Councils.</sup> at *Crown's Place*, the Protector's Mansion-House, to contrive to settle the Crown on his Head; but this Council met very privately. This Council had not sat long, but the other Council that had sat at *Barnard's Castle*, to order Matters for the young King's Coronation, began to be jealous that there were some bad Designs on Foot, and the Lord *Sturton* openly declar'd his Suspicions; but the Lord *Hastings* assuring them that there was one of his Friends in that Council, that there could nothing be spoke of ill against him, but that it would be brought to his Ears almost as soon as out of their Mouths, they relying upon his Words, and being willing to construe all Things for the best, laid themselves open to Ruin.

The Jealousies of the Council at *Barnard's Castle* <sup>Catesby's Treachery of the Lord Hastings.</sup> soon came to the Knowledge of the Protector and *Buckingham*; who tho' they seem'd to take no Notice of it, yet they came to Resolutions within themselves, either to win them over to their Party, or to secure them from being Enemies; and to this End they shew'd great Favour to the Lord *Hastings*, who had a great Influence over all the rest, and made Use of one *Catesby*, who was a special Confident of the Lord *Hastings*, to propound the Design to him. This *Catesby* coming to the Lord *Hastings*, who had not the least Mistrust of him, after a great deal of other Discourse about the present Circumstances of his Affairs, asks his Opinion about the Protector's Title to the Crown; insinuating, that if it might be lawfully done, it would be much better that an experienc'd Person, and a brave Commander, should rule than a Child. The Lord *Hastings* presuming upon *Catesby's* Fidelity, freely open'd his Mind to him, telling him, *he had rather see the Death and Destruction of the Protector and Duke of Buckingham, than the young King depriv'd of the Crown; and that if he discern'd any Designs that Way in any Persons whatsoever, he would engage his utmost Power against them.* These Words were carried to the Protector presently, who received the Account with much Regret, because he had a great Love for the Lord *Hastings*, who had done him many Kindnesses in his Brother's Days, and therefore engag'd *Catesby* to win him if possible; but *Catesby* hoping, by the Death of *Hastings* and the Protector's Favour,



1483. Favour, to obtain the great Rule and Trust that the Lord *Hastings* had in the Counties of *Leicester* and *Northampton*, represented *Hastings* so irreconcilable to the Protector's Proceedings, that he chang'd his Love into Hatred to him; and he seeing that his Life would be a great Impediment to him in his Designs, resolv'd to take it away; which was agreed upon in the following Manner.

The Protector causes the Lord *Hastings* to be beheaded.

The Protector ordered a great Council to meet at the Tower on the 13<sup>th</sup> of *June*, on Pretence of concluding all Things for the Coronation, which drew on apace, the Pageants being a making Day and Night, and the Viſuals kill'd ready for it. The Lords of this Council met very early in the Morning, and sat close to their Business; the Protector came to them about nine of the Clock, and having very courteously saluted all the Lords, and excus'd his coming so late, sat down and discoursed with them a while about the Business in Hand, and was very pleasant and jocose in his Talk. Then diverting his Discourse, he said to the Bishop of *Ely*, *My Lord, you have very good Strawberries in your Garden at Holbourn, I desire you to let us have a Dish to Dinner.* The Bishop taking it for a Favour, immediately sent a Servant for them. A little after this, the Protector obliging them to proceed in their Councils, requested them to dispense with his Absence a while, and so departed. About an Hour after he returned again, but with such an angry Countenance, knitting his Brows, frowning and biting his Lips, that they were all amazed at so sudden and great an Alteration. He sat silent for some Time: But at Length demanded of them, *What Punishment they deserved who had plotted his Death, who was so near in Blood to the King, and by Office the Protector of the King's Person and Realm?* The Lords of the Council were much startled at this Question, and sat silent. The Lord Chamberlain *Hastings*, who was always very familiar with the Protector, reply'd, *That they ought, without Exception, to be punish'd as Traitors.* To which the rest assenting, the Protector said, *And that hath that Sorceress my Brother's Wife, with others her Accomplices, endeavoured to do:* At which those who favoured the Queen, were much concerned. But the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* was well enough content that the Crime was not laid upon any that he lov'd better, but he was displeased that the Protector had not communicated it to him,

## The Reign of King EDWARD V.


359

, as he had done his Designs to put the Queen's Kind-<sup>1 Ed. v.</sup> to Death (which was by his Advice and Approbation to be done that Day at *Pontfract-Castle*) little thinking his own Execution should be the same Day at *Lon-*

The Protector still went on in his Complaints, *ng, See in what a miserable Manner that Sorcerers and Shore's Wife, with others their Associates, have by their Enchantment and Witchcraft miserably destroy'd my Body; and pulling out his Sleeve, shew'd them his Arm fleshless, and withered, saying, Thus would they by Degrees have destroy'd my whole Body, in a short Time, if they had not been discovered.* The Lords, several of them, knowing the Protector's Arm had never been otherwise, immediately conceiv'd it had some base Design; especially since it was so improbable that the Queen should so intimately associate with *Shore's Wife*, whom she mortally hated; she having been the Concubine on whom her Husband most doated. However the Mention of *Shore's Wife* sensibly touch'd *Lord Hastings*, because he had long lov'd her in the King's Life, and after kept her for his Mistress; therefore he answer'd with some Extenuation, *If they have been thus guilty, they deserve heinous Punishment.* The Protector laying hold of this Answer, cry'd, *What, dost thou answer me with Ifs and Ands, I tell thee they are thus guilty, that I'll make good on thy Body, Traitor.* Having said this, he gave a great Blow, as an appointed Signal, on which a Cry of Treason was heard from within, and the Door being suddenly forc'd open, the Room was immediately fill'd with arm'd Men, and some of them striking at the *Lord Stanley*, had certainly cut his Head in two had he not nimbly shrunk beneath the Table, yet not so timely, but that he receiv'd a very great Wound. The Protector immediately arrested *Lord Hastings* for a Traytor, securing all the rest of the Council there present, and swore by *St. Paul*, that he would not dine before he saw *Hastings's Head* taken off. He petitioned for a fair Trial, but neither that, nor for a longer Preparation for Death did any Thing avail him; but being obliged to take the next Priest he could get, he made a short Confession, Time not being allow'd him to make a longer; and being led to the Tower before the Tower-Chapel, he had his Head cut off upon a Log of Timber.

The Death of this great Lord, as it was sudden and unexpected, so there seemed to have been several ominous Omens of the *Lord Hastings's* Death.

1483.

 nous Prefages of it. For besides a remarkable Dream of the Lord Stanley's, which occasioned his advising him to fly from Danger, a Passage worthy of Note hapned that Morning before he went to Council. For when he came to *Tower-W'harf*, within a Stone's Cast of the Place where his Head was cut off a few Hours after, he met with a Pursevant of his own Name, call'd *Hastings*, who having met him in the same Place when he lay under King *Edward's* Displeasure, thro' the Accusation of the Lord *Rivers*, and was in great Danger of his Life, put him in Mind of his former Danger, and thereupon he fell into a Discourse with him about it, and said, *Ab Hastings! dost thou remember when I once met thee in this Place before with an heavy Heart? Yes, my Lord* (said he) *very well, and Thanks be to God, your Enemies got no Good, and you no Harm by it. You would say so indeed* (said the Lord *Hastings*) *if you knew as much as I do now, or as you will shortly. I was never so afraid of my Life as I was then; but now Matters are well mended with me: Mine Enemies are now in as great Danger as I was then;* (this he, said, knowing that by his and others Advice, the Protector had given Orders for the Execution of the Lord *Rivers*, Lord *Gray*, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan* at *Ponfract*,) *and I never was merrier nor more secure in all my Life.* In this Lord's so sudden and extraordinary Execution the Vengeance of Heaven appears very perspicuous, not only because of the taking off the Heads of *Rivers*, *Gray*, and others, that Day by his Advice, but because he had formerly imbrued his Hands in the innocent Blood of Prince *Edward*, King *Henry's* Son.

The Protec-  
tor vindi-  
cates him-  
self.

The Protector having thus far proceeded to open himself a Way to the Crown, by removing all that stood in Opposition to it; yet knowing that the Lord *Hastings* was in great Esteem among the People, he cast about him what Method to take to justify the Severity of his Proceedings, and appease the Murmurs of the People, and at last fixt upon this Contrivance. Immediately after Dinner he sent for the Mayor and chief Citizens of *London* to the Tower, and having put on old rusty Armour, which lay neglected in the Tower, and commanded the Duke of *Buckingham* to do the same, as if the Greatness of their Surprise and Danger had afforded them no Time to procure better, and thus harnessed, he and the Duke stood to receive them.

soon as they came, having observed to them the  
 cy of Heaven in their having escaped the Treason <sup>1 Ed. v.</sup>  
*lastings* and others, he sent a Herald of Arms into  
 City with a Proclamation in the King's Name, set-  
 forth that the Lord *Hastings* and some others had  
 pired the same Day to have slain the Lord Protec-  
 and Duke of *Buckingham*, and to have taken the  
 ernment of the King and Kingdom into their own  
 ds; alledging many Crimes against the Lord *Hast-*  
 and among the rest, those of *Shore's* Wife. This  
 lamation, which was published within two Hours  
 the Lord *Hastings's* Execution, was so finely in-  
 , so long and so fairly engross'd on Parchment,  
 it was easy to be perceiv'd it was prepar'd before-  
 , which occasion'd various Discourses, some not  
 oting to say, *It was wrote by the Spirit of Prophecy.*  
 he Protector having done this to excuse his Cruelty  
 e Lord *Hastings*, thought himself oblig'd to pro-  
 against *Jane Shore*, whom he had accus'd of the <sup>The Protec-  
 tor accuses  
 Jane Shore,</sup>  
 Treason. He therefore sent Sir *Thomas Howard*  
 er House, and seiz'd on all her Goods to the Value  
 ove three thousand Marks, and committed her Pri-  
 to the Tower; and soon after she being brought  
 Examination before the Lords of the Council,  
 Protector laid to her Charge, *That she had endeav-*  
*ed his Ruin and Destruction several Ways, and par-*  
*ticularly by Witchcraft had decayed his Body, and with*  
*Lord Hastings had contrived to assassinate him.* But  
 aving defended her self very well against these Ac-  
 ions, he fell upon her for Incontinency, which she  
 d not deny; and for that the Protector delivered  
 ver to the Bishop of *London*, who enjoined her  
 Penance after the most publick Manner, in St.  
 's Church, which she accordingly did the next Sun-  
 Morning, after this Manner. Mrs. *Shore* being de-  
 d of all her Ornaments, and clothed with a white  
 , was brought by Way of Procession, with a Cross  
 ed before her, and a Wax Taper in her Hand from  
 Bishop's Palace to St. *Paul's* Church, thro' great  
 ds of Spectators; and there standing before the  
 cher, acknowledged, in a set Form, her open  
 edness, and declared her Repentance for it. She  
 ed her self with so much Modesty and Decency,  
 she never appeared more beautiful than now; for  
 being a handsome Woman, and wanting nothing  
 but

1483. but a little Blush in her Face; the Shame of this Ad supplied that so well, that the Spectators were charmed with her comely Aspect, and blamed the Protector's Severity, knowing that he did it more out of Hatred to her Person than Sin, and Malice than Love to Virtue.

*Jane Shore's Character.*

This remarkable Woman was well born and educated, and married to a substantial Citizen; but being drawn to this Match rather by Interest than Affection, by her Parents Choice, than her own Inclination, King *Edward* had the easier Task to win her, and to cause her to break through all the Obligations of her Duty. She lived many Years in King *Edward's* Court, and tho' he had many Concubines, and some of them of greater Quality, yet he loved her best for her ingenious and witty Behaviour. She demeaned her self with admirable Prudence, was not exalted by the King's Favour, but always used it more to the Benefit of others, than her self. Where the King took Displeasure against any Man, she would mitigate his Anger: For many Offenders she obtained Remissions of Fines and Pardons, and caused many confiscated Estates to be returned for none, or very small Reward. She was more desirous to serve others than enrich her self; rather to do good Turns than receive them. She was affable and obliging, generous and charitable; and in a Word, her Adultery was her only Fault; and tho' indeed she was afterwards, in her old Age, reduc'd to Poverty; yet it was a Reproach to hundreds that she was so, whom she kept from Beggary; who, if they had been grateful to requite her for those Kindnesses in her Want, that she scorn'd to sell in her Prosperity, she might have lived till her Death in a Condition equal to her Birth and Degree.

*The Earl Rivers &c. executed at Pontefract.*

The Protector had given Orders, that on the same Day that the Lord Chamberlain *Hastings* was beheaded at *London*, the Earl of *Rivers*, and Lord *Gray*, the one Brother, the other Son to the Queen, should be beheaded at *Pontefract*, and also *Richard Hase*, and Sir *Thomas Langham*. Their Execution was committed to the Care of Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, a great Favourite of the Protector's. The Manner of their Execution was as barbarous as unjust; great and heavy Accusations were laid against them, but none prov'd. They had not so much as the Formality of a Tryal, but being brought



## The History of ENGLAND.

whole House of York, and the Protector's Mother in particular, they were not to treat of that in direct Terms, but by oblique Insinuations. But as to the second Point, they were to be bare-fac'd without Reserve. *Plant*, having gotten to about the Middle of his Discourse, lost his Voice, and so was forced to leave off. *Shew* preaching at *Paul's Cross*, took for his Text this Sentence out of the *Wisdom of Solomon*, *Bastards Plant shall take no deep Root*; and after having alleg'd many Things to prove his Position, and said many other Things against the Legitimacy of King *Edward's* Family, he began a long Panegyrick upon the Protector, telling the People, *That he was the only Image of his Father for Valour, and all other good Qualifications*. The Project was, that when *Shew* was just entering upon this Encomium, the Protector should appear, as it had been by Chance, so that the People taking the Doctor's Words as coming from the immediate Inspiration of the Holy Ghost, might cry out, *God save King Richard*: But the Protector coming a little too late, the Doctor in a disorderly Manner reassumed his Subject, and carried it on after such a full-throated Way before his Face, that the People were seized with indignation at his Flattery and Treason; so that the Protector being out of Countenance, returned contented to his Palace; and the Preacher having ended his Sermon, went home, hid himself for Shame, and understanding, by his Friends, how much he was condemn'd, died a few Days after for Grief.

The Duke of Buckingham's Oration on the Twelfth following, to the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and Common Council of London, who were summon'd by the Protector, to meet for that End at the Guild Hall of the City; where the Duke mounting the Huttings, and Silence being commanded in the Protector's Name, he made a long and plausible Speech to the Assembly,

This notable Sermon was design'd as a Preparation to the Duke of Buckingham's Oration on the Twelfth following, to the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and Common Council of London, who were summon'd by the Protector, to meet for that End at the Guild Hall of the City; where the Duke mounting the Huttings, and Silence being commanded in the Protector's Name, he made a long and plausible Speech to the Assembly, highly aggravating all the Mismanagements, Calumnies, and Cruelties of King *Edward's* Reign, with Design to bring an Odium upon his Posterity, insisting upon *Shew's* Sermon as a clear Proof of the Illegitimacy of King *Edward's* Children, and that the Protector was the only undoubted Heir to the Crown, telling them, that the Lords of the Realm were well satisfied in that Particular, that they had com-

to a Resolution to have him for their King; and that he was come to acquaint them with it, and to desire their Concurrence." Having ended his Oration, he expected the People would have cried, *God save King Richard*; but all were mute and silent, as if the Auditory were confounded at the Extravagance of the Proposal; at which the Duke being surprised, took the Lord Mayor aside, and asked him, *How comes it the people are so still?* who not knowing what to say, answered, *That he thought he was not well understood.* Upon this the Duke repeated his Speech with a little Variation, but with much Grace and Eloquence, but to better Effect; for the Citizens still continued silent. Then the Mayor told the Duke, *The Citizens had not been accustomed to bear our law: but the Recorder, who was the mouth of the City; and perhaps they would take it better of him.* Thereupon the Recorder was commanded move the same Matter to them, which he did much in his Will, and managed his Speech so well, as he was understood to speak the Duke's Sense, and not his own. The People keeping Silence as before, the Recorder told the Mayor, *they are wonderfully obstinate in their Silence*; then standing up a third Time, he said, *My Friends, we came here to acquaint you with a Thing we needed not to have done, had it not been for the Affection we bear you. The Lords and Commons could have determined the Matter without you, but would gladly have joined with us, which is for your Honour and Profit, if you do not see it, nor consider it: We require you therefore, to give your Answer one Way or another, Whether you are willing, as the Lords are, to have the most excellent Prince, the Lord Protector, to be your King, or no?* The Assembly then began to murmur, and at last some of the Protector's and Duke's Servants, some of the London Apprentices, and the Rabble that crowded into the Hall, cried out, *King Richard, King Richard*, and threw up their Hats in Token of Joy, though the Citizens turning about kept their former Silence. The Duke perceiv'd easily enough who they were that made those Acclamations, but as though it had been general, took hold of it, saying, *'Tis a goodly and joyfull sight, to hear every Man with one Voice agree to it, and nobody say no; since therefore, dear Friends, we see you all as one Man, inclined to have this noble Prince to be our King, we shall report the Matter so effectually*



1483.

to him, that we doubt not but 'twill be much to your Advantage. We therefore require you to attend us to Morrow with your joint Petition to his Grace, as hath been already agreed on between us. Upon this the Assembly broke up, and most departed with a melancholy Countenance, and a more melancholy Heart.

He with the  
Citizens pe-  
tition the  
Protector to  
accept of the  
Crown.

The next Morning the Mayor and Aldermen, and the Chief of the Common Council went to *Baynard's Castle* in *Thames-Street*, where the Protector then resided; and the Duke of *Buckingham*, attended with several Lords and Gentlemen, came thither also. The Duke sent a Message to the Protector, *That an Assembly of honourable Persons was come to wait upon his Grace, about a Matter of great Importance.* The Protector made some Difficulty of coming forth to them, as if he was jealous, whether their Errand was good or not. The Duke of *Buckingham* took this Occasion to intimate to the Lord Mayor, how little the Protector knew of their Design; and therefore sent another Message, in a very submissive Manner, to tell him, that the Business was not to be imparted to any Body but himself. At length his Grace came forth, yet with so much affected Diffidence, that he seem'd unwilling to draw near them, till he knew their Business, appearing in a Gallery above, with a Bishop on each Side of him, as if he was still apprehensive of some evil Design. Then the Duke of *Buckingham* making a very low Reverence, begged two Things of his Grace; the one was, That he would permit him to make a humble Supplication to him; the other, That he would pardon him if it should prove unacceptable to him; for tho' he aim'd at nothing but his Honour, and the good of the Kingdom, yet he feared his Modesty might take it contrary to their intentions. To this the Protector answered, He was assured of their Integrity, that he hoped they would propose nothing that would be displeasing to him. Then *Buckingham*, after he had in a long and pathological Speech, enumerated the Grievances of the Kingdom, told him, That they were come to petition him, that considering the illegitimate Birth of King *Edward's* Children, he would in Commiseration to the Publick, together with the Government, accept of the Crown, *for the Honour of God and Good of the Realm.* The Protector seemed mightily surpris'd, and answered, that tho' he knew the Things he alledged to be true, yet he loved King *Edward*

## The Reign of King EDWARD V.

567

ward and his Children above any Crown whatsoever and therefore could not grant their Request; how-<sup>Ed. v.</sup> he pardoned their Petition, and thanked them for Love, but desired them to be obedient to the Prince whom himself and they lived at that Time, and whom he would serve with his Person and Advice, to the best of his Capacity.

His Answer being given, the Duke of *Buckingham* <sup>He accepts the Crown.</sup> mured a little, then step'd aside as if he had consulted the Noblemen and the Lord Mayor, and then returning again, asked a second Pardon, which being granted, he declared aloud to the Protector, That they had all agreed not to have any of King *Edward's* Race reign over them; that they had gone too far to go back; so that if his Grace would be pleased to take the Crown upon him, they humbly beseeched him to do it; if he did absolutely refuse it, which they should be loath to hear, they must, and would look out for some worthy Person that would accept of their Proposal. The Protector seeming to be affrighted at these Threats, would not comply a little, and after spoke to them as follows. *Since we perceive the whole Realm is bent upon, not to have King Edward's Children to govern them, which we are sorry; and knowing that the Crown can come to no Man so justly as to our self, the right Heir, lawfully begotten of the Body of our most dear Father, Edward, late Duke of York, to which Title is now made your Election, the Nobles and Commons of this Realm, which we of all Titles take to be the most valuable; we are content, and agree favourably to receive your Election and Request, and accordingly take upon us the whole Estate, Prebeminence, and Kingdoms of the two Kingdoms of England and France; the one from this time forward, to be by us and our Heirs governed and defended; the other by God's Assistance and your Valour, subdued, and for ever established in due Obedience to the Realm of England; and we ask God to live no longer than we intend to procure its Advancement.* At the Close of his Speech there was a great Shout of *God save King Edward*. Then the Lords went up to him and kissed his Hand, and the People departed talking diversely of the Matter, every one as he was guided by his Interest, and Humour. It was easy to perceive, that tho the Protector made so strange of the Matter, yet it was acted in concert with him, and that these Stage-like Actions

1483.

were only to amuse the People. Here ended the imaginary Reign of King *Edward* the Fifth, upon the eighteenth Day of *June*, 1483, after a Continuance of only two Months and twelve Days; he being at that Time about twelve Years and seven Months old.



### *The Reign of King RICHARD III.*

*Richard proclaimed King.*

**RICHARD** Duke of *Glocester* was the eighth and youngest Son of *Richard*, Duke of *York*, and was something less than thirty Years of Age when he assumed the Crown. The next Day after he had been proclaimed King, he went to *Westminster*, sat himself down in the Court of *King's Bench*, made a very gracious Speech to the Assembly, promising them halcyon Days; and to begin with a Shew of Clemency, he pronounced Pardon of all Offences committed against him, and ordered one *Essex*, whom he hated, and who had fled to *Sandwich* for Fear of him, to be brought before him, and taking him by the Hand in the Sight of all the People, gave him Assurances of his Love and Affection; which Act, tho' the common People took it for a Token of his forgiving Temper, yet the better advised took it for Artifice and Dissimulation. In his Return to the Palace he saluted all he met, but especially those whom he knew had no Affection for him, thinking by this servile Flattery to insinuate himself into their Minds, and so to establish his Government. From this mock Election that was in *June*, he commenced his Reign, and was crowned in *July* with the same Provision that had been made for the Coronation of his Nephew Prince *Edward*. But to be sure of his Enemies he sent for five thousand Men out of the North, where he was most favoured, to assist at the Assembly. These came up to Town ill clothed, and worse harnessed; their Horses poor, and their Arms rusty, who being mustered in *Finsbury Fields*, became the Subject of the Spectators Derision. The Appearance of these rude Fellows in Arms

gave

gave the People Cause to suspect, that as he was conscious of his Guilt, so he was apprehensive of his Punishment. 1 Ri. III.

On the fourth of *July* he went by Water to the Tower with his Wife *Ann* and his young Son. There he created Lord *Thomas Howard*, Duke of *Norfolk*, and his Son *Thomas Howard*, Earl of *Surrey*, *William*, Lord *Berkley*, Earl of *Nottingham*, and *Francis*, Lord *Lovel*, Viscount *Lovel*, and Lord Chamberlain of his Household, and likewise made seventeen Knights of the *Bath*. The Archbishop of *York*, the Bishop of *Ely*, and Lord *Stanley*, had been Prisoners in the Tower ever since the beheading of the Lord *Hastings*. The Lord *Stanley* was set at Liberty, and made Lord Steward of the Household: But this was more out of Fear than Love, because his Son, the Lord *Strange*, was raising Men in *Lincolnshire*. The Archbishop he set at Liberty, thinking himself out of any Danger from him, being peaceably possess'd of the Kingdom: But Dr. *Morton*, the Bishop of *Ely*, was not set at Liberty, because he having been so faithful a Servant to King *Edward* the Fourth, he was sure he would never consent to his Childrens Deprivation and his Usurpation; but was removed from the Tower, and committed to the Charge of the Duke of *Buckingham*, who undertook to keep him in safe Custody at his Manor of *Brecknock*. He makes new Titles.

This Bishop *Morton* was a Man of no high Birth, but being of great Repute in the University of *Oxford*, *Henry* the Sixth sent for him and made him a Privy Counsellor; and after him King *Edward* retained him in the same Post of Honour, and knowing his Integrity, at his Death made choice of him for one of his Executors. King *Richard* knowing his Loyalty to King *Edward's* Family, having made Trial of it while he was in the Tower, was afraid of him, and would still have kept him Prisoner; but the University of *Oxford* interceding for his Enlargement, and he being unwilling to disoblige that Body, consented to his being removed from thence to the Duke of *Buckingham's* Castle in *Brecknockshire* in *Wales*, where they afterwards conspired King *Richard's* Fall. The Cause of the Bishop of Ely's Removal.

From the Tower the next Day, being the fifth of *July*, King *Richard* rode through the City of *London*, in mighty Pomp, with a splendid Train of Noblemen, consisting King Richard's Coronation.

1483.

consisting of three Dukes, nine Earls, two Viscounts, twenty Barons, and seventy eight Knights, all very richly dressed: But amongst them all the Duke of *Backingham* made the most splendid Appearance, having the Caparisons of his Horse so charg'd with golden Embroidery, that it was born up by Footmen. The Day following, King *Richard*, with *Ann* his Wife, (who was Daughter to the great Earl of *Warwick*, who had made and unmade two preceding Kings, and Widow to Prince *Edward*, Son to *Henry* the Sixth) was crowned at *Westminster*, with more than usual Solemnity: which being ended, he dismissed all the Lords that they might go to their own Houses, giving them a strict Charge to see that their several Counties were well governed, and Justice duly administered: But he kept the Lord *Stanley* with him, till he heard his Son the Lord *Strange* had disbanded the Forces he had raised. He liberally rewarded and dismissed his five thousand Northern Men, who valued themselves so much upon the King's Favour, that they became so insolent and tumultuous, that he was forced to take a Journey into the North to reclaim them.

King *Richard* contrives to make away with his two Nephews.

King *Richard* not accounting himself firm enough settled in the Throne, while his two Nephews were alive, contrived their Destruction in a Progress he made to *Glocester*, and to that End sent *John Green*, a trusty Servant, with Letters to Sir *Robert Brackenbury*, Constable of the Tower, commanding him to put them to Death; but he returned him Answer, *He would sooner die himself than obey that Command*; at which King *Richard* was highly displeased, and said to a Page of his the same Night, *Alas! who is there that a Man can trust? Those that I have brought up myself, those that I thought would be most ready to serve me, even these fail me and will not do what I command them.* The Page replied, *Sir, there lies a Man on a Pallat in the outer Chamber, who I am sure will think nothing too hard you shall require him to do*, meaning one *James Tyrrel*. The King knowing him to be an aspiring Man, thought the Page had betrayed the Man, and immediately went to the Chamber, where he found him and his Brother on a Pallat Bed, to whom he said inerrily, *What! are you a Bed so soon, Gentlemen?* And calling *Tyrrel* to him, told him

him his Mind, and what he would have him to do. 1 Ri. III.  
He readily undertook that execrable Design, and the next Day the King sent him with a Letter to Sir *Robert Brackenbury*, requiring him to deliver *Tyrrel* the Keys of the Tower, for one Night, that he might accomplish the King's Pleasure in certain Things he had commanded him about; and Sir *Robert* obeyed the Orders.

The two innocent young Princes were more strictly kept, after their Uncle had quitted the Title of Protector, and took upon him that of King, than they had been before; for they had all their Servants taken from them, and others whom they knew not, appointed to attend them, and were debarred Visits. *Edward*, the eldest, when the News was brought to him, that his Uncle was crowned, sighed and said, *Ah! would my Uncle let me have my Life, he might take my Kingdom.*

The Person, who told him so, comforted him as well as he could; but soon after this they were shut up close, and one Servant only allowed to attend them. Then the young King was sensible what would be his Fate, and gave himself over to melancholy Apprehensions, and never put off his Cloaths after this Time, till the Arrival of this fatal Night. *Tyrrel* contrived to have them murdered in the Night, and appointed one *Miles Forest*, a noted Ruffian, and *John Dighton*, his Groom, a lusty Fellow, to see the Execution done.

These Persons entred the young Princes Chamber at Midnight, and finding them fast asleep, wraped them up in the Bed-Cloaths, stop'd their Mouths with the Bolster and Pillows, and so stifled them; and when they perceived they were dead, they laid their Bodies out naked upon the Bed, and fetched *Tyrrel* to see them; who having buried them under a Heap of Stones, near the Bottom of the Stairs, he took Horse and rode immediately to King *Richard* to acquaint him that the Business was dispatched; at which he was so highly pleased, that it is said he conferred the Honour of Knighthood on him, tho' he seemed not to approve of their being buried in so mean a Manner: Upon which Sir *Robert Brackenbury's* Chaplain took up their Bodies, and buried them privately in a Place, that by his dying soon after, was never known till *Anno 1674*, in the Reign of King *Charles* the Second.

They are  
murdered in  
the Tower.

1483.  
God's Ven-  
geance upon  
the Mur-  
derers.

It was not long, before both the Contriver and Actor of this horrible Villainy met with Rewards suitable to their Deserts; for King *Richard* himself could never be at Rest, his Guilt haunting him like a Spectre; his Countenance was wild, his Eyes distracted and gaily; he was afraid of his own Shadow; he wore a Coat of Mail under his Cloaths; his Limbs trembled, and his Hand was always upon his Dagger ready to strike; his Sleep was ever disturbed with frightful Dreams, which often caused him to jump out of his Bed and run about his Chamber; and at last he was slain in the Battle at *Bosworth*, and his Body ignominiously treated. Sir *James Tyrrel* was beheaded for Treason on *Tower hill*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the Seventh, having first confessed this Murder. *Miles Forest* dyed miserably, having almost all his Members rotted away by Piece Meal, and *Dighton* having liv'd sometime at *Calais* in a wretched Condition, died in great Ignominy, being hated by all Men.

1484.  
King *Richard* crown-  
ed a second  
Time at  
*Tork*.

King *Richard* having procured the young Princes to be dispatched out of the Way, that he might render his Crown more secure, caused himself to be crowned a second Time at *Tork*, and invested his Son *Edward* in the Principality of *Wales*, and procured a Parliament who adjudg'd the Marriage of his Brother *Edward* the Fourth with the Lady *Gray* to be unlawful, by Reason of a Prior Contract, and declared their Children to be illegitimate and incapable of the Crown. But he did not long enjoy the Fruits of this bloody Policy; for he soon found himself disappointed, first by the untimely Death of his Son, and then by the Revolt of the chief Instrument of his Advancement, and principal Supporter the Duke of *Buckingham*. The Reason of his Discontent is said to be an Agreement between the King and Duke, that the latter should have all the Lands belonging to the Duke of *Hereford*, to which he pretended to have a Title by his Descent from the House of *Lancaster*: But these Lands having fallen from the House of *Lancaster*, and being annexed to the Crown, King *Richard* was afraid that if he were possessed of them, they would make him too great, and therefore when he demanded them, he rejected his Demands with Indignation and Threats; which the Duke so highly resented, that he feign'd himself sick, that he

The Duke of  
*Buckingham*  
discontent-  
ed.

might not attend at the Coronation; upon which King *Richard* sent him Word, *that if he would not come, he would cause him to be brought thither.* Upon which he did attend the Coronation, and in that magnificent Manner before recited; but with such Discontent, that he could not behold the Crown on *Richard's* Head, but turn'd his Face away.

This Breach soon grew wider; for having retir'd himself to his Castle at *Brecknock* in *Wales*, he convers'd much with *Dr. Morton* the Bishop of *Ely*, whom he had there in keeping, and there compleated his Resolutions of advancing the Earl of *Richmond* to the Throne. The Bishop having several Conferences with the Duke, found his Affections much alienated from King *Richard*, and therefore took the Freedom "to inveigh  
" against his numerous Crimes and Enormities; and at  
" last press'd the Duke, as being of the House of *Lancaster*, to take upon him the Title of King, and assume the Crown of *England*." The Duke on the other Hand, told him, "he had indeed an Intention so  
" to have done, but upon Re-consideration, he found that  
" the Earl of *Richmond* was the nearest Heir of the House  
" of *Lancaster*, who if he married the Lady *Elizabeth*,  
" eldest Daughter to King *Edward IV.* and the nearest  
" Heir of the House of *York*, he might both set aside  
" King *Richard*, and put a final Period to all the Troubles and Calamities of the Nation." This was extremely pleasing to the Bishop of *Ely*, who immediately fell into Consultation with the Duke how to bring this Matter about. And it was resolved between them immediately to treat with the Countess of *Richmond* the Earl's Mother, for he himself was at that Time in *Bretagne*. And accordingly one *Reginald Bray*, a Man well vers'd in negotiating great Affairs, was sent for to *Brecknock*, and dispatched with Instructions to the Countess his Mistress, which were to the Purpose following, "That considering the Quiet of the Kingdom could  
" not be effected, but by advancing the Earl of *Richmond* to the Crown, and uniting the two Houses of  
" *Lancaster* and *York* by Marriage; the Countess of  
" *Richmond* should treat of that Matter with Queen *Elizabeth*, and having obtain'd that her eldest Daughter  
" should marry the Earl of *Richmond*, she should send  
" to her Son into *Bretagne*, who, if he would promise  
" to

2 Ri. III.  
His Designs  
against King  
*Richard*.



" to marry her whenever he should be crown'd, and would engage to make him King.

*Bray* being dispatched with this Message, the *Bishop* desired to depart beyond Sea to manage the Affair. The Duke was very unwilling to part with so wise a Counsellor, but the *Bishop* being eagerly bent upon it had not Patience to wait while the Duke raised Forces, as he had promised, to send along with him to guard him in his Journey, but stole away in Disguise and got over into *Flanders*, where he was more serviceable in the Affair, than he could have been in *England*. However his Departure was of fatal Consequence to the Duke; for wanting his Advice, and meeting with unexpected Accidents, it proved his Ruin.

The Plot  
carried on  
between the  
Countess of  
*Richmond*,  
and Queen  
*Elizabeth*.

In the mean Time, *Reginald Bray* returned to his Mistress the Countess of *Richmond*, and informed her of what had been concerted betwixt the Duke and the *Bishop*, who immediately approv'd of the Design, but the Queen being still in Sanctuary, she thought it not proper to go to her in Person, lest it should give Umbrage to King *Richard*, and therefore sent her Physician, one *Lewis*, a learned *Welshman*, who went to her under the specious Pretence of visiting her, upon Account of her Health. He having gained Access, and opened the Matter, the Queen readily embraced the Offer, and promised to use her utmost Endeavours to bring about that Design. *Lewis* having acquainted the Countess, his Mistress with the Queen's Resolutions, she immediately proceeded in the Affair with all the Dispatch imaginable; and Doctor *Lewis* went frequently to and fro, as a Messenger between the Queen and the Countess, till Matters were fully concluded between them. While these Things were transacting, *Bray* was appointed to engage as many Persons of Quality as he could in the Earl's Interest, and the Queen on her side made the Earl many Friends; and *Thomas Ramsey* was sent to the Earl to give him notice to prepare for his Return to *England*, and *Hugh Conway* soon after him, the one being to take his Way through *Cornwall* by *Plymouth*, and the other through *Kent*; that if one should unfortunately miscarry, the other should effect the Business; but they were both so successful that they arrived in *Bretagne*, not many Hours the one after the

er. Their Message to the Earl was, "That he was <sup>2 Ri. III.</sup> sent for as King nominated by the great Men, and desired by all; that the Queen and Duke of *Buckingham* had agreed to his Marriage with the Lady *Elizabeth*, and that he should come over with the utmost Expedition, and land in *Wales*, where he should find Friends and Assistance according to his Desire."

These Messengers communicating their Message to the Earl of *Richmond*, he received it very joyfully, and imparted the Secret to the Duke of *Bretagne*; who, notwithstanding King *Richard's* Threats and Promises, and given him his Liberty, and now promised to assist him with Money and Troops for his intended Expedition. The Earl having received such Encouragement, sent the Messengers back to *England*, to satisfy the Queen and Countess of his Readiness to comply with the terms proposed, and of the Duke of *Bretagne's* promising to lend him both Men and Money. The Earl's adherents being informed of this, took Courage, and began their Preparations for his Reception: While others privately solicited the People to prepare themselves for an Insurrection; and the Bishop of *Ely* wrote from *Landers*, to such as he knew hated King *Richard*, and his Authority very much promoted the Business.

Tho' this Design was carried on with great Secrecy, it could not be long conceal'd from the Jealousies of the King, who having placed his Spies in all Parts, and such Accounts from them, that he did not doubt that there was a Plot carrying on to dethrone him, and to set up the Earl of *Richmond*, and therefore immediately betook himself to Arms. And concluding the Duke of *Buckingham* to be the prime Mover, he first sent a Messenger to him with Letters full of Courtesy and large Promises, inviting him to come to *London*; but the Duke pretending Indisposition, excused himself. The King enraged to find his Artifices unsuccessful, sent him a Letter commanding him on his Allegiance to come to him. The Duke answered roughly, *That he would not expose himself to his mortal Enemy, whom he neither lov'd, nor would serve.* Thus without any farther Diffimulation, both the King and Duke prepare for War; at the Rumour of which, the Marquis of *Dorset*, Son to the Queen Dowager, who

1484.

was then in *Yorkshire*, quitted his Sanctuary, and immediately set about raising Forces in that Country. Sir *Edward Courtney*, and his Brother the Bishop of *Exeter*, did the same in *Devonshire* and *Cornwal*, and Sir *Richard Guilford*, and many others, did the same in *Kent*. The King hearing of these Insurrections, mustering all his Forces, marched against the Duke of *Buckingham* toward *Salisbury*, while the latter with an Army of *Welshmen* advanced towards *Gloucester*, intending to pass the *Severn* there, and thence to proceed into the *West* to join the *Courtneys*, which if he could have effected, King *Richard's* Reign, would not in Probability, have been so long by a Year. But it happened that the River *Severn* was so swoln by great and continual Rains for ten Days together, that it overflowed all the neighbouring Country, carrying away Men, Women, and Children in their Beds. These Floods, as they hindered the Duke's passing the *Severn* to his Friends, so it hindered their coming to him. This Flood continuing, the Duke's Soldiers almost drowned with Rain, and half starved for Want of Provisions, deserted by Degrees, till at last he had none left about him, but his domestick Servants. Nor could Entreaties, or Threats, keep them together; so he was forced to fly with the rest, and retired near *Shrewsbury*, to the House of a Servant of his, *Humphry Bamfister*, who being exceedingly obliged to him upon all Accounts, he depended upon remaining there in Safety, till he could either gather new Forces, or retire into *Bretagne* to the Earl of *Richmond*.

The Duke of  
*Buckingham*  
taken and  
beheaded.

Upon the News of the disbanding of the Duke's Army, those in *Kent*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwal*, laid down their Arms, and fled into Sanctuaries, some beyond Seas, and most of the chief of them to the Earl of *Richmond* in *Bretagne*. King *Richard* sent to all the Ports, and ordered all Passengers to be stop'd, putting out a Proclamation, offering the Reward of a Thousand Pounds for the apprehending the Duke of *Buckingham*: And besides this he made extraordinary Preparations at Sea; being assured that the Earl of *Richmond* was to be assisted both with Men and Money from the Duke of *Bretagne*, he sent many Ships to the Coast, either to fight him, or hinder him from landing in *England*. *Bamfister* having heard of the Proclamation, gave notice to the Sheriff of *Shropshire*, who coming to him

's House, found the Duke in the Habit of a Day-labourer digging in the Garden, and apprehending him sent him to King *Richard*, who was at that Time at *Shrewsbury*. He denied not the Conspiracy, and earnestly desired to be admitted into the King's Presence, as some say with an Intention to beg Mercy, as others, to have killed the King with a Dagger wore under his Cloaths. But *Richard* would not admit him, but ordered him to be beheaded in the Market-Place, as were also many others with him. *Bani-* demanded the thousand Pounds promised in the proclamation, but *Richard* refused to pay him, saying, *that would betray so good a Master, would be false to other*. And he and his whole Family were decapitated by Judgments from Heaven, as *Sir Thomas* observed.

During these Transactions at Home, the Earl of *Richmond* not hearing of the Duke of *Buckingham's* fortune, being assisted by the Duke of *Bretagne*, sailed with a Fleet of forty Ships, and five thousand Men for *England*. They had not been long at Sea before they met with a Storm that scattered their Fleet; the Ship which carried the Earl was driven on the Welsh Coast, to the Mouth of the Haven of *Pool Dorsetshire*. Here he cast Anchor, expecting the arrival of his other Ships, and finding the Shoar all covered over with Men, he sent a Boat on Shoar, to discover whether they were his Friends or not. Before he came within Call, those on Shoar said, they were ready to conduct them to the Duke of *Buckingham*, who with a great Army, not far distant, expecting the landing of the Earl of *Richmond*, who might easily win King *Richard*, he being deserted by most of his adherents. The Earl suspecting the Deceit, and perceiving he was alone, the rest of his Fleet not appearing, he weighed Anchor and returned to *France*, and landed in *Normandy*, where he refreshed his Men two or three Days; and then sent a Gentleman to *Charles*, the French King, desiring Passports through his Territories into *Bretagne*, which he readily granted, and also gave him a considerable Sum of Money. When he arrived in *Bretagne*, he heard of the ill Success of Affairs in *England*, and of the Duke of *Buckingham's* Death, and found the Marquess of *Dorset*, and many others of his Companions, which very much dejected

<sup>2</sup> Ri. III.

The Earl of  
*Richmond's*  
Fleet dispersed

1484. dejected him; yet was very glad at their safe Arrival, promising himself some Advantage by their Advice and Assistance. This Disappointment did not so discourage them, but that they resolved to proceed in their Design, and to make the Earl King, upon Condition that he married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Edward IV.* Which he having sworn in the Cathedral Church of *Rennes* to perform, the Marquess of *Dorset*, and all the rest, did Homage to the Earl, as their actual King. The Earl acquainted the Duke of *Bretagne* with these Proceedings, desiring another Fleet with the Assistance of Men and Money, which the Duke generously granted him.

In the mean Time King *Richard* proceeded with great Severity against the Friends of the Earl of *Richmond*. He caused the High Sheriff of *Wiltshire* to be put to Death for writing this Rhime,

*The Cat, the Rat, and Lovel the Dog,  
Do govern England under a Hog.*

Alluding to *Catesby*, *Ratcliff*, and the Lord *Lovel*, who gave the Dog for his Arms, as *Richard* did the Hog for his: And many Persons he caused to be put to Death on bare Suspicion. He called a Parliament, in which he procured the Earl of *Richmond* to be attainted, and those that fled to him were declared Enemies to the Kingdom, and their Estates to be confiscated. And tho' these Confiscations amounted to a very great Sum, yet they were not sufficient to satisfy the voracious Avarice and Extravagancies of him, and his Creatures, but to supply the Deficiency, he laid insufferable Taxes on the People. Then to keep himself from Foreign Disturbances, he made a Truce with the King of *Scotland* for three Years, and that he might have a double Tie upon the *Scots*, he concluded a Marriage between the Earl of *Rothsay*, Heir to the Crown of *Scotland*, and his Niece *Anna* Daughter to the Earl of *Suffolk*. But all these Precautions could not free his distracted Mind from those Furies that Guilt had possessed his Conscience with; his heinous Crimes, the People's Hatred, and the Earl of *Richmond*, would not suffer him to enjoy an Hour's Rest. Therefore he made another Attempt to get the Earl into his Possession, sending his Embassadors with large Sums of Money and Presents to the Duke of *Bretagne*, and offering him *Richmond* for

The Earl of  
*Richmond*  
and his Ad-  
herents de-  
clared pub-  
lick Enemies  
in Parlia-  
ment.

d all the Earl's Revenues, and all the Estates of them  
it fled to him, upon condition he would deliver them  
to him. But his Embassadors coming, when he was  
under a delirious Fit, could not have Access to him;  
therefore they addressed themselves to *Peter Landois*, to  
whom the Management of all the Duke's Affairs were  
committed. *Landois* gave Ear to their Proposals, but  
could have *Richmondshire* for himself; upon which  
messengers were several Times dispatched into Eng-  
land, which Delays proved the Earl of *Richmond's* Se-  
curity. For the Bishop of *Ely*, who had Intelligence  
King *Richard's* and the Duke of *Bretagne's* Courts,  
understood what Designs were forming against Earl  
*Henry*, and sent him Notice of it, advising him to fly with  
all Speed, or he would fall into the Enemy's Hands.

The Earl was at *Viennes*, the Duke of *Bretagne's* Court, when he received this Advice, upon which hav-  
ing obtained a safe Conduct from the *French* King, he  
went with a few Followers out of *Bretagne* into *An-*  
*nois*, in the *French* King's Dominions. *Landois* missing  
him, sent Couriers into all Parts of the Dutchy in  
search after him, and he was scarce got into the *French*  
territories, when one of the Parties sent out after him  
came within an Hour's riding of him. The *English*  
refugees who remained in *Bretagne*, when they heard  
of the Earl's Escape, and the Causes of it, expected all  
to be delivered up to the Fury of King *Richard*; and  
had not the Duke of *Bretagne* recovered, and took on  
him the Administration of Affairs, *Landois* would have  
seized them, and delivered them up to King *Richard's*  
ambassadors. The Duke enquiring into the Causes of  
the Earl of *Richmond's* Flight into *France*, was highly  
displeased with *Landois*, and sent for Sir *Richard Wood-*  
*ville*, and Captain *Poynings*, to whom he excused the  
treachery of his Minister, disowning the Knowledge  
of it, and gave them a considerable Sum of Money, to  
conduct them and all the *Englishmen* who were at *Vi-*  
*ennes*, through *Bretagne* into *France*, to their Master the  
Earl of *Richmond*. For which generous Act, the Earl  
sent him Thanks by a Messenger on Purpose, declar-  
ing, *That he could never be at rest, until Fortune had*  
*afforded him Means in some Sort, to requite his infinite*  
*Obligations, by whose Favour only he now lived.* The  
King of *France* was then at *Langres*, where the Earl  
being arrived, informed him of the Reason of his

i. III.  
~~~~~

The Earl of
Richmond
in great
Danger.

His way to
 attended
 While the
 gotten, and
 of Oxford
 prisoned
 Fourth,
 not only ob
 ed upon Sir
 and Sir *John Fortescue*,
 Commands, and go
 duct of the Earl
 having left his Lady
Hammes, had so cor
 the Garrison, that in
 themselves, until
Richard. In the
 Party grew every
 fled from *England*,
 Parts, either return
 Scholars in the Un
 did Homage to him;
Richard Fox, a secular
 who was afterwards
 the Earl's Numbers
 rest in *England* was

King Ri-
chard's pro-
ceedings.

King *Richard*, who, by his Spies, had a full Account of all these Proceedings, was not wanting to himself, and understanding the Earl's Flight out of *Britayne*, it very much perplexed him. And tho' he saw Heaven and Earth conspiring against him, yet he thought by his own Subtlety to make his Party good against both: He knew that the Hopes of his Enemies were founded on the Earl's Promise to marry the Princess *Elizabeth*, which he resolved by some Means or other to prevent, and to that End, he did his utmost to ingratiate himself with her Mother Queen *Elizabeth*. And resolving now upon three Things, Deceit, Murther, and incest, he chose Persons fit for his Purpose, who in the most obliging Manner made plausible Excuses to Queen *Elizabeth*, for all the Villanies he had acted towards her and hers, pretending, "Thy Majesty
" was sensibly afflicted for his dear Nephew, that they

The Reign of King RICHARD III.

581

should make themselves voluntary Prisoners, and mistrust the Affection of an Uncle, who like a Father thought of nothing but their Happiness: That his ardent Desire was to treat them according to their Birth, to have them to Court, and provide for them worthy Husbands; and whenever the Death of his Wife should happen, (which must of Necessity be in a short Time) his Resolution was to make the Princess *Elizabeth* his Queen, and would likewise prefer her Son the Marquess of *Dorset* to the most honourable and profitable Places in the Nation, if he would quit the Earl of *Richmond's* Interest, and return into *England*." These and many other fair promises so won upon the Queen, that forgetting the many Affronts that he had cast upon her Husband, on her own Honour, and the Legitimacy of her Children, and even the Murther of her two Sons, and Oath that she had made to the Countess of *Richmond*, concerning the Marriage of her Daughter to the Earl, she complied with him, and promised to bring over her Son the Marquess of *Dorset*, and all the late King's Friends, from the Party of the Earl of *Richmond*. And being thus reconciled to the King, she and her Daughters removed out of the Sanctuary, and she delivered up the young Princesses, her Daughters, into his Hands, who were conveyed to Court with extraordinary Solemnity: Whom as soon as King *Richard* had gotten into his Custody, he resolved to order the Matter so, that he might take the eldest of them to be his Wife; which was a sure Way of defeating the Earl of *Richmond's* Designs. Queen *Elizabeth* was so charm'd by these false Promises, that she wrote to the Marquess of *Dorset*, to leave the Earl of *Richmond*, and hasten into *England*: Informing him, that all past Injuries were forgotten, and were to be made up by Honours and preferments; and that King *Richard* desired nothing more than to give full Satisfaction.

King *Richard* having succeeded in his first Design, which was Deceit, proceeded to the second, which was the Murther of his Queen, which if it were not effected, his Incest with his Niece could not be committed. In order to effect this, he began to shew an affection to his Wife's Company and Embraces. He complained to several Lords of the Council of her unkindness; especially to the Archbishop of *York*, whom

2 Ri. III.

He prevails upon the Queen Dowager.

King Richard's Queen dies.

1484.

he had lately released out of Prison; he pretended to discover to him some private Defects in the Queen, which rendred her Person disagreeable to him, hoping the Bishop would tell her of it, and she being a Woman of a meek Temper, he thought would take it so much to Heart, that she would not live long after it. This Method he hit upon, unknown to lesser Sinners, considering that to put her to a violent Death, would too much alienate the People's Affections; and that Grief, and Melancholy, and Fear, might jointly produce that Effect with the Appearances of Nature, which neither Sword nor Poison could do without Scandal. The Bishop of York perceived plain enough by the King's Words, that he was weary of his Wife, and wanted another; and he knew him so well, that he could not imagine he would scruple to add one Murder more, to the many bloody Cruelties he had been guilty of, to satisfy his Lust and Ambition. Which made him say to some of his Friends, *The Queen's Days are but few.* To prepare a Way for her Death, he caused a Report to be spread among the People that she was dead; which he did, that whenever her Death should happen, it might appear less surprizing, and that the Rumour coming to her Ears, might alarm her with Fear of her sudden Fate, and those Fears throw her into a Disease that might carry her off. The Queen so soon heard the Report, but she believed it came originally from her Husband; and being of a soft and tender Disposition, was extremely dispirited; and running to him full of Sorrow, demanded of him, *What she had done to deserve Death?* He answered her with fair Words and false Smiles, bidding her be of good Cheer, for to his Knowledge she had no other Cause. Upon this she repaired to her Lodgings, but whether her Grief, as he designed it should, struck to to her Heart, that it broke with the mortal Wound, or whether her End, as it was generally suspected, was hastened with Poison, she died in a few Days afterwards. He affected to shew an extraordinary Sorrow at her Death, and was at the Charge of a pompous Funeral for her.

His Per-
juries
increase.

But notwithstanding all his pretended Mourning, before she was well cold in her Grave, he made his Addresses to the Princess *Elizabeth*, who had his Love in Abhorrence; and not only she, but the whole Kingdom appeared averse to so unnatural a Marriage; and

The Reign of King RICHARD III.

583

He was so interrupted and confounded with the publick Affairs, that though he had succeeded in his two first attempts of Hypocrisy and Murther, he could never accomplish what he aimed at by them which was the incestuous Marriage with his Niece *Elizabeth*. He found many of the Nobility pass'd daily over to *France*, and that the common People everywhere shewed an Affection to the Earl of *Richmond*, while himself was so nauseous to them, that they were ready to spue him out. He grew most jealous of *Thomas Lord Stanley*, so that when he desired Leave to returne to his Country Seat, under Pretence of ordering some of his domestick Affairs, he would not give him leave without he left his eldest Son *George* with him, as an Hostage for his Father's Loyalty. Being informed of *Sir James Blunt's* Revolt, and of the Earl of *Oxford's* Escape from *Hamme's* Castle, he ordered the Garrison of *Calais* to besiege it. The Earl of *Oxford* and *Sir James Blunt* immediately hastened to the Relief of ; but before they could arrive the Garrison being reduced to Extremity, was obliged to surrender, but upon good Conditions, to march out with Bag and baggage, which they did, and joined the Earl, who led them to *Paris*, where they were entertained by the Earl of *Richmond*. The Reduction of *Hamme's*, and the small Hopes of Assistance which the Earl of *Richmond* had from the *French* Court, made King *Richard* secure, that he recalled the Squadron of Men of War, that he had ordered to cruise in the Chanel, to prevent the Earl's making a Descent on *England*; judging that the Nobility inhabiting the maritime Parts, especially those of *Wales*, were sufficient to oppose any descent that the Enemy could make.

In the mean Time, the Earl of *Richmond* continued his Negotiations in the Court of *France* for Assistance, it had met with Delays and Impediments; so that King *Richard* flattered himself, he would not be able to compass his Designs at all, and began to think himself secure. The Marquis of *Dorset*, fearing the Earl would not succeed in his Enterprize, gave Way to his Mother's Persuasions, and *Richard's* flattering Promises, and left the Earl, stealing away from *Paris* by Night; but as soon as the Earl had notice of his Flight, he applied to the *French* Court for Leave to apprehend him, being afraid if he got to *England*, he would discover all

The Marquis of *Dorset* leaves the Earl.

1485. **His Designs.** Having ob-
 overtaken in Cl, and by Arguments and fair
 Promises prevailed with return. By this the Ear
 began to be in issue, that if he delayed his Expe-
 dition into a, nger, more of his Friends
 might grow cool in un- zeal for him, and judged it
 necessary to ith a few, which he could
 not with a nestly solicited the French
 Court for Arms, small a Supply of Men and
 Money, that met in Honour refuse him
 for which he requests of Dorset, and Sir
 John Bourchier as Host, and leaving Paris went
 to Rouen, where Forces rendezvous'd, waiting for the
 Ships from, were to carry them to Eng-
 land. When ne: r re, he was informed of the
 Death of King a, seen, and of his Design to
 marry the Princ e, who had been promised
 to him. This is ying News to him, judging
 that if his Al ce to House of York was by that
 Means broken, his r ids would all fall off from
 him. His Follo: r likewise were extremely discour-
 aged, thinking it a great Rashness to undertake so dan-
 gerous an Enterprize with a handful of Men; but hav-
 ing received Advice, that Sir Rice ap Thomas, and Cap-
 tain Savage, two Men of great Account in Wales,
 would declare for him, and that Reginald Bray had
 gotten large Sums of Money to pay his Soldiers, he
 took shipping the 15th of August with a few Vessels,
 and two thousand Soldiers, and after a Passage of
 seven Days, landed at Milford Haven in Wales; from
 whence he marched the next Day to Haverford West,
 where he was received with much Joy by the Inhabit-
 ants.


The Earl
 lands in
 Wales.

The Earl's
 Progress.

Here the Earl met with another Discouragement, be-
 ing inform'd that Thomas and Savage had declared for
 King Richard, but this News proved false; but on the
 other hand, was as much encouraged, hearing that the
 People of Pembrokeshire had joined with his Uncle the
 Earl of Pembroke, and therefore marched on to Car-
 digan, his Army increas'ing every Hour. Here again
 he was alarm'd with a Report that Sir Walter Herbert
 was at Caermarthen with a Design to oppose him; but
 his Scouts informing him that the Country was open,
 and free for his March, and no Enemy near, he
 proceeded, and was joined by the Way by Richard
 Grey.


The Reign of King RICHARD III.

585

Griffin and John Mortimer with a good Body of *Welsh*. : R. III.
The Earl being sensible that now he must either meet 
Victory or Ruin and that he could not long subsist without further Assistance, wrote to his Mother the Countess, and to the Lord Stanley, and others; telling them "That as he was arrived in *England* by
" their Advice, so he must be supported by their Assistance: for having but few Forces, one Defeat would
" be his Ruin: That temporising now would be very
" fatal to their Designs, and a seeming Unresolved-
" ness would discourage all his real Friends." Having sent trusty Servants with this Message, he held on his March towards *Shrewsbury*, and met with Sir *Rice ap Thomas*, with a considerable Body of *Welsh*, who all swore Fealty to him, the Earl having first promised, that as soon as he should be King, he would make him President of *Wales*. Being arrived at *Shrewsbury*, he received an Answer from his Mother, and others, according to his Desire; from thence he marched to *Newport*, where Sir *Gilbert Talbot* joined him with two thousand Men, the Earl of *Shrewsbury*'s Tenants. In the mean Time, the Lord Stanley, and his Brother Sir *William*, were raising Men, but had not declared who they would side with; and Sir *William* advanced with his Army into *Staffordshire*, and waited on the Earl of *Richmond* at *Stafford*, attended only by twenty or thirty Persons, and having had a short Conference, returned to his Forces. The Lord Stanley lay at *Litchfield* with five thousand Men, and when the Earl approached near *Litchfield*, the Lord Stanley retired to *Atherstone*, to make way for the Earl, and to prevent King *Richard*'s having any Suspicion of him, being extremely cautious, by Reason of his Son, the Lord *Strange*, being an Hostage with King *Richard*, and so hourly in Danger of his Life.

King *Richard* being at *Nottingham*, where he then kept his Court, heard of the Earl's Arrival, but with such a Relation of the Inconsiderableness of his Forces, that he despised his Attempt; not doubting but Sir *Walter Herbert*, whom he had ordered to raise the Militia of *Wales*, would easily suppress him. But hearing that Sir *Walter* had suffered him to pass the *Severn*, and that so many Gentlemen had joined him with their Friends and Dependents, that the Earl's Army would be as numerous as his own, if the *Lancashire* Men under

King *Richard* gets together his Army.

2485.  der the *Stanleys* should declare for him; he then resolved to oppose him in Person. He therefore sent Orders for Sir *Thomas Brakenbury*, Lieutenant of the Tower, and others, to bring their whole Strength with them, to enable him to give the Earl Battle, before he received farther Reinforcements, and to bring with him Sir *Thomas Bourchier*, and Sir *Walter Hungerford*, and other Gentlemen, whose Loyalty he suspected, to attend him in Arms, to prevent their conspiring against him. The same Command he sent to the Earl of *Northumberland*. When all his Troops were arrived at *Nottingham*, he put himself at their Head, and led them to *Leicester*, in order to give the Earl Battle. Sir *Thomas Bourchier*, Sir *Walter Hungerford*, and others, found Means privately to desert from *Brakenbury's* Party, and to go over to the Earl; and diverse Men of Quality repaired to him from all Parts. King *Richard* having Intelligence of this, was very much perplex'd, but resolving to put the Issue upon the Hazard of a Battle, he encamped not far from *Leicester*, near a Village called *Bosworth*, where having refreshed his Men, he prepared to fight.

King Richard encamps at *Bosworth*.
The Earl has a Conference with the Lord *Stanley*.


The Earl of *Richmond* march'd his Forces to *Tamworth*, and leaving his Men there, went from thence to *Atherstone*, to the Lord *Stanley* his Father-in-law, where he held a Conference with him and Sir *William Stanley* privately in a little Field, where they consulted how they should give King *Richard* Battle to the best Advantage. Then the Earl leaving the Lord *Stanley*, return'd to his Army, and in the Evening Sir *John Savage*, Sir *Bryan Sandford*, and Sir *Simon Digby*, having deserted King *Richard*, came over to the Earl with all their Friends and Followers. The Earl then march'd his Army out of *Tamworth* towards the Enemy, resolving to fight King *Richard*.

The fatal Day being come that was to decide the Fortunes of the Kingdom, King *Richard* drew out his Troops upon the Plain, in such a Manner that they might make the greatest Appearance. He committed the Van, consisting of Archers, to the Command of the Duke of *Norfolk* and Earl of *Surrey* his Son, himself commanded the second Line, where were the choicest and best armed Men, being guarded on the Flanks by Horse, and on the Front by Archers. The Earl of *Richmond* drew up his Men, placing the Archers in the

under the Command of the Earl of *Oxford*, and ^{3 Ri. III.} the right Wing under the Command of Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, Sir *John Savage* commanded the left, and he kept himself and his Uncle, the Earl of *Pembroke*, a Body of Horse and Foot as a Reserve, to join the Troops as occasion should require. His whole Strength did not amount to six thousand Men, (the *Stanleys* Forces, which were even or eight thousand strong, excepted) and King *Richard* had twice that Number. In the Order mentioned, the two Armies advanced towards each other, Lord *Stanley* moving aside off as the Earl of *Oxford* moved, posted his Army at a Distance, all between the two Armies, affording Hopes and aid to both Parties; and tho' King *Richard* sent to command him to come and join him, swearing *God and Death, if he did not come to him, he would cut off his Son's Head before Dinner*; he answer'd, *Let it be his Pleasure, for I have more Sons than he*: Upon which he commanded his Head to be taken off, but he obeyed the Order, for Fear it should provoke the *Stanley* to pour all his Fury upon him. And when the Earl of *Richmond* sent to the Lord *Stanley*, desiring he would come and take Care of the ordering and commanding his Men, he bad him *draw up his Soldiers, and he would do the same by his, and join him at Supper*.

The Armies being drawn up in Order of Battle, the King on the one Side, and the Earl on the other, made speeches to encourage their Soldiers, which Sir *John Moore* has recited at large. The Earl's Men were mightily animated by his Speech, and demanded impatiently to be led on to meet the Enemy: There was a Morass between the two Armies, the Earl left it in his right Hand, by which he not only prevented *Richard's* attacking him on that Side, but had the Morass in his Back, which shone full in the Faces of the King's Army. King *Richard* perceiving the Earl's Advancing, commanded his Trumpets to sound, and the Archers to let fly their Arrows: The Earl's Men return'd the Shot, and the Foot join'd and fought to close Fight, and then the Lord *Stanley* came to the Earl's Assistance. The Earl of *Oxford* fearing his Men might be surrounded by the Enemy's Numbers, commanded none should stir above ten Foot from the standard; the Soldiers presently clos'd their Ranks, and

The thirteenth and last Battle at *Bosworth*.

1485.  and stood still, expecting farther Orders. King *Richard's* Troops stood still to observe them, being suspicious of some Stratagem, and indeed they fought at best but very faintly, many also deserting him: Upon which *Richard* was advised to save himself by Flight, concluding he was betray'd, but he refus'd; and even when the Victory appeared eminently on the Side of his Adversaries, and a fleet Horse was presented to him to further his Escape, he declar'd, *That Day should either determine the War or his Life.* The Earl of *Oxford* led his Men again to the Charge, upon which the Duke of *Norfolk* changed the Order of his Battle, widen'd the first Line, but clos'd and enlarg'd his second; and then renew'd the Fight. The King being inform'd that the Earl of *Richmond* was not far off, attended with but a few of his Guards, set Spurs to his Horse, and rode furiously towards him; the Earl perceiv'd him, and prepar'd to receive him. *Richard* made furiously at him with his Lance, but the Earl could not meet him, being hindered by some of his own Men. The King perceiving his Disappointment, push'd against the great Standard, and slew Sir *William Brandon* the Standard-Bearer, and advancing forward, was oppos'd by Sir *Richard Cheney*; and tho' he was a Man of great Strength and Valour, bore him to the Ground, and forc'd his Way up to the Earl, who kept him off at Sword's Point, till Assistance came in to his Relief. At that very Instant Sir *William Stanley* came in with three thousand choice Men, and investing the King's Squadrons, afforded Occasion for as many to run away as thought fit. King *Richard* perceiving this, left the Earl, and push'd forward into the hottest of the Battle, either to encourage his Men, or to meet Death the sooner; and accordingly fell with his Sword in Hand all cover'd with Blood.

King *Richard* slain. In the mean Time, the Earl of *Oxford* made a terrible Slaughter in the Van of the King's Army. The Duke of *Norfolk*, the Lord *Ferrers*, Sir *Richard Ratcliff*, and Sir *John Brackenbury* were kill'd on the Spot with about a thousand of their Men. While the Van of the King's Army was hotly engag'd with the Earl's, the greatest Part of those in the Main, watching their Opportunity, left the Field and departed every Man to his own home. Sir *William Glouc.* a Judge, and several others, were taken and beheaded two Days after at *Leicester*. The Lord *Level*, and others, made their Escapes.



The Reign of King RICHARD III.

389

capcs. Many Gentlemen and private Soldiers threw 3 Ri. III.
wn their Arms, submitted to the Earl, and were graci-
lly receiv'd. Among those was *Henry* Earl of *North-*
umberland, who did not engage in the Battle, but stood
uter, for which he was taken into the Earl's Favour,
immediately made a Privy Counsellor. *Thomas* Earl
Surrey was sent to the Tower, but was soon releas'd,
d prefer'd to Places of the greatest Trust and Honour.
This Battle hapned on the 22^d Day of *August*, and
ntinued about two Hours; and tho' in it there were
t slain much above two thousand Men, and scarce an
ndred on Earl *Henry's* Part, yet it was decisive of
Controversy, being the thirteenth that was fought,
ween the two Houses of *Lancaster* and *York*, which
broken out about thirty Years before, fill'd the Na-
n with Blood and Desolation, and cost the Lives of
ar an hundred thousand Men, and eighty Princes of
Blood. And King *Richard* there finish'd his evil
urse of Life, after he had reign'd two Years, two
onths, and one Day. Had he lived with as much
ory as he died, his Character would have shone bright
our *English* Annals. His Body was carried to *Lei-*
ster after a most ignominious Manner, being stript
ked and laid cross a Horse, like a Calf, his Head
nging down on one Side, and Legs on the other, be-
ear'd with Blood and Mire; and having lain two Days
this Manner on bare Earth, expos'd a filthy Specta-
to the View of the People, who us'd it ignomini-
sly, it was afterwards buried in the Abbey-Church,
here King *Henry*, in Respect to his Family, ordered a
omb to be erected over his Grave.

The Num:
ber of the
slain.

After the Battle was over, and the Victory was en-
ely gain'd, the Earl of *Richmond* fell down on his
rees in the open Field, and gave God Thanks for his
essing upon his Arms, pray'd for the Church and his
bjects, then rode to an Eminence, and thence gave
Soldiers Thanks for behaving themselves so well in
e Battle; promising them all Rewards answerable to
eir Merits. Upon which the Army with mighty Shouts
y'd out, King *Henry*, King *Henry*; and the Lord *Stan-*
taking *Richard's* Crown, which was found among
e Spoils in the Field of Battle, put it on the Earl's
ead, who from that Time assum'd the Title and Pow-
of King of *England*.

The Earl of
Richmond sa-
luted King
by the Army.

The End of the First Volume.

7








THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be
taken from the Building**

[illegible]



B'D NOV 27 1914

